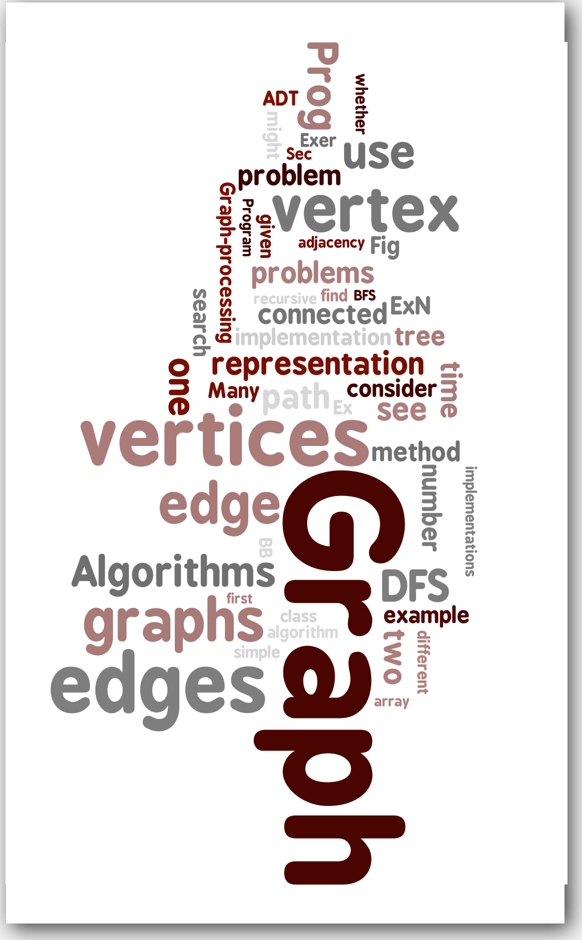
4.1 Undirected Graphs



- graph API
- maze exploration
- depth-first search
- breadth-first search
- connected components
- challenges

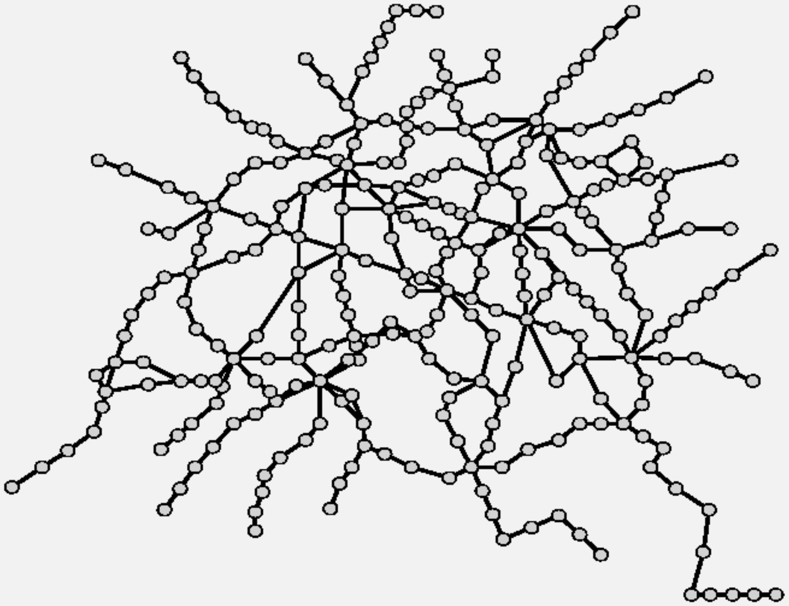
References: Algorithms in Java (Part 5), 3rd edition, Chapters 17 and 18

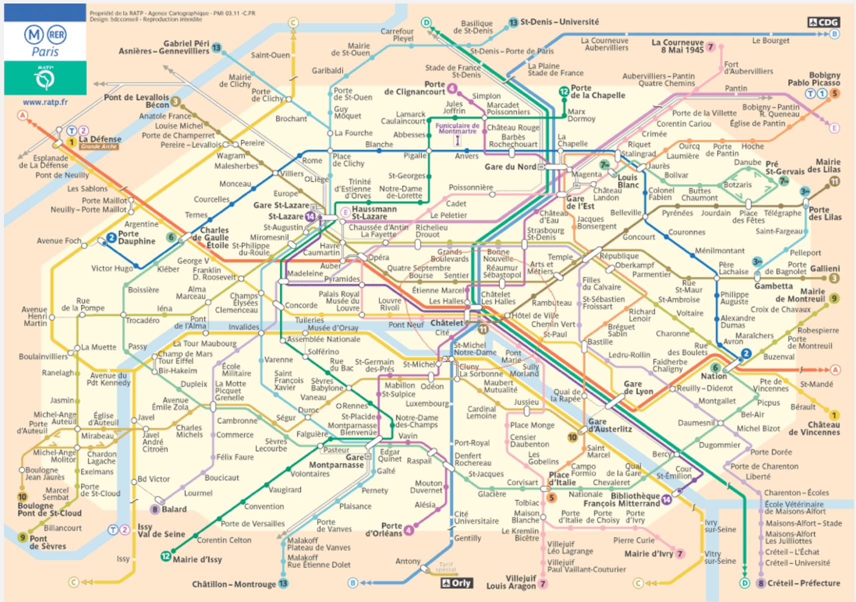
Undirected graphs

Graph. Set of vertices connected pairwise by edges.

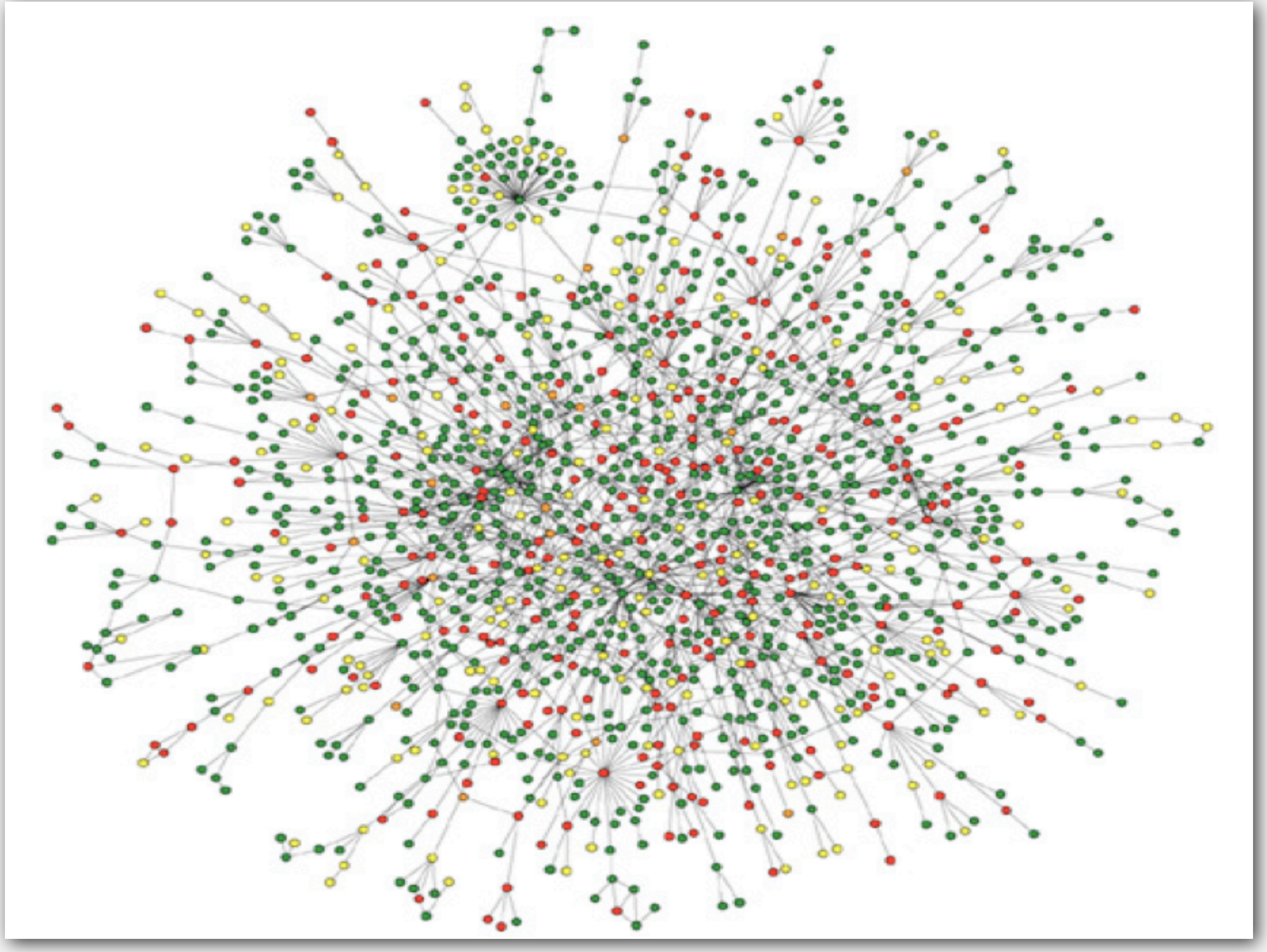
Why study graph algorithms?

- Interesting and broadly useful abstraction.
- Challenging branch of computer science and discrete math.
- Hundreds of graph algorithms known.
- Thousands of practical applications.



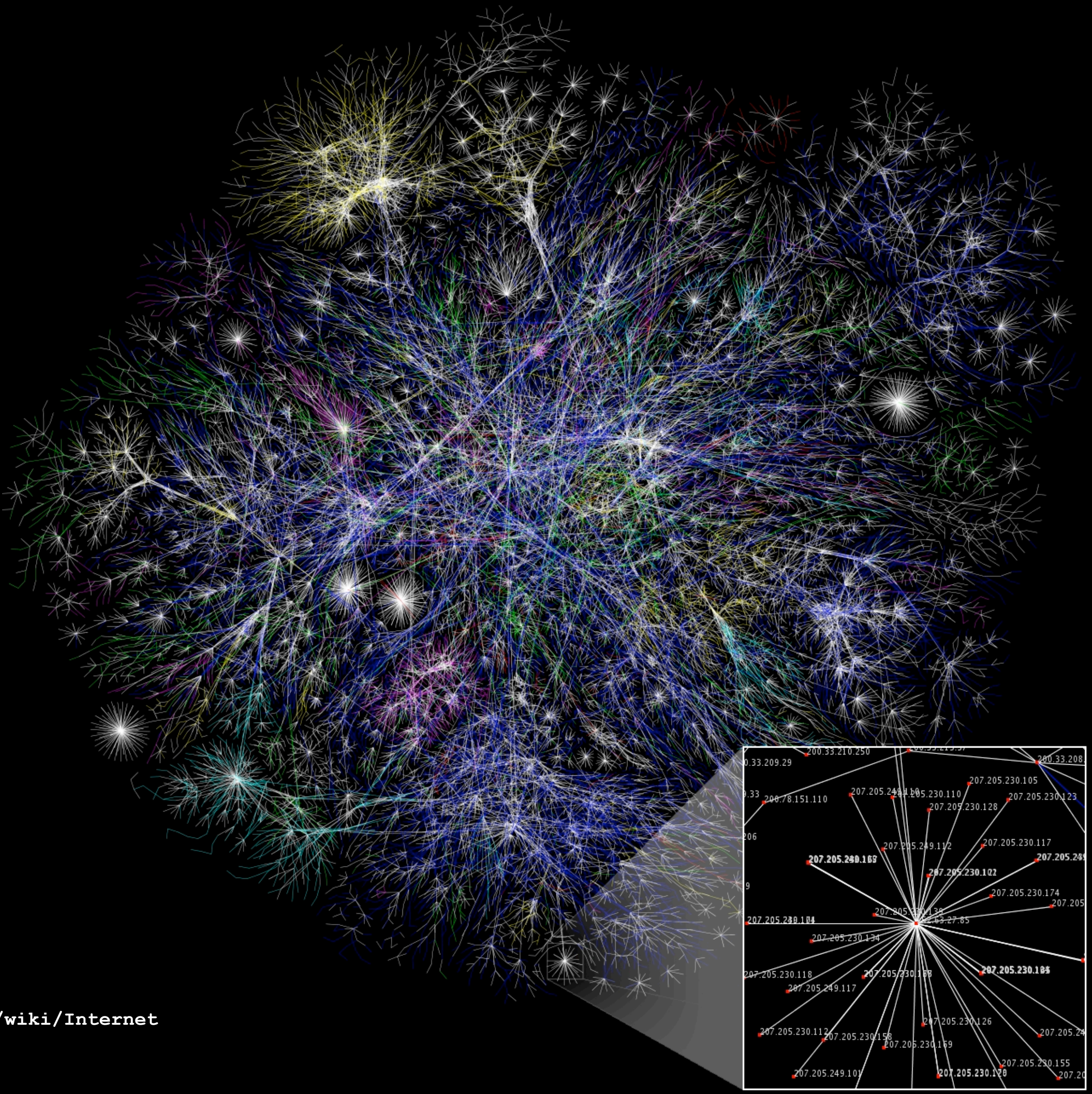


Protein interaction network



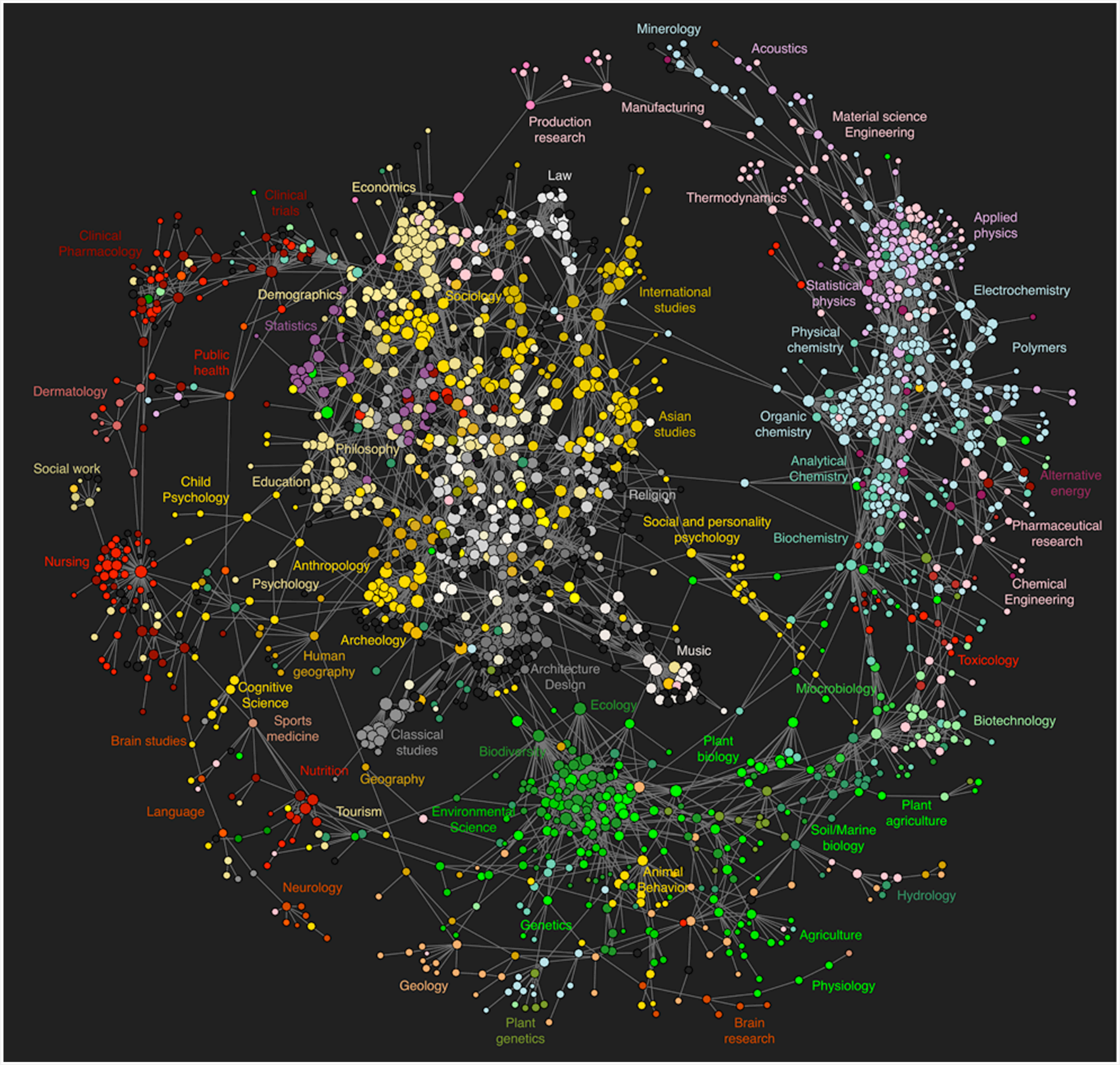
Reference: Jeong et al, Nature Review | Genetics

The Internet as mapped by the Opte Project



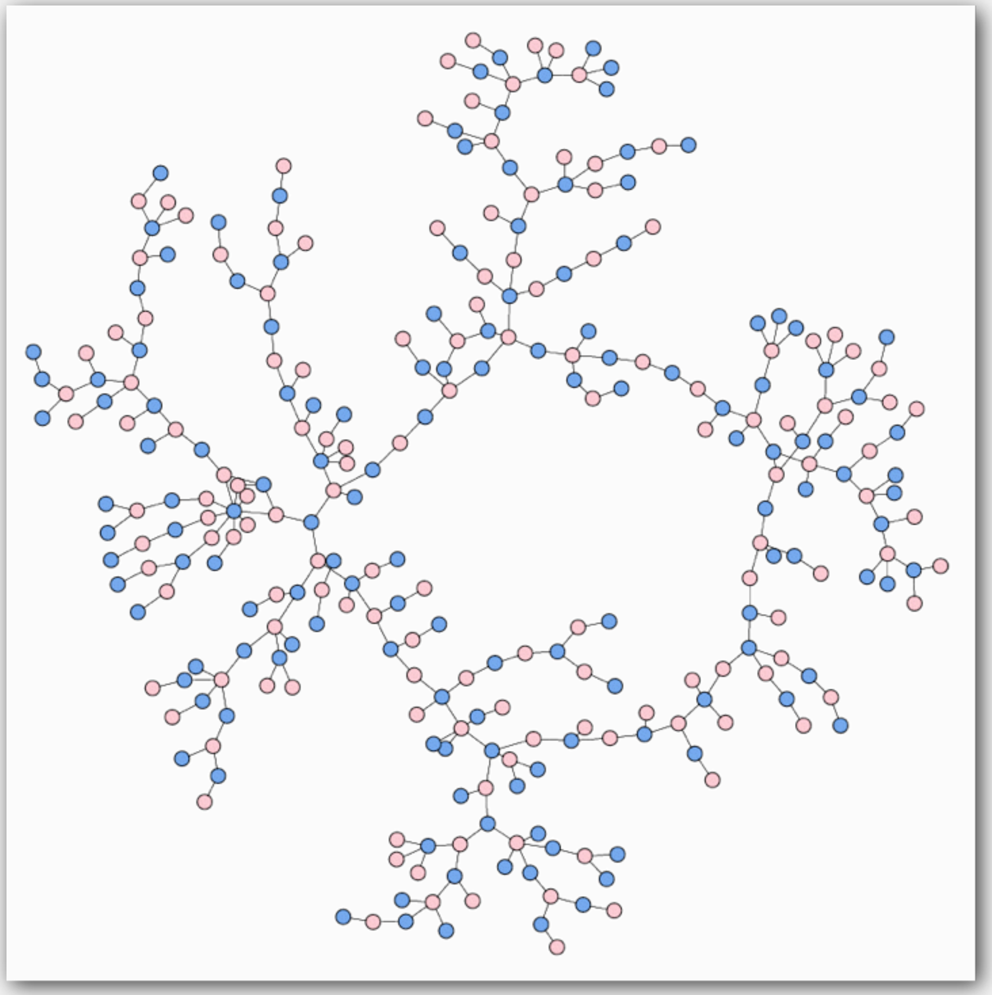
http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Internet

Map of science clickstreams



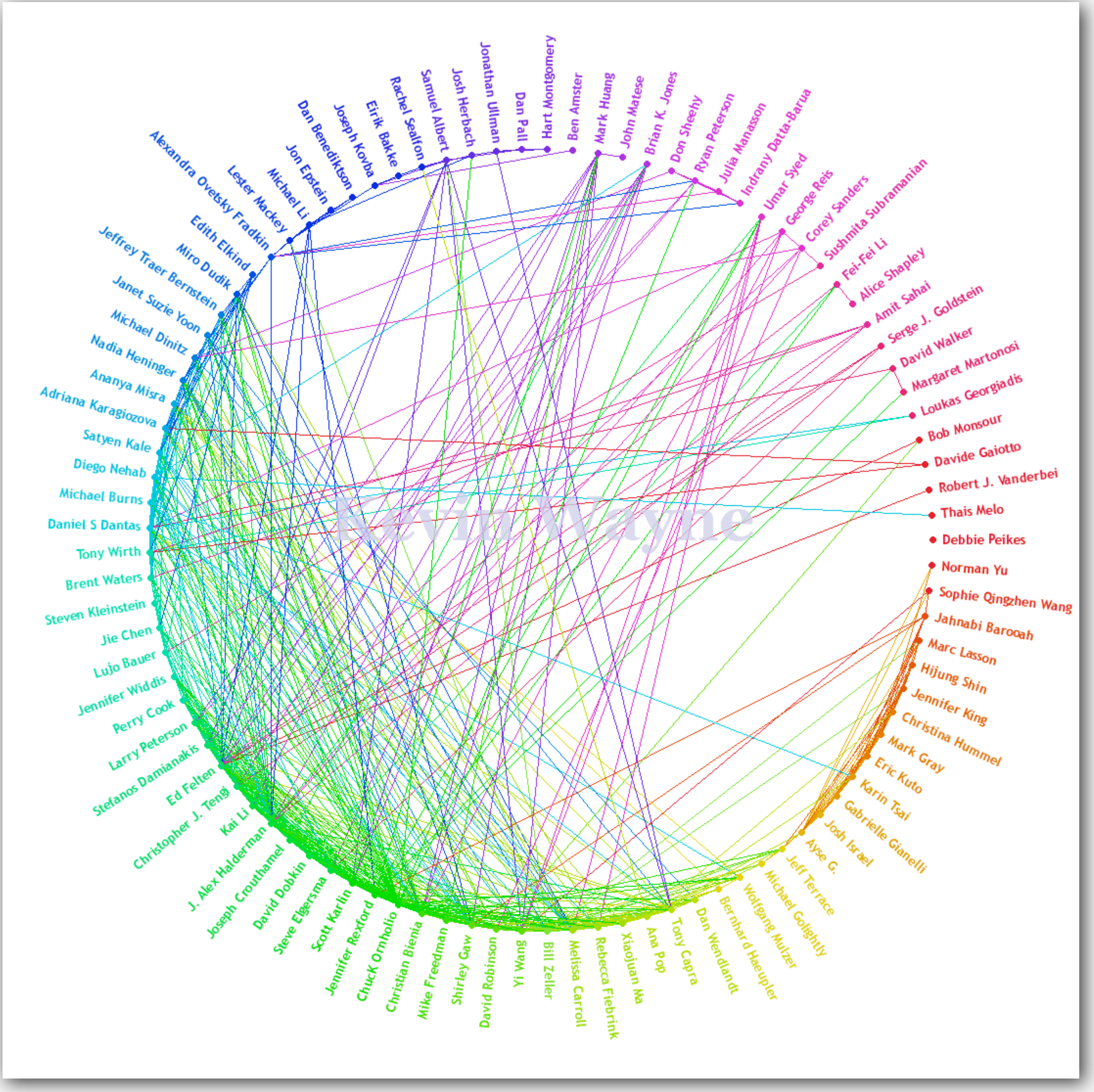
http://www.plosone.org/article/info:doi/10.1371/journal.pone.0004803

High-school dating

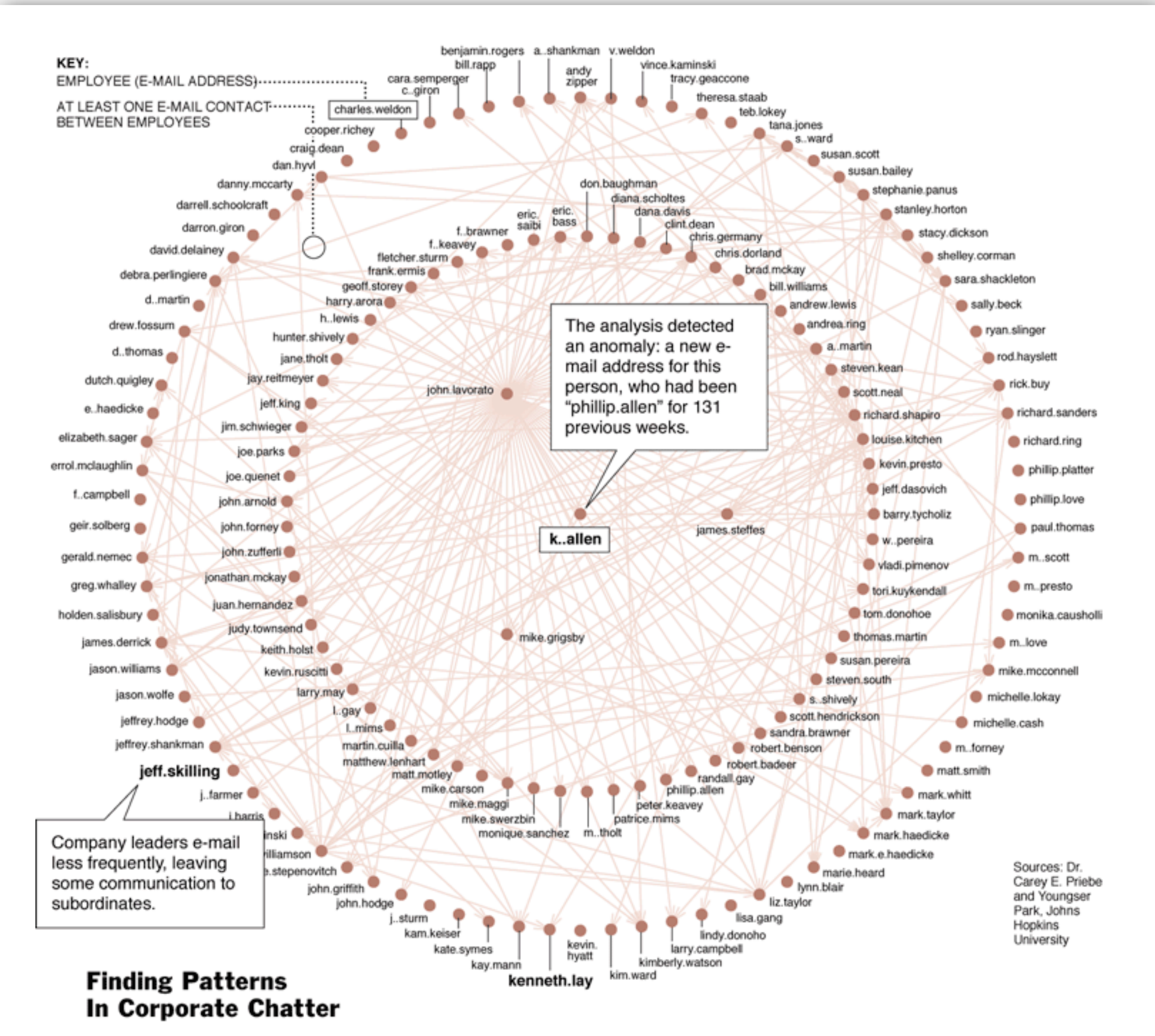


Reference: Bearman, Moody and Stovel, 2004
image by Mark Newman

Kevin's facebook friends (Princeton network)



One week of Enron emails



KEY:
EMPLOYEE (E-MAIL ADDRESS)
AT LEAST ONE E-MAIL CONTACT
BETWEEN EMPLOYEES

The analysis detected an anomaly: a new e-mail address for this person, who had been "phillip.allen" for 131 previous weeks.

Company leaders e-mail less frequently, leaving some communication to subordinates.

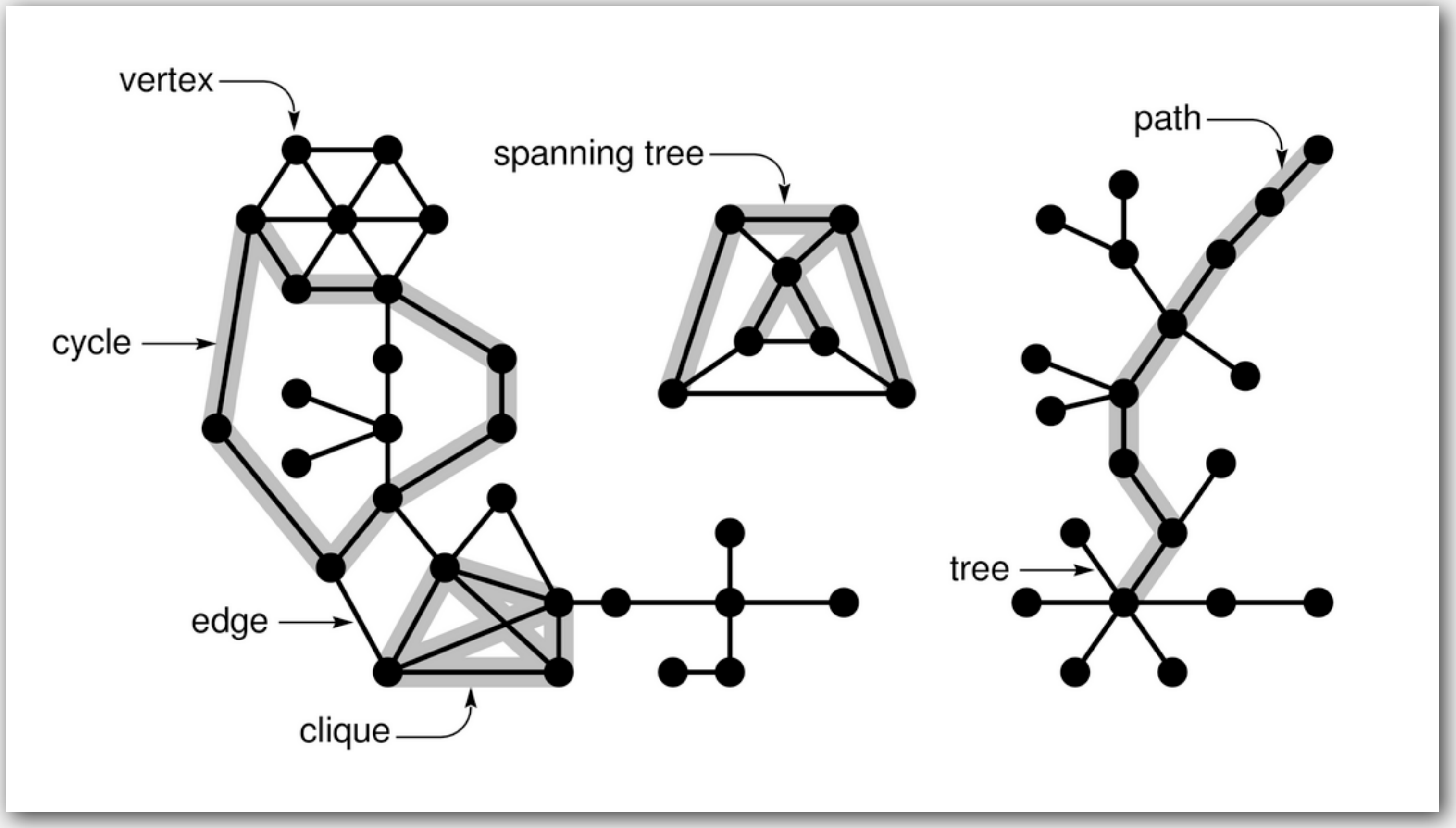
Finding Patterns
In Corporate Chatter

Sources: Dr. Carey E. Priebe and Youngser Park, Johns Hopkins University

Graph applications

graph	vertex	edge
communication	telephone, computer	fiber optic cable
circuit	gate, register, processor	wire
mechanical	joint	rod, beam, spring
financial	stock, currency	transactions
transportation	street intersection, airport	highway, airway route
internet	class C network	connection
game	board position	legal move
social relationship	person, actor	friendship, movie cast
neural network	neuron	synapse
protein network	protein	protein-protein interaction
chemical compound	molecule	bond

Graph terminology



Some graph-processing problems

Path. Is there a path between s and t?

Shortest path. What is the shortest path between s and t?

Cycle. Is there a cycle in the graph?

Euler tour. Is there a cycle that uses each edge exactly once?

Hamilton tour. Is there a cycle that uses each vertex exactly once?

Connectivity. Is there a way to connect all of the vertices?

MST. What is the best way to connect all of the vertices?

Biconnectivity. Is there a vertex whose removal disconnects the graph?

Planarity. Can you draw the graph in the plane with no crossing edges?

Graph isomorphism. Do two adjacency matrices represent the same graph?

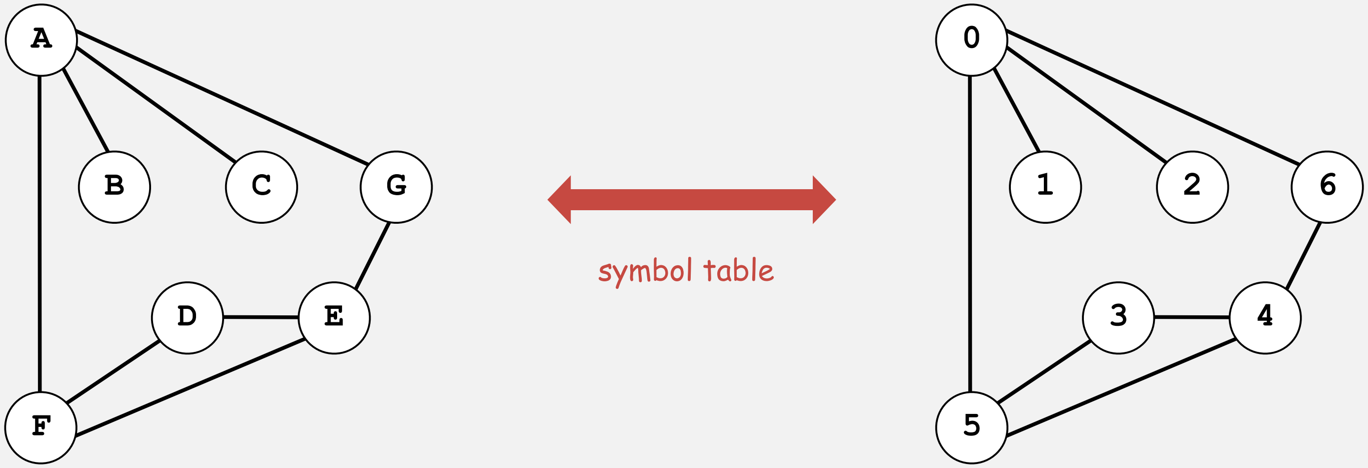
Challenge. Which of these problems are easy? difficult? intractable?

- **graph API**
- maze exploration
- depth-first search
- breadth-first search
- connected components
- challenges

Graph representation

Vertex representation.

- This lecture: use integers between 0 and V-1.
- Real world: convert between names and integers with symbol table.



Issues. Parallel edges, self-loops.

Graph API

	public class Graph	*graph data type*
	`Graph(int V)`	*create an empty graph with V vertices*
	`Graph(In in)`	*create a graph from input stream*
`void`	`addEdge(int v, int w)`	*add an edge v-w*
`Iterable<Integer>`	`adj(int v)`	*return an iterator over the neighbors of v*
`int`	`V()`	*return number of vertices*

```
In in = new In();
Graph G = new Graph(in);
```

read graph from standard input

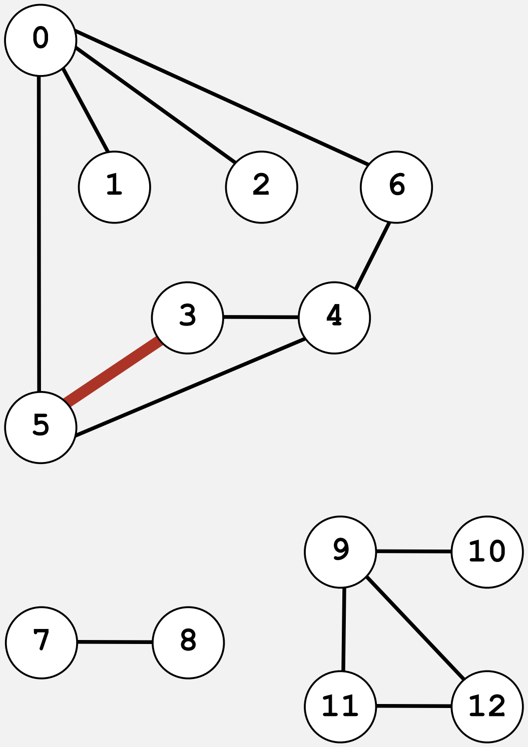
```
for (int v = 0; v < G.V(); v++)
   for (int w : G.adj(v))
      /* process edge v-w */
```

process both v-w and w-v

```
% more tiny.txt
7
0 1
0 2
0 5
0 6
3 4
3 5
4 6
```

Set of edges representation

Maintain a list of the edges (linked list or array).

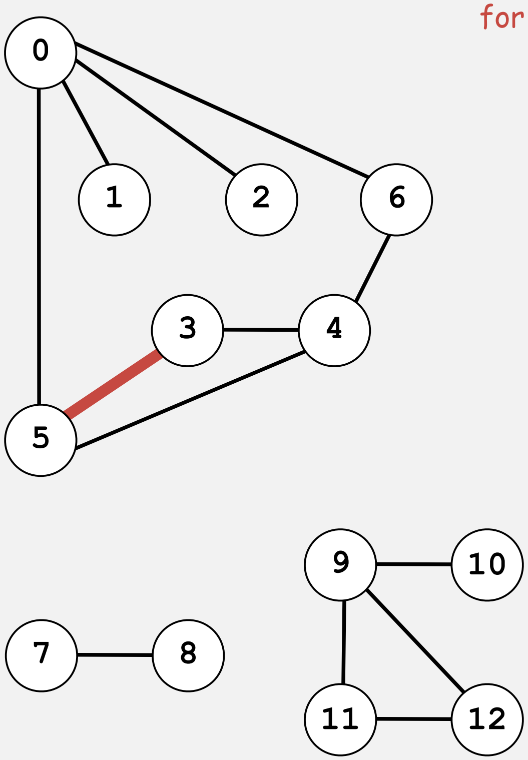


0	1
0	2
0	5
0	6
3	4
3	5
4	6
7	8
9	10
9	11
9	12

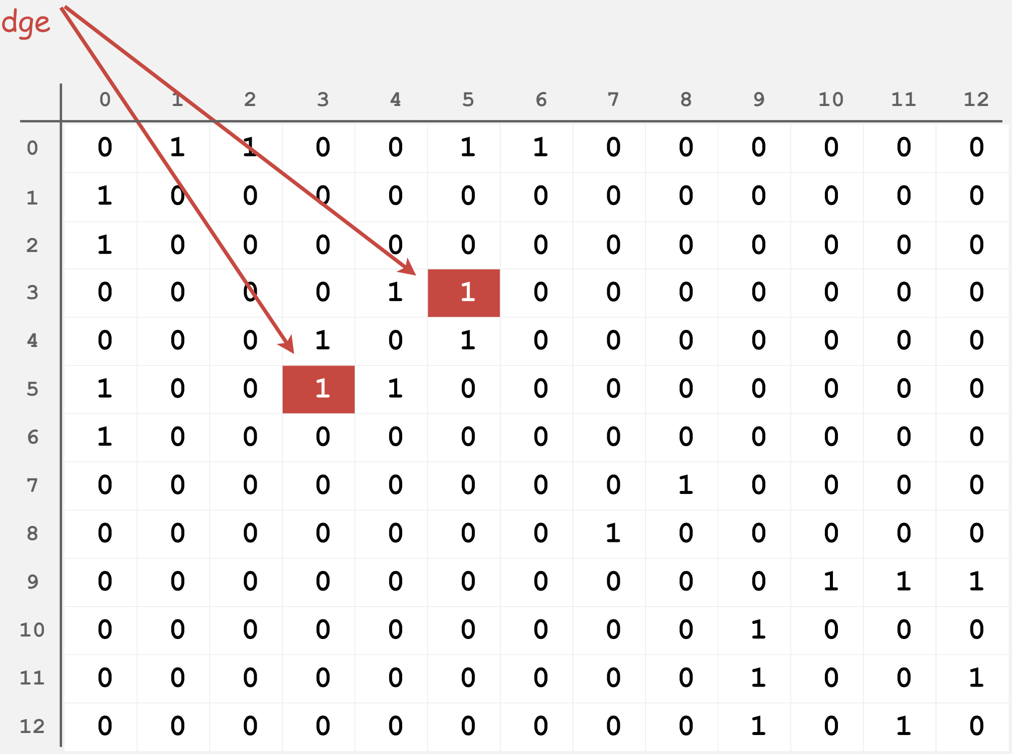
Adjacency-matrix representation

Maintain a two-dimensional V-by-V boolean array;

for each edge v-w in graph: `adj[v][w] = adj[w][v] = true`.



two entries
for each edge



	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
0	0	1	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0
1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
2	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
3	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
4	0	0	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
5	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
6	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
7	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0
8	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0
9	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1
10	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0
11	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1
12	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0

Adjacency-matrix representation: Java implementation

```
public class Graph
{
   private final int V;
   private final boolean[][] adj;

   public Graph(int V)
   {
      this.V = V;
      adj = new boolean[V][V];
   }

   public void addEdge(int v, int w)
   {
      adj[v][w] = true;
      adj[w][v] = true;
   }

   public Iterable<Integer> adj(int v)
   {  return new AdjIterator(v);   }
}
```

adjacency matrix

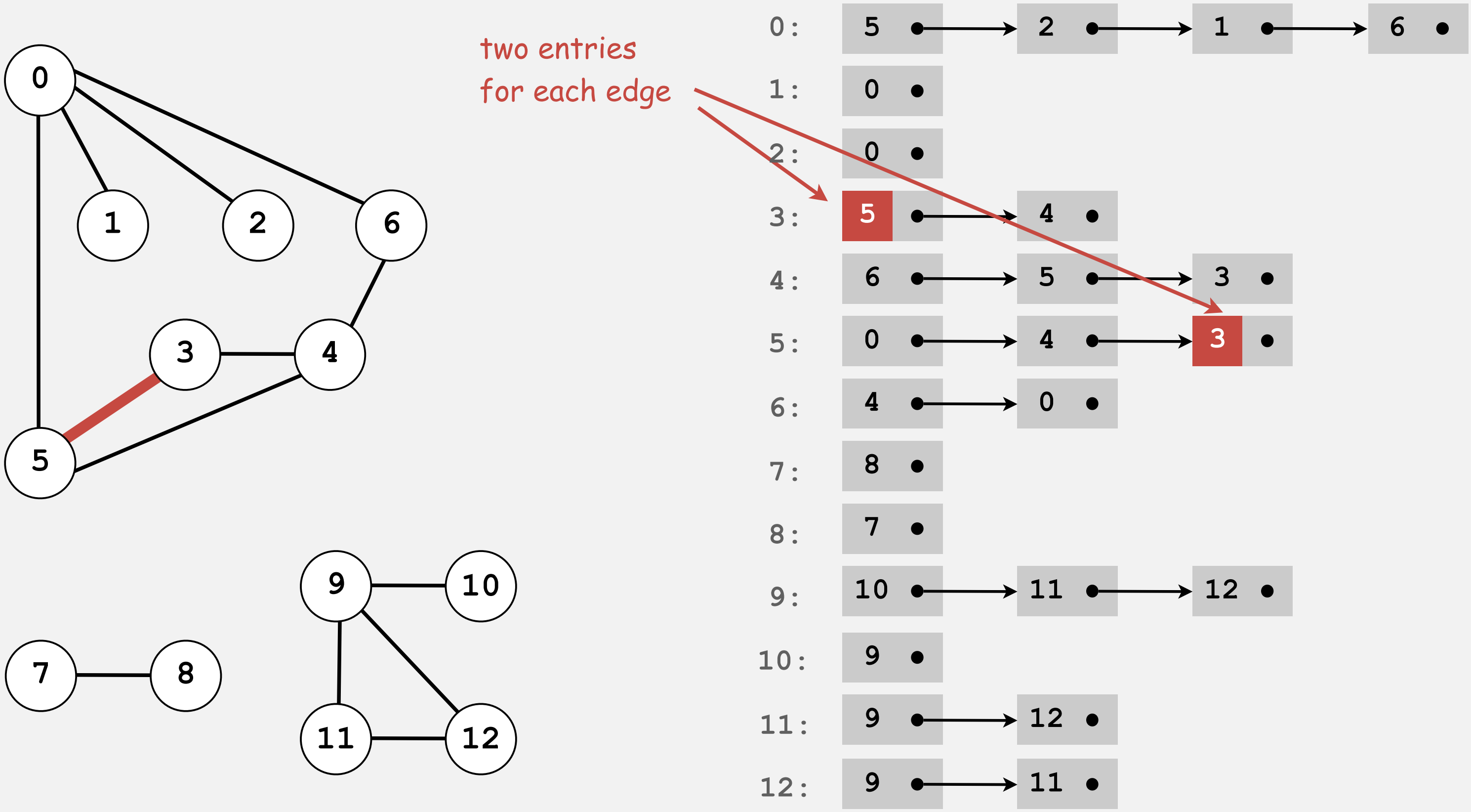
create empty graph
with V vertices

add edge v-w
(no parallel edges)

iterator for v's neighbors
(code for `AdjIterator` omitted)

Adjacency-list representation

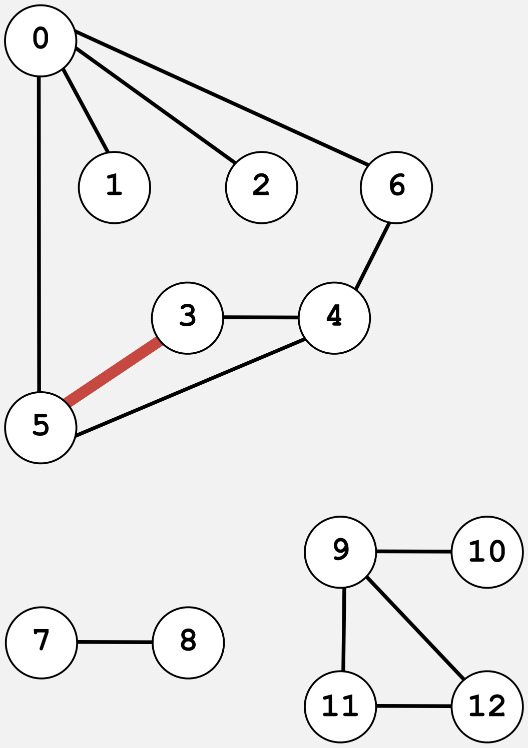
Maintain vertex-indexed array of lists (implementation omitted).



two entries
for each edge

Adjacency-set graph representation

Maintain vertex-indexed array of sets.



0: { 1 2 5 6 }

1: { 0 }

2: { 0 }

3: { 4, 5 }

4: { 3, 5, 6 }

5: { 0, 3, 4 }

6: { 0, 4 }

7: { 8 }

8: { 7 }

9: { 10, 11, 12 }

10: { 9 }

11: { 9, 12 }

12: { 9, 11 }

two entries
for each edge

Adjacency-set representation: Java implementation

```
public class Graph
{
   private final int V;
   private final SET<Integer>[] adj;

   public Graph(int V)
   {
      this.V = V;
      adj = (SET<Integer>[]) new SET[V];
      for (int v = 0; v < V; v++)
         adj[v] = new SET<Integer>();
   }

   public void addEdge(int v, int w)
   {
      adj[v].add(w);
      adj[w].add(v);
   }

   public Iterable<Integer> adj(int v)
   {  return adj[v];  }
}
```

adjacency sets

create empty graph
with V vertices

add edge v-w
(no parallel edges)

iterator for v's neighbors

Graph representations

In practice. Use adjacency-set (or adjacency-list) representation.

- Algorithms based on iterating over edges incident to v.
- Real-world graphs tend to be "sparse."

huge number of vertices,
small average vertex degree

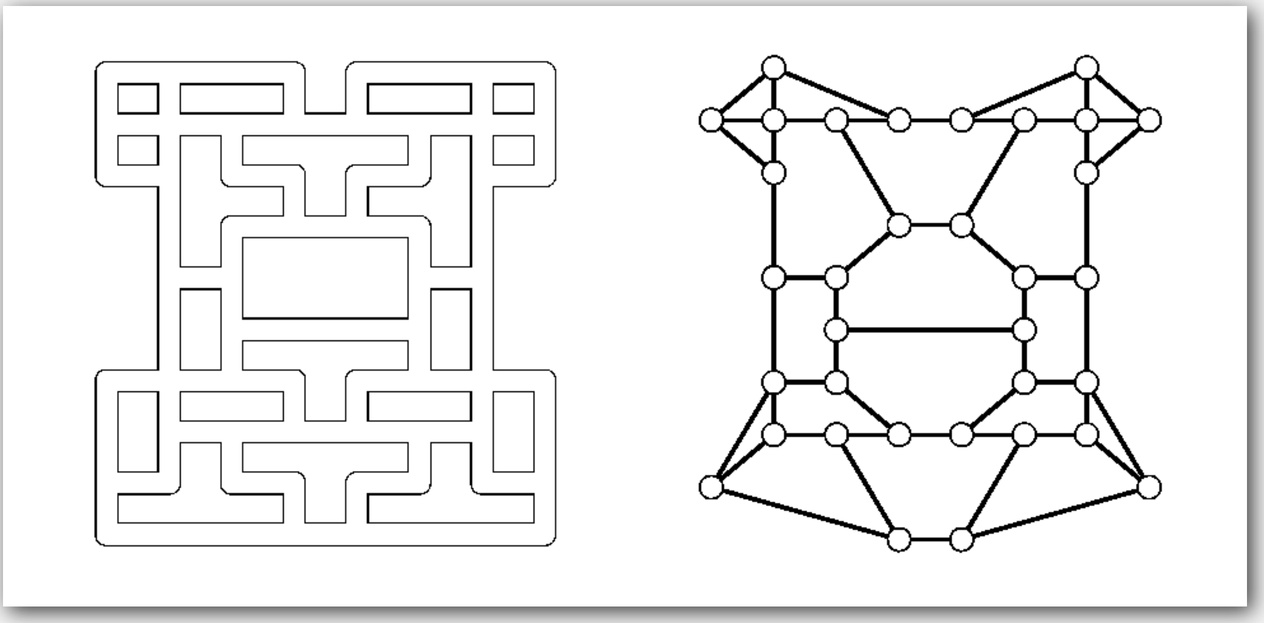
representation	space	insert edge	edge between v and w?	iterate over edges incident to v?
list of edges	E	E	E	E
adjacency matrix	V^2	1	1	V
adjacency list	E + V	degree(v)	degree(v)	degree(v)
adjacency set	E + V	log (degree(v))	log (degree(v))	degree(v)

- graph API
- **maze exploration**
- depth-first search
- breadth-first search
- connected components
- challenges

Maze exploration

Maze graphs.

- Vertex = intersection.
- Edge = passage.



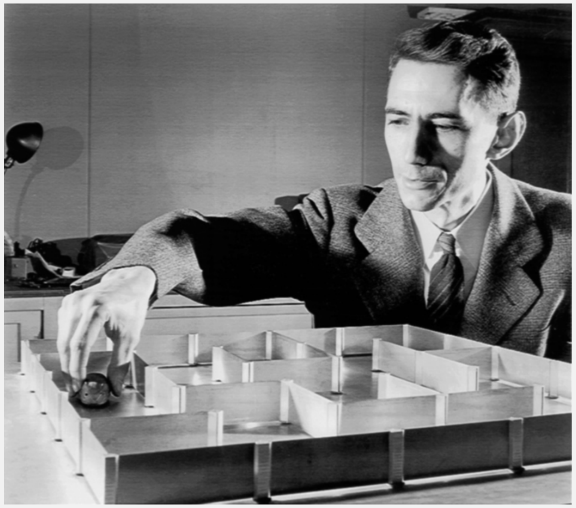
Goal. Explore every passage in the maze.

Trémaux maze exploration

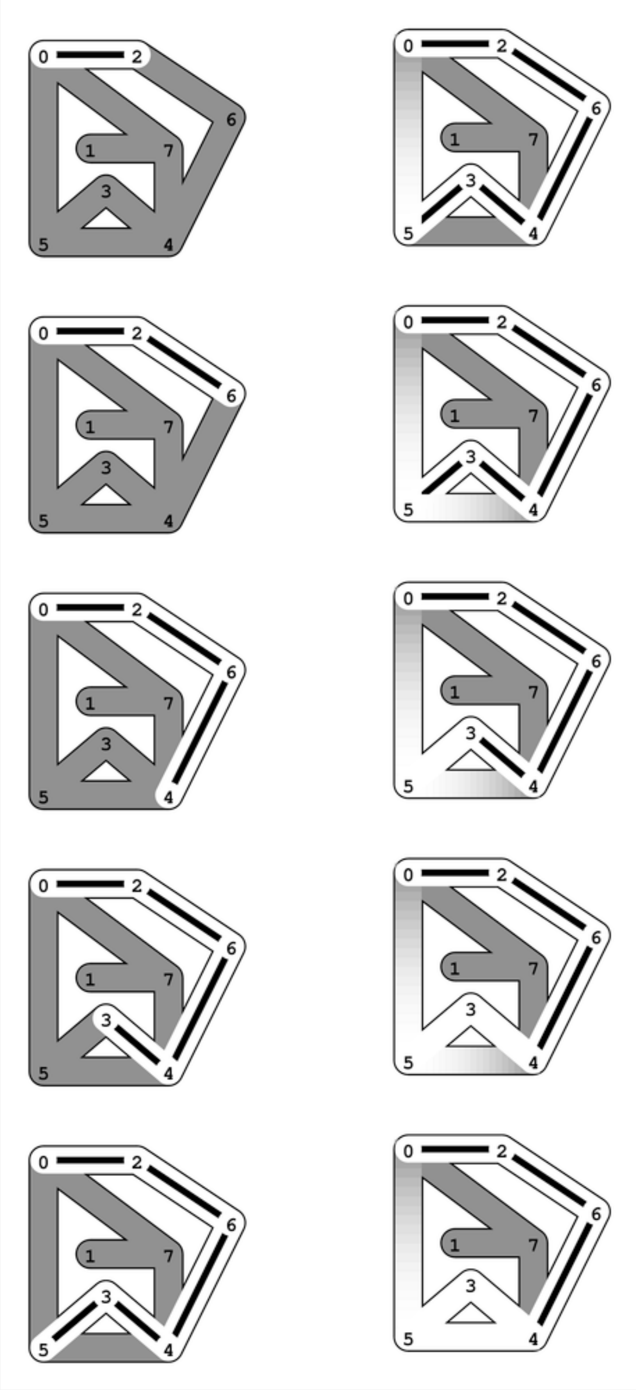
Algorithm.

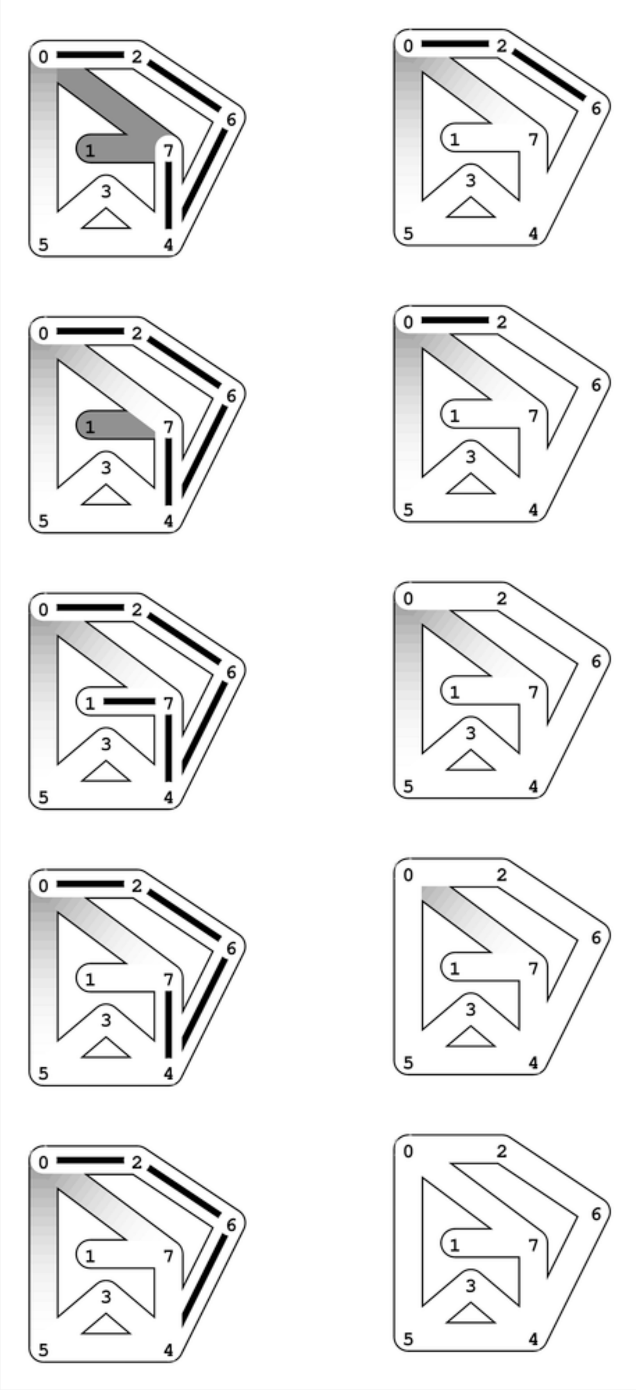
- Unroll a ball of string behind you.
- Mark each visited intersection by turning on a light.
- Mark each visited passage by opening a door.

First use? Theseus entered labyrinth to kill the monstrous Minotaur; Ariadne held ball of string.

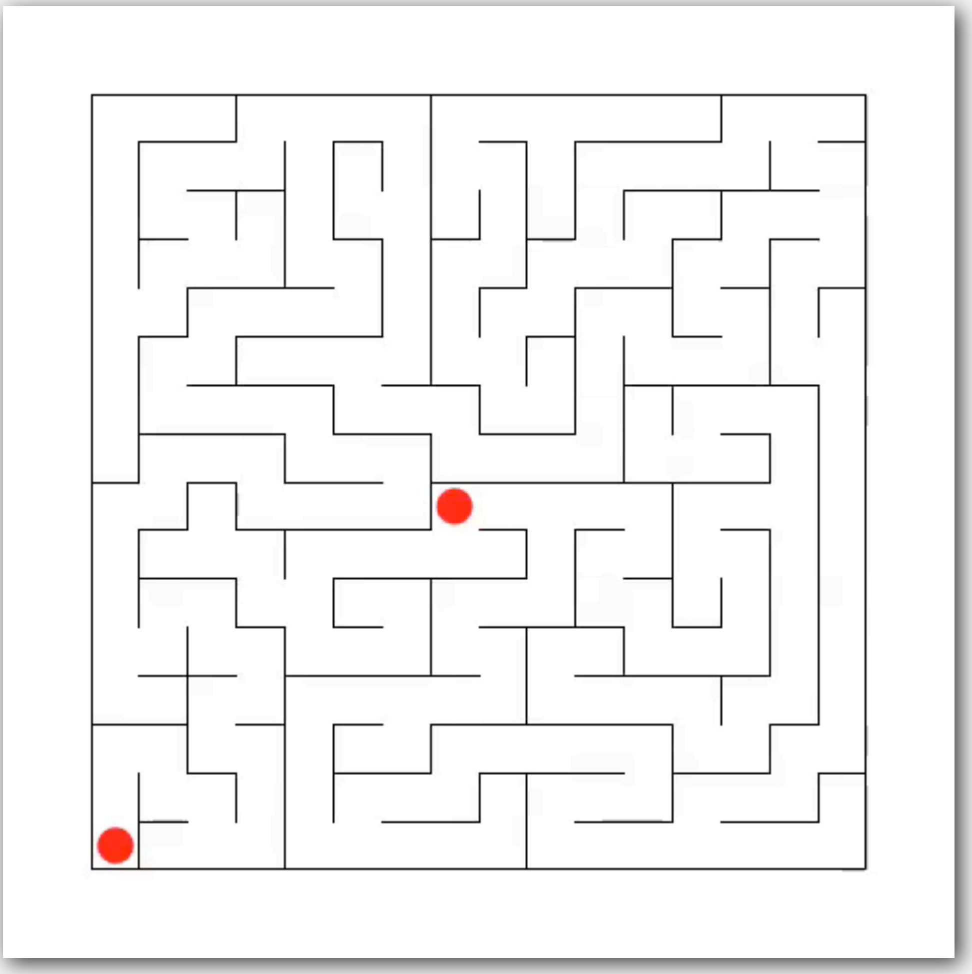


Claude Shannon (with Theseus mouse)

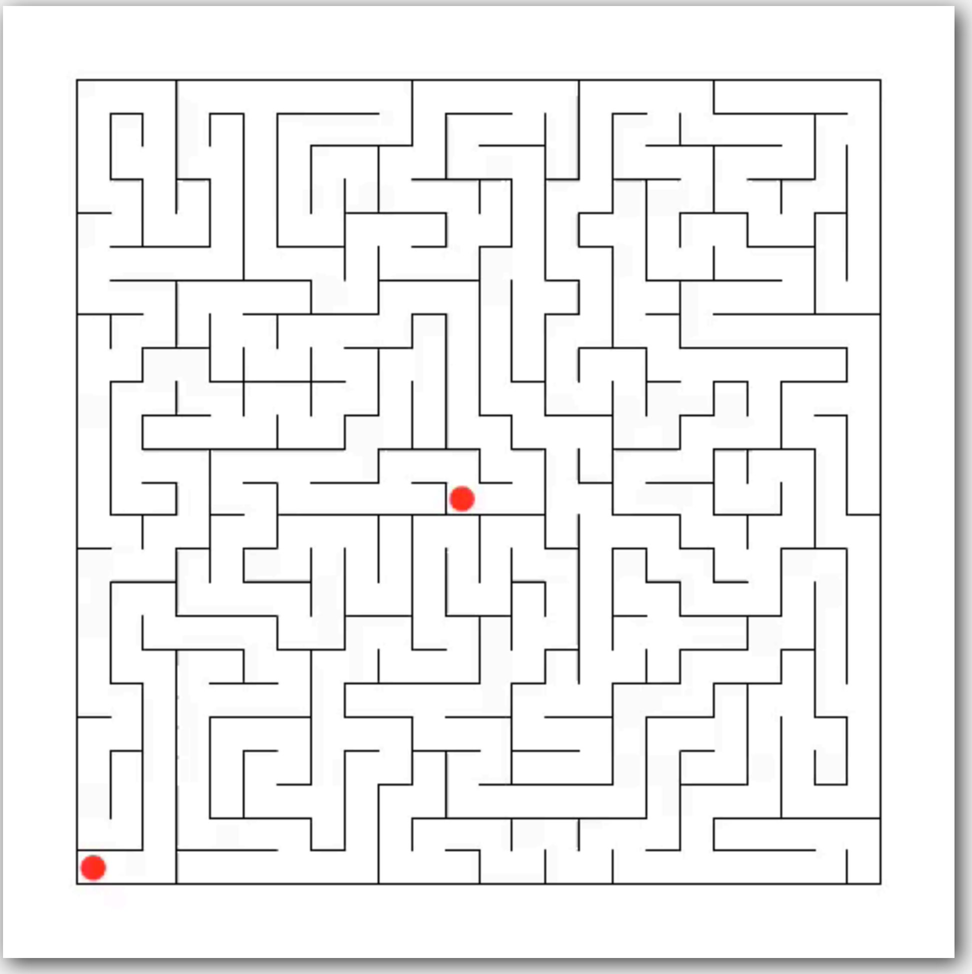

0
2
6
1
7
3
5
4


0
2
6
1
7
3
5
4

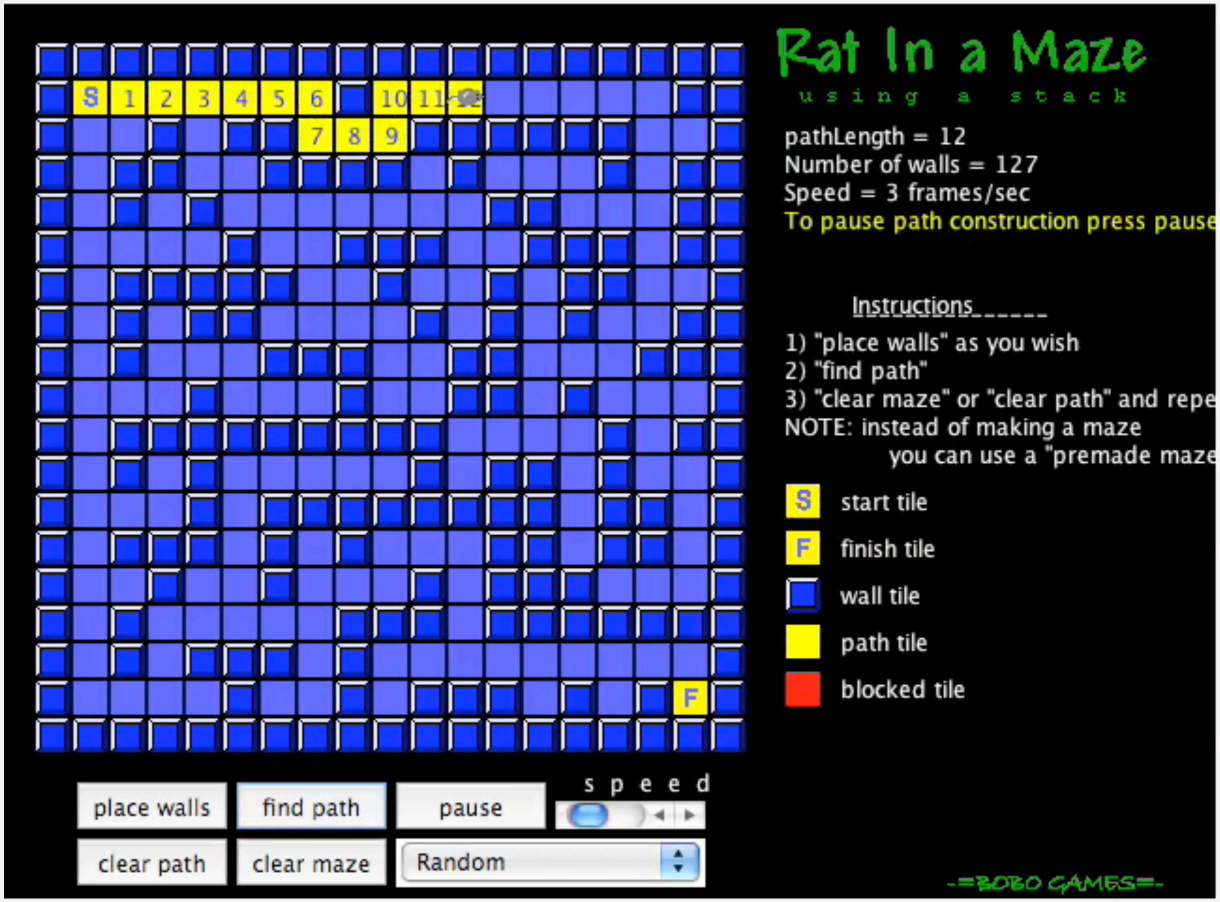
Maze exploration



Maze exploration



Rat in a maze



Rat In a Maze

using a stack

pathLength = 12
Number of walls = 127
Speed = 3 frames/sec
To pause path construction press pause

Instructions

1) "place walls" as you wish
2) "find path"
3) "clear maze" or "clear path" and repe
NOTE: instead of making a maze
you can use a "premade maze

S start tile
F finish tile
🟦 wall tile
🟨 path tile
🟥 blocked tile

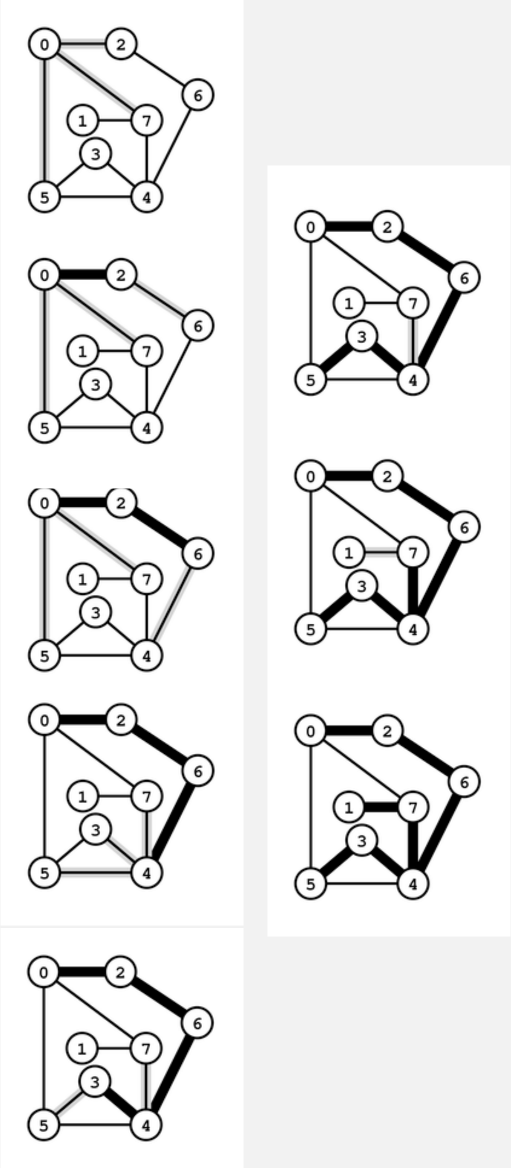
- graph API
- maze exploration
- **depth-first search**
- breadth-first search
- connected components
- challenges

Depth-first search

Goal. Systematically search through a graph.

Idea. Mimic maze exploration.

```
DFS (to visit a vertex s)

Mark s as visited.
Recursively visit all unmarked
vertices v adjacent to s.
```



Running time.

- O(E) since each edge examined at most twice.
- Usually less than V in real-world graphs.

- Typical applications.
- Find all vertices connected to a given s.
- Find a path from s to t.

Design pattern for graph processing

Design goal. Decouple graph data type from graph processing.

```
// print all vertices connected to s
In in = new In(args[0]);
Graph G = new Graph(in);
int s = 0;
DFSearcher dfs = new DFSearcher(G, s);
for (int v = 0; v < G.V(); v++)
   if (dfs.isConnected(v))
      StdOut.println(v);
```

Typical client program.

- Create a `Graph`.
- Pass the `Graph` to a graph-processing routine, e.g., `DFSearcher`.
- Query the graph-processing routine for information.

Depth-first search (connectivity)

```
public class DFSearcher
{
   private boolean[] marked;

   public DFSearcher(Graph G, int s)
   {
      marked = new boolean[G.V()];
      dfs(G, s);
   }

   private void dfs(Graph G, int v)
   {
      marked[v] = true;
      for (int w : G.adj(v))
         if (!marked[w]) dfs(G, w);
   }

   public boolean isConnected(int v)
   {  return marked[v];  }
}
```

true if connected to s

constructor marks vertices connected to s

recursive DFS does the work

client can ask whether any vertex is connected to s

Flood fill

Photoshop "magic wand"

Graph-processing challenge 1

Problem. Flood fill.

Assumptions. Picture has millions to billions of pixels.

How difficult?

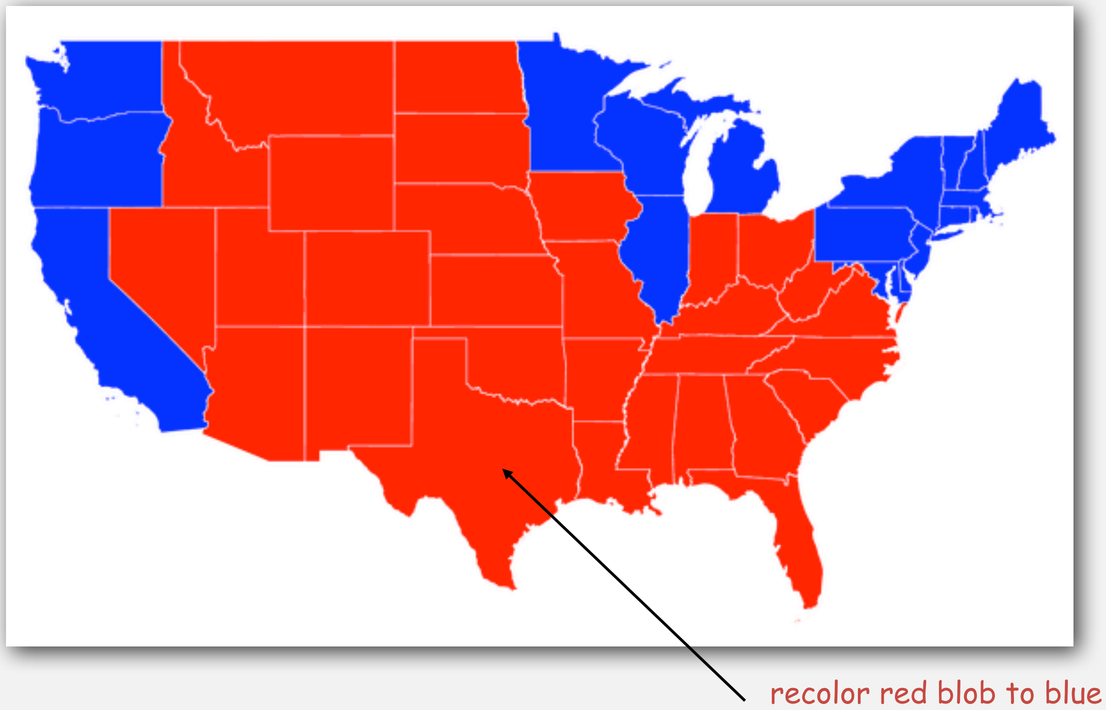
- Any COS 126 student could do it.
- Need to be a typical diligent COS 226 student.
- Hire an expert.
- Intractable.
- No one knows.
- Impossible.

Connectivity application: flood fill

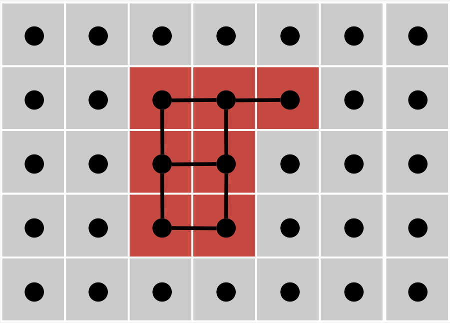
Change color of entire blob of neighboring red pixels to blue.

Build a grid graph.

- Vertex: pixel.
- Edge: between two adjacent red pixels.
- Blob: all pixels connected to given pixel.



recolor red blob to blue

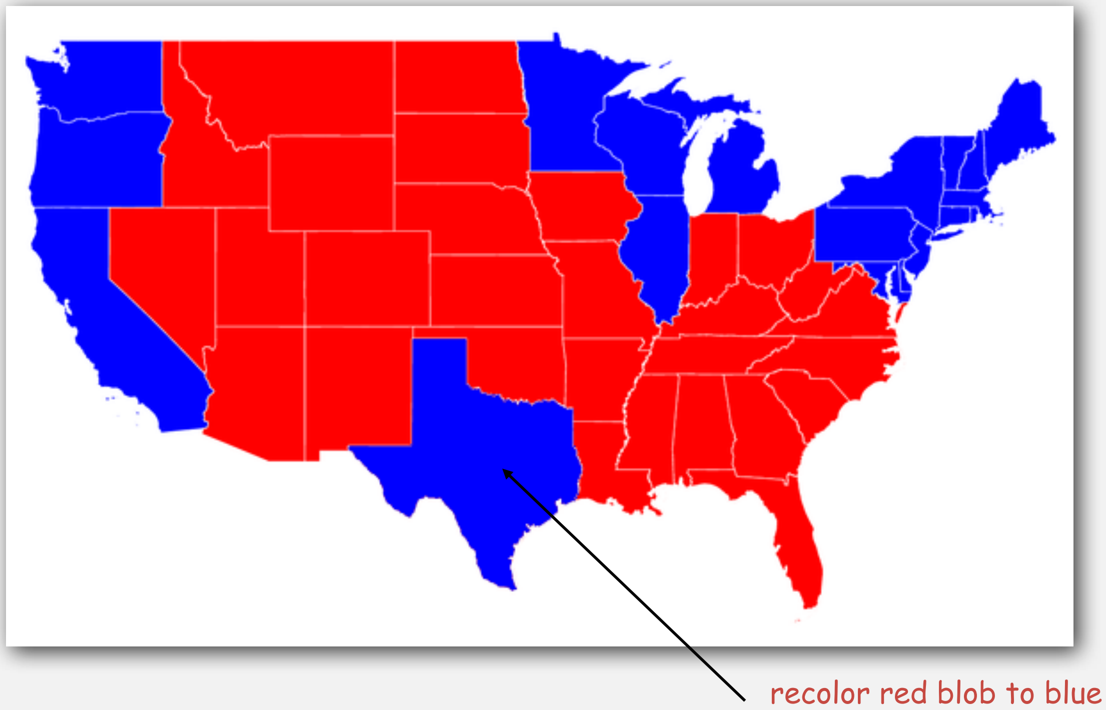


Connectivity application: flood fill

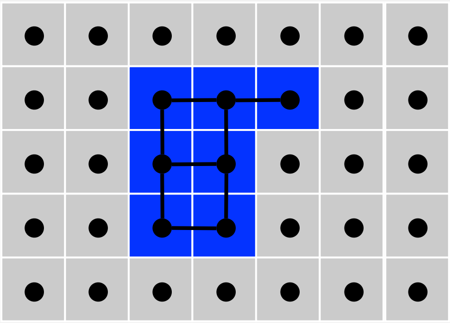
Change color of entire blob of neighboring red pixels to blue.

Build a grid graph.

- Vertex: pixel.
- Edge: between two adjacent red pixels.
- Blob: all pixels connected to given pixel.



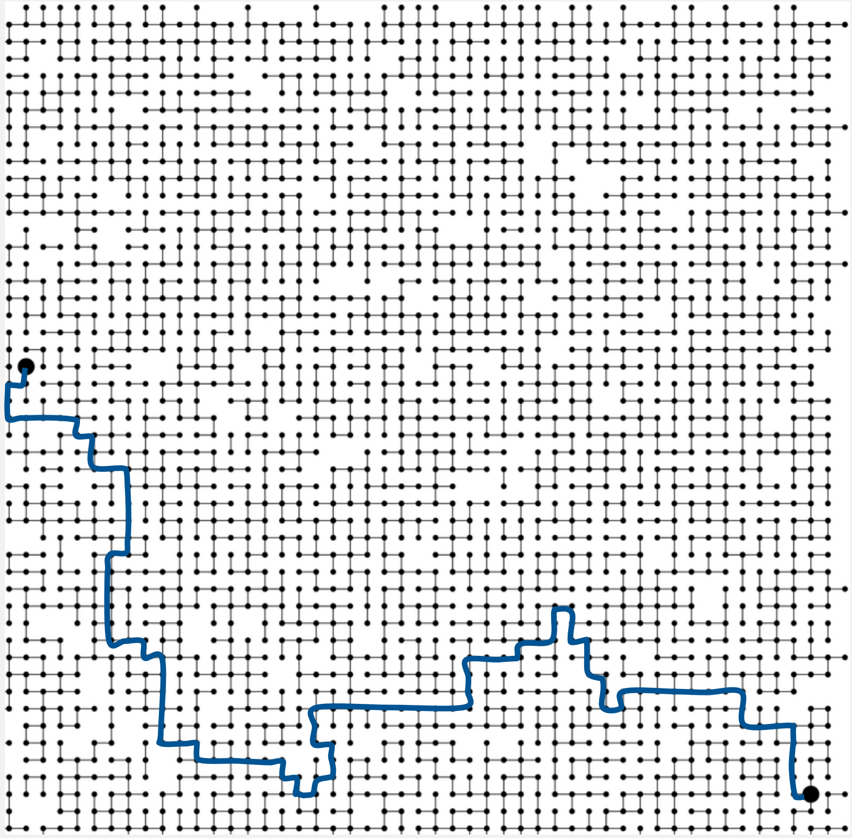
recolor red blob to blue



Graph-processing challenge 2

Problem. Find a path from s to t ?

Assumption. Any path will do.



How difficult?

- Any COS 126 student could do it.
- Need to be a typical diligent COS 226 student.
- Hire an expert.
- Intractable.
- No one knows.

Paths in graphs: union find vs. DFS

Goal. Is there a path from `s` to `t`?

method	preprocessing time	query time	space
union-find	V + E log* V	log* V †	V
DFS	E + V	1	E + V

† amortized

If so, find one.

- Union-find: not much help (run DFS on connected subgraph).
- DFS: easy (see next slides).

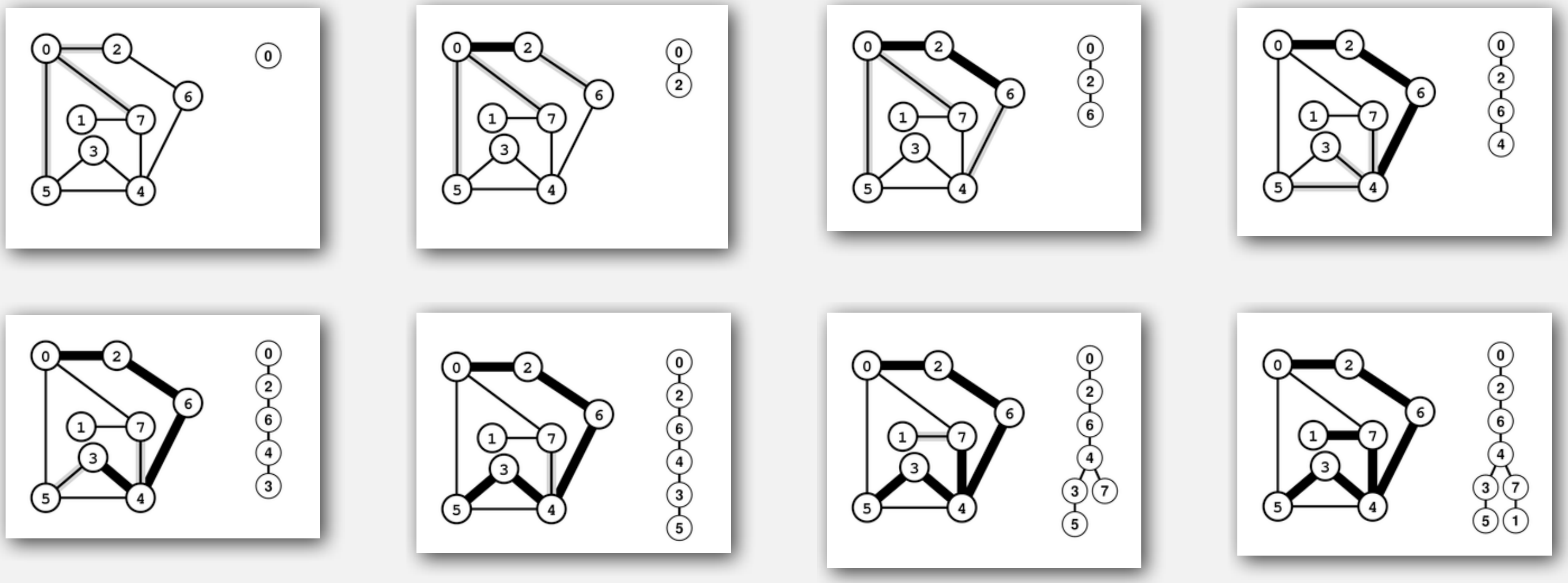
Union-find advantage. Can intermix queries and edge insertions.

DFS advantage. Can recover path itself in time proportional to its length.

Keeping track of paths with DFS

DFS tree. Upon visiting a vertex `v` for the first time, remember that you came from `pred[v]` (parent-link representation).

Retrace path. To find path between `s` and `v`, follow `pred[]` back from `v`.



Depth-first-search (pathfinding)

```
public class DFSearcher
{
   private int[] pred;
   ...
   public DFSearcher(Graph G, int s)
   {
      ...
      pred = new int[G.V()];
      for (int v = 0; v < G.V(); v++)
         pred[v] = -1;
      ...
   }
   private void dfs(Graph G, int v)
   {
      marked[v] = true;
      for (int w : G.adj(v))
         if (!marked[w])
         {
            pred[w] = v;
            dfs(G, w);
         }
   }

   public Iterable<Integer> path(int v)
   {  /* see next slide */  }
}
```

add instance variable for parent-link
representation of DFS tree

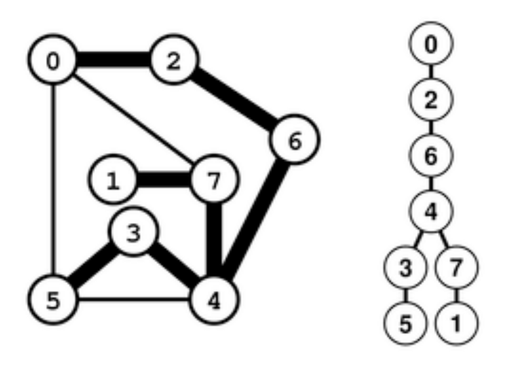
initialize it in the constructor

set parent link

add method for client
to iterate through path

Depth-first-search (pathfinding iterator)

```
public Iterable<Integer> path(int v)
{
   Stack<Integer> path = new Stack<Integer>();
   while (v != -1 && marked[v])
   {
      path.push(v);
      v = pred[v];
   }
   return path;
}
```



DFS summary

Enables direct solution of simple graph problems.

- ✓ Find path from s to t.
- Connected components (stay tuned).
- Euler tour (see book).
- Cycle detection (simple exercise).
- Bipartiteness checking (see book).

Basis for solving more difficult graph problems.

- Biconnected components (see book).
- Planarity testing (beyond scope).

- graph API
- maze exploration
- depth-first search
- **breadth-first search**
- connected components
- challenge

Breadth-first search

Depth-first search. Put unvisited vertices on a stack.

Breadth-first search. Put unvisited vertices on a queue.

Shortest path. Find path from s to t that uses fewest number of edges.

```
BFS (from source vertex s)
------------------------------------------------------------
Put s onto a FIFO queue.
Repeat until the queue is empty:
    ▪ remove the least recently added vertex v
    ▪ add each of v's unvisited neighbors to the queue,
      and mark them as visited.
------------------------------------------------------------
```

Property. BFS examines vertices in increasing distance from s.

Breadth-first search scaffolding

```
public class BFSearcher
{
   private int[] dist;

   public BFSearcher(Graph G, int s)
   {
      dist = new int[G.V()];
      for (int v = 0; v < G.V(); v++)
         dist[v] = G.V() + 1;
      dist[s] = 0;

      bfs(G, s);
   }

   public int distance(int v)
   {  return dist[v];   }

   private void bfs(Graph G, int s)
   {  /* See next slide */   }

}
```

distances from s

initialize distances

compute distances

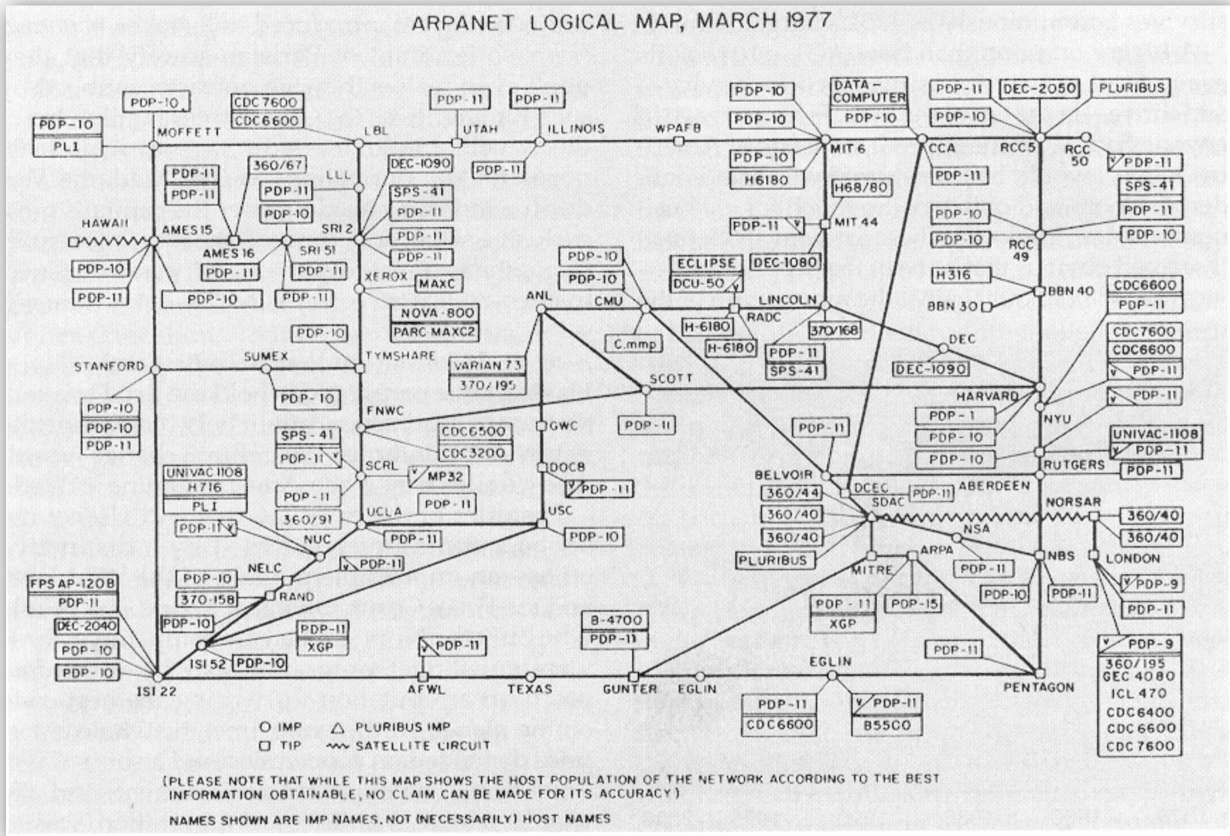
answer client query

Breadth-first search (compute shortest-path distances)

```
private void bfs(Graph G, int s)
{
   Queue<Integer> q = new Queue<Integer>();
   q.enqueue(s);
   while (!q.isEmpty())
   {
      int v = q.dequeue();
      for (int w : G.adj(v))
      {
         if (dist[w] > G.V())
         {
            q.enqueue(w);
            dist[w] = dist[v] + 1;
         }
      }
   }
}
```

BFS application

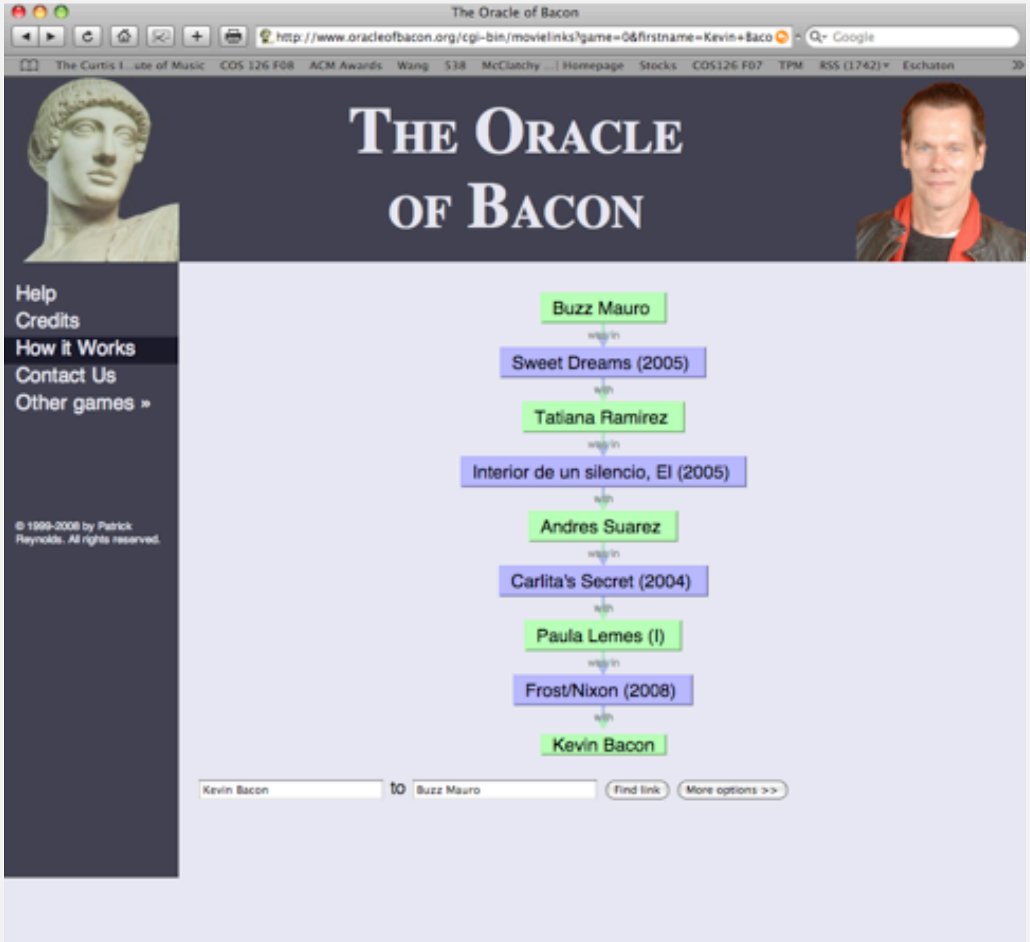
- Facebook.
- Kevin Bacon numbers.
- Fewest number of hops in a communication network.



ARPANET

BFS application

- Facebook.
- Kevin Bacon numbers.
- Fewest number of hops in a communication network.



Buzz Mauro

Sweet Dreams (2005)

Tatiana Ramirez

Interior de un silencio, El (2005)

Andres Suarez

Carlita's Secret (2004)

Paula Lemes (I)

Frost/Nixon (2008)

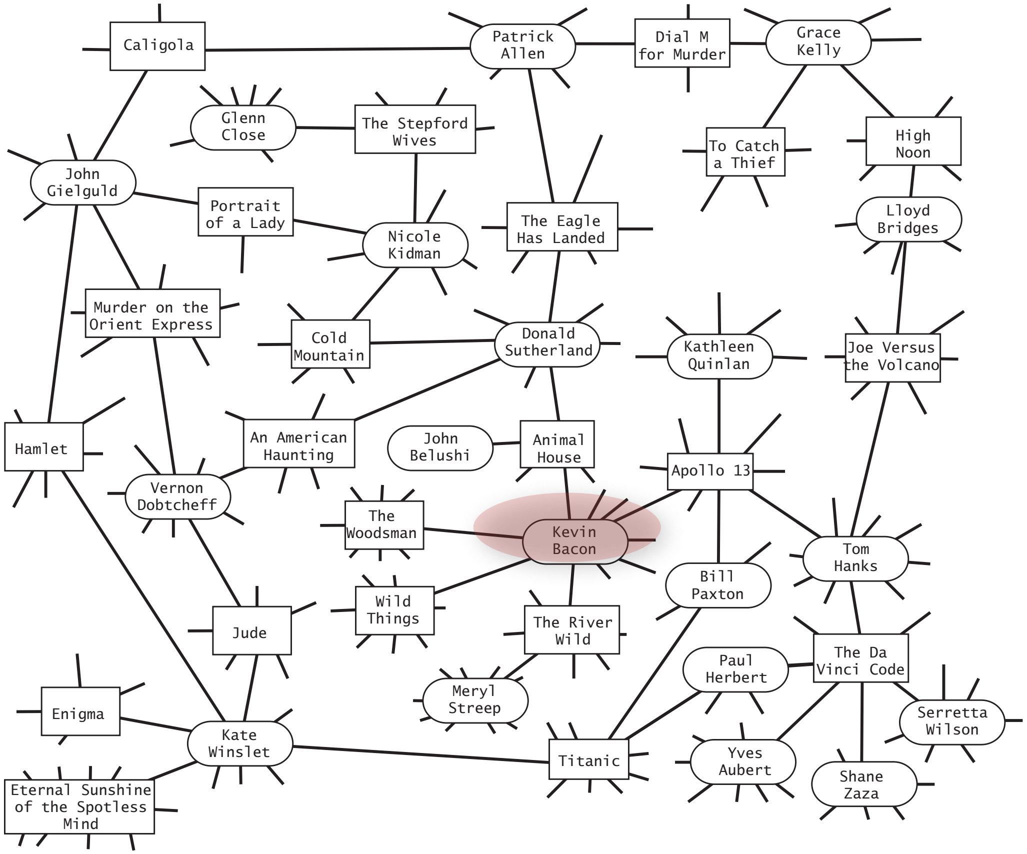
Kevin Bacon

Kevin Bacon to Buzz Mauro

© 1999-2008 by Patrick Reynolds. All rights reserved.

Kevin Bacon graph

- Include vertex for each performer and movie.
- Connect movie to all performers that appear in movie.
- Compute shortest path from s = Kevin Bacon.



A tiny portion of the movie-performer relationship graph

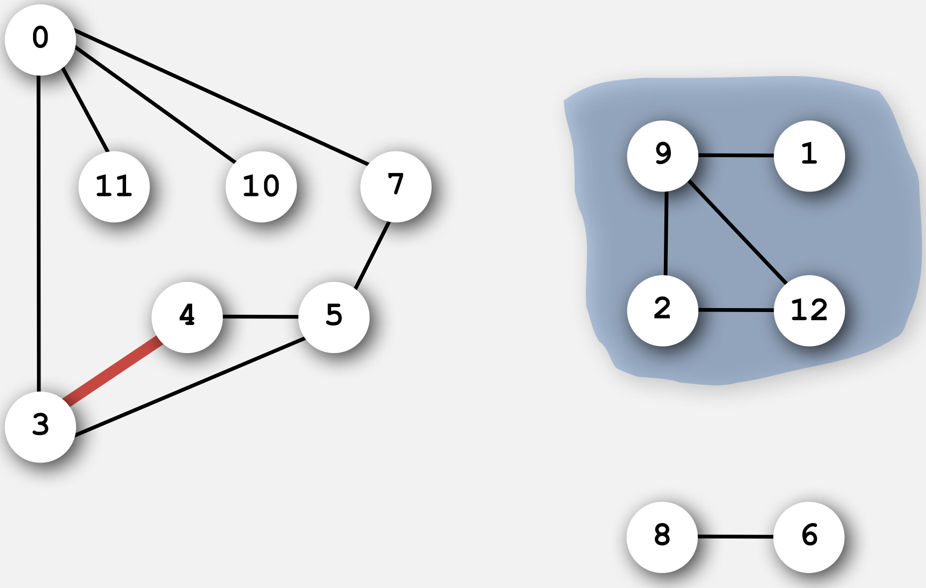
- graph API
- maze exploration
- depth-first search
- breadth-first search
- **connected components**
- challenge

Connectivity queries

Def. Vertices v and w are connected if there is a path between them.

Def. A connected component is a maximal set of connected vertices.

Goal. Preprocess graph to answer queries: is `v` connected to `w`?
in constant time



Vertex	Component
0	0
1	1
2	1
3	0
4	0
5	0
6	2
7	0
8	2
9	1
10	0
11	0
12	1

Union-Find? Not quite.

Connected components

Goal. Partition vertices into connected components.

Connected components

Initialize all vertices v as unmarked.

For each unmarked vertex v, run DFS to identify all vertices discovered as part of the same component.

---

preprocess time	query time	extra space
E + V	1	V

Depth-first search for connected components

```
public class CCFinder
{
   private final static int UNMARKED = -1;
   private int components;
   private int[] cc;

   public CCFinder(Graph G)
   {  /* see next slide */   }

   public int connected(int v, int w)
   {  return cc[v] == cc[w];   }

}
```

component labels

constant-time connectivity query

Depth-first search for connected components

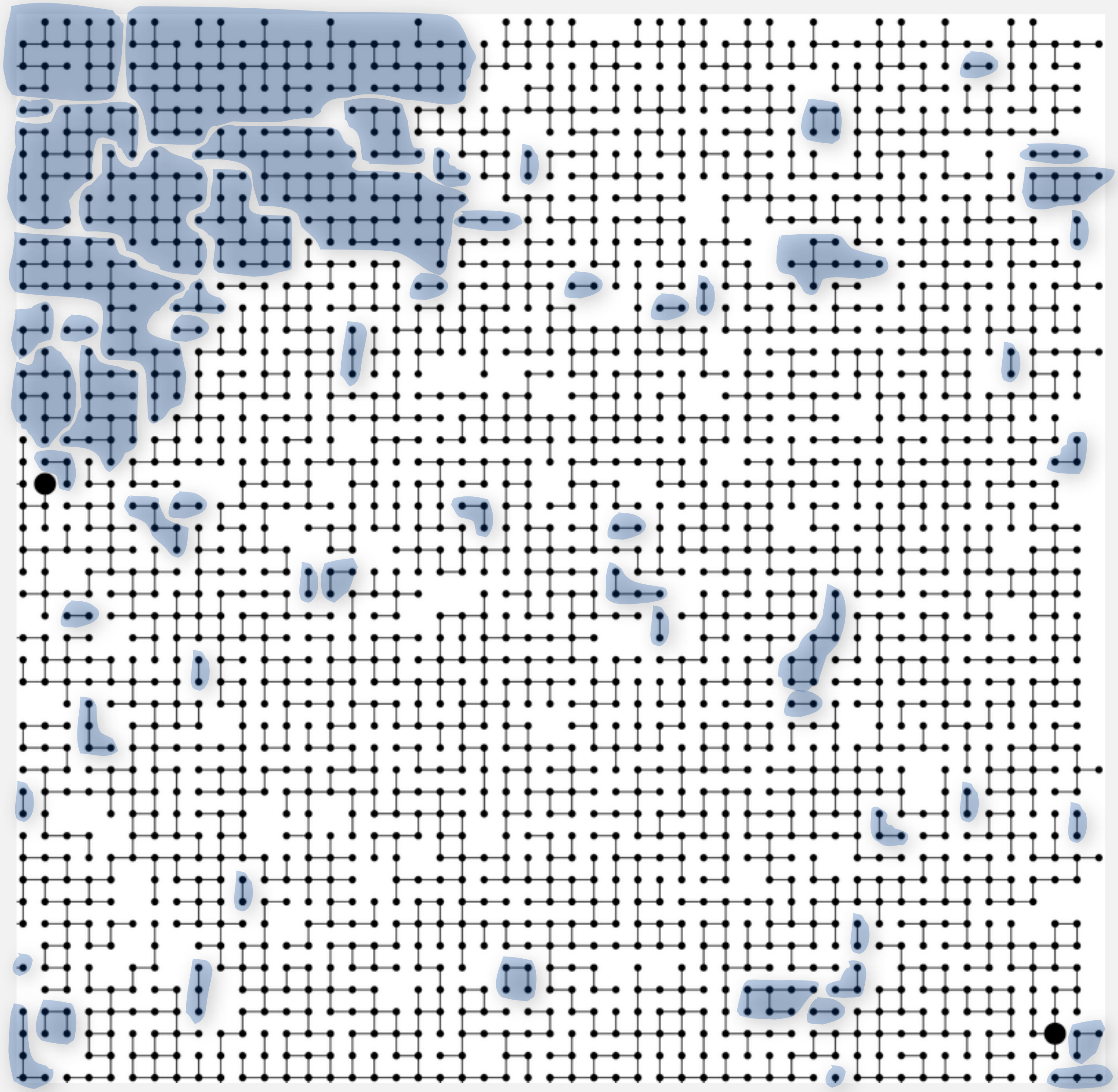
```
public CCFinder(Graph G)
{
   cc = new int[G.V()];
   for (int v = 0; v < G.V(); v++)
      cc[v] = UNMARKED;
   for (int v = 0; v < G.V(); v++)
      if (cc[v] == UNMARKED)
      {
         dfs(G, v);
         components++;
      }
}
```

DFS for each component

```
private void dfs(Graph G, int v)
{
   cc[v] = components;
   for (int w : G.adj(v))
      if (cc[w] == UNMARKED) dfs(G, w);
}
```

standard DFS

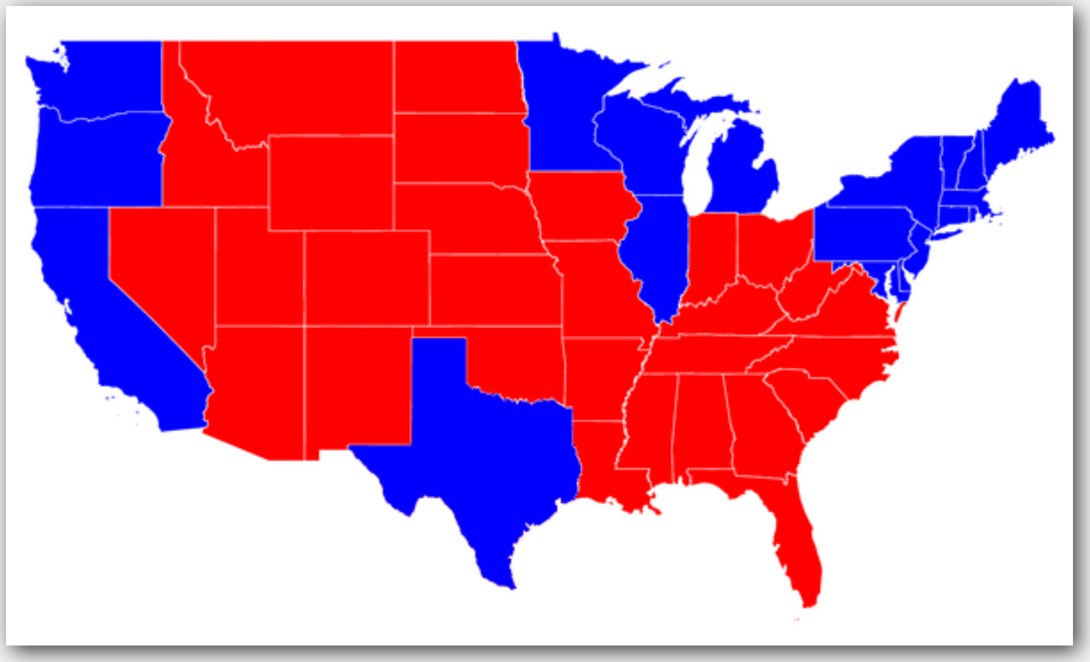
Connected components



63 components

Connected components application: image processing

Goal. Read in a 2D color image and find regions of connected pixels that have the same color.



assuming contiguous states

Input. Scanned image.

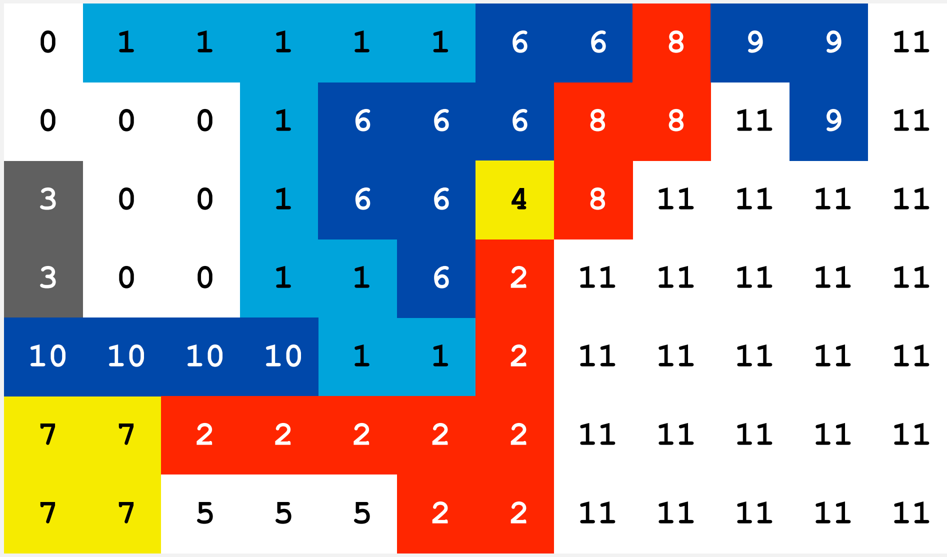
Output. Number of red and blue states.

Connected components application: image processing

Goal. Read in a 2D color image and find regions of connected pixels that have the same color.

Efficient algorithm.

- Create grid graph.
- Connect each pixel to neighboring pixel if same color.
- Find connected components in resulting graph.



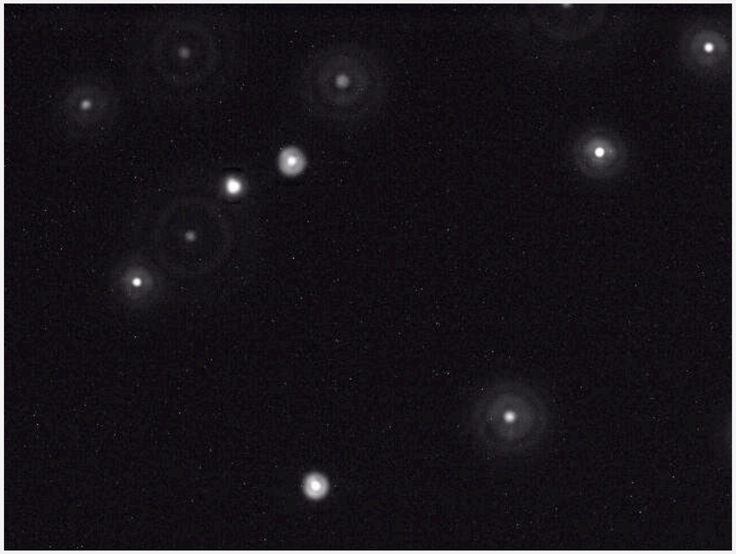
0	1	1	1	1	1	6	6	8	9	9	11
0	0	0	1	6	6	6	8	8	11	9	11
3	0	0	1	6	6	4	8	11	11	11	11
3	0	0	1	1	6	2	11	11	11	11	11
10	10	10	10	1	1	2	11	11	11	11	11
7	7	2	2	2	2	2	11	11	11	11	11
7	7	5	5	5	2	2	11	11	11	11	11

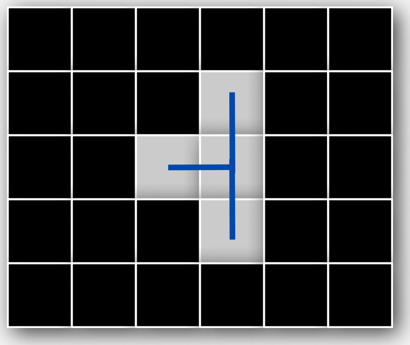
Connected components application: particle detection

Particle detection. Given grayscale image of particles, identify "blobs."

- Vertex: pixel.
- Edge: between two adjacent pixels with grayscale value ≥ 70.
- Blob: connected component of 20-30 pixels.

black = 0
white = 255





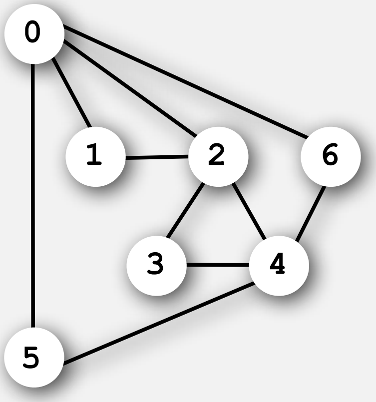
Particle tracking. Track moving particles over time.

- graph API
- maze exploration
- depth-first search
- breadth-first search
- connected components
- **challenges**

Graph-processing challenge 3

Problem. Find a cycle that uses every edge.

Assumption. Need to use each edge exactly once.



0-1-2-3-4-2-0-6-4-5-0

0-1
0-2
0-5
0-6
1-2
2-3
2-4
3-4
4-5
4-6

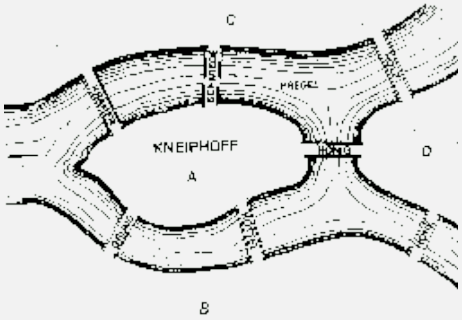
How difficult?

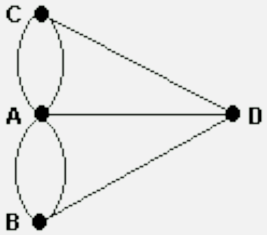
- Any COS 126 student could do it.
- Need to be a typical diligent COS 226 student.
- Hire an expert.
- Intractable.
- No one knows.
- Impossible.

Bridges of Königsberg

The Seven Bridges of Königsberg. [Leonhard Euler 1736]

> *" … in Königsberg in Prussia, there is an island A, called the Kneiphof; the river which surrounds it is divided into two branches … and these branches are crossed by seven bridges. Concerning these bridges, it was asked whether anyone could arrange a route in such a way that he could cross each bridge once and only once."*





Euler tour. Is there a cyclic path that uses each edge exactly once?

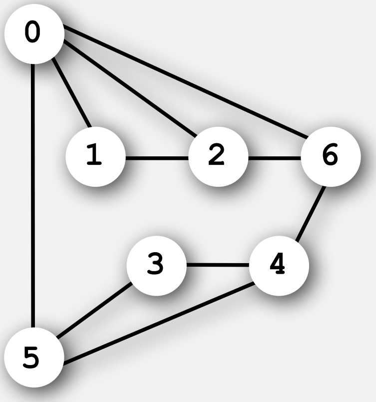
Answer. Yes iff connected and all vertices have even degree.

To find path. DFS-based algorithm (see Algs in Java).

Graph-processing challenge 4

Problem. Find a cycle that visits every vertex.

Assumption. Need to visit each vertex exactly once.



0-5-3-4-6-2-1-0

0-1
0-2
0-5
0-6
1-2
2-6
3-4
3-5
4-5
4-6

How difficult?

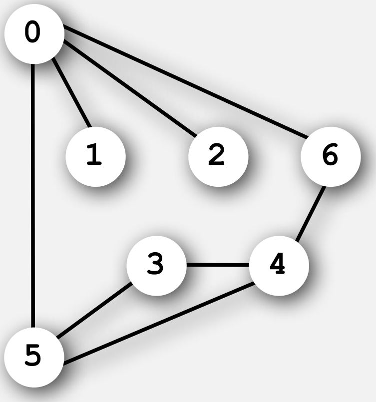
- Any COS 126 student could do it.
- Need to be a typical diligent COS 226 student.
- Hire an expert.
- Intractable.
- No one knows.
- Impossible.

Graph-processing challenge 5

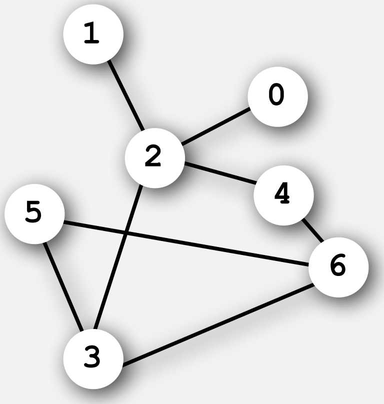
Problem. Are two graphs identical except for vertex names?

How difficult?

- Any COS 126 student could do it.
- Need to be a typical diligent COS 226 student.
- Hire an expert.
- Intractable.
- No one knows.
- Impossible.



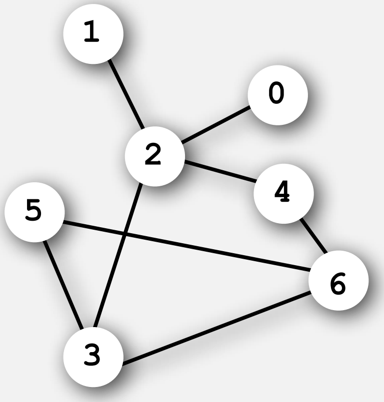
0-1
0-6
0-2
4-3
5-3
5-4
0-5
6-4



2-1
2-4
2-0
6-5
5-3
3-6
2-3
6-4

Graph-processing challenge 6

Problem. Lay out a graph in the plane without crossing edges?



```
0-2
1-2
2-3
2-4
3-5
3-6
4-6
5-6
```

How difficult?

- Any COS 126 student could do it.
- Need to be a typical diligent COS 226 student.
- Hire an expert.
- Intractable.
- No one knows.
- Impossible.

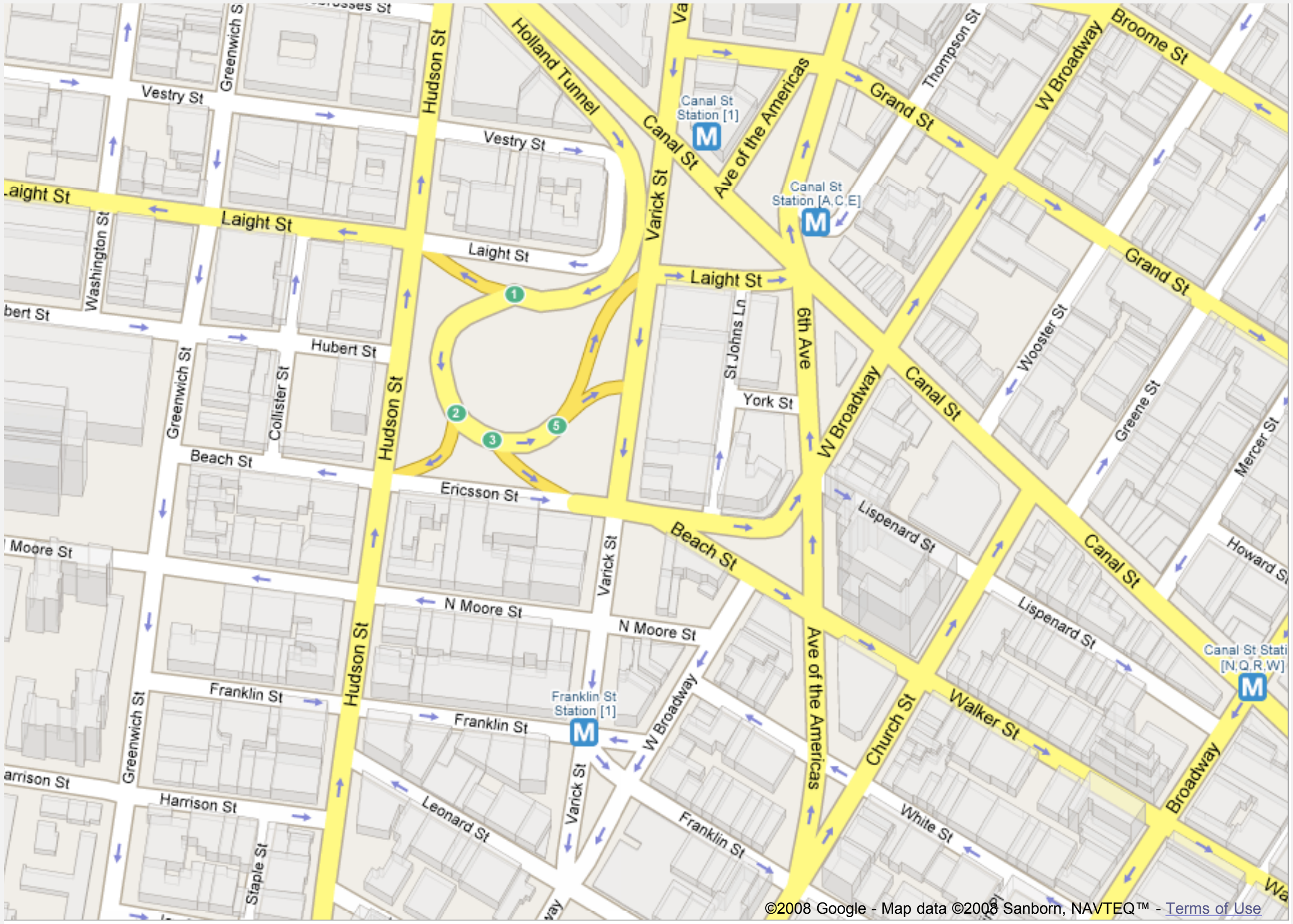
4.2 Directed Graphs

- digraph API
- digraph search
- transitive closure
- topological sort
- strong components

References: Algorithms in Java, 3rd edition, Chapter 19

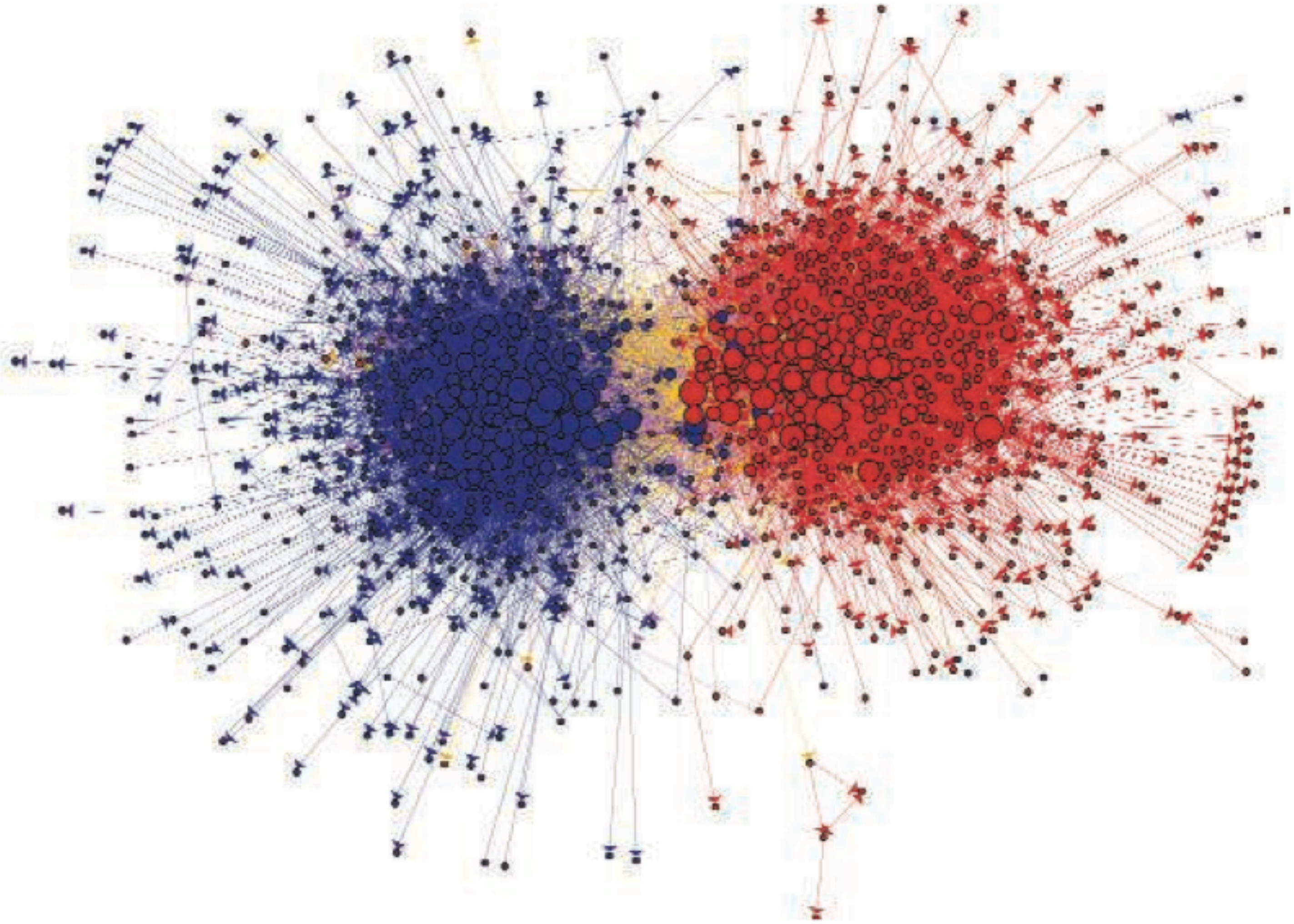
Directed graphs

Digraph. Set of vertices connected pairwise by oriented edges.



©2008 Google - Map data ©2008 Sanborn, NAVTEQ™ - Terms of Use

Link structure of political blogs

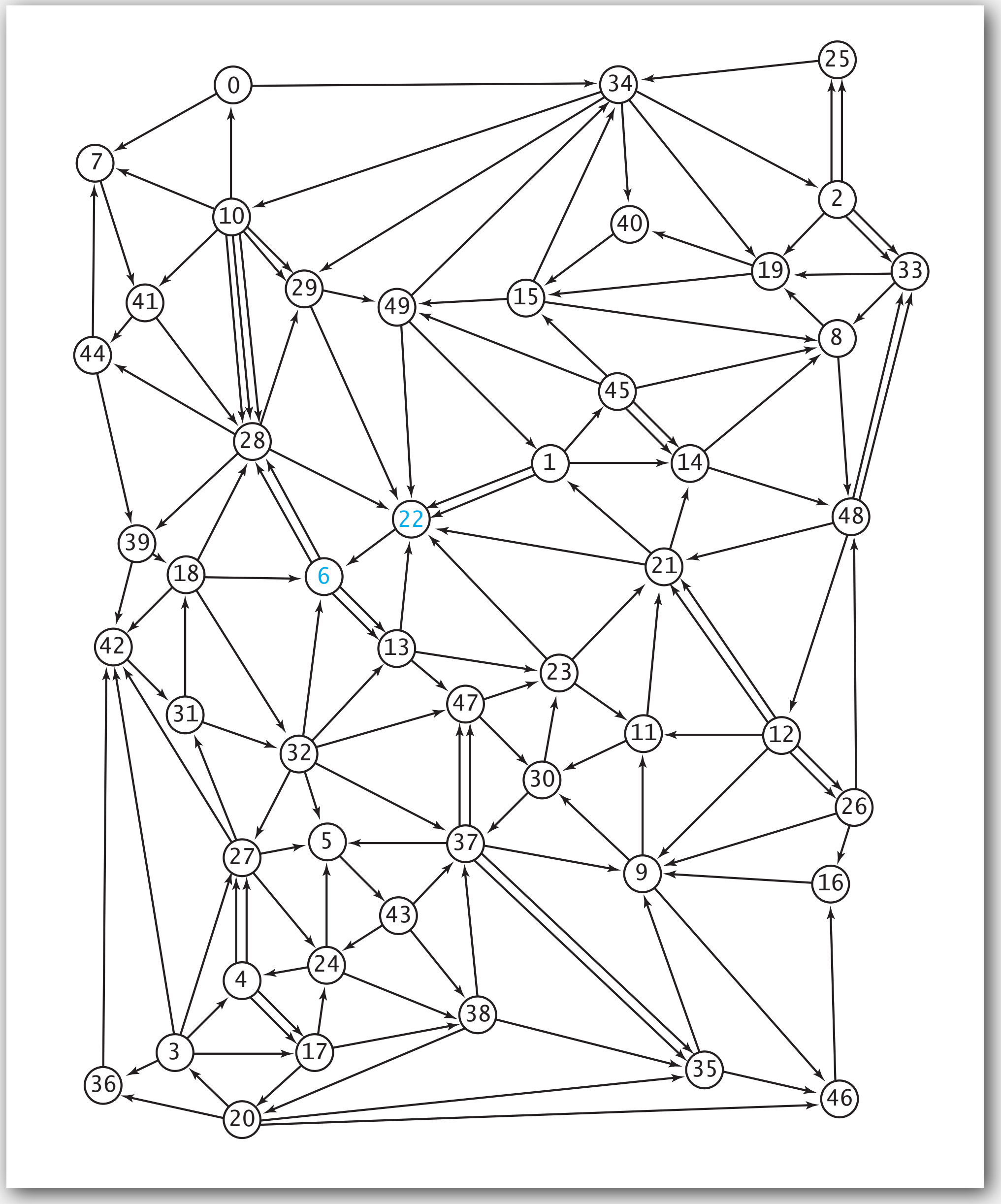


Data from the blogosphere. Shown is a link structure within a community of political blogs (from 2004), where red nodes indicate conservative blogs, and blue liberal. Orange links go from liberal to conservative, and purple ones from conservative to liberal. The size of each blog reflects the number of other blogs that link to it. [Reproduced from (*8*) with permission from the Association for Computing Machinery]

Web graph

Vertex = web page.

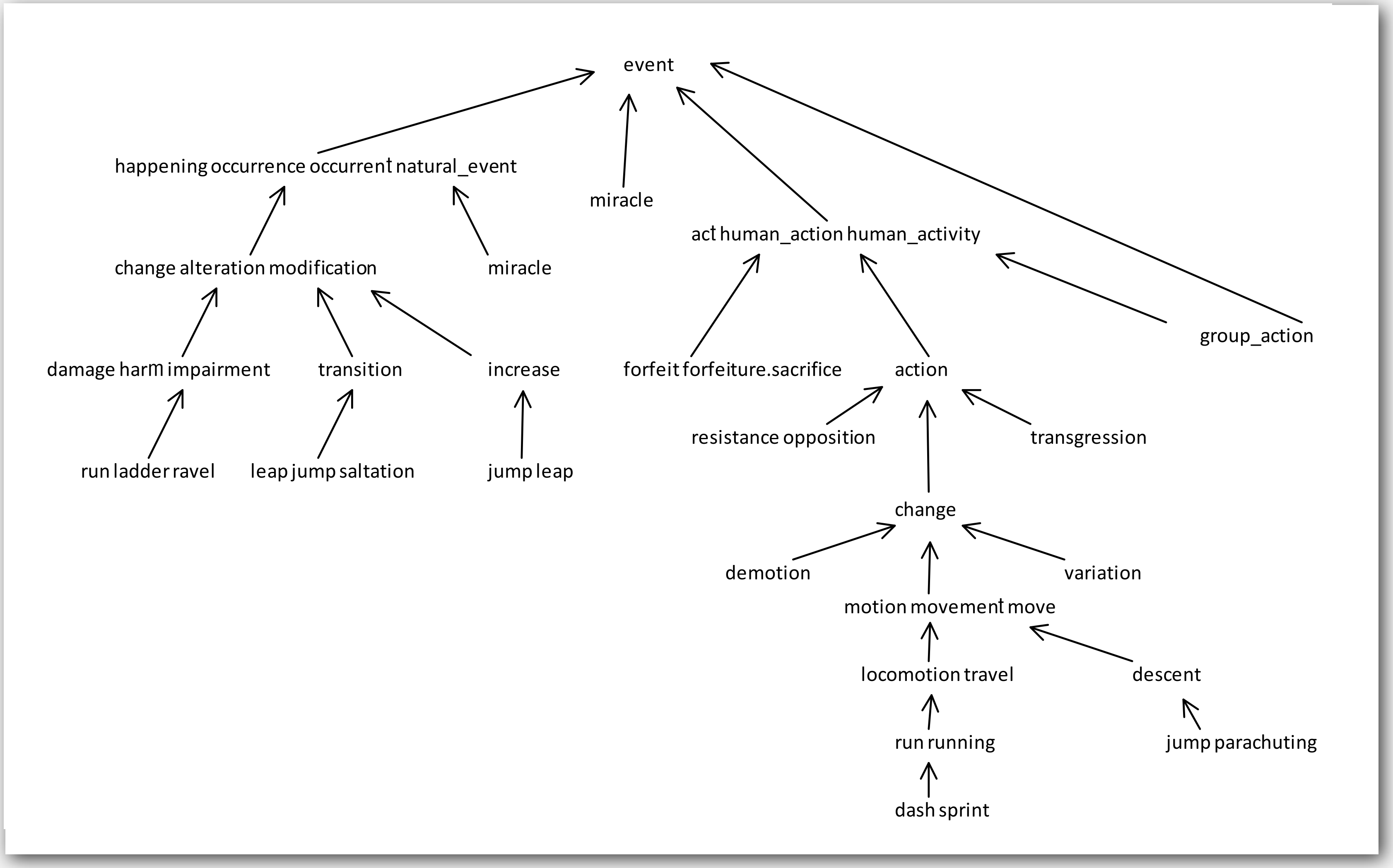
Edge = hyperlink.



WordNet graph

Vertex = synset.

Edge = hypernym relationship.



Digraph applications

graph	vertex	edge
transportation	street intersection	one-way street
web	web page	hyperlink
food web	species	predator-prey relationship
WordNet	synset	hypernym
scheduling	task	precedence constraint
financial	stock, currency	transaction
cell phone	person	placed call
infectious disease	person	infection
game	board position	legal move
citation	journal article	citation
object graph	object	pointer
inheritance hierarchy	class	inherits from
control flow	code block	jump

Some digraph problems

Path. Is there a directed path from s to t?

Shortest path. What is the shortest directed path from s and t?

Strong connectivity. Are all vertices mutually reachable?

Transitive closure. For which vertices v and w is there a path from v to w?

Topological sort. Can you draw the digraph so that all edges point from left to right?

Precedence scheduling. Given a set of tasks with precedence constraints, how can we best complete them all?

PageRank. What is the importance of a web page?

- **digraph API**
- digraph search
- topological sort
- transitive closure
- strong components

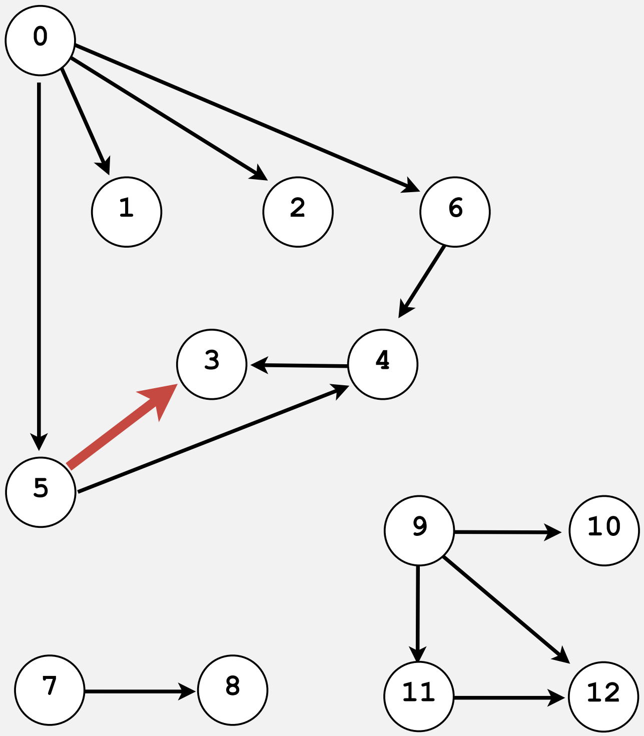
Digraph API

`public class Digraph`		*digraph data type*
	`Digraph(int V)`	*create an empty digraph with V vertices*
	`Digraph(In in)`	*create a digraph from input stream*
`void`	`addEdge(int v, int w)`	*add an edge from v to w*
`Iterable<Integer>`	`adj(int v)`	*return an iterator over the neighbors of v*
`int`	`V()`	*return number of vertices*

```
In in = new In();
Digraph G = new Digraph(in);

for (int v = 0; v < G.V(); v++)
   for (int w : G.adj(v))
      /*  process edge v→w  */
```

Set of edges representation

Store a list of the edges (linked list or array).

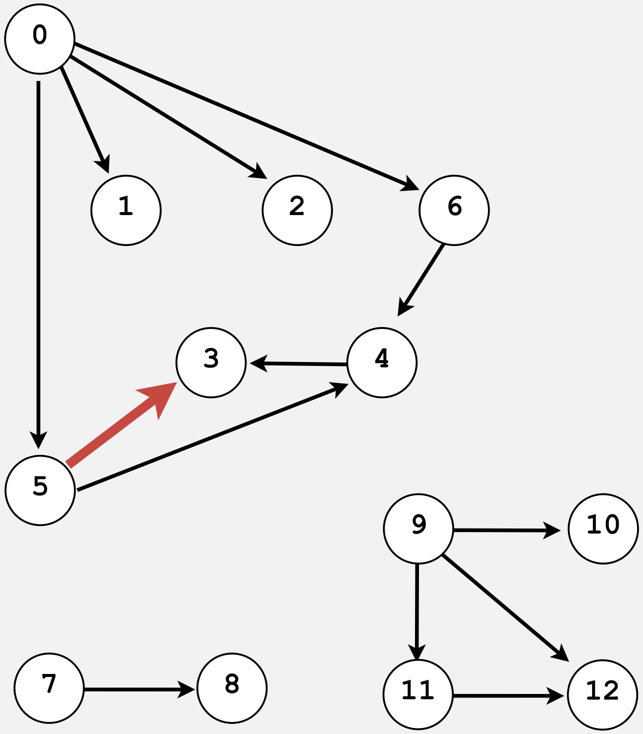


0	1
0	2
0	5
0	6
4	3
5	3
5	4
6	4
7	8
9	10
9	11
9	12
11	12

Adjacency-matrix representation

Maintain a two-dimensional v-by-v boolean array;

for each edge **v** → **w** in the digraph: `adj[v][w] = true`.



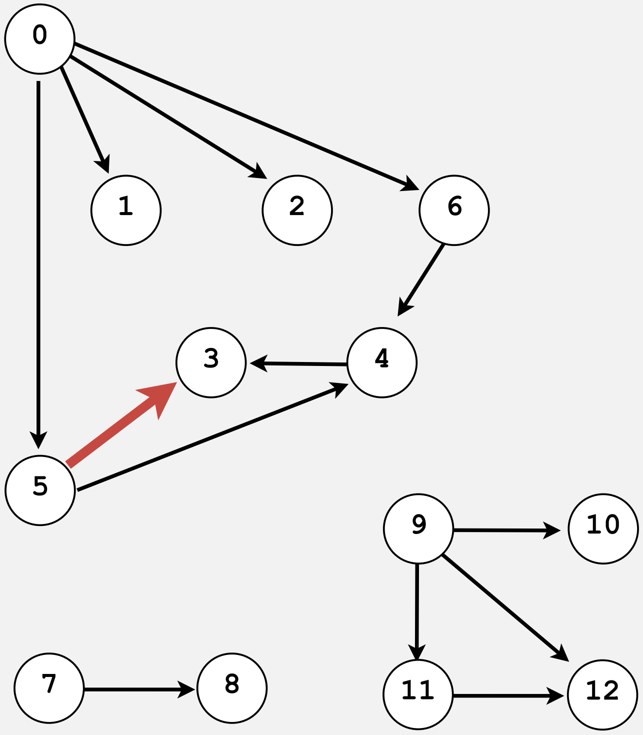
to

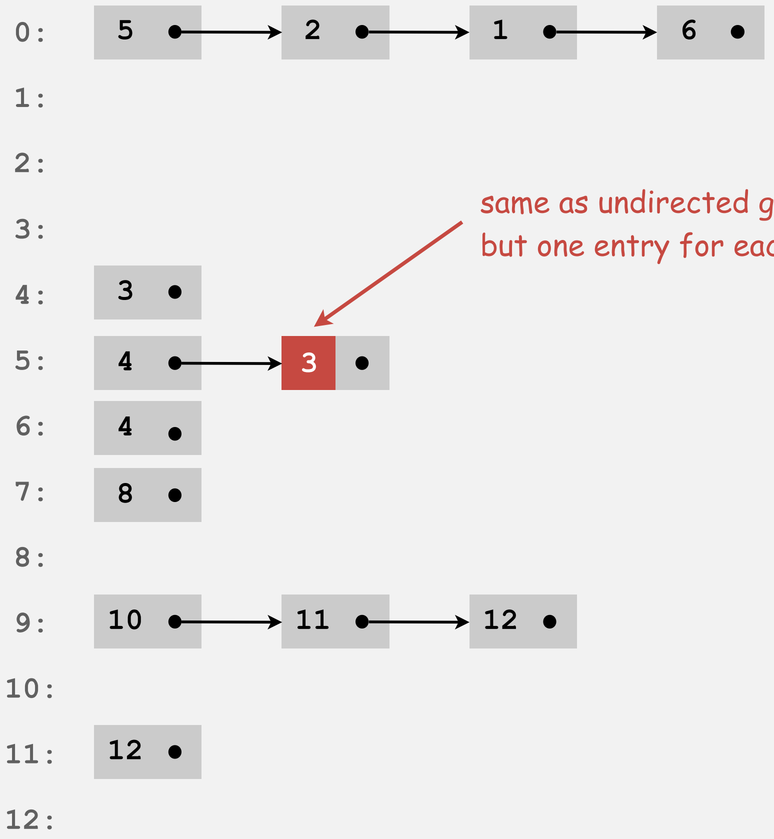
from

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
0	0	1	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0
1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
3	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
4	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
5	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
6	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
7	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0
8	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
9	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1
10	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
11	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
12	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Adjacency-list representation

Maintain vertex-indexed array of lists.

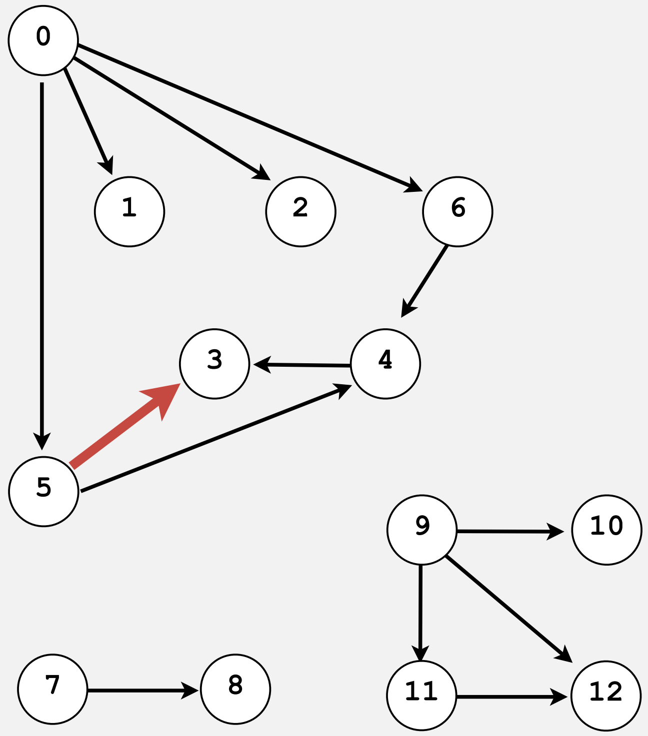




same as undirected graph, but one entry for each edge

Adjacency-set representation

Maintain vertex-indexed array of sets.



`0: { 1 2 5 6 }`
`1: { }`
`2: { }`
`3: { }`
`4: { 3 }`
`5: { 3, 4 }`
`6: { 4 }`
`7: { 8 }`
`8: { }`
`9: { 10, 11, 12 }`
`10: { }`
`11: { 12 }`
`12: { }`

same as undirected graph,
but one entry for each edge

Adjacency-set representation: Java implementation

Same as `Graph`, but only insert one copy of each edge.

```
public class Digraph
{
   private final int V;
   private final SET<Integer>[] adj;

   public Digraph(int V)
   {
      this.V = V;
      adj = (SET<Integer>[]) new SET[V];
      for (int v = 0; v < V; v++)
         adj[v] = new SET<Integer>();
   }

   public void addEdge(int v, int w)
   {  adj[v].add(w);   }

   public Iterable<Integer> adj(int v)
   {  return adj[v];   }
}
```

adjacency sets

create empty graph with V vertices

add edge from v to w (no parallel edges)

iterator for v's neighbors

Digraph representations

In practice. Use adjacency-set (or adjacency-list) representation.

- Algorithms all based on iterating over edges incident to v.
- Real-world digraphs tend to be sparse.

huge number of vertices,
small average vertex degree

representation	space	insert edge from v to w	edge from v to w?	iterate over edges leaving v?
list of edges	E	E	E	E
adjacency matrix	V^2	1	1	V
adjacency list	E + V	outdegree(v)	outdegree(v)	outdegree(v)
adjacency set	E + V	log (outdegree(v))	log (outdegree(v))	outdegree(v)

Typical digraph application: Google's PageRank algorithm

Goal. Determine which pages on web are important.

Solution. Ignore keywords and content, focus on hyperlink structure.

Random surfer model.

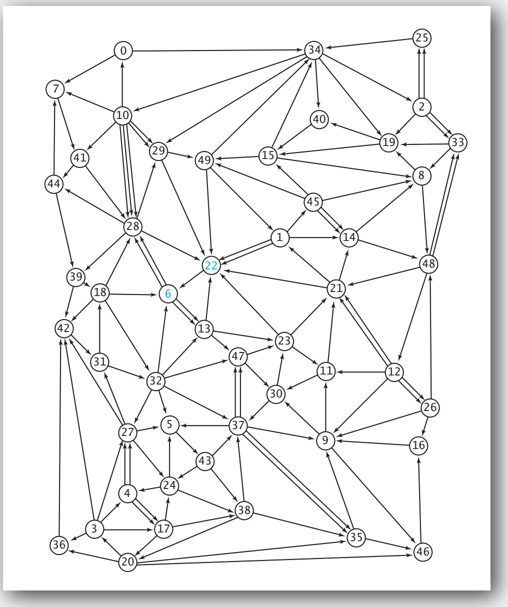
- Start at random page.
- With probability 0.85, randomly select a hyperlink to visit next; with probability 0.15, randomly select any page.
- PageRank = proportion of time random surfer spends on each page.

Solution 1. Simulate random surfer for a long time.

Solution 2. Compute ranks directly until they converge.

Solution 3. Compute eigenvalues of adjacency matrix!

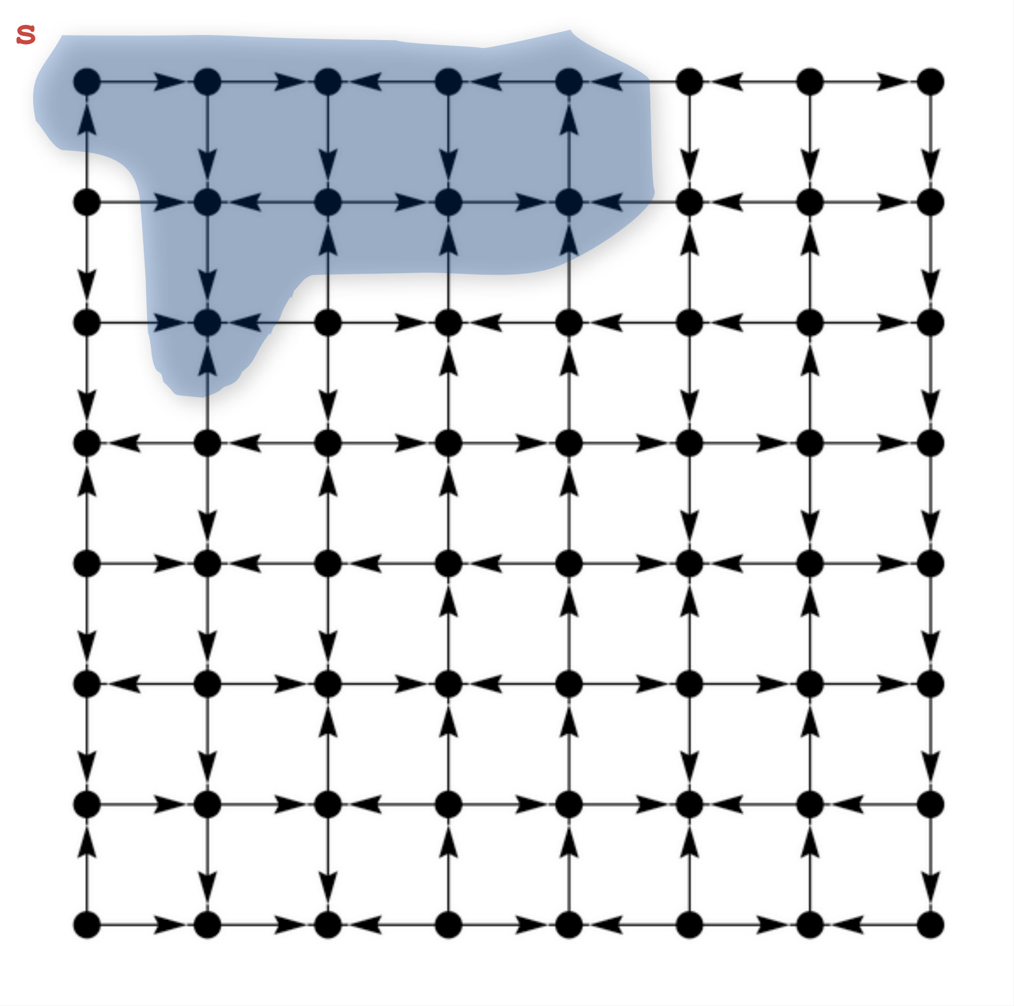
None feasible without sparse digraph representation.



- digraph API
- **digraph search**
- transitive closure
- topological sort
- strong components

Reachability

Problem. Find all vertices reachable from `s` along a directed path.



Depth-first search in digraphs

Same method as for undirected graphs.

Every undirected graph is a digraph.

- Happens to have edges in both directions.
- DFS is a digraph algorithm.

```
DFS (to visit a vertex v)
----------------------------------------
Mark v as visited.
Recursively visit all unmarked vertices w adjacent to v.
----------------------------------------
```

Depth-first search (single-source reachability)

Identical to undirected version (substitute `Digraph` for `Graph`).

```
public class DFSearcher
{
   private boolean[] marked;

   public DFSearcher(Digraph G, int s)
   {
      marked = new boolean[G.V()];
      dfs(G, s);
   }

   private void dfs(Digraph G, int v)
   {
      marked[v] = true;
      for (int w : G.adj(v))
         if (!marked[w]) dfs(G, w);
   }

   public boolean isReachable(int v)
   {  return marked[v];  }
}
```

true if connected to s

constructor marks vertices connected to s

recursive DFS does the work

client can ask whether any vertex is reachable from s

Reachability application: program control-flow analysis

Every program is a digraph.

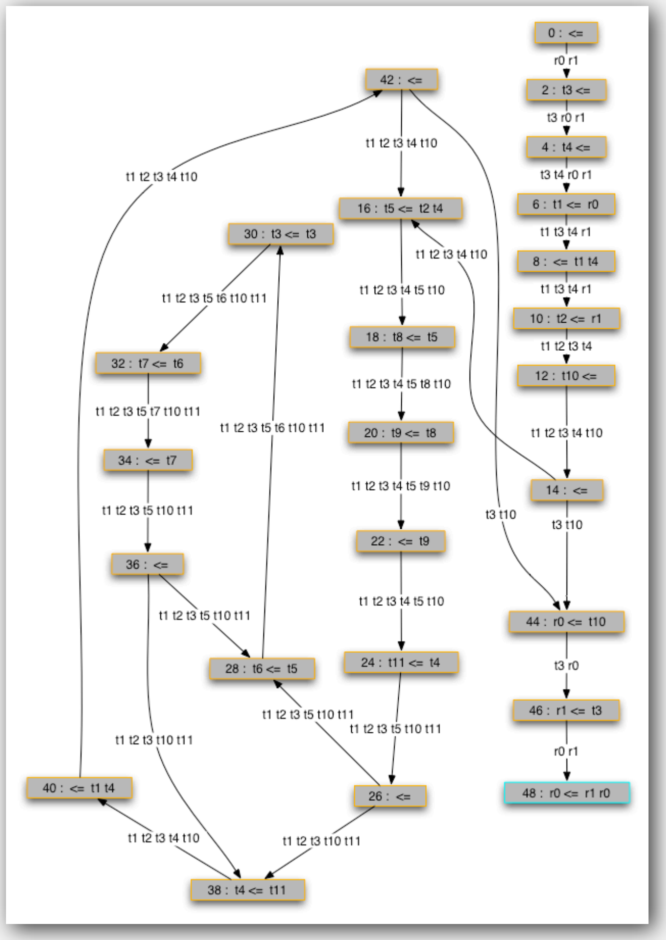
- Vertex = basic block of instructions (straight-line program).
- Edge = jump.

Dead code elimination.

Find (and remove) unreachable code.

Infinite loop detection.

Determine whether exit is unreachable.



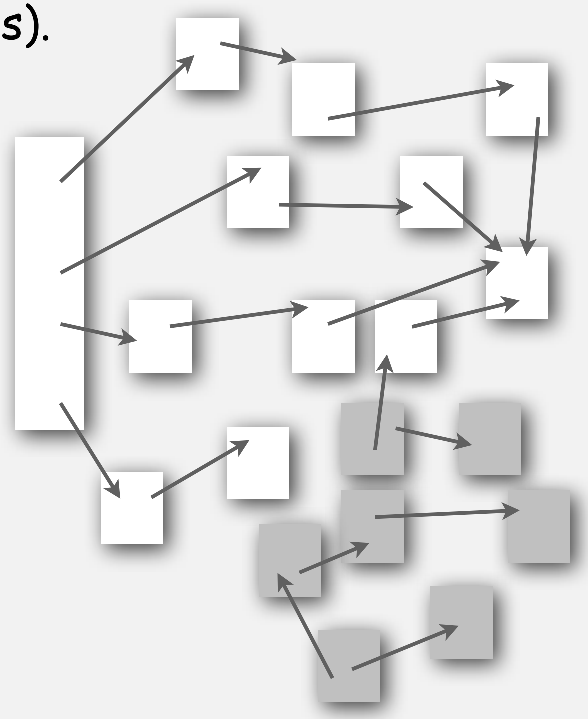
Reachability application: mark-sweep garbage collector

Every data structure is a digraph.

- Vertex = object.
- Edge = reference.

Roots. Objects known to be directly accessible by program (e.g., stack).

Reachable objects. Objects indirectly accessible by program (starting at a root and following a chain of pointers).

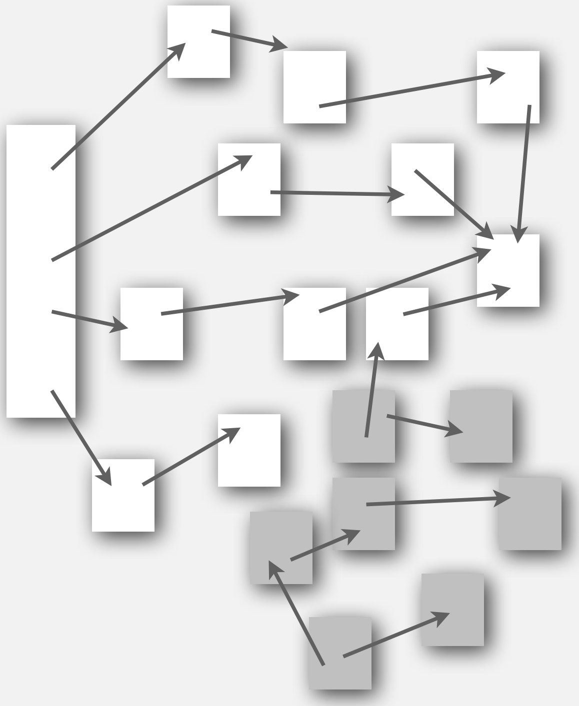


Reachability application: mark-sweep garbage collector

Mark-sweep algorithm. [McCarthy, 1960]

- Mark: mark all reachable objects.
- Sweep: if object is unmarked, it is garbage, so add to free list.

Memory cost. Uses 1 extra mark bit per object, plus DFS stack.



Depth-first search (DFS)

DFS enables direct solution of simple digraph problems.

- ✓ Reachability.
- Cycle detection.
- Topological sort.
- Transitive closure.

Basis for solving difficult digraph problems.

- Directed Euler path.
- Strong connected components.

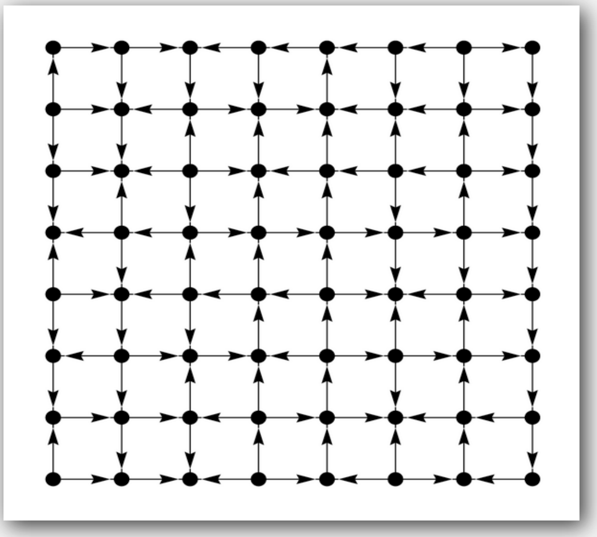
Breadth-first search in digraphs

Every undirected graph is a digraph.

- Happens to have edges in both directions.
- BFS is a digraph algorithm.

BFS (from source vertex s)

```
Put s onto a FIFO queue.
Repeat until the queue is empty:
    ▪ remove the least recently added vertex v
    ▪ add each of v's unvisited neighbors to the
      queue and mark them as visited.
```

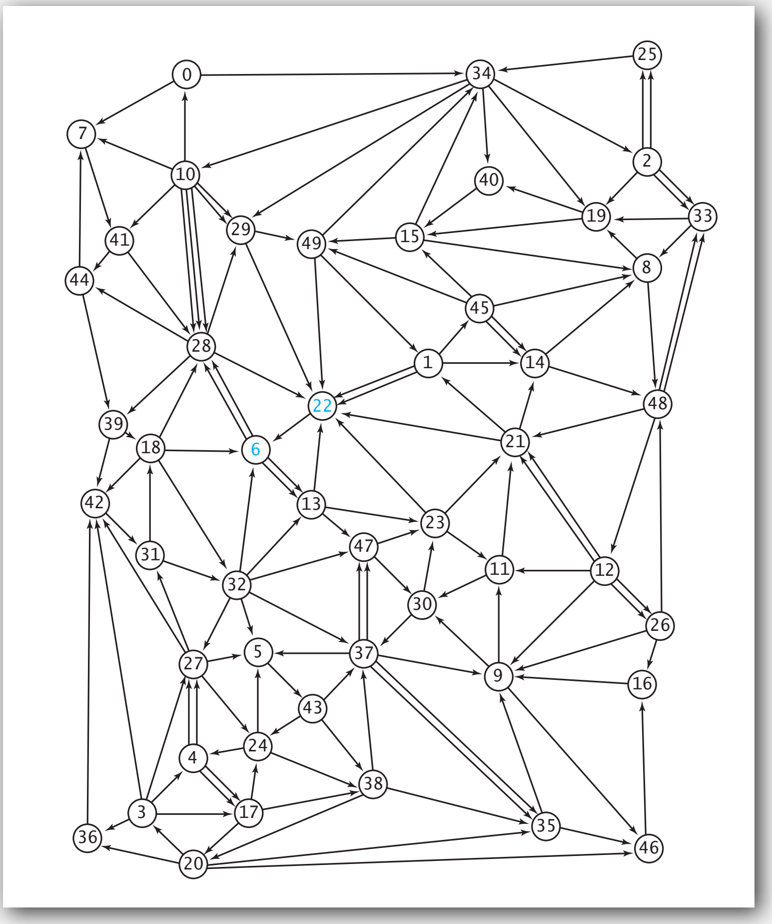


Property. Visits vertices in increasing distance from s.

Digraph BFS application: web crawler

Goal. Crawl web, starting from some root web page, say `www.princeton.edu`.

Solution. BFS with implicit graph.



BFS.

- Start at some root web page.
- Maintain a `Queue` of websites to explore.
- Maintain a `SET` of discovered websites.
- Dequeue the next website and enqueue websites to which it links (provided you haven't done so before).

Q. Why not use DFS?

Web crawler: BFS-based Java implementation

```
Queue<String> q = new Queue<String>();
SET<String> visited = new SET<String>();

String s = "http://www.princeton.edu";
q.enqueue(s);
visited.add(s);

while (!q.isEmpty())
{
   String v = q.dequeue();
   StdOut.println(v);
   In in = new In(v);
   String input = in.readAll();

   String regexp = "http://(\\w+\\.)*(\\w+)";
   Pattern pattern = Pattern.compile(regexp);
   Matcher matcher = pattern.matcher(input);
   while (matcher.find())
   {
      String w = matcher.group();
      if (!visited.contains(w))
      {
         visited.add(w);
         q.enqueue(w);
      }
   }
}
```

queue of websites to crawl

set of visited websites

start crawling from website s

read in raw html for next website in queue

use regular expression to find all URLs
in website of form `http://xxx.yyy.zzz`

if unvisited, mark as visited
and put on queue

- digraph API
- digraph search
- **transitive closure**
- topological sort
- strong components

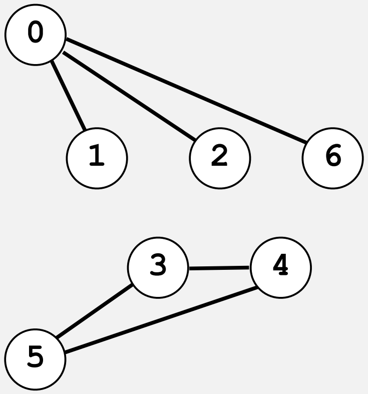
Graph-processing challenge (revisited)

Problem. Is there an undirected path between `v` and `w` ?

Goals. Linear preprocessing time, constant query time.

How difficult?

- Any COS 126 student could do it.
- ✓ Need to be a typical diligent COS 226 student.
- Hire an expert.
- Intractable.
- No one knows.
- Impossible.



```
0-1
0-6
0-2
3-4
3-5
4-5
```

Digraph-processing challenge 1

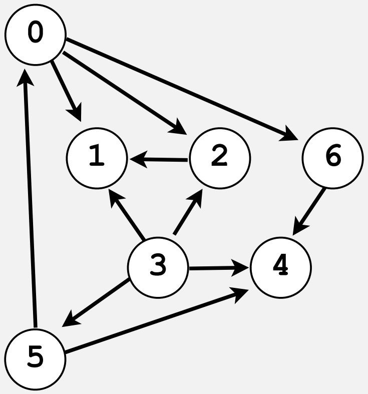
Problem. Is there a directed path from `v` to `w` ?

Goals. Linear preprocessing time, constant query time.

How difficult?

- Any COS 126 student could do it.
- Need to be a typical diligent COS 226 student.
- Hire an expert.
- Intractable.
- No one knows.
- ✓ Impossible.

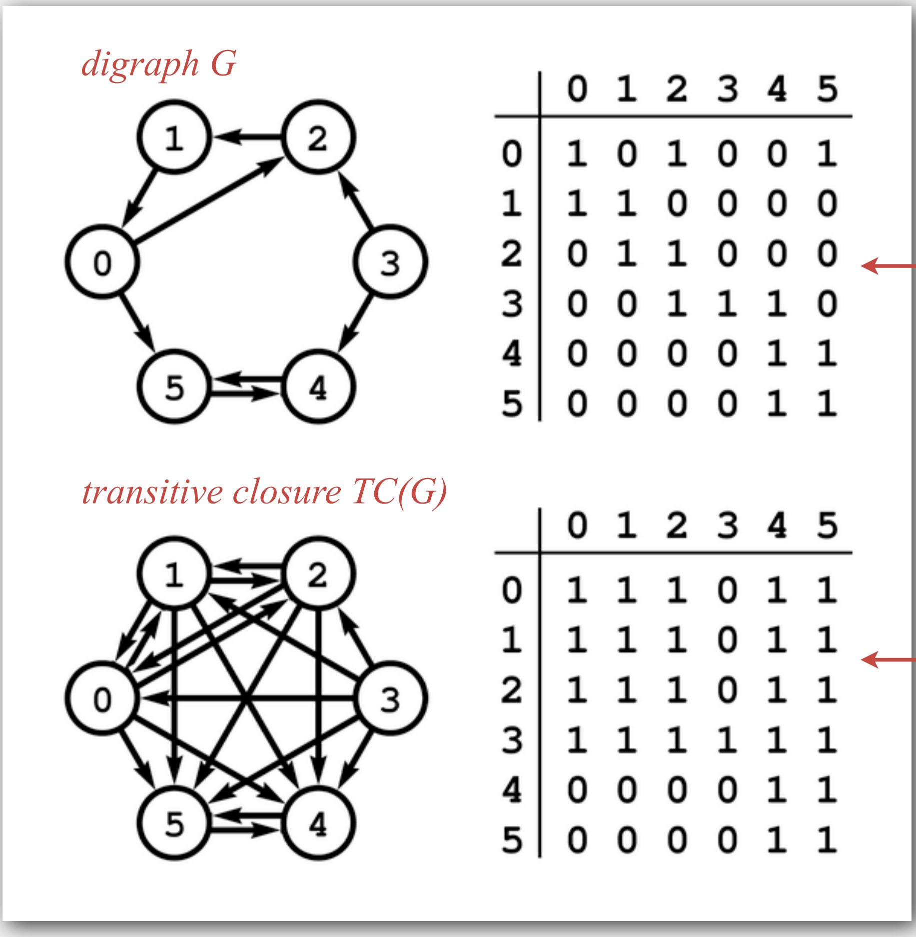
can't do better than V^2
(reduction from boolean matrix multiplication)



0→1
0→6
0→2
3→4
3→2
5→4
5→0
3→5
2→1
6→4
3→1

Transitive closure

Def. The transitive closure of a digraph G is another digraph with a directed edge from `v` to `w` if there is a directed path from `v` to `w` in G.



	0	1	2	3	4	5
0	1	0	1	0	0	1
1	1	1	0	0	0	0
2	0	1	1	0	0	0
3	0	0	1	1	1	0
4	0	0	0	0	1	1
5	0	0	0	0	1	1

digraph G is usually sparse

	0	1	2	3	4	5
0	1	1	1	0	1	1
1	1	1	1	0	1	1
2	1	1	1	0	1	1
3	1	1	1	1	1	1
4	0	0	0	0	1	1
5	0	0	0	0	1	1

TC(G) is usually dense

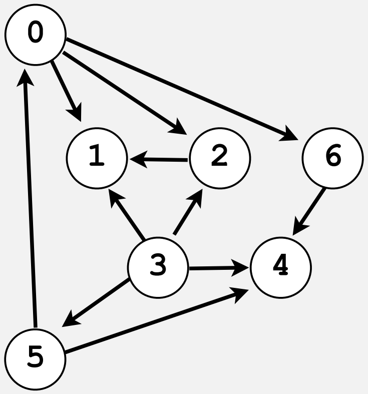
Digraph-processing challenge 1 (revised)

Problem. Is there a directed path from `v` to `w` ?

Goals. ~ V^2 preprocessing time, constant query time.

How difficult?

- Any COS 126 student could do it.
- Need to be a typical diligent COS 226 student.
- Hire an expert.
- Intractable.
- ✓ No one knows. ← open research problem
- Impossible.



0→1
0→6
0→2
3→4
3→2
5→4
5→0
3→5
2→1
6→4
3→1

Digraph-processing challenge 1 (revised again)

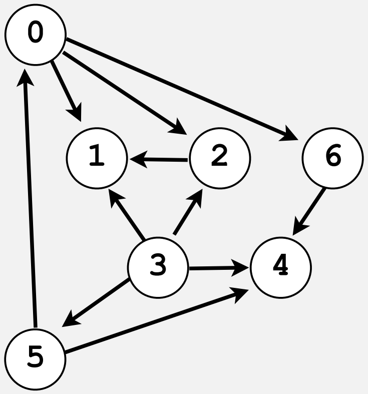
Problem. Is there a directed path from `v` to `w` ?

Goals. ~ V E preprocessing time, ~ V^2 space, constant query time.

How difficult?

- Any COS 126 student could do it.
- ✓ Need to be a typical diligent COS 226 student.
- Hire an expert.
- Intractable.
- No one knows.
- Impossible.

Use DFS once for each vertex
to compute rows of transitive closure



0→1
0→6
0→2
3→4
3→2
5→4
5→0
3→5
2→1
6→4
3→1

Transitive closure: Java implementation

Use an array of `DFSearcher` objects, one for each row of transitive closure.

```
public class TransitiveClosure
{
   private DFSearcher[] tc;

   public TransitiveClosure(Digraph G)
   {
      tc = new DFSearcher[G.V()];
      for (int v = 0; v < G.V(); v++)
         tc[v] = new DFSearcher(G, v);
   }

   public boolean reachable(int v, int w)
   {  return tc[v].isReachable(w);   }
}
```

array of `DFSearcher` objects

initialize array

is there a directed path
from v to w ?

- digraph API
- digraph search
- transitive closure
- **topological sort**
- strong components

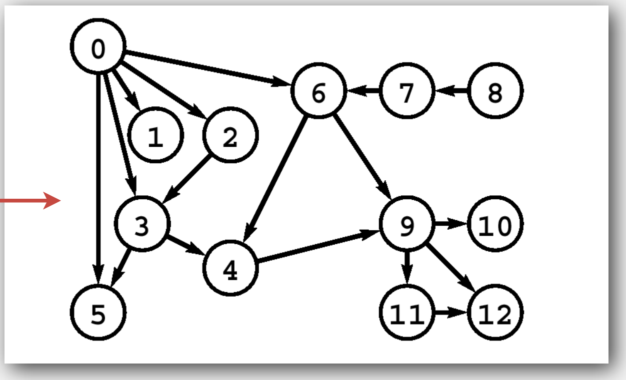
Digraph application: scheduling

Scheduling. Given a set of tasks to be completed with precedence constraints, in what order should we schedule the tasks?

Graph model.

- Create a vertex `v` for each task.
- Create an edge `v`→`w` if task `v` must precede task `w`.

precedence constraint graph



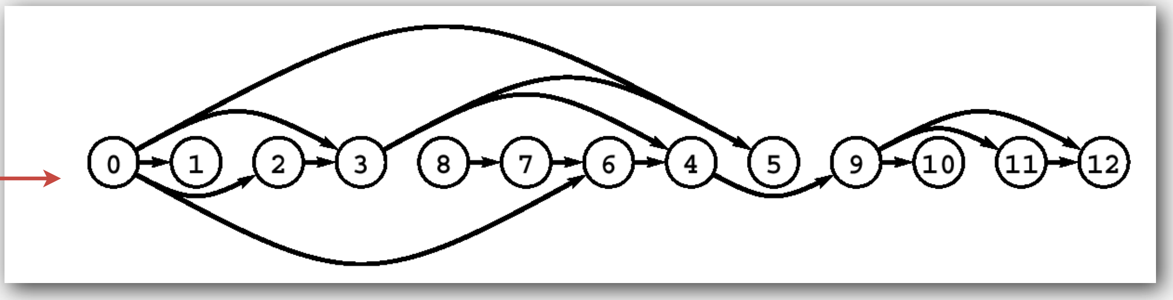
tasks

0. read programming assignment
1. download files
2. write code
3. attend precept

…

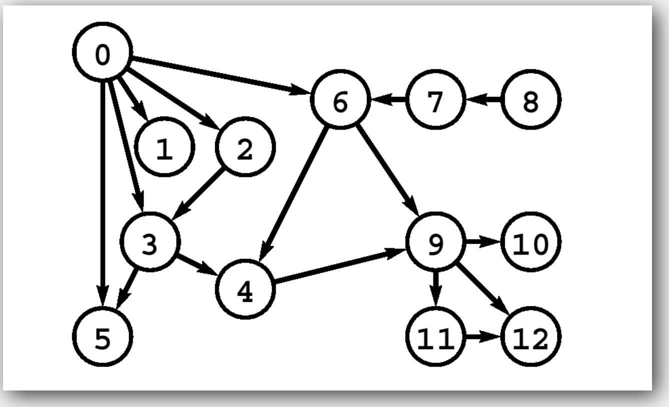
12. sleep

feasible schedule

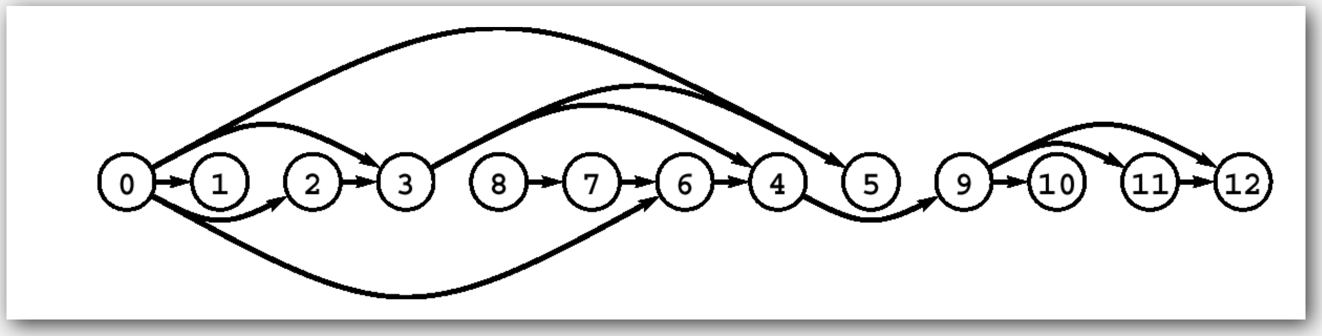


Topological sort

DAG. Directed acyclic graph.



Topological sort. Redraw DAG so all edges point left to right.



Fact. Digraph is a DAG iff no directed cycle.

Digraph-processing challenge 2a

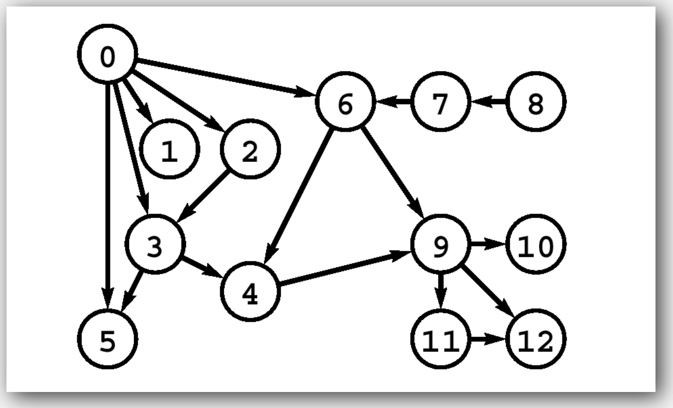
Problem. Check that a digraph is a DAG; if so, find a topological order.

Goal. Linear time.

How difficult?

- Any COS 126 student could do it.
- ✓ Need to be a typical diligent COS 226 student.
- Hire an expert.
- Intractable.
- No one knows.
- Impossible.

use DFS



0 1 2 3 8 7 6 4 5 9 10 11 12

0→1
0→6
0→2
0→5
2→3
4→9
6→4
6→9
7→6
8→7
9→10
9→11
9→12
11→12

Topological sort in a DAG: Java implementation

```
public class TopologicalSorter
{
   private boolean[] marked;
   private Stack<Integer> sorted;

   public TopologicalSorter(Digraph G)
   {
      marked = new boolean[G.V()];
      sorted = new Stack<Integer>();
      for (int v = 0; v < G.V(); v++)
         if (!marked[v]) tsort(G, v);
   }

   private void tsort(Digraph G, int v)
   {
      marked[v] = true;
      for (int w : G.adj(v))
         if (!marked[w]) tsort(G, w);
      sorted.push(v);
   }

   public Iterable<Integer> order()
   {  return sorted;  }
}
```

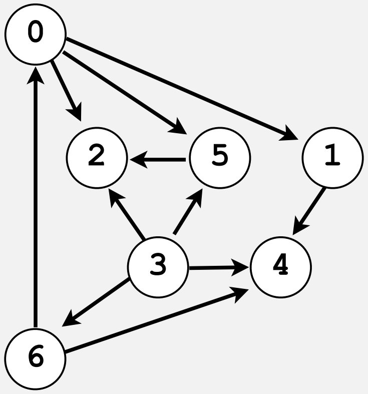
vertices in topological order

reverse DFS postorder

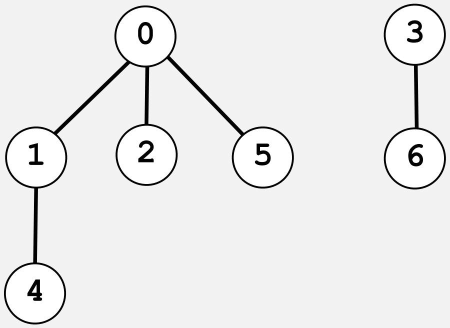
Topological sort in a DAG: trace

Visit means *call* **`tsort()`** and *leave* means *return from* **`tsort()`**.

```
                       marked[]          sorted

visit 0:            1 0 0 0 0 0 0     -
  visit 1:          1 1 0 0 0 0 0     -
    visit 4:        1 1 0 0 1 0 0     -
    leave 4:        1 1 0 0 1 0 0     4
  leave 1:          1 1 0 0 1 0 0     4 1
  visit 2:          1 1 1 0 1 0 0     4 1
  leave 2:          1 1 1 0 1 0 0     4 1 2
  visit 5:          1 1 1 0 1 1 0     4 1 2
    check 2:        1 1 1 0 1 1 0     4 1 2
  leave 5:          1 1 1 0 1 1 0     4 1 2 5
leave 0:            1 1 1 0 1 1 0     4 1 2 5 0
check 1:            1 1 1 0 1 1 0     4 1 2 5 0
check 2:            1 1 1 0 1 1 0     4 1 2 5 0
visit 3:            1 1 1 1 1 1 0     4 1 2 5 0
  check 2:          1 1 1 1 1 1 0     4 1 2 5 0
  check 4:          1 1 1 1 1 1 0     4 1 2 5 0
  check 5:          1 1 1 1 1 1 0     4 1 2 5 0
  visit 6:          1 1 1 1 1 1 1     4 1 2 5 0
  leave 6:          1 1 1 1 1 1 1     4 1 2 5 0 6
leave 3:            1 1 1 1 1 1 1     4 1 2 5 0 6 3
check 4:            1 1 1 1 1 1 0     4 1 2 5 0 6 3
check 5:            1 1 1 1 1 1 0     4 1 2 5 0 6 3
check 6:            1 1 1 1 1 1 0     4 1 2 5 0 6 3
```



0→1
0→6
0→2
3→4
3→2
5→4
5→0
3→5
2→1
6→4
3→1



3 6 0 5 2 1 4

Topological sort in a DAG: correctness proof

Proposition. If digraph is a DAG, algorithm yields a topological order.

Pf.

- Algorithm terminates in O(E + V) time since it's just a version of DFS.

- Consider any edge `v→w`. When `tsort(G, v)` is called,
  - Case 1: `tsort(G, w)` has already been called and returned.
    Thus, `w` will appear after `v` in topological order.

  - Case 2: `tsort(G, w)` has not yet been called, so it will get called directly or indirectly by `tsort(G, v)` and it will finish before `tsort(G, v)`.
    Thus, `w` will appear after `v` in topological order.

  - Case 3: `tsort(G, w)` has already been called, but not returned. Then the function call stack contains a directed path from `w` to `v`. Combining this path with the edge `v→w` yields a directed cycle, contradicting DAG.

Digraph-processing challenge 2b

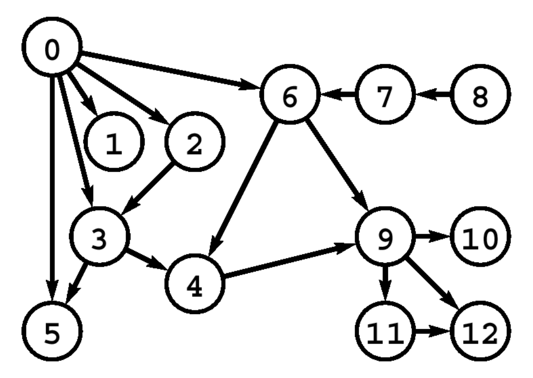
Problem. Given a digraph, is there a directed cycle?

Goal. Linear time.

run DFS-based topological sort algorithm;
if it yields a topological sort, no directed cycle
(can modify code to find cycle)

How difficult?

- Any COS 126 student could do it.
- ✓ Need to be a typical diligent COS 226 student.
- Hire an expert.
- Intractable.
- No one knows.
- Impossible.



0 1 2 3 8 7 6 4 5 9 10 11 12

0→1
0→6
0→2
0→5
2→3
4→9
6→4
6→9
7→6
8→7
9→10
9→11
9→12
11→12

Topological sort and cycle detection applications

- Causalities.
- Email loops.
- Compilation units.
- Class inheritance.
- Course prerequisites.
- Deadlocking detection.
- Precedence scheduling.
- Temporal dependencies.
- Pipeline of computing jobs.
- Check for symbolic link loop.
- Evaluate formula in spreadsheet.

Cycle detection application: cyclic inheritance

The Java compiler does cycle detection.

```
public class A extends B
{
   ...
}
```

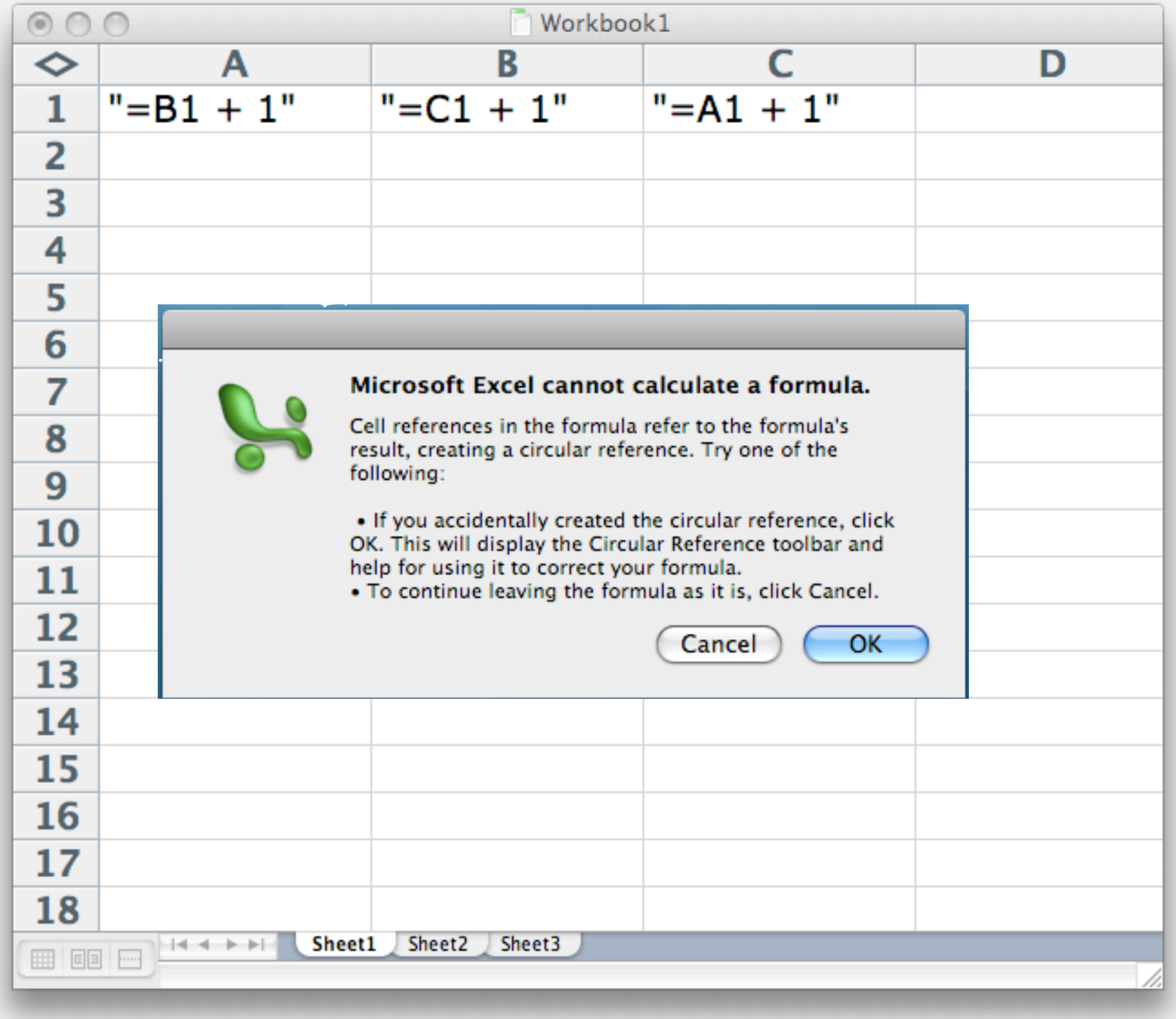
```
public class B extends C
{
   ...
}
```

```
public class C extends A
{
   ...
}
```

```
% javac A.java
A.java:1: cyclic inheritance
involving A
public class A extends B { }
       ^
1 error
```

Cycle detection application: spreadsheet recalculation

Microsoft Excel does cycle detection (and has a circular reference toolbar!)



Microsoft Excel cannot calculate a formula.

Cell references in the formula refer to the formula's result, creating a circular reference. Try one of the following:

- If you accidentally created the circular reference, click OK. This will display the Circular Reference toolbar and help for using it to correct your formula.
- To continue leaving the formula as it is, click Cancel.

Cycle detection application: symbolic links

The Linux file system does not do cycle detection.

```
% ln -s a.txt b.txt
% ln -s b.txt c.txt
% ln -s c.txt a.txt

% more a.txt
a.txt: Too many levels of symbolic links
```

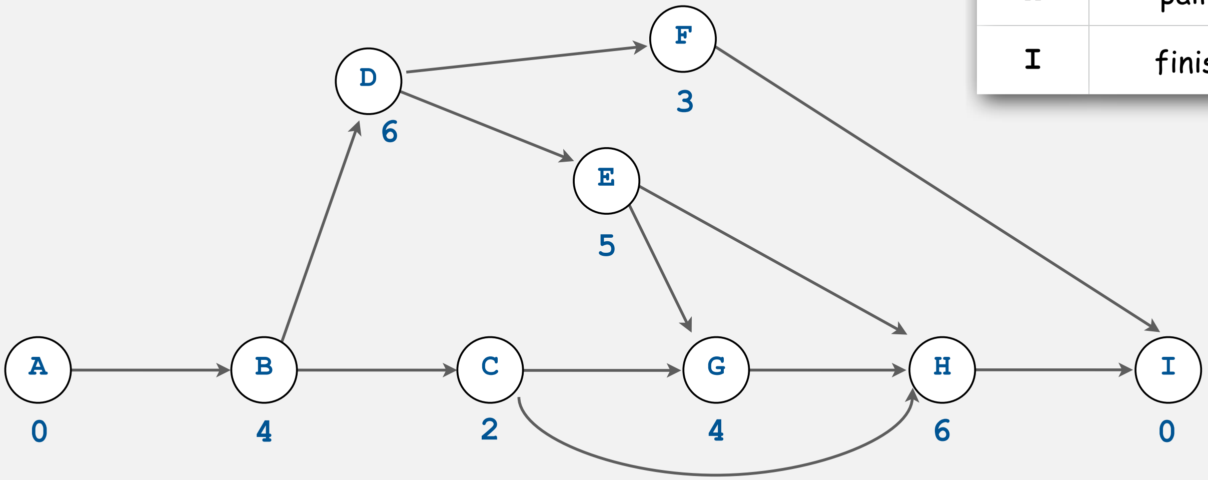
Topological sort application: precedence scheduling

Precedence scheduling.

- Task `v` takes `time[v]` units of time.
- Can work on jobs in parallel.
- Precedence constraints: must finish task `v` before beginning task `w`.
- Goal: finish each task as soon as possible.

index	task	time	prereqs
A	begin	0	-
B	framing	4	A
C	roofing	2	B
D	siding	6	B
E	windows	5	D
F	plumbing	3	D
G	electricity	4	C, E
H	paint	6	C, E
I	finish	0	F, H

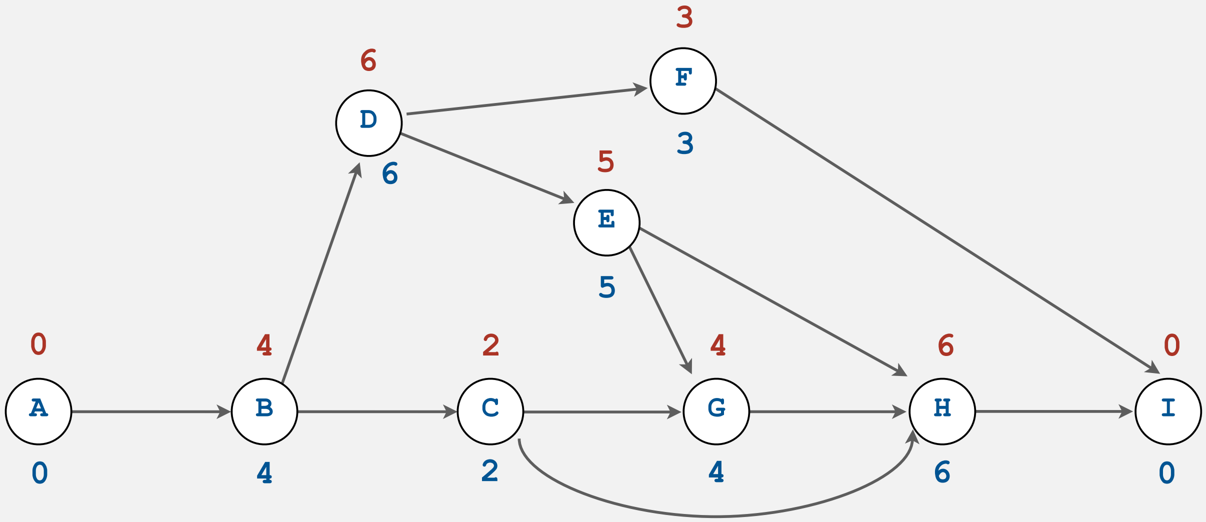
Ex.



Program Evaluation and Review Technique / Critical Path Method

PERT/CPM algorithm.

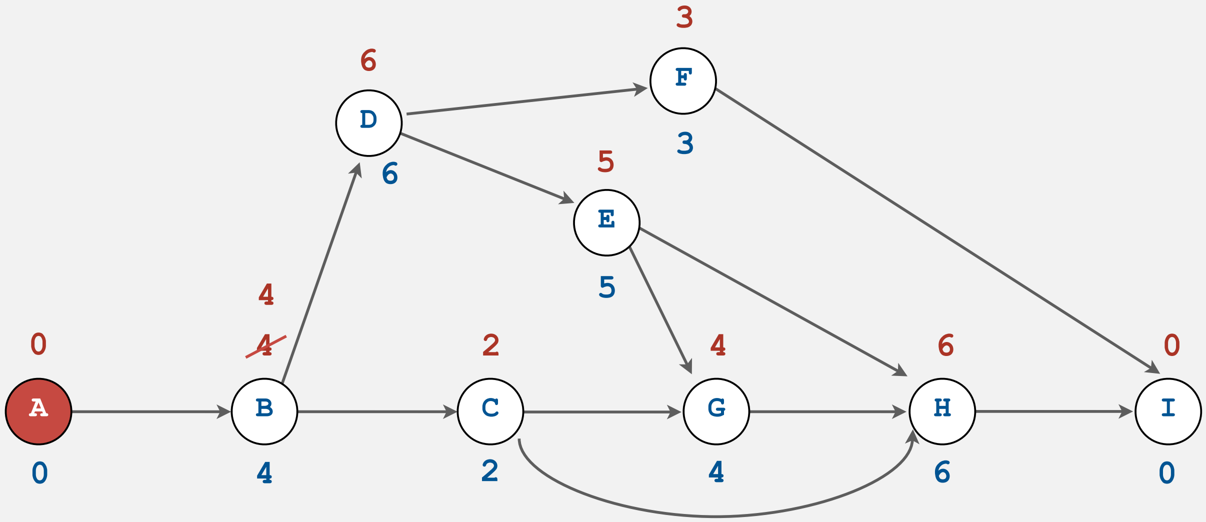
- Compute topological order of vertices.
- Initialize `fin[v] = time[v]` for all vertices `v`.
- Consider vertices `v` in topologically sorted order.
  - for each edge `v→w`, set `fin[w] = max(fin[w], fin[v] + time[w])`



Program Evaluation and Review Technique / Critical Path Method

PERT/CPM algorithm.

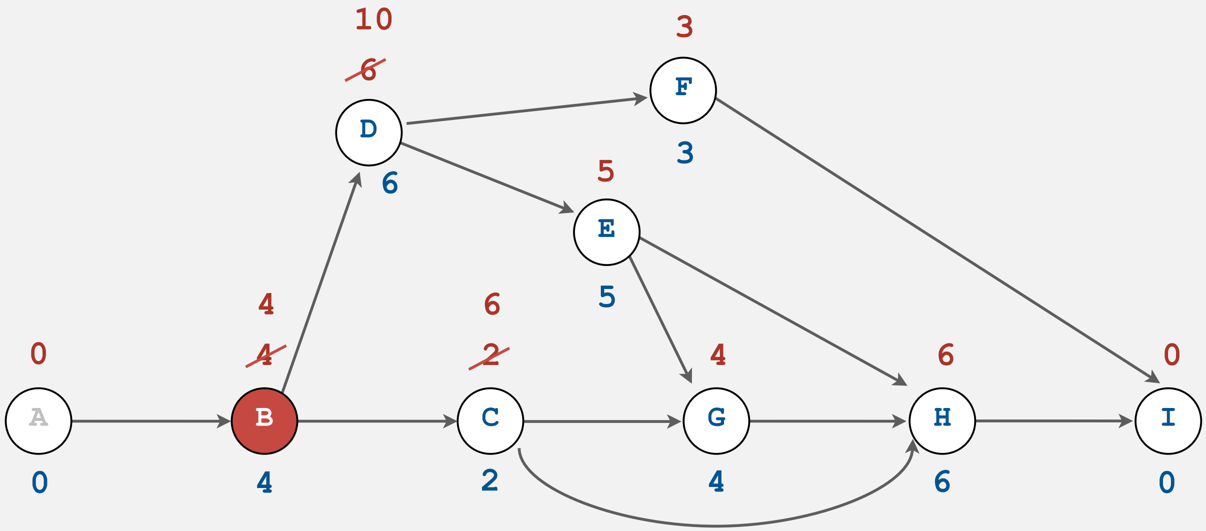
- Compute topological order of vertices.
- Initialize `fin[v] = time[v]` for all vertices `v`.
- Consider vertices `v` in topologically sorted order.
  - for each edge `v→w`, set `fin[w] = max(fin[w], fin[v] + time[w])`



Program Evaluation and Review Technique / Critical Path Method

PERT/CPM algorithm.

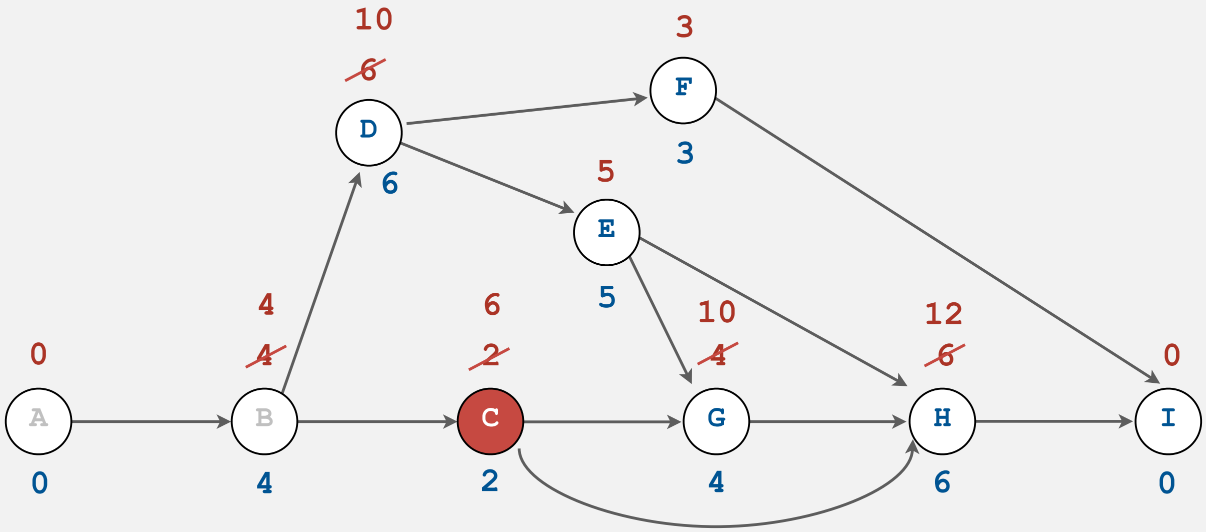
- Compute topological order of vertices.
- Initialize `fin[v] = time[v]` for all vertices `v`.
- Consider vertices `v` in topologically sorted order.
  - for each edge `v`→`w`, set `fin[w] = max(fin[w], fin[v] + time[w])`



Program Evaluation and Review Technique / Critical Path Method

PERT/CPM algorithm.

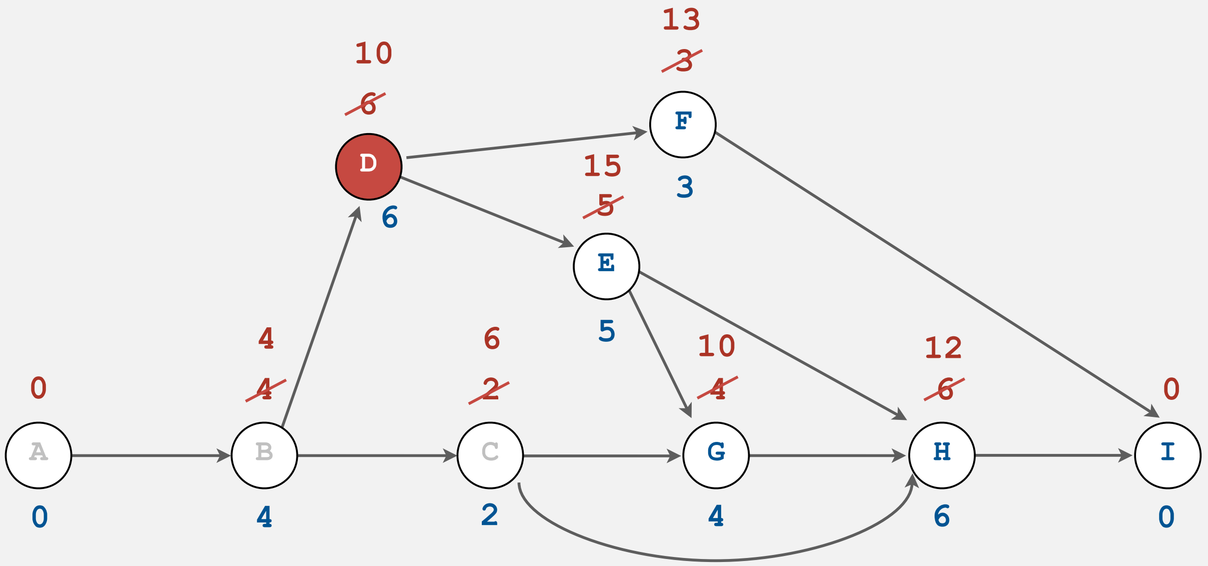
- Compute topological order of vertices.
- Initialize `fin[v] = time[v]` for all vertices `v`.
- Consider vertices `v` in topologically sorted order.
  - for each edge `v→w`, set `fin[w] = max(fin[w], fin[v] + time[w])`



Program Evaluation and Review Technique / Critical Path Method

PERT/CPM algorithm.

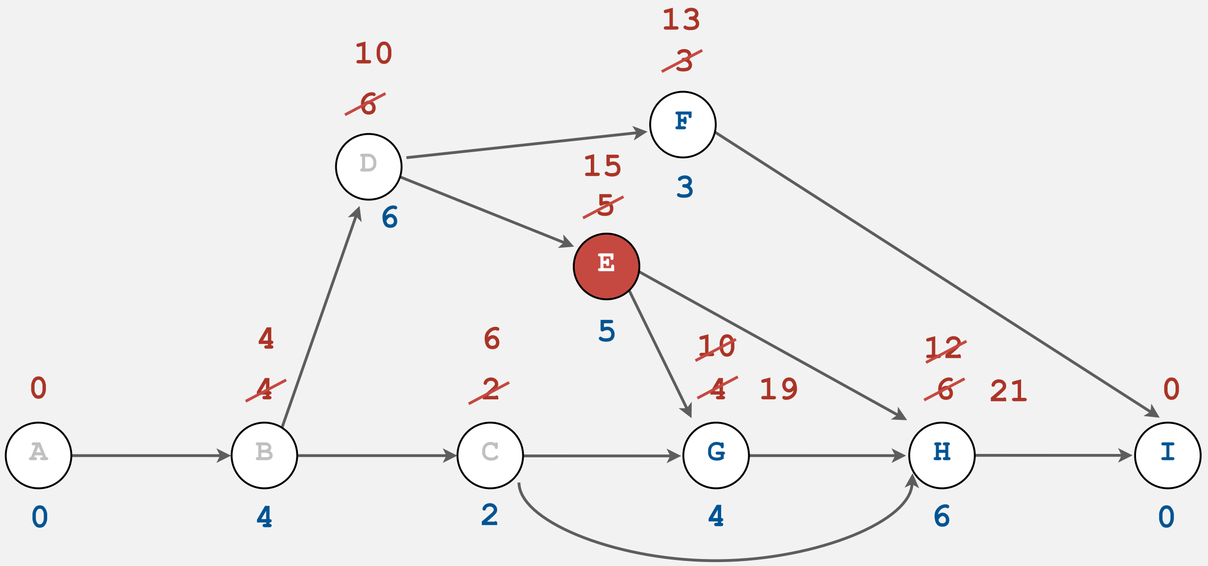
- Compute topological order of vertices.
- Initialize `fin[v] = time[v]` for all vertices `v`.
- Consider vertices `v` in topologically sorted order.
  - for each edge `v`→`w`, set `fin[w] = max(fin[w], fin[v] + time[w])`



Program Evaluation and Review Technique / Critical Path Method

PERT/CPM algorithm.

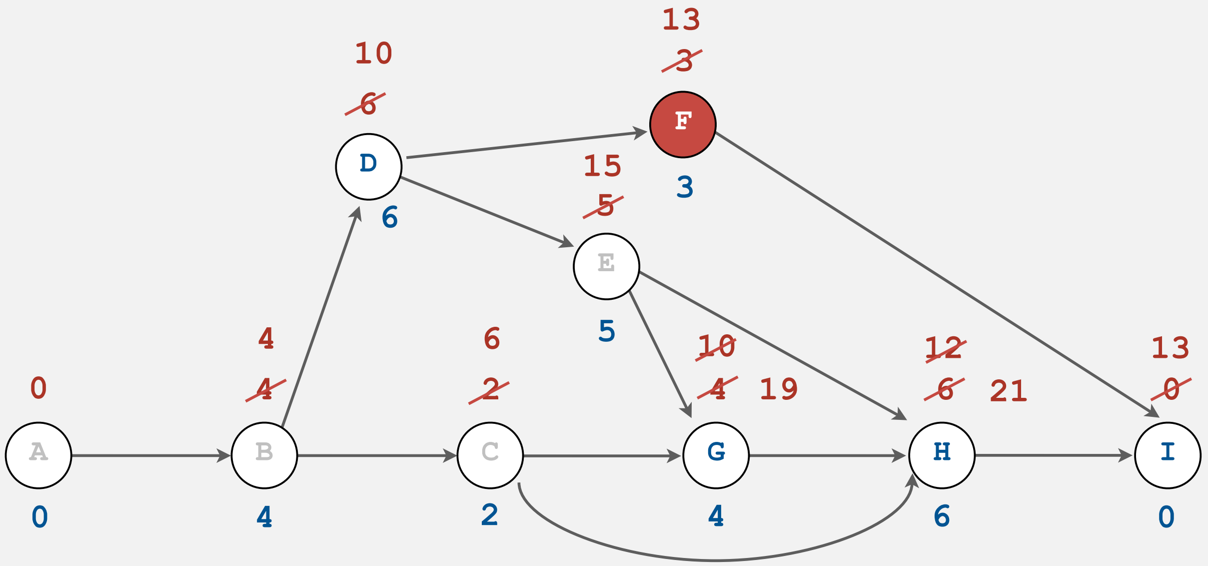
- Compute topological order of vertices.
- Initialize `fin[v] = time[v]` for all vertices `v`.
- Consider vertices `v` in topologically sorted order.
  - for each edge `v→w`, set `fin[w] = max(fin[w], fin[v] + time[w])`



Program Evaluation and Review Technique / Critical Path Method

PERT/CPM algorithm.

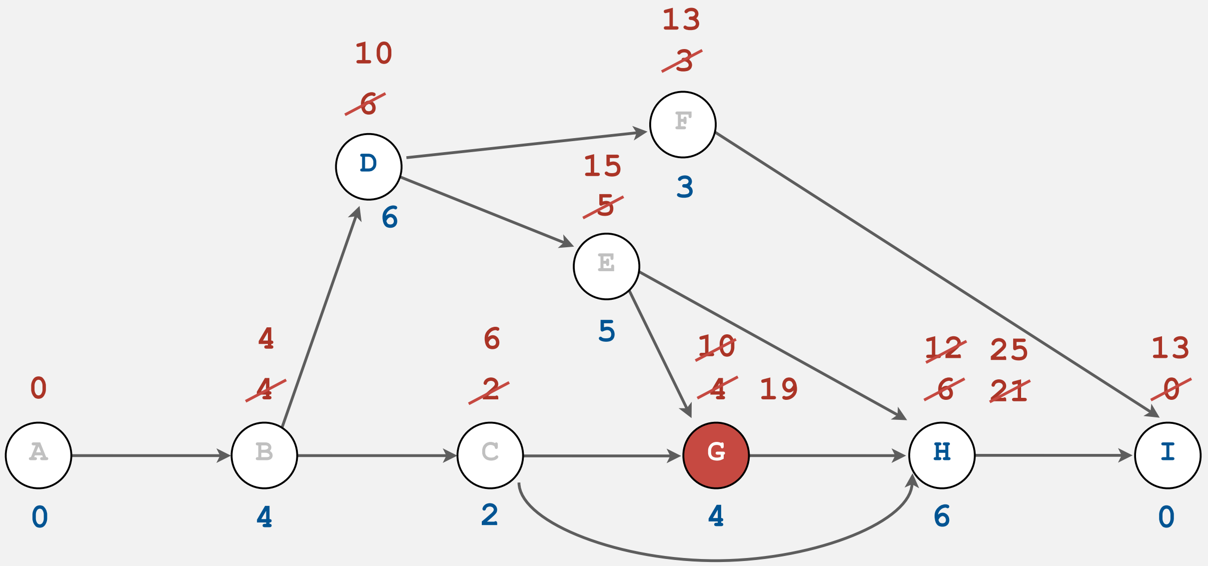
- Compute topological order of vertices.
- Initialize `fin[v] = time[v]` for all vertices `v`.
- Consider vertices `v` in topologically sorted order.
  - for each edge `v`→`w`, set `fin[w] = max(fin[w], fin[v] + time[w])`



Program Evaluation and Review Technique / Critical Path Method

PERT/CPM algorithm.

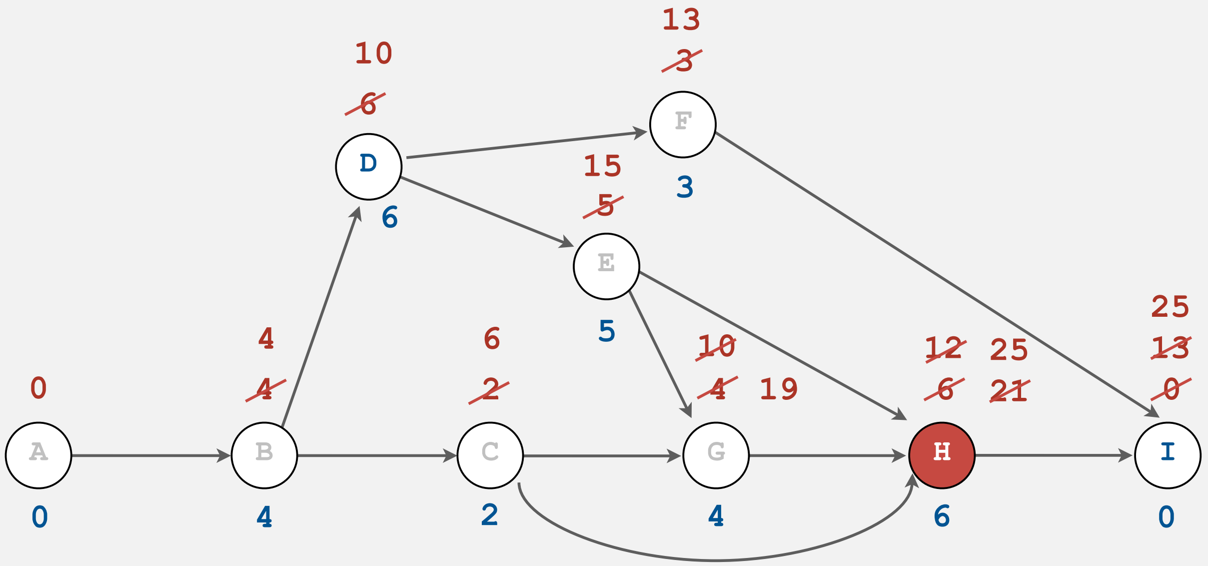
- Compute topological order of vertices.
- Initialize `fin[v] = time[v]` for all vertices `v`.
- Consider vertices `v` in topologically sorted order.
  - for each edge `v→w`, set `fin[w] = max(fin[w], fin[v] + time[w])`



Program Evaluation and Review Technique / Critical Path Method

PERT/CPM algorithm.

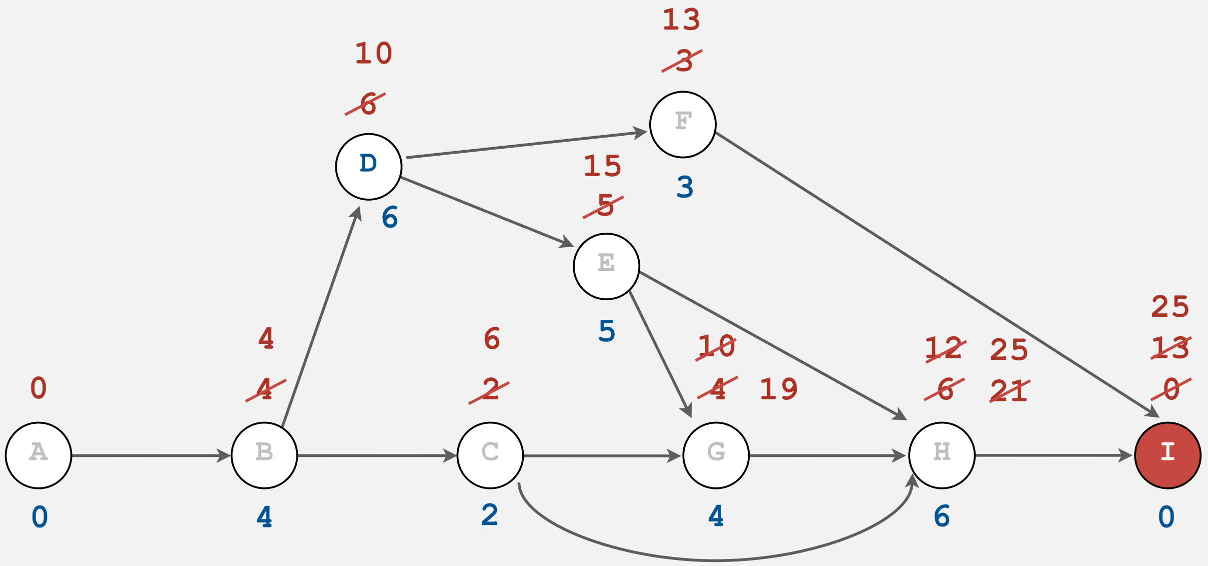
- Compute topological order of vertices.
- Initialize `fin[v] = time[v]` for all vertices `v`.
- Consider vertices `v` in topologically sorted order.
  - for each edge `v→w`, set `fin[w] = max(fin[w], fin[v] + time[w])`



Program Evaluation and Review Technique / Critical Path Method

PERT/CPM algorithm.

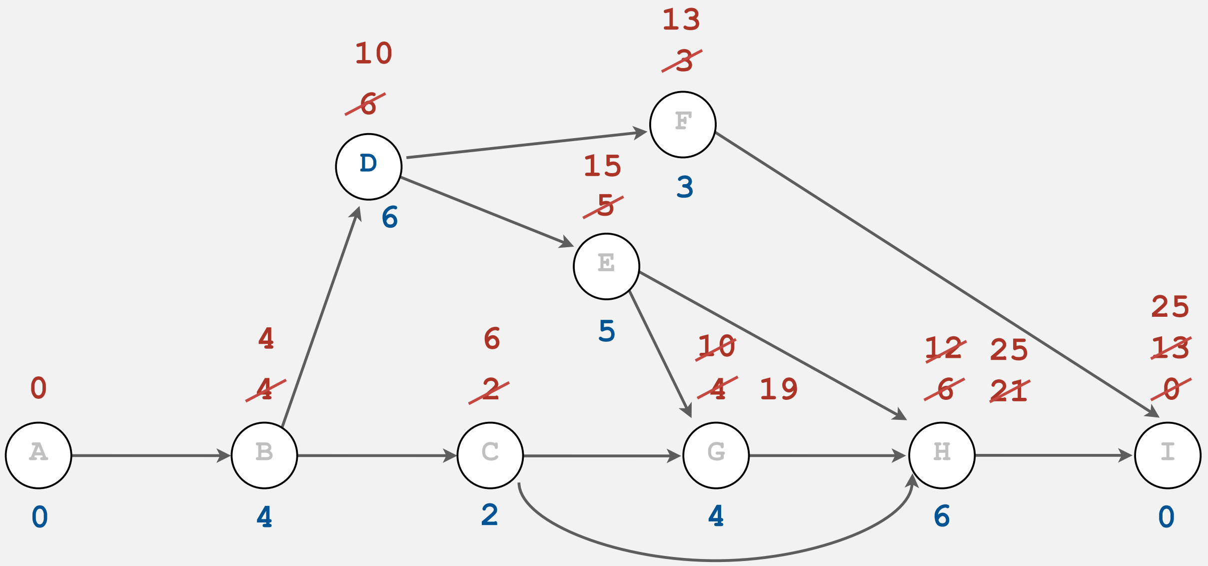
- Compute topological order of vertices.
- Initialize `fin[v] = time[v]` for all vertices `v`.
- Consider vertices `v` in topologically sorted order.
  - for each edge `v→w`, set `fin[w] = max(fin[w], fin[v] + time[w])`



Program Evaluation and Review Technique / Critical Path Method

PERT/CPM algorithm.

- Compute topological order of vertices.
- Initialize `fin[v] = time[v]` for all vertices `v`.
- Consider vertices `v` in topologically sorted order.
  - for each edge `v`→`w`, set `fin[w] = max(fin[w], fin[v] + time[w])`



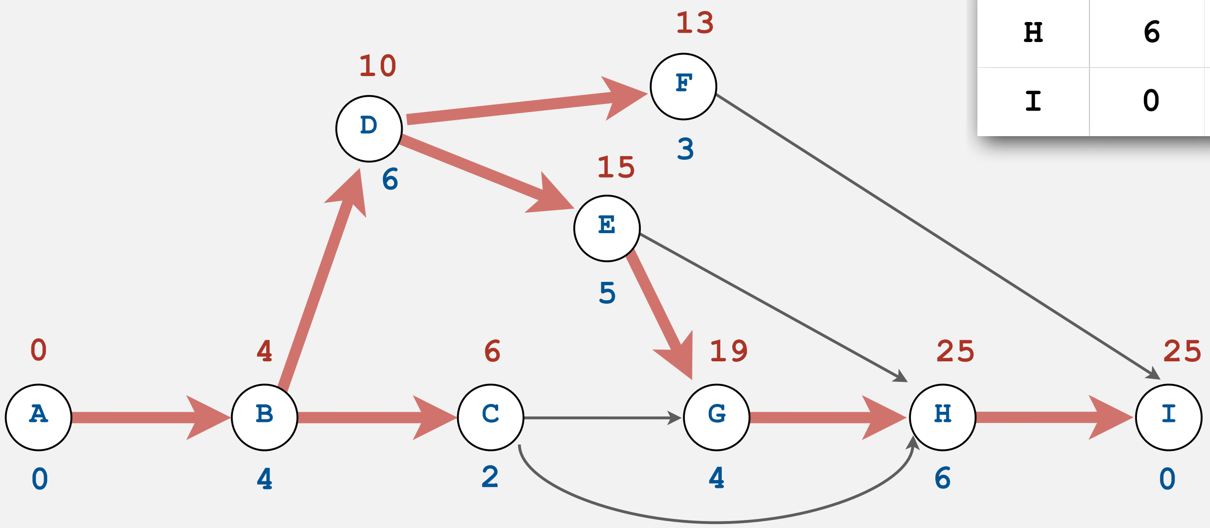
Program Evaluation and Review Technique / Critical Path Method

Critical path. Longest path from source to sink.

To compute:

- Remember vertex that set value (parent-link).
- Work backwards from sink.

index	time	prereqs	finish
A	0	–	0
B	4	A	4
C	2	B	6
D	6	B	10
E	5	D	15
F	3	D	13
G	4	C, E	19
H	6	C, E	25
I	0	F, H	25



PERT/CPM: Java implementation

G = DAG of precedence constraints

```
double[] fin = new double[G.V()];
for (int v = 0; v < G.V(); v++)
   fin[v] = time[v];
```

`fin[v]` = finishing time of task v

```
TopologicalSorter ts = new TopologicalSorter(G);
for (int v : ts.order())
   for (int w : G.adj(v))
      fin[w] = Math.max(fin[w], fin[v] + time[w]);
```

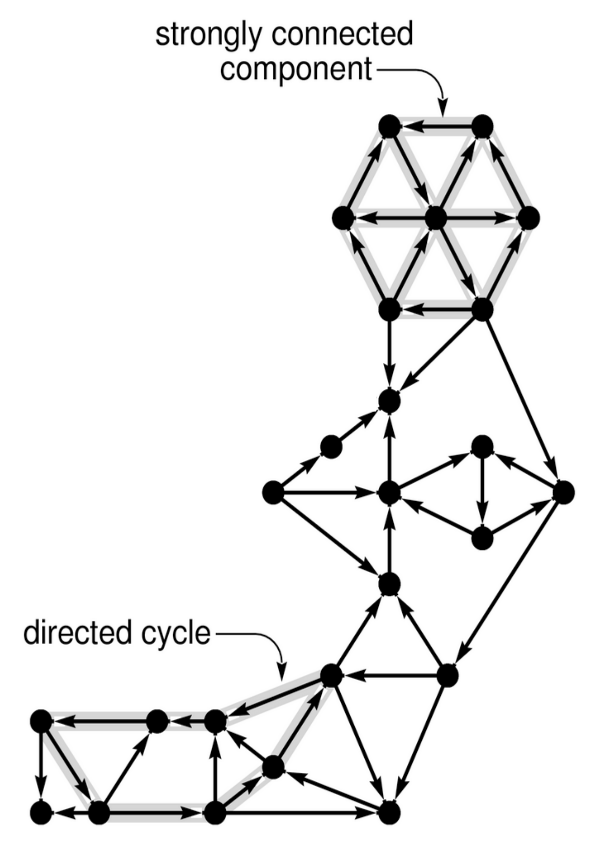
apply updates to vertices
in topological order

- digraph API
- digraph search
- transitive closure
- topological sort
- **strong components**

Strongly connected components

Def. Vertices `v` and `w` are strongly connected if there is a directed path from `v` to `w` and one from `w` to `v`.

Def. A strong component is a maximal subset of strongly connected vertices.



Digraph-processing challenge 3

Problem. Are `v` and `w` strongly connected?

Goal. Linear preprocessing time, constant query time.

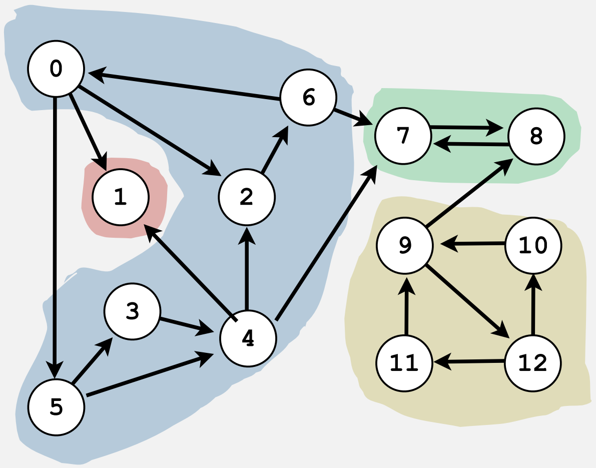
How difficult?

- Any COS 126 student could do it.
- ✓ Need to be a typical diligent COS 226 student.
- ✓ Hire an expert (or a COS 423 student).
- Intractable.
- No one knows.
- Impossible.

implementation: use DFS twice to find strong components (see textbook)

correctness proof

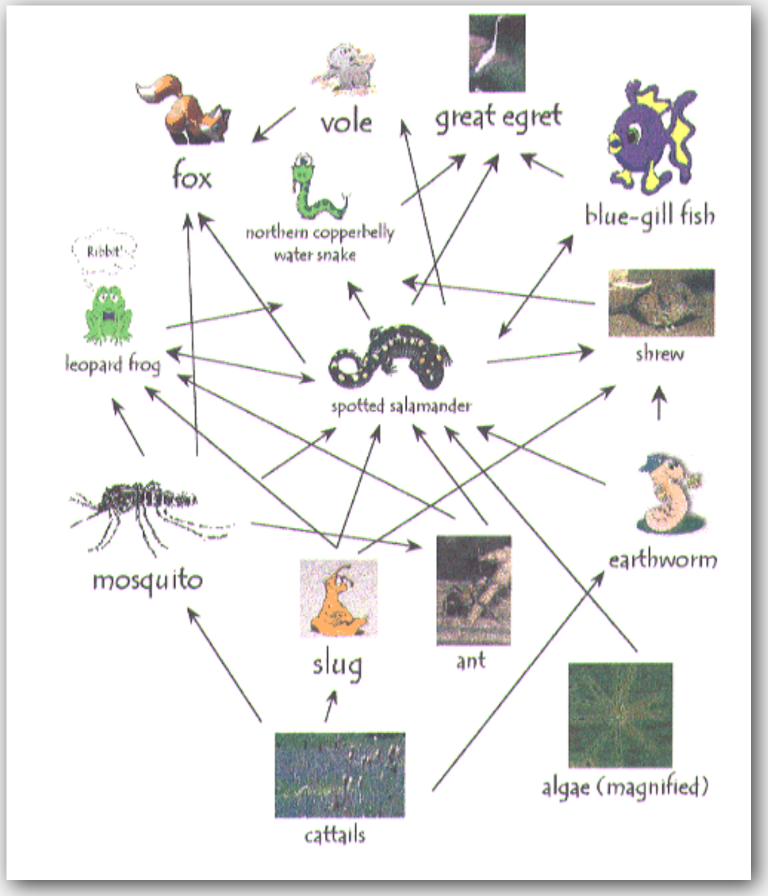
5 strong components



Ecological food web graph

Vertex = species.

Edge: from producer to consumer.

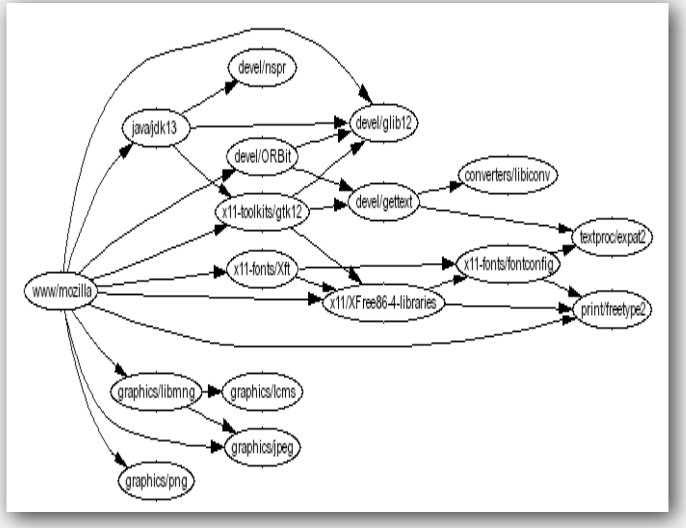


Strong component. Subset of species with common energy flow.

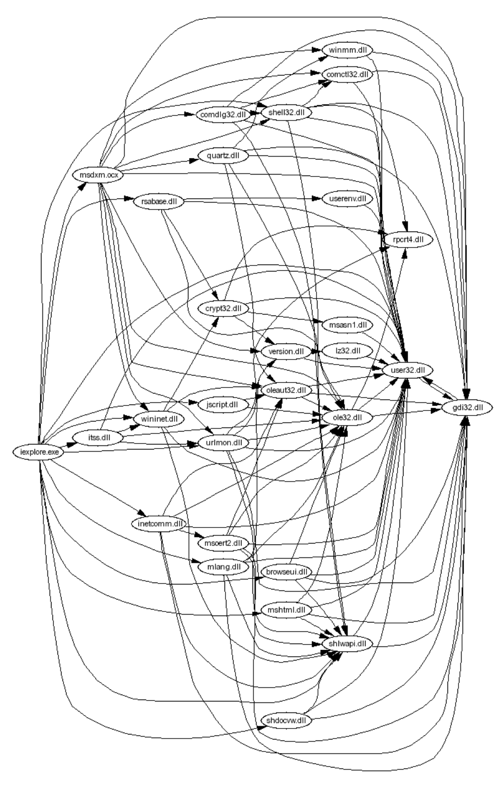
Software module dependency graph

Vertex = software module.

Edge: from module to dependency.



Firefox



Internet explorer

Strong component. Subset of mutually interacting modules.

Approach 1. Package strong components together.

Approach 2. Use to improve design!

Strong components algorithms: brief history

1960s: Core OR problem.

- Widely studied; some practical algorithms.
- Complexity not understood.

1972: linear-time DFS algorithm (Tarjan).

- Classic algorithm.
- Level of difficulty: CS226++.
- Demonstrated broad applicability and importance of DFS.

1980s: easy two-pass linear-time algorithm (Kosaraju).

- Forgot notes for teaching algorithms class; developed alg in order to teach it!
- Later found in Russian scientific literature (1972).

1990s: more easy linear-time algorithms (Gabow, Mehlhorn).

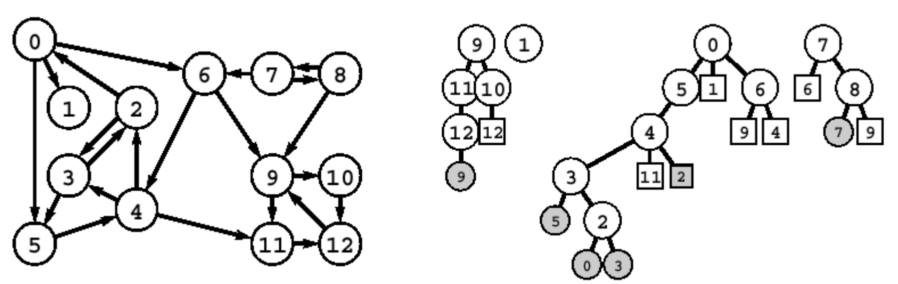
- Gabow: fixed old OR algorithm.
- Mehlhorn: needed one-pass algorithm for LEDA.

Kosaraju's algorithm

Simple (but mysterious) algorithm for computing strong components

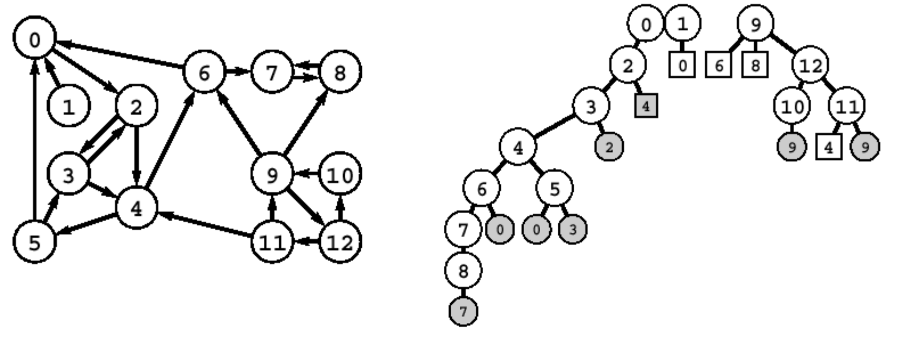
- Run DFS on G^R and compute postorder.
- Run DFS on G, considering vertices in reverse postorder.

G



	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
post	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	0	1	11	10	12	9

G^R

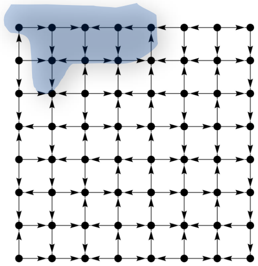
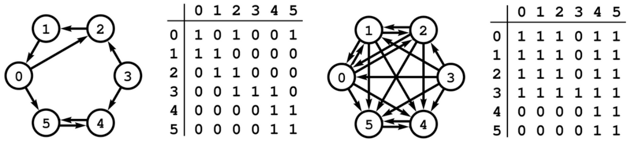
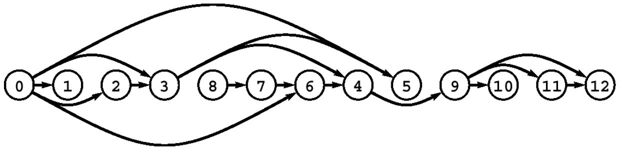
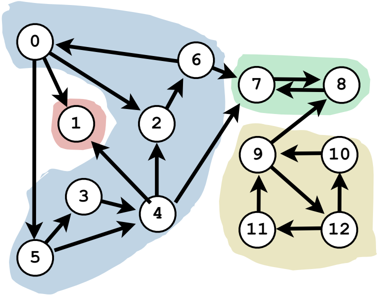


	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
sc	2	1	2	2	2	2	2	3	3	0	0	0	0

Proposition. Trees in second DFS are strong components. (!)

Pf. [see COS 423]

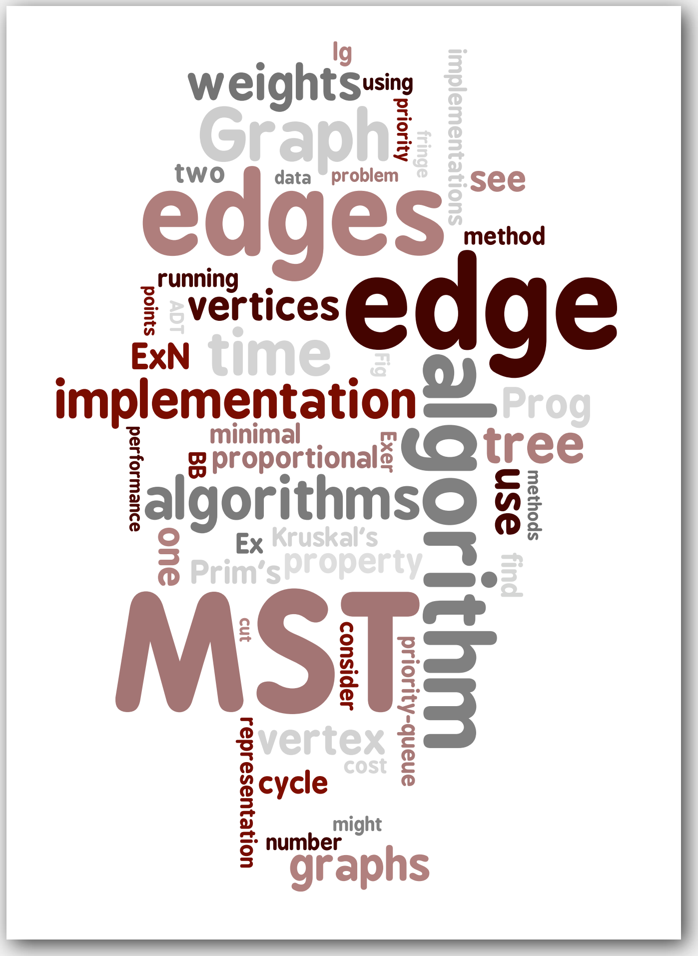
Digraph-processing summary: algorithms of the day

single-source reachability		DFS
transitive closure		DFS (from each vertex)
topological sort (DAG)		DFS
strong components		Kosaraju DFS (twice)

	0	1	2	3	4	5
0	1	0	1	0	0	1
1	1	1	0	0	0	0
2	0	1	1	0	0	0
3	0	0	1	1	1	0
4	0	0	0	0	1	1
5	0	0	0	0	1	1

	0	1	2	3	4	5
0	1	1	1	0	1	1
1	1	1	1	0	1	1
2	1	1	1	0	1	1
3	1	1	1	1	1	1
4	0	0	0	0	1	1
5	0	0	0	0	1	1

4.3 Minimum Spanning Trees



- weighted graph API
- cycles and cuts
- Kruskal's algorithm
- Prim's algorithm
- advanced topics

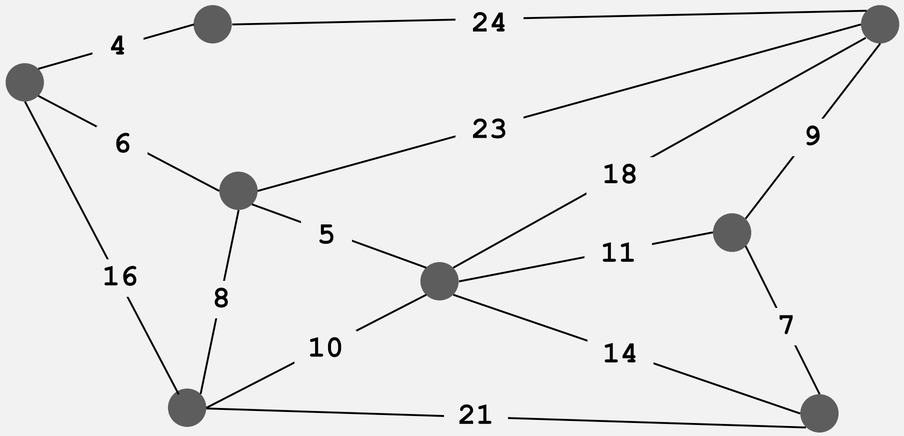
Reference: Algorithms in Java, 3rd edition, Part 5, Chapter 20

Minimum spanning tree

Given. Undirected graph G with positive edge weights (connected).

Def. A spanning tree of G is a subgraph T that is connected and acyclic.

Goal. Find a min weight spanning tree.



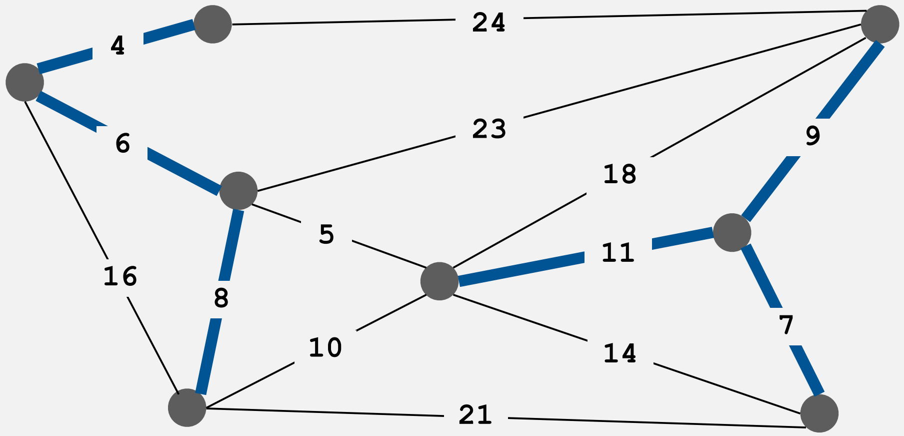
graph G

Minimum spanning tree

Given. Undirected graph G with positive edge weights (connected).

Def. A spanning tree of G is a subgraph T that is connected and acyclic.

Goal. Find a min weight spanning tree.



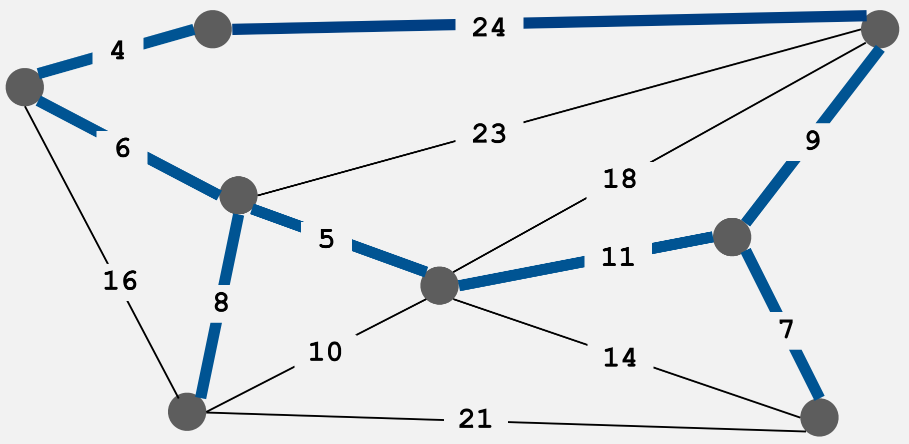
not connected

Minimum spanning tree

Given. Undirected graph G with positive edge weights (connected).

Def. A spanning tree of G is a subgraph T that is connected and acyclic.

Goal. Find a min weight spanning tree.



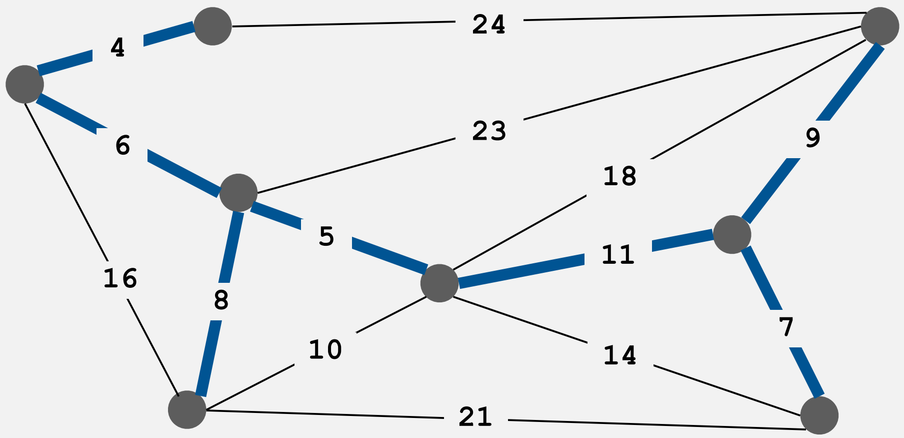
not acyclic

Minimum spanning tree

Given. Undirected graph G with positive edge weights (connected).

Def. A spanning tree of G is a subgraph T that is connected and acyclic.

Goal. Find a min weight spanning tree.



spanning tree T: cost = 50 = 4 + 6 + 8 + 5 + 11 + 9 + 7

Brute force. Try all spanning trees.

Applications

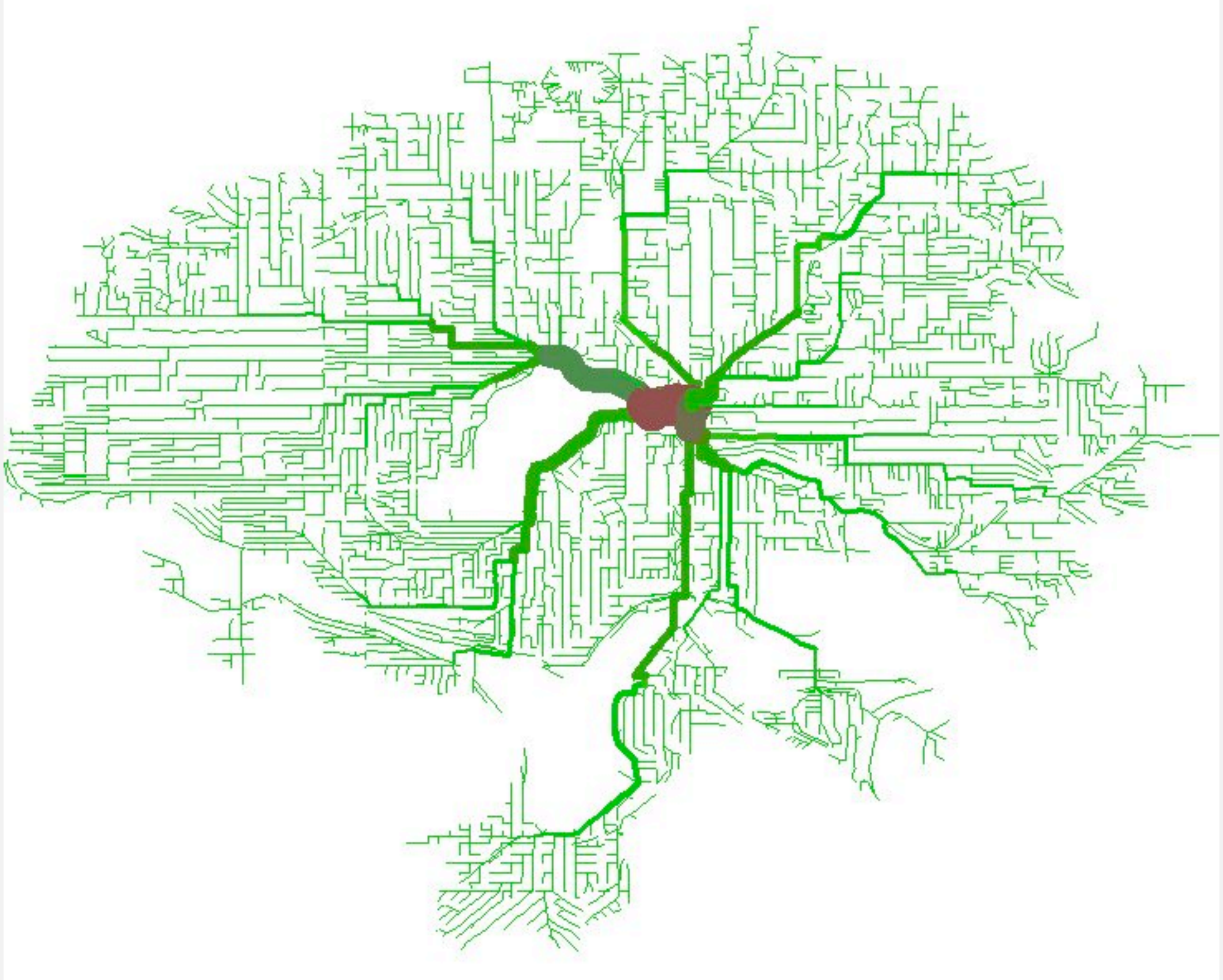
MST is fundamental problem with diverse applications.

- Cluster analysis.
- Max bottleneck paths.
- Real-time face verification.
- LDPC codes for error correction.
- Image registration with Renyi entropy.
- Find road networks in satellite and aerial imagery.
- Reducing data storage in sequencing amino acids in a protein.
- Model locality of particle interactions in turbulent fluid flows.
- Autoconfig protocol for Ethernet bridging to avoid cycles in a network.
- Network design (communication, electrical, hydraulic, cable, computer, road).
- Approximation algorithms for NP-hard problems (e.g., TSP, Steiner tree).

`http://www.ics.uci.edu/~eppstein/gina/mst.html`

Network design

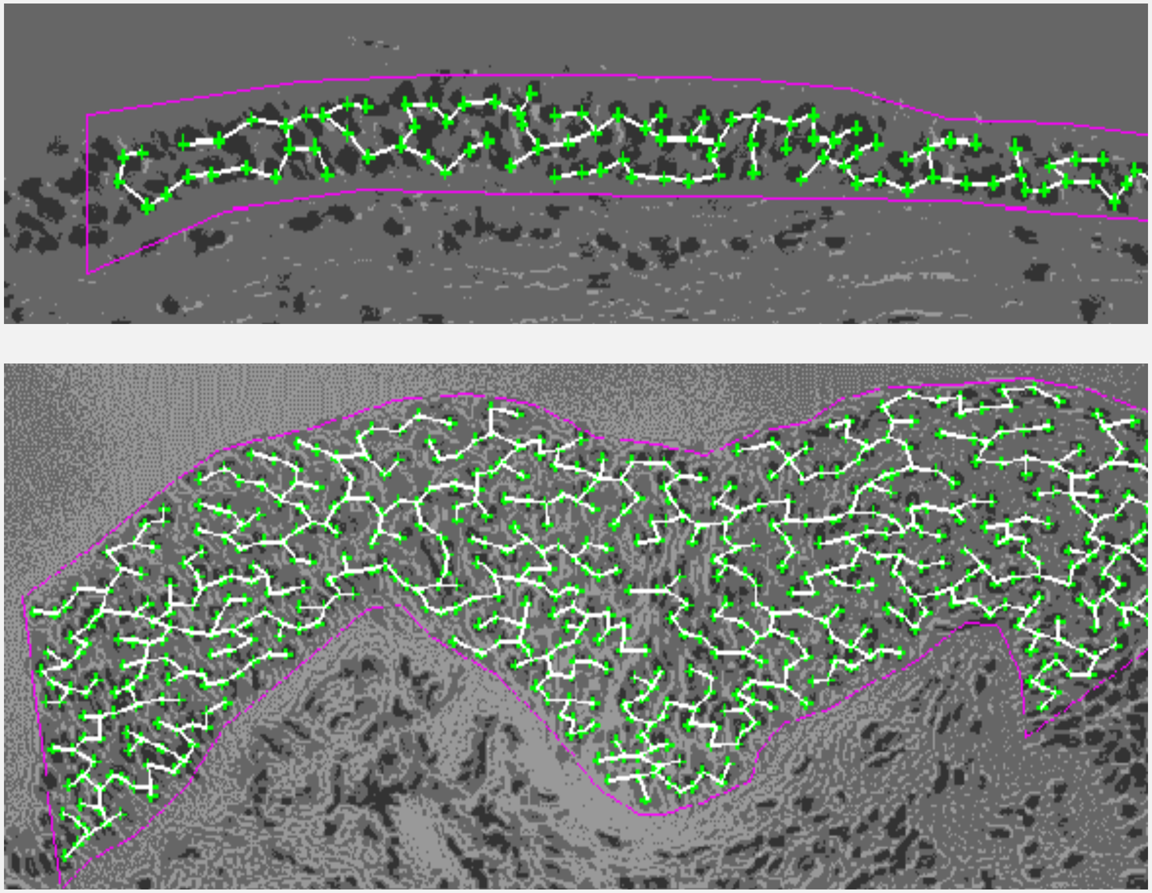
MST of bicycle routes in North Seattle



http://www.flickr.com/photos/ewedistrict/21980840

Medical image processing

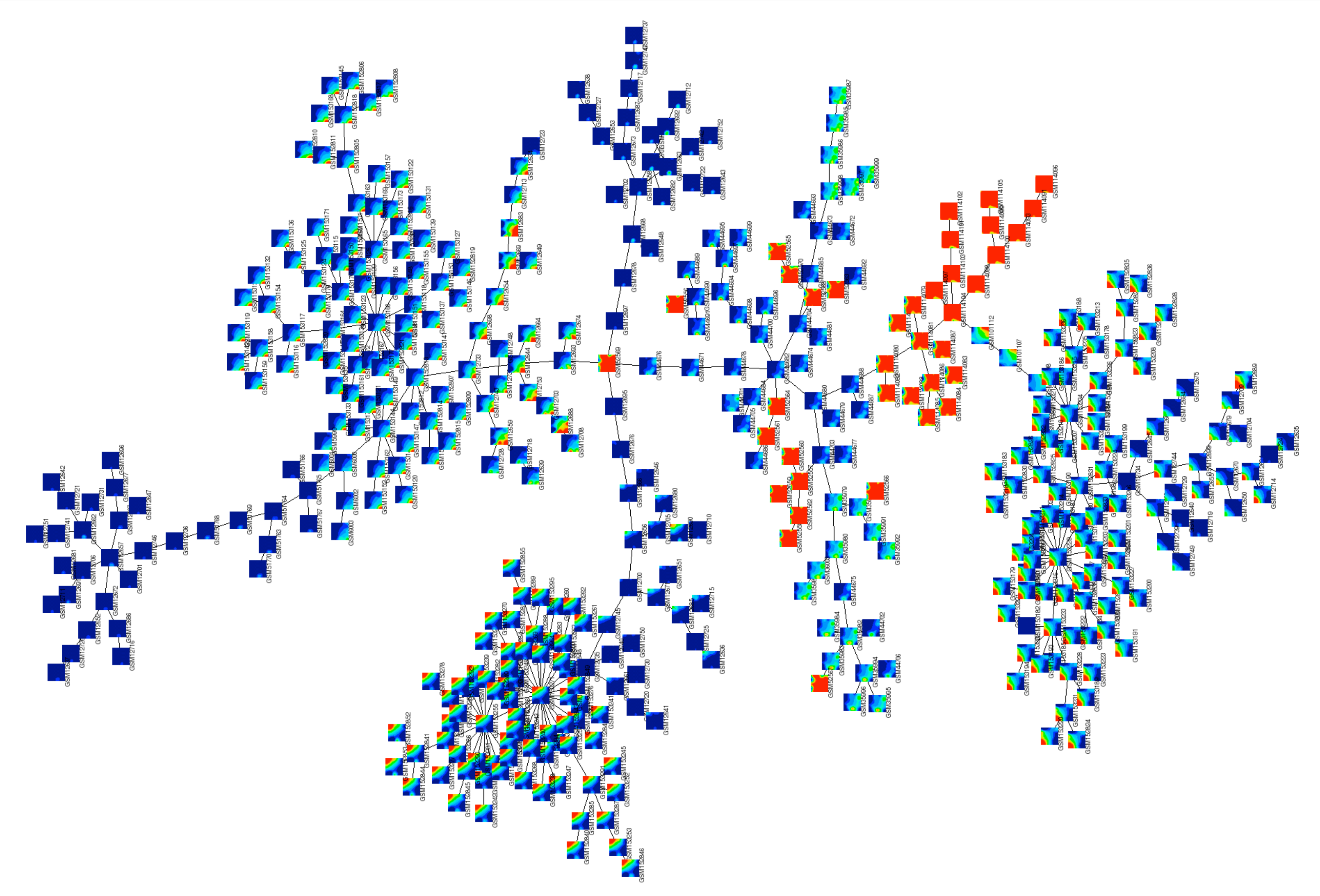
MST describes arrangement of nuclei in the epithelium for cancer research



`http://www.bccrc.ca/ci/ta01_archlevel.html`

Genetic research

MST of tissue relationships measured by gene expression correlation coefficient



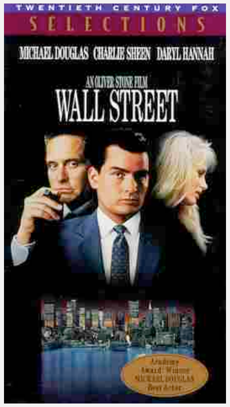
http://riodb.ibase.aist.go.jp/CELLPEDIA

Two greedy algorithms

Kruskal's algorithm. Consider edges in ascending order of weight. Add to T the next edge unless doing so would create a cycle.

Prim's algorithm. Start with any vertex s and greedily grow a tree T from s. At each step, add to T the edge of min weight with exactly one endpoint in T.

> *" Greed is good. Greed is right. Greed works. Greed clarifies, cuts through, and captures the essence of the evolutionary spirit. "* — *Gordon Gecko*



Proposition. Both greedy algorithms compute MST.

- **weighted graph API**
- cycles and cuts
- Kruskal's algorithm
- Prim's algorithm
- advanced topics

Edge API

Edge abstraction needed for weighted edges.

`public class Edge implements Comparable<Edge>`

	`Edge(int v, int w, double weight)`	*create a weighted edge v-w*
`int`	`either()`	*either endpoint*
`int`	`other(int v)`	*the endpoint that's not v*
`double`	`weight()`	*the weight*
`Comparator<Edge>`	`ByWeight()`	*compare by edge weight*

Weighted graph API

`public class WeightedGraph`		
	`WeightedGraph(int V)`	*create an empty graph with V vertices*
	`WeightedGraph(In in)`	*create a graph from input stream*
`void`	`addEdge(Edge e)`	*add edge e*
`void`	`removeEdge(Edge e)`	*delete edge e*
`Iterable<Edge>`	`adj(int v)`	*return an iterator over edges incident to v*
`int`	`V()`	*return number of vertices*

Conventions.

- Allow self-loops.
- Allow parallel edges (provided they have different weights).

Weighted graph API

	`public class WeightedGraph`	
	`WeightedGraph(int V)`	*create an empty graph with V vertices*
	`WeightedGraph(In in)`	*create a graph from input stream*
`void`	`addEdge(Edge e)`	*add edge e*
`void`	`removeEdge(Edge e)`	*delete edge e*
`Iterable<Edge>`	`adj(int v)`	*return an iterator over edges incident to v*
`int`	`V()`	*return number of vertices*

```
for (int v = 0; v < G.V(); v++)
{
   for (Edge e : G.adj(v))
   {
      int w = e.other(v);
      // process edge v-w
   }
}
```

iterate through all edges
(once in each direction)

Weighted graph: adjacency-set implementation

```
public class WeightedGraph
{
   private final int V;
   private final SET<Edge>[] adj;

   public WeightedGraph(int V)
   {
      this.V = V;
      adj = (SET<Edge>[]) new SET[V];
      for (int v = 0; v < V; v++)
         adj[v] = new SET<Edge>();
   }

   public void addEdge(Edge e)
   {
      int v = e.either(), w = e.other(v);
      adj[v].add(e);
      adj[w].add(e);
   }

   public Iterable<Edge> adj(int v)
   {  return adj[v];  }
}
```

same as `Graph`, but adjacency sets of `Edges` instead of integers

constructor

add edge to both adjacency sets

Weighted edge: Java implementation

```
public class Edge implements Comparable<Edge>
{
   private final int v, w;
   private final double weight;

   public Edge(int v, int w, double weight)
   {
      this.v = Math.min(v, w);
      this.w = Math.max(v, w);
      this.weight = weight;
   }

   public int either()
   {  return v;  }

   public int other(int vertex)
   {
      if (vertex == v) return w;
      else return v;
   }

   public int weight()
   {  return weight;  }

   // See next slide for compare methods.
}
```

constructor

either endpoint

other endpoint

weight of edge

Weighted edge: Java implementation (cont)

```
public static class ByWeight implements Comparator<Edge>
{
   public int compare(Edge e, Edge f)
   {
      if (e.weight < f.weight) return -1;
      if (e.weight > f.weight) return +1;
      return 0;
   }
}
```

order edges by weight
(for sorting in Kruskal)

```
public int compareTo(Edge that)
{
    if (this.v < that.v) return -1;
    if (this.v > that.v) return +1;
    if (this.w < that.w) return -1;
    if (this.w > that.w) return +1;
    if (this.weight < that.weight) return -1;
    if (this.weight > that.weight) return +1;
    return 0;
}
```

lexicographic order,
breaking ties by weight
(for use in a symbol table)

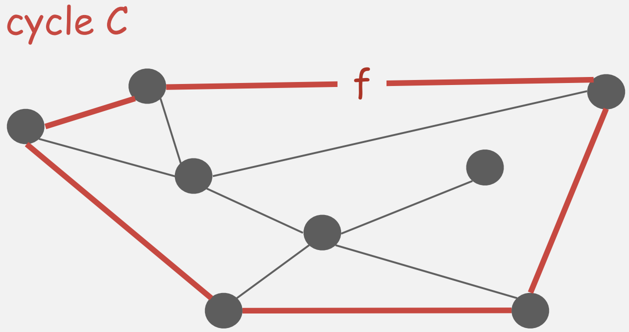
- weighted graph API
- **cycles and cuts**
- Kruskal's algorithm
- Prim's algorithm
- advanced topics

Cycle and cut properties

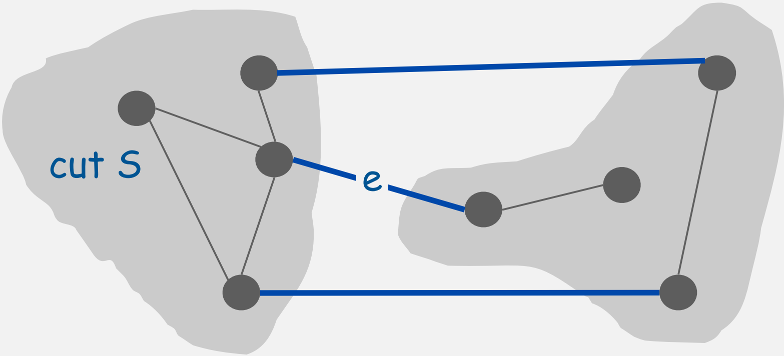
Simplifying assumption. All edge weights w_e are distinct.

Cycle property. Let C be any cycle, and let f be the max weight edge belonging to C. Then the MST T* does not contain f.

Cut property. Let S be any subset of vertices, and let e be the min weight edge with exactly one endpoint in S. Then the MST contains e.



f is not in the MST T*



e is in the MST T*

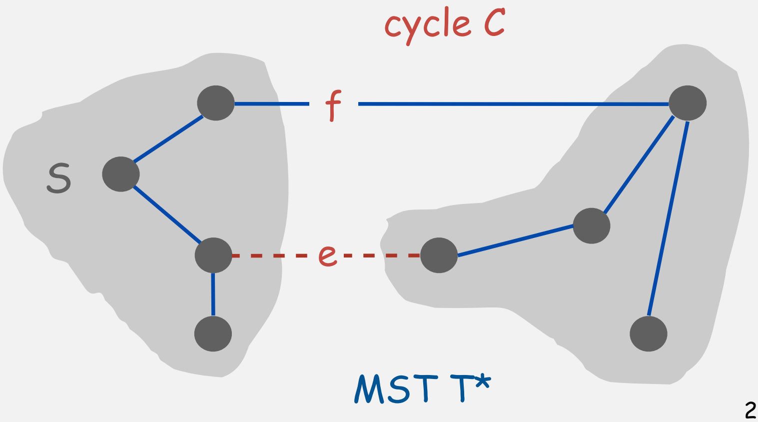
Cycle property: correctness proof

Simplifying assumption. All edge weights w_e are distinct.

Cycle property. Let C be any cycle, and let f be the max weight edge belonging to C. Then the MST T* does not contain f.

Pf. [by contradiction]

- Suppose f belongs to T*. Let's see what happens.
- Deleting f from T* disconnects T*. Let S be one side of the cut.
- Some other edge in C, say e, has exactly one endpoint in S.
- $T = T^* \cup \{ e \} - \{ f \}$ is also a spanning tree.
- Since $w_e < w_f$, weight(T) < weight(T*).
- Contradicts minimality of T*. ▪



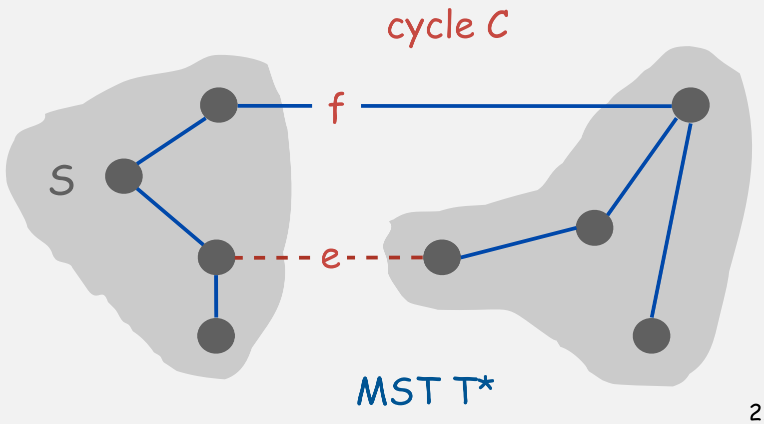
Cut property: correctness proof

Simplifying assumption. All edge weights w_e are distinct.

Cut property. Let S be any subset of vertices, and let e be the min weight edge with exactly one endpoint in S. Then the MST T* contains e.

Pf. [by contradiction]

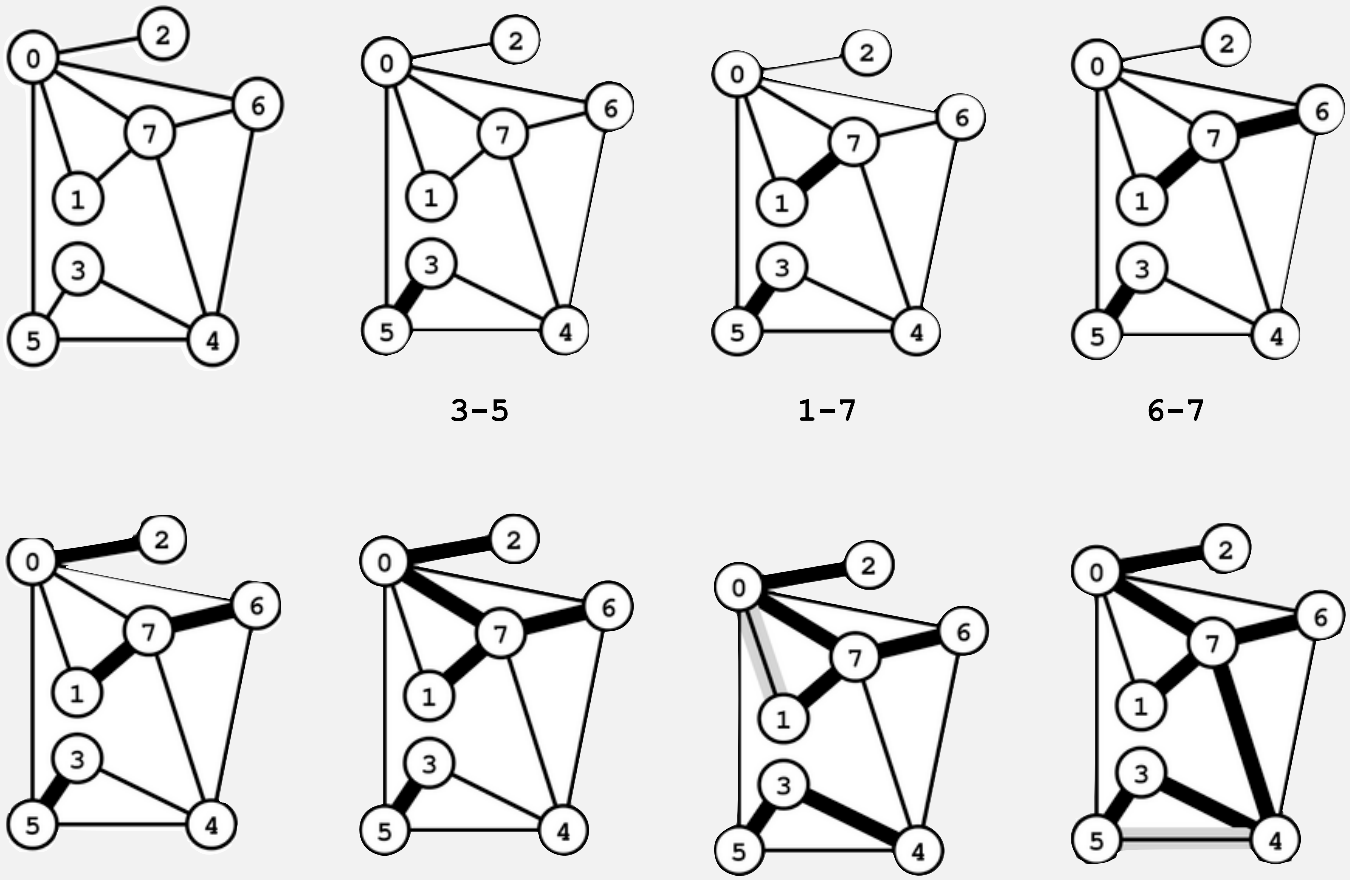
- Suppose e does not belong to T*. Let's see what happens.
- Adding e to T* creates a cycle C in T*.
- Some other edge in C, say f, has exactly one endpoint in S.
- $T = T^* \cup \{ e \} - \{ f \}$ is also a spanning tree.
- Since $w_e < w_f$, weight(T) < weight(T*).
- Contradicts minimality of T*. ▪



- weighted graph API
- cycles and cuts
- **Kruskal's algorithm**
- Prim's algorithm
- advanced topics

Kruskal's algorithm

Kruskal's algorithm. [Kruskal 1956] Consider edges in ascending order of weight. Add to T the next edge unless doing so would create a cycle.



3-5

1-7

6-7

0-2

0-7

0-1 3-4

4-5 4-7

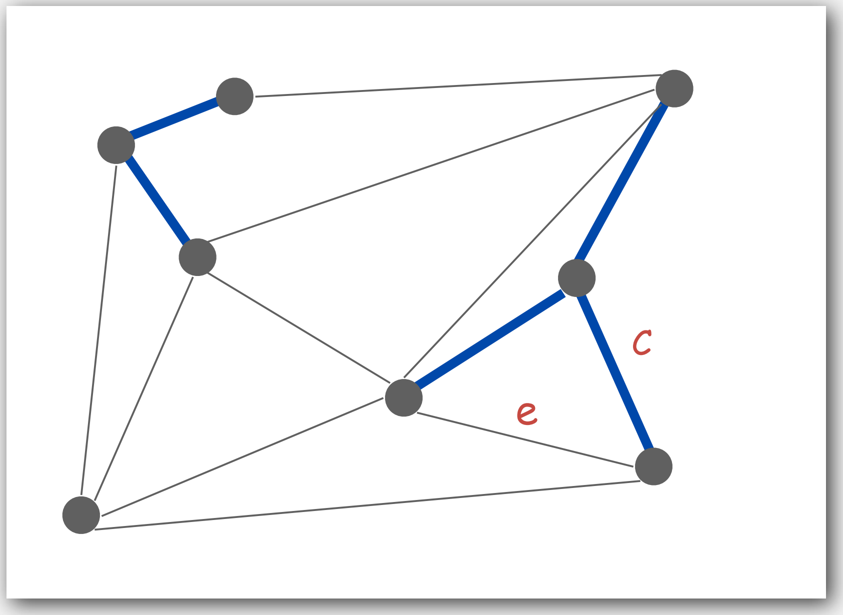
3-5	0.18
1-7	0.21
6-7	0.25
0-2	0.29
0-7	0.31
0-1	0.32
3-4	0.34
4-5	0.40
4-7	0.46
0-6	0.51
4-6	0.51
0-5	0.60

Kruskal's algorithm: correctness proof

Proposition. Kruskal's algorithm computes the MST.

Pf. [Case 1] Suppose that adding e to T creates a cycle C.

- Edge e is the max weight edge in C. ← why max weight?
- Edge e is not in the MST (cycle property).



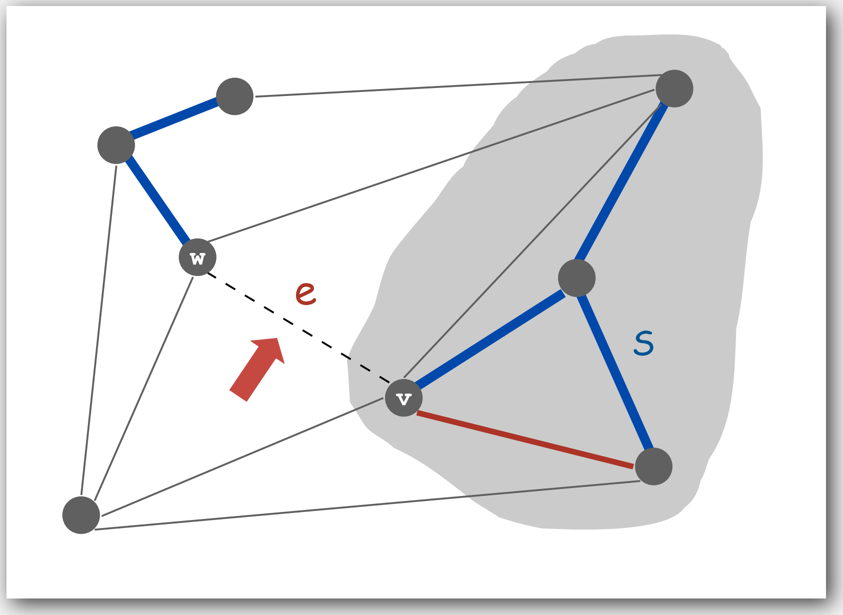
Kruskal's algorithm: correctness proof

Proposition. Kruskal's algorithm computes the MST.

Pf. [Case 2] Suppose that adding e = v-w to T does not create a cycle.

- Let S be the vertices in v's connected component.
- Vertex w is not in S.
- Edge e is the min weight edge with exactly one endpoint in S.
- Edge e is in the MST (cut property). ▪

why min weight?

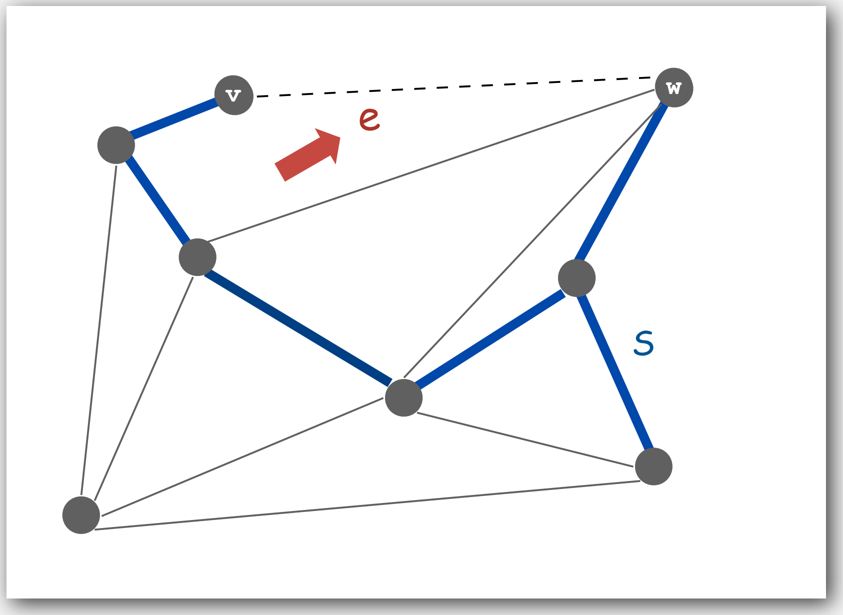


Kruskal implementation challenge

Problem. Check if adding an edge v-w to T creates a cycle.

How difficult?

- O(E + V) time.
- O(V) time. ← run DFS from v, check if w is reachable (T has at most V-1 edges)
- O(log V) time.
- O(log* V) time. ← use the union-find data structure !
- Constant time.

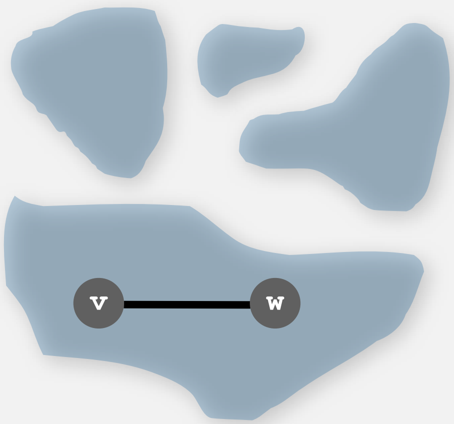


Kruskal's algorithm implementation

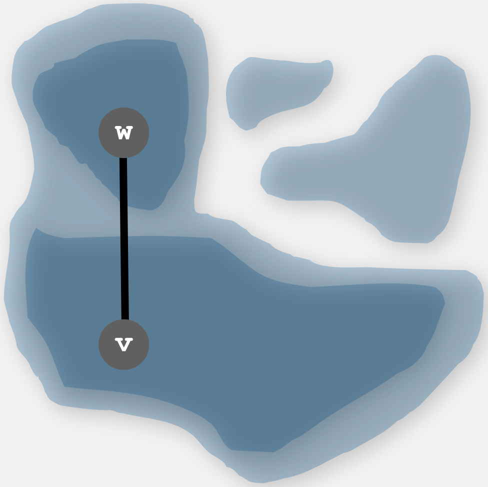
Problem. Check if adding an edge v-w to T creates a cycle.

Efficient solution. Use the union-find data structure.

- Maintain a set for each connected component in T.
- If v and w are in same component, then adding v-w creates a cycle.
- To add v-w to T, merge sets containing v and w.



Case 1: adding v-w creates a cycle



Case 2: add v-w to T and merge sets

Kruskal's algorithm: Java implementation

```
public class Kruskal
{
   private SET<Edge> mst = new SET<Edge>();

   public Kruskal(WeightedGraph G)
   {
      Edge[] edges = G.edges();
      Arrays.sort(edges, new Edge.ByWeight());

      UnionFind uf = new UnionFind(G.V());
      for (Edge e : edges)
      {
         int v = e.either(), w = e.other(v);
         if (!uf.find(v, w))
         {
            uf.unite(v, w);
            mst.add(e);
         }
      }
   }

   public Iterable<Edge> mst()
   {  return mst;   }
}
```

get all edges in graph

sort edges by weight

greedily add edges to MST

Kruskal's algorithm running time

Proposition. Kruskal's algorithm computes MST in O(E log E) time.

Pf.

operation	frequency	time per op
sort	1	E log E
union	V	log* V †
find	E	log* V †

† amortized bound using weighted quick union with path compression

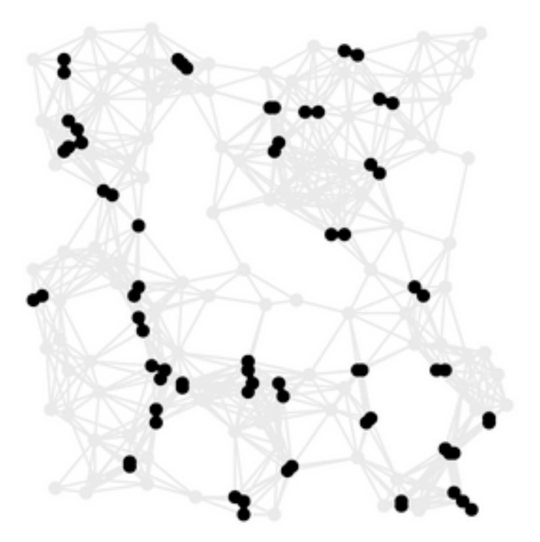
Improvements.

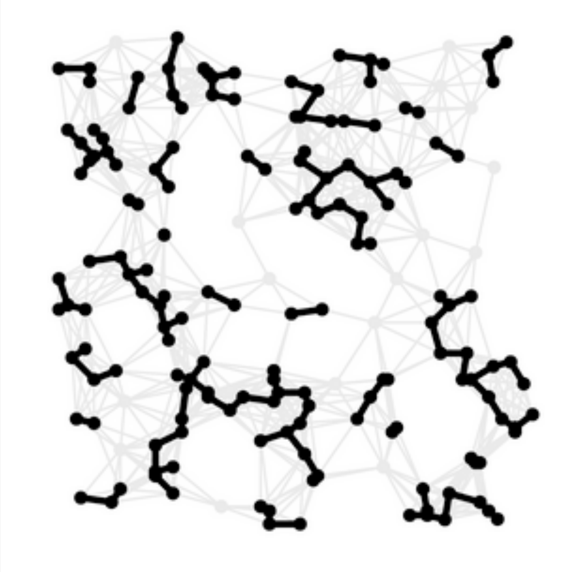
- Stop as soon as there are V-1 edges.
- If edges are already sorted, time is proportional to E log* V.

↑ recall: log* V ≤ 5 in this universe

Kruskal's algorithm example

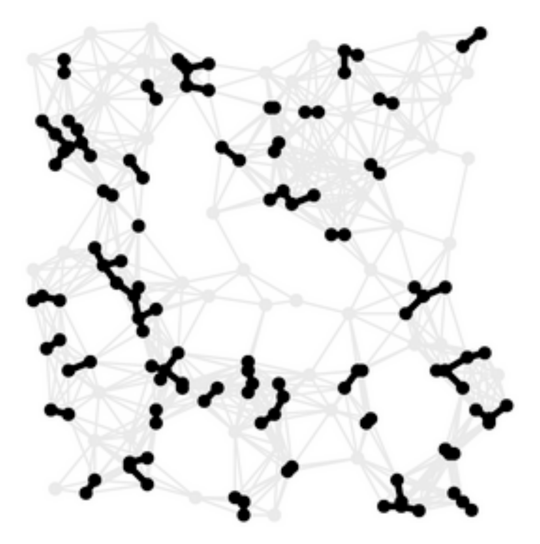
25%

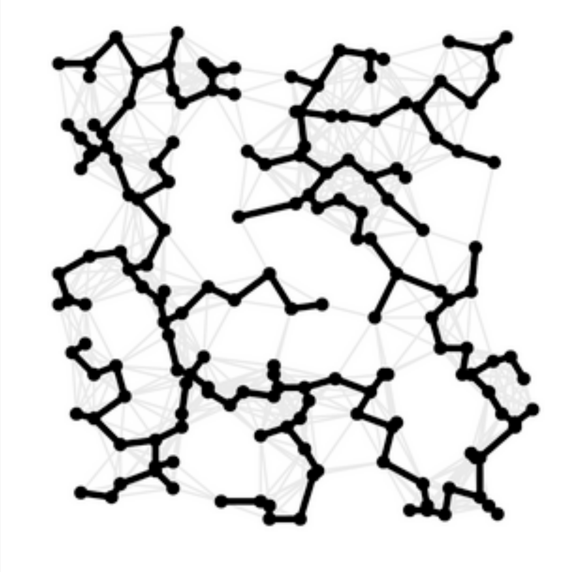




75%

50%





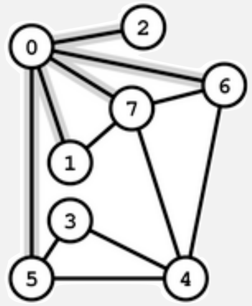
100%

- weighted graph API
- cycles and cuts
- Kruskal's algorithm
- **Prim's algorithm**
- advanced topics

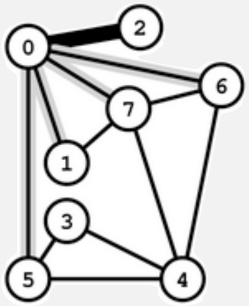
Prim's algorithm example

Prim's algorithm. [Jarník 1930, Dijkstra 1957, Prim 1959]

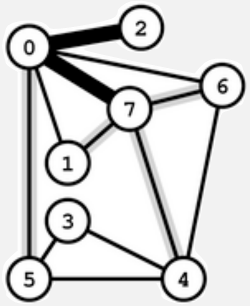
Start with vertex 0 and greedily grow tree T. At each step, add to T the edge of min weight with exactly one endpoint in T.



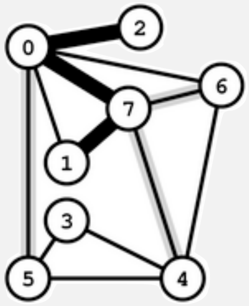
0-2 0-7 0-1
0-6 0-5



0-7 0-1 0-6 0-5

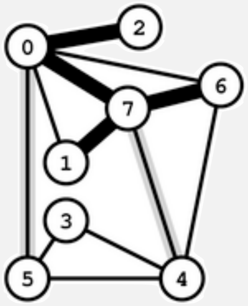


7-1 7-6 0-1
7-4 0-6 0-5

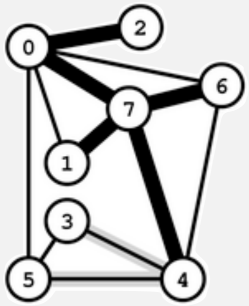


7-6 7-4 0-6 0-5

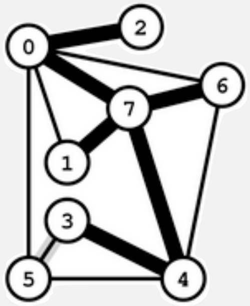
edges with exactly one endpoint in T, sorted by weight



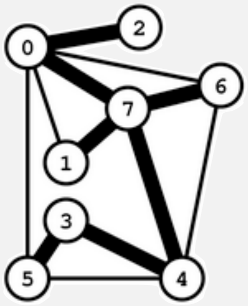
7-4 6-4 0-5



4-3 4-5 0-5



3-5 4-5 0-5



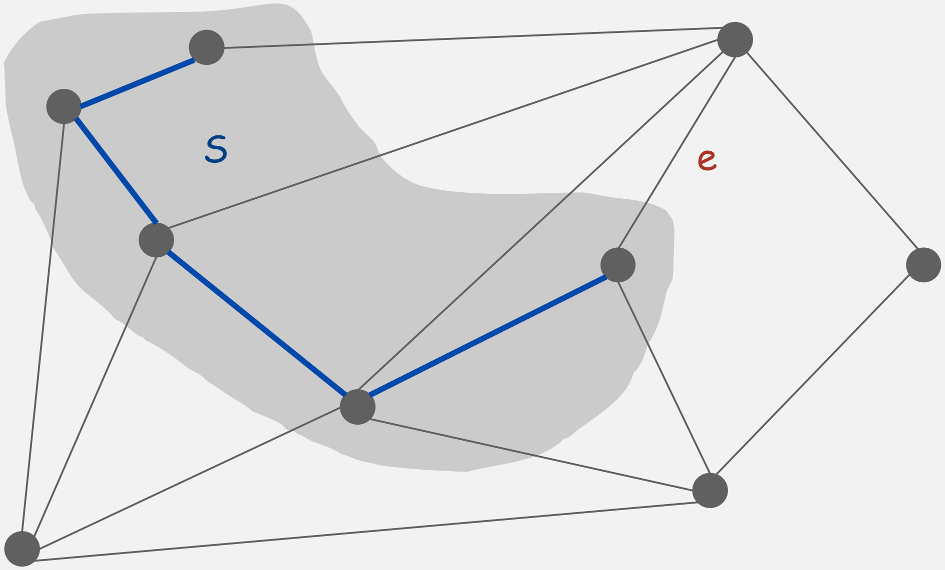
0-1	0.32
0-2	0.29
0-5	0.60
0-6	0.51
0-7	0.31
1-7	0.21
3-4	0.34
3-5	0.18
4-5	0.40
4-6	0.51
4-7	0.46
6-7	0.25

Prim's algorithm correctness proof

Proposition. Prim's algorithm computes the MST.

Pf.

- Let S be the subset of vertices in current tree T.
- Prim adds the min weight edge e with exactly one endpoint in S.
- Edge e is in the MST (cut property). ▪

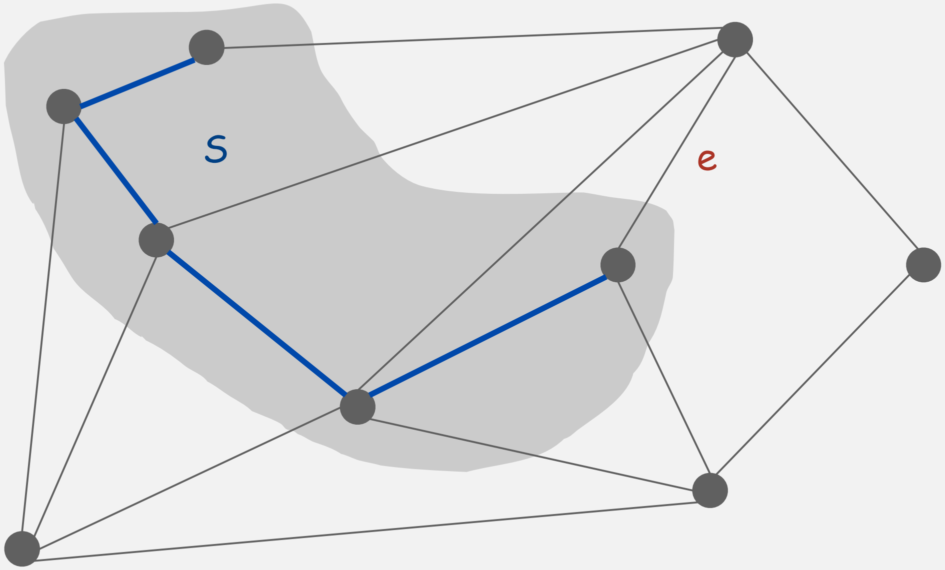


Prim implementation challenge

Problem. Find min weight edge with exactly one endpoint in S.

How difficult?

- O(E) time. ← try all edges
- O(V) time.
- O(log E) time. ← use a priority queue !
- O(log* E) time.
- Constant time.

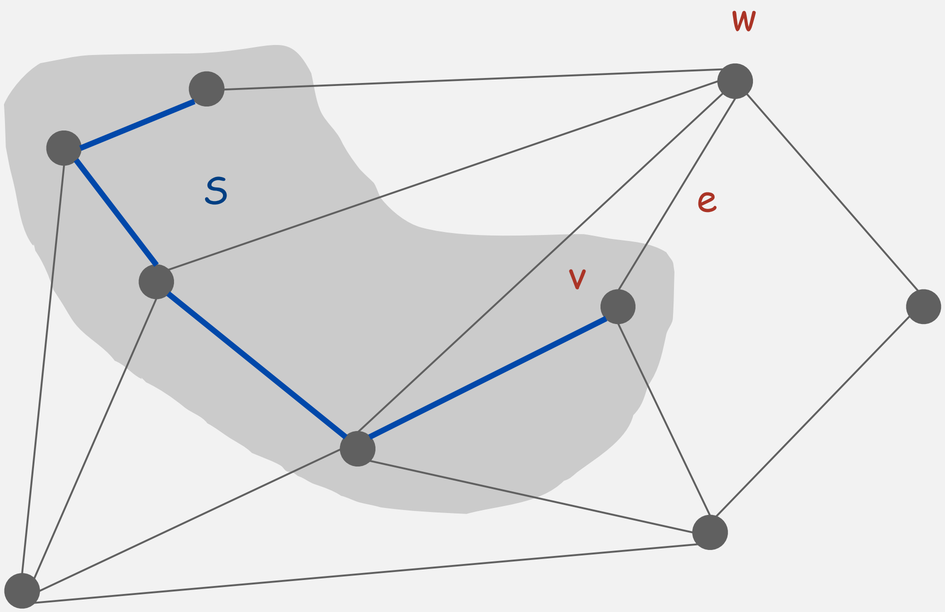


Prim's algorithm implementation (lazy)

Problem. Find min weight edge with exactly one endpoint in S.

Efficient solution. Maintain a PQ of edges with (at least) one endpoint in S.

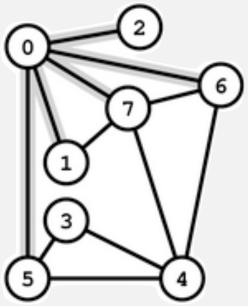
- Delete min to determine next edge e = v-w to add to T.
- Disregard if both v and w are in S.
- Let w be vertex not in S:
  - add to PQ any edge incident to w (assuming other endpoint not in S)
  - add w to S



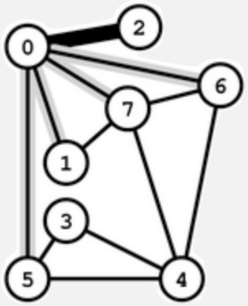
Prim's algorithm example: lazy implementation

Use PQ: key = edge.

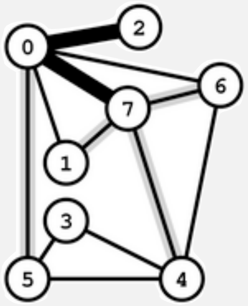
(lazy version leaves some obsolete entries on the PQ)



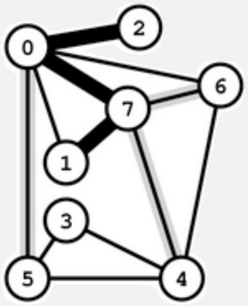
0-2 0-7 0-1
0-6 0-5



0-7 0-1 0-6 0-5

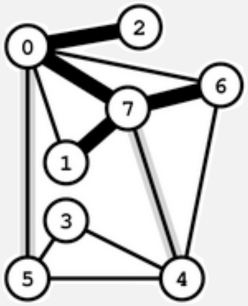


7-1 7-6 0-1
7-4 0-6 0-5

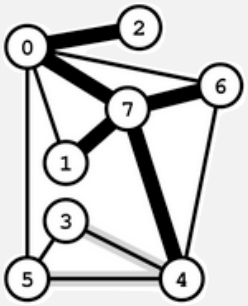


7-6 0-1 7-4
0-6 0-5

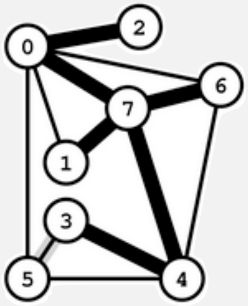
black = PQ edge with exactly one endpoint in S, sorted by weight
gray = PQ edge with both endpoints in S (obsolete)



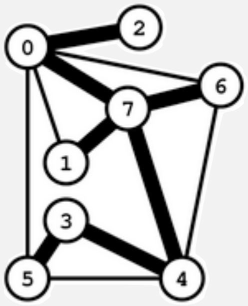
0-1 7-4 0-6
6-4 0-5



4-3 4-5 0-6
6-4 0-5



3-5 4-5 0-6
6-4 0-5



4-5 0-6 6-4 0-5

0-1	0.32
0-2	0.29
0-5	0.60
0-6	0.51
0-7	0.31
1-7	0.21
3-4	0.34
3-5	0.18
4-5	0.40
4-6	0.51
4-7	0.46
6-7	0.25

Lazy implementation of Prim's algorithm

```
public class LazyPrim
{
   private boolean[] scanned;    // vertices in MST
   private Queue<Edge> mst;      // edges in the MST
   private MinPQ<Edge> pq        // the priority queue of edges

    public LazyPrim(WeightedGraph G)
    {
        scanned = new boolean[G.V()];
        mst = new Queue<Edge>();
        pq = new MinPQ<Edge>(Edge.ByWeight());
        prim(G, 0);
    }

    public Iterable<Edge> mst()
    { return mst; }

    // See next slide for prim() implementation.
}
```

comparator by edge weight
(instead of by lexicographic order)

Lazy implementation of Prim's algorithm

```
private void scan(WeightedGraph G, int v)
{
   scanned[v] = true;
   for (Edge e : G.adj(v))
      if (!scanned[e.other(v)])
         pq.insert(e);
}
```

for each edge v-w, add to PQ if w not already in S

```
private void prim(WeightedGraph G, int s)
{
   scan(G, s);
   while (!pq.isEmpty())
   {
      Edge e = pq.delMin();
      int v = e.either(), w = e.other(v);
      if (scanned[v] && scanned[w]) continue;
      mst.enqueue(e);
      if (!scanned[v]) scan(G, v);
      if (!scanned[w]) scan(G, w);
   }
}
```

repeatedly delete the min weight edge v-w from PQ

ignore if both endpoints in S

add e to MST and scan v and w

Prim's algorithm running time

Proposition. Prim's algorithm computes MST in O(E log E) time.

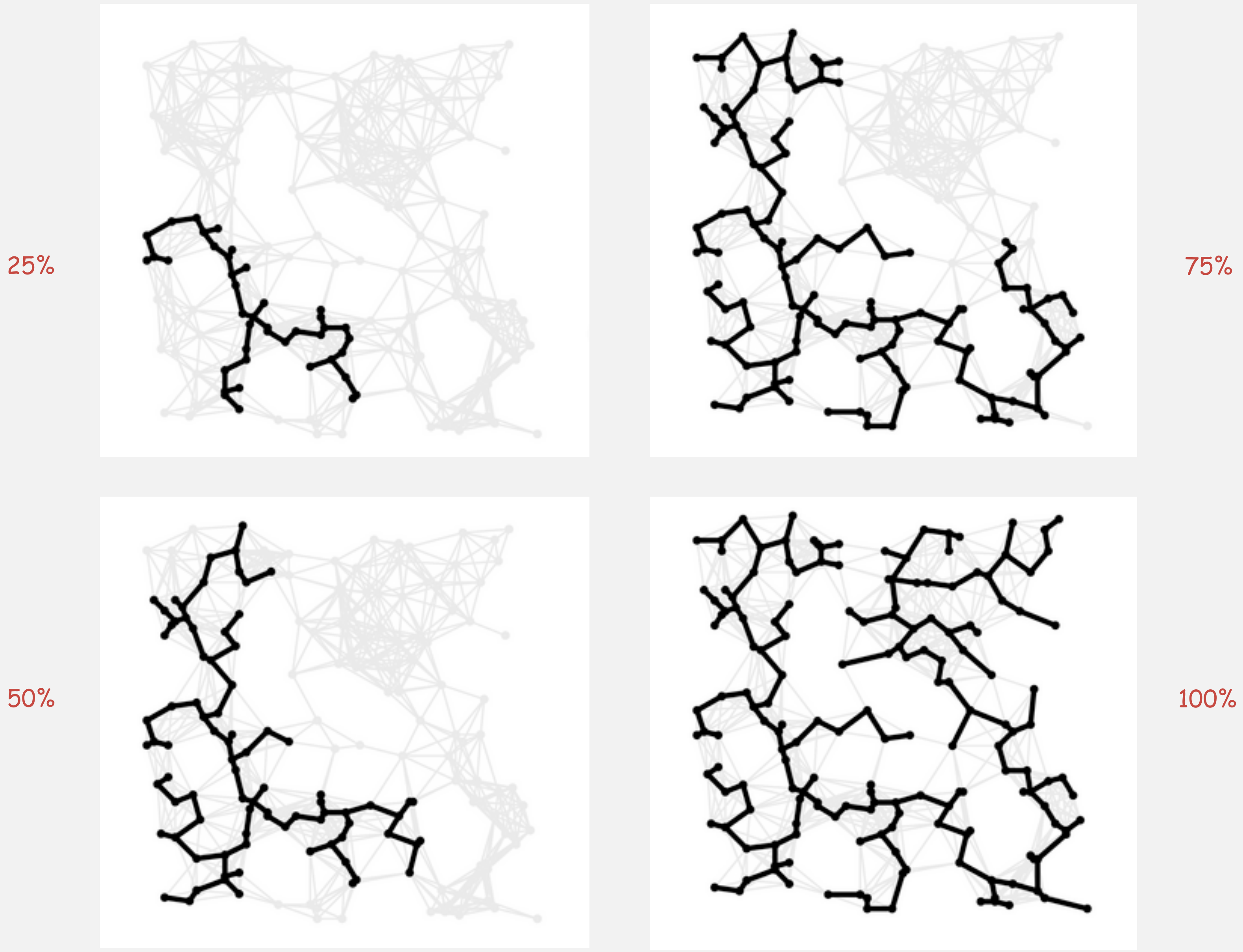
Pf.

operation	frequency	time per op
delete min	E	E log E
insert	E	E log E

Improvements.

- Stop when MST has V-1 edges.
- Eagerly eliminate obsolete edges from PQ.
- Maintain on PQ at most one edge incident to each vertex v not in T
  ⇒ at most V edges on PQ.
- Use fancier priority queue: best in theory yields O(E + V log V).

Prim's algorithm example



Removing the distinct edge weight assumption

Simplifying assumption. All edge weights are distinct.

Approach 1. Introduce tie-breaking rule for `compare()` in `ByWeight`.

```
public int compare(Edge e, Edge f)
{
   if (e.weight < f.weight) return -1;
   if (e.weight > f.weight) return +1;
   if (e.v < f.v) return -1;
   if (e.v > f.v) return +1;
   if (e.w < f.w) return -1;
   if (e.w > f.w) return +1;
   return 0;
}
```

← `return e.compareTo(f);`

Approach 2. Prim and Kruskal still find MST if equal weights!

(only our proof of correctness fails)

- weighted graph API
- cycles and cuts
- Kruskal's algorithm
- Prim's algorithm
- **advanced topics**

Does a linear-time MST algorithm exist?

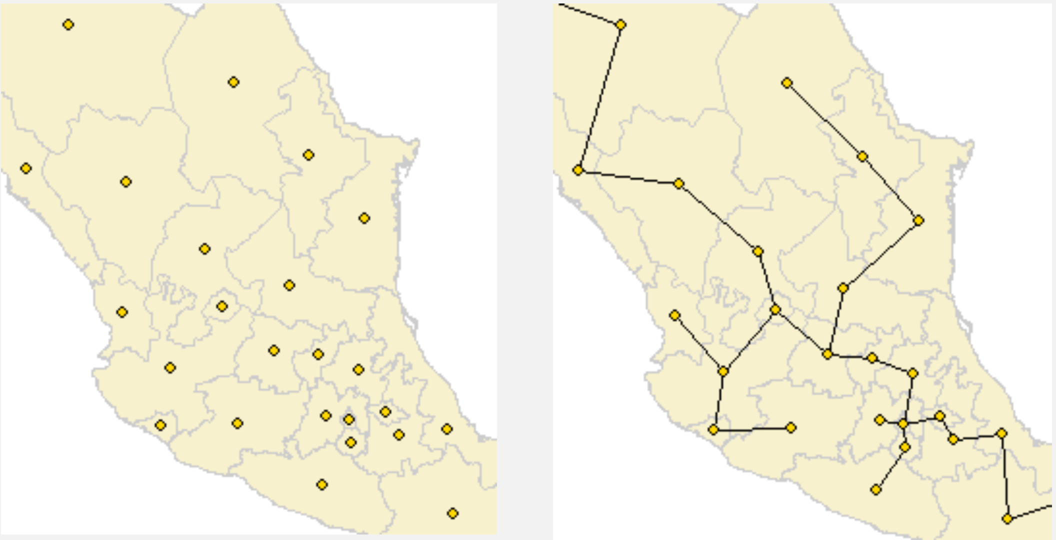
deterministic compare-based MST algorithms

year	worst case	discovered by
1975	$E \log \log V$	Yao
1976	$E \log \log V$	Cheriton-Tarjan
1984	$E \log^* V$, $E + V \log V$	Fredman-Tarjan
1986	$E \log (\log^* V)$	Gabow-Galil-Spencer-Tarjan
1997	$E\, \alpha(V) \log \alpha(V)$	Chazelle
2000	$E\, \alpha(V)$	Chazelle
2002	optimal	Pettie-Ramachandran
20xx	E	???

Remark. Linear-time randomized MST algorithm (Karger-Klein-Tarjan 1995).

Euclidean MST

Given N points in the plane, find MST connecting them, where the distances between point pairs are their Euclidean distances.



Brute force. Compute ~ $N^2/2$ distances and run Prim's algorithm.

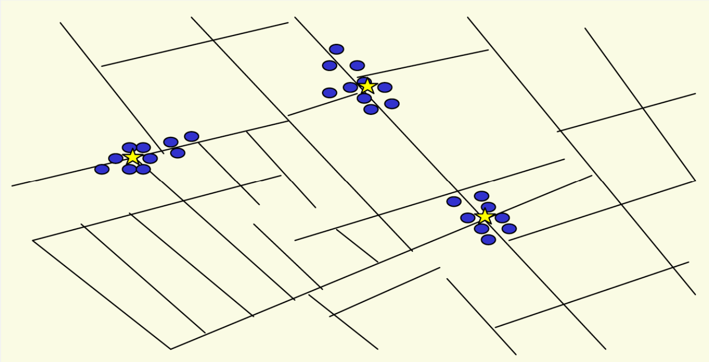
Ingenuity. Exploit geometry and do it in ~ c N lg N.

Scientific application: clustering

k-clustering. Divide a set of objects classify into k coherent groups.

Distance function. Numeric value specifying "closeness" of two objects.

Goal. Divide into clusters so that objects in different clusters are far apart.



outbreak of cholera deaths in London in 1850s (Nina Mishra)

Applications.

- Routing in mobile ad hoc networks.
- Document categorization for web search.
- Similarity searching in medical image databases.
- Skycat: cluster 10^9 sky objects into stars, quasars, galaxies.

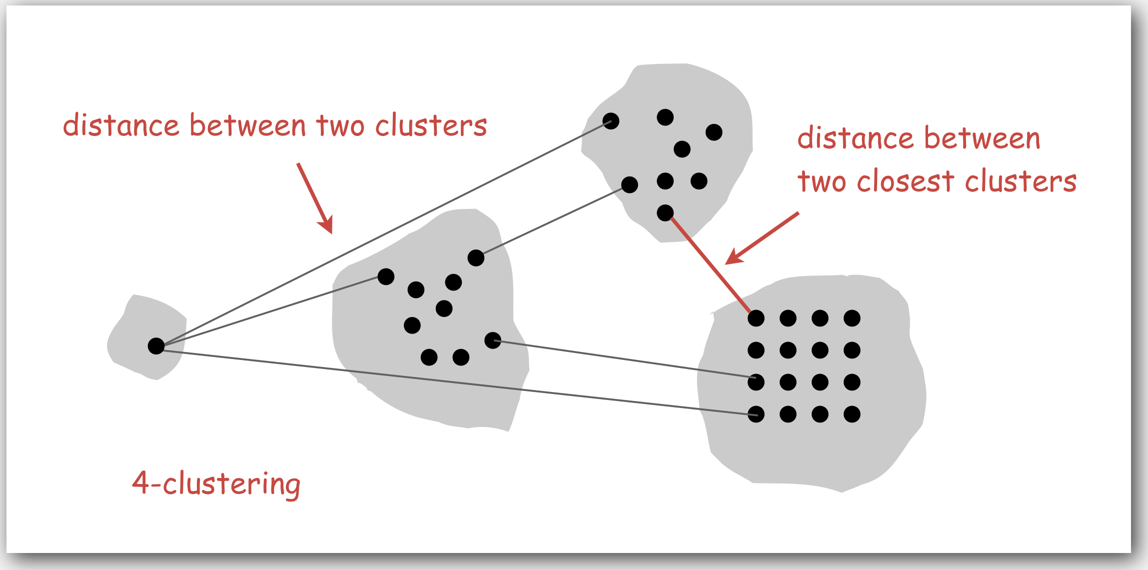
Single-link clustering

k-clustering. Divide a set of objects classify into k coherent groups.

Distance function. Numeric value specifying "closeness" of two objects.

Single link. Distance between two clusters equals the distance between the two closest objects (one in each cluster).

Single-link clustering. Given an integer k, find a k-clustering that maximizes the distance between two closest clusters.

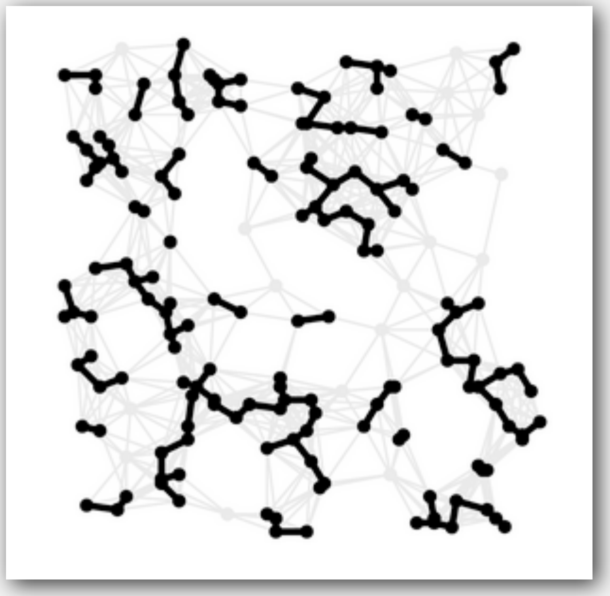


Single-link clustering algorithm

"Well-known" algorithm for single-link clustering:

- Form V clusters of one object each.
- Find the closest pair of objects such that each object is in a different cluster, and merge the two clusters.
- Repeat until there are exactly k clusters.

Observation. This is Kruskal's algorithm (stop when k connected components).



Alternate solution. Run Prim's algorithm and delete k-1 max weight edges.

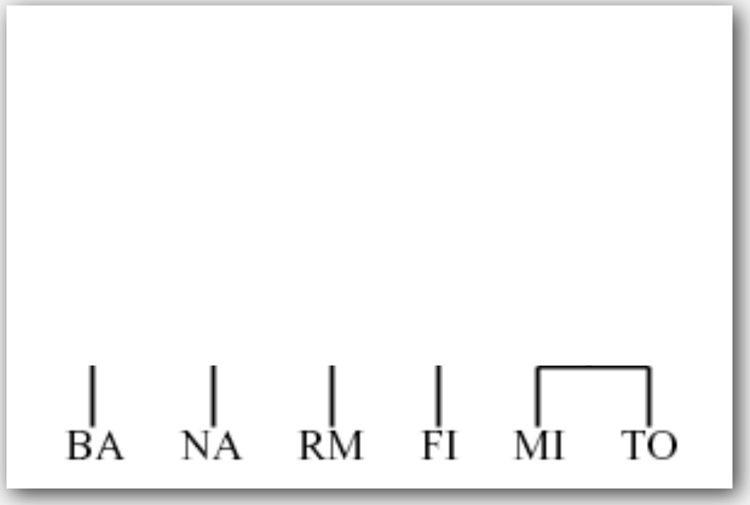
Dendrogram

Dendrogram. Tree diagram that illustrates arrangement of clusters.

http://home.dei.polimi.it/matteucc/Clustering/tutorial_html/hierarchical.html

Dendrogram

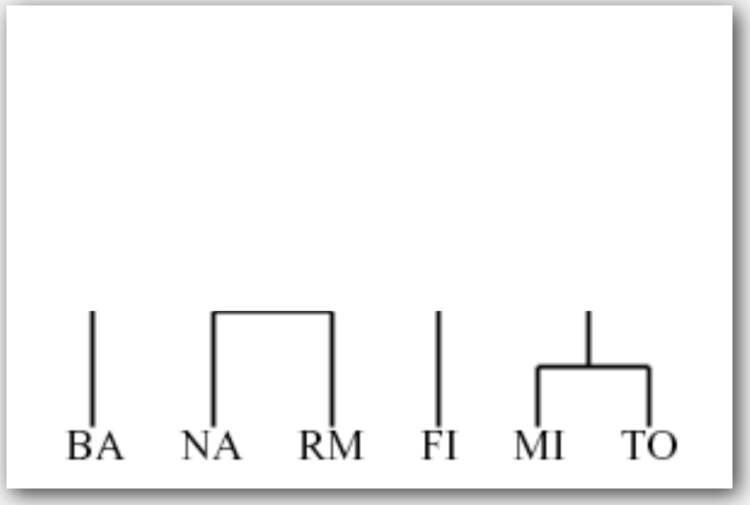
Dendrogram. Tree diagram that illustrates arrangement of clusters.



http://home.dei.polimi.it/matteucc/Clustering/tutorial_html/hierarchical.html

Dendrogram

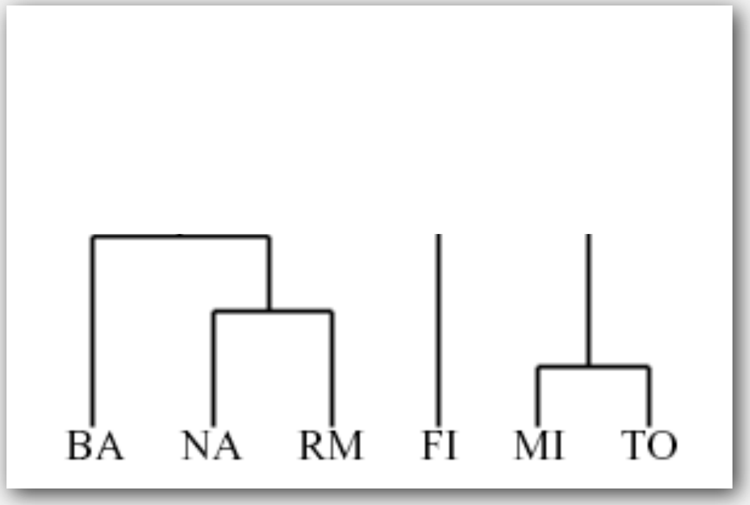
Dendrogram. Tree diagram that illustrates arrangement of clusters.



http://home.dei.polimi.it/matteucc/Clustering/tutorial_html/hierarchical.html

Dendrogram

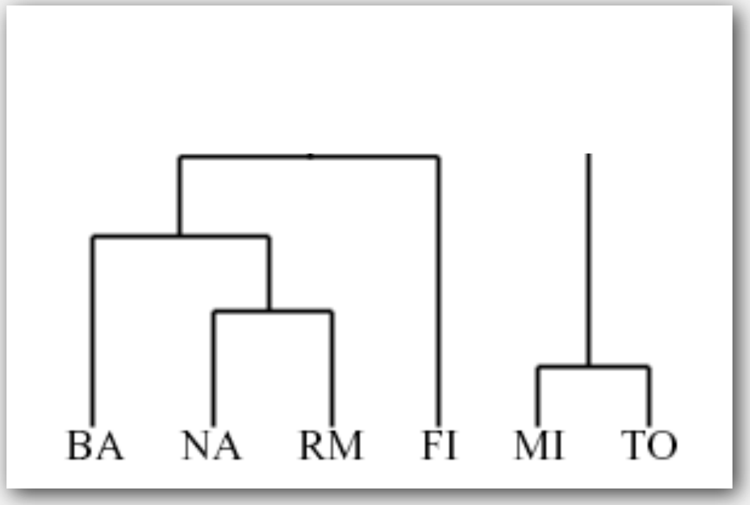
Dendrogram. Tree diagram that illustrates arrangement of clusters.



http://home.dei.polimi.it/matteucc/Clustering/tutorial_html/hierarchical.html

Dendrogram

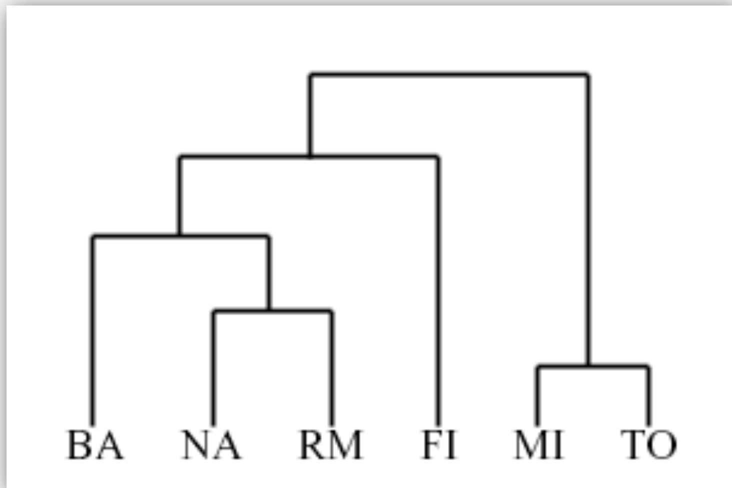
Dendrogram. Tree diagram that illustrates arrangement of clusters.



http://home.dei.polimi.it/matteucc/Clustering/tutorial_html/hierarchical.html

Dendrogram

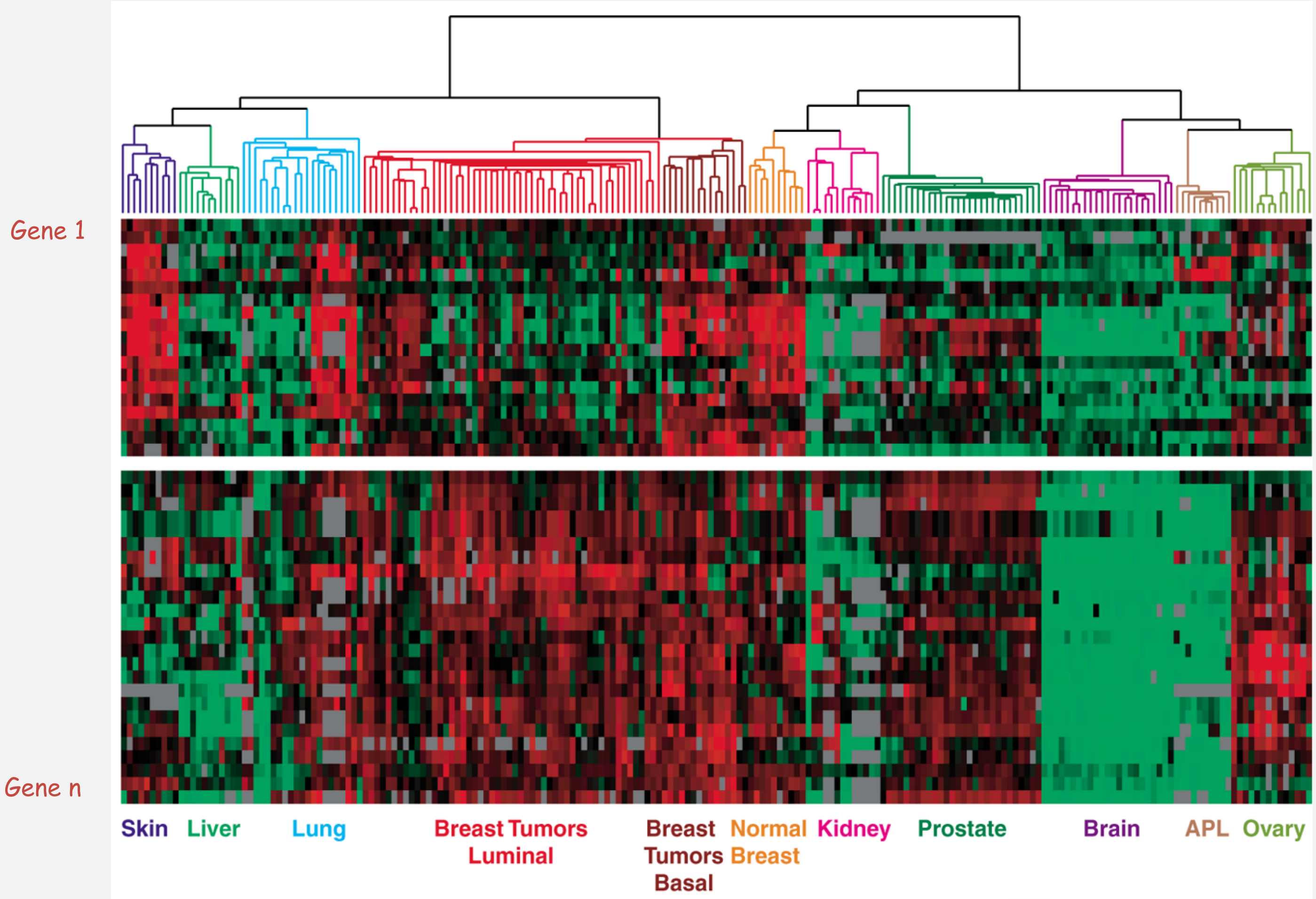
Dendrogram. Tree diagram that illustrates arrangement of clusters.



http://home.dei.polimi.it/matteucc/Clustering/tutorial_html/hierarchical.html

Dendrogram of cancers in human

Tumors in similar tissues cluster together.



Reference: Botstein & Brown group

🟥 gene expressed

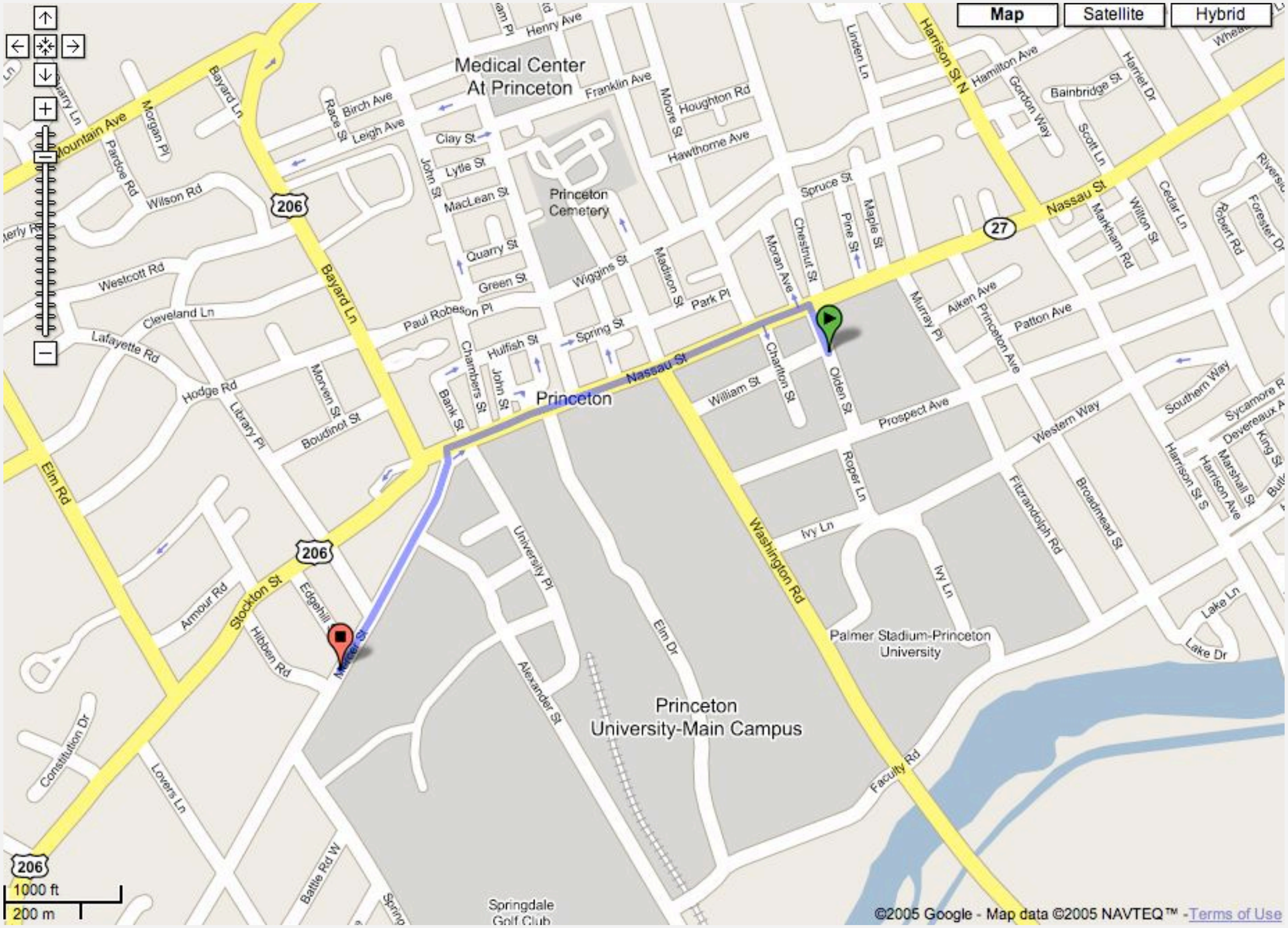
🟩 gene not expressed

4.4 Shortest Paths

- Dijkstra's algorithm
- implementation
- negative weights

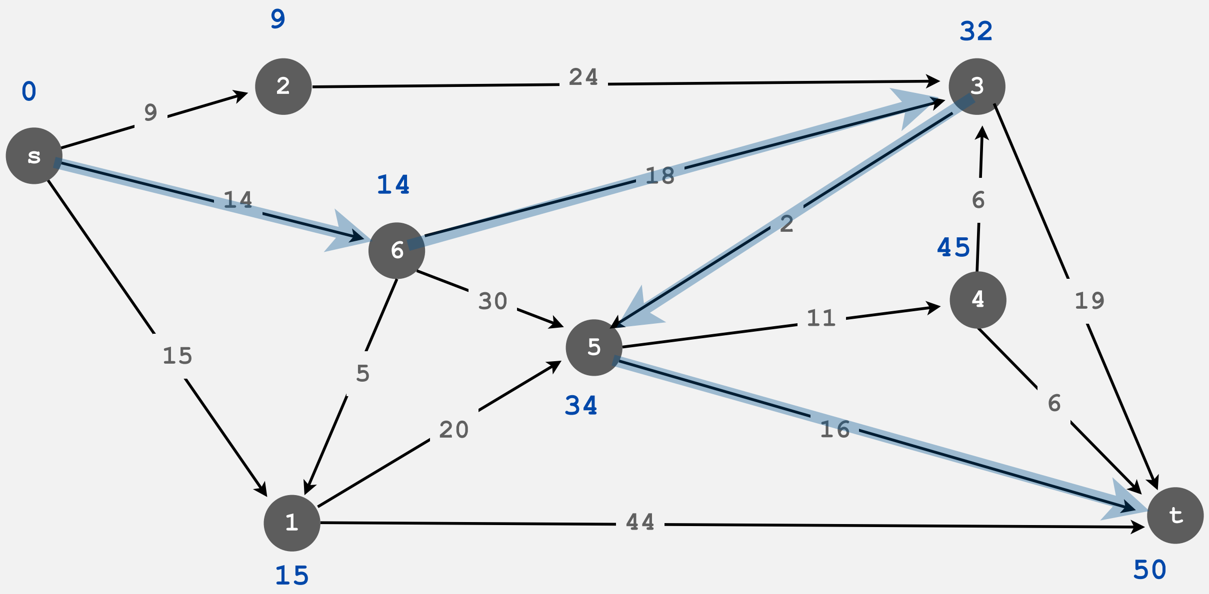
References: Algorithms in Java, 3rd edition, Chapter 21

Google maps


Map
Satellite
Hybrid
Medical Center
At Princeton
Princeton
Cemetery
Princeton
Princeton
University-Main Campus
Palmer Stadium-Princeton
University
Springdale
Golf Club
Mountain Ave
Bayard Ln
Morgan Pl
Pardoe Rd
Wilson Rd
Westcott Rd
Cleveland Ln
Lafayette Rd
Hodge Rd
Library Pl
Boudinot St
Morven St
Elm Rd
Armour Rd
Stockton St
Hibben Rd
Edgehill
Mercer St
Constitution Dr
Lovers Ln
Battle Rd W
Race St
Birch Ave
Leigh Ave
Clay St
Lytle St
John St
MacLean St
Quarry St
Green St
Paul Robeson Pl
Hulfish St
Chambers St
Bank St
John St
Henry Ave
Franklin Ave
Moore St
Houghton Rd
Hawthorne Ave
Wiggins St
Spring St
Madison St
Park Pl
Nassau St
Nassau St
Linden Ln
Spruce St
Pine St
Maple St
Chestnut St
Moran Ave
Charlton St
William St
Olden St
Prospect Ave
Roper Ln
Ivy Ln
Ivy Ln
Washington Rd
University Pl
Alexander St
Elm Dr
Faculty Rd
Harrison St N
Hamilton Ave
Gordon Way
Bainbridge St
Hamlet Dr
Scott Ln
Markham Rd
Wilton St
Cedar Ln
Robert Rd
Forester Dr
Murray Pl
Aiken Ave
Princeton Ave
Patton Ave
Western Way
Southern Way
Fitzrandolph Rd
Broadmead St
Harrison St S
Harrison Ave
Marshall St
Sycamore Rd
Devereaux Ave
King St
Lake Ln
Lake Dr
206
206
206
27
1000 ft
200 m
©2005 Google - Map data ©2005 NAVTEQ™ - Terms of Use

Shortest paths in a weighted digraph

Given a weighted digraph `G`, find the shortest directed path from `s` to `t`.



shortest path: s→6→3→5→t

cost: 14 + 18 + 2 + 16 = 50

Shortest path versions

Which vertices?

- From one vertex to another.
- From one vertex to every other.
- Between all pairs of vertices.

Restrictions on edge weights?

- Nonnegative weights.
- Arbitrary weights.
- Euclidean weights.

Early history of shortest paths algorithms

Shimbel (1955). Information networks.

Ford (1956). RAND, economics of transportation.

Leyzorek, Gray, Johnson, Ladew, Meaker, Petry, Seitz (1957).
Combat Development Dept. of the Army Electronic Proving Ground.

Dantzig (1958). Simplex method for linear programming.

Bellman (1958). Dynamic programming.

Moore (1959). Routing long-distance telephone calls for Bell Labs.

Dijkstra (1959). Simpler and faster version of Ford's algorithm.

Shortest path applications

- Maps.
- Robot navigation.
- Texture mapping.
- Typesetting in TeX.
- Urban traffic planning.
- Optimal pipelining of VLSI chip.
- Telemarketer operator scheduling.
- Subroutine in advanced algorithms.
- Routing of telecommunications messages.
- Approximating piecewise linear functions.
- Network routing protocols (OSPF, BGP, RIP).
- Exploiting arbitrage opportunities in currency exchange.
- Optimal truck routing through given traffic congestion pattern.

Reference: Network Flows: Theory, Algorithms, and Applications, R. K. Ahuja, T. L. Magnanti, and J. B. Orlin, Prentice Hall, 1993.

- Dijkstra's algorithm
- implementation
- negative weights

Edsger W. Dijkstra: select quote

" *The question of whether computers can think is like the question of whether submarines can swim.* "

" *Do only what only you can do.* "

" *In their capacity as a tool, computers will be but a ripple on the surface of our culture. In their capacity as intellectual challenge, they are without precedent in the cultural history of mankind.* "

" *The use of COBOL cripples the mind; its teaching should, therefore, be regarded as a criminal offence.* "

" *APL is a mistake, carried through to perfection. It is the language of the future for the programming techniques of the past: it creates a new generation of coding bums.* "

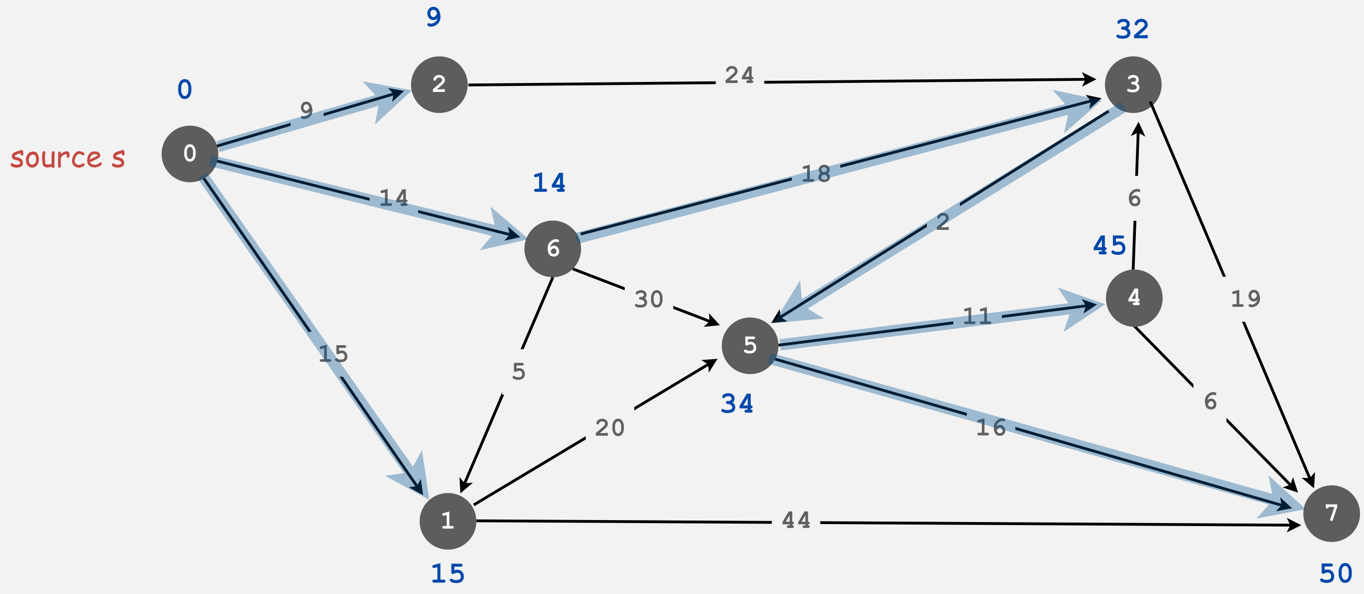
Edger Dijkstra
Turing award 1972

Single-source shortest-paths

Input. Weighted digraph G, source vertex s.

Goal. Find shortest path from s to every other vertex.

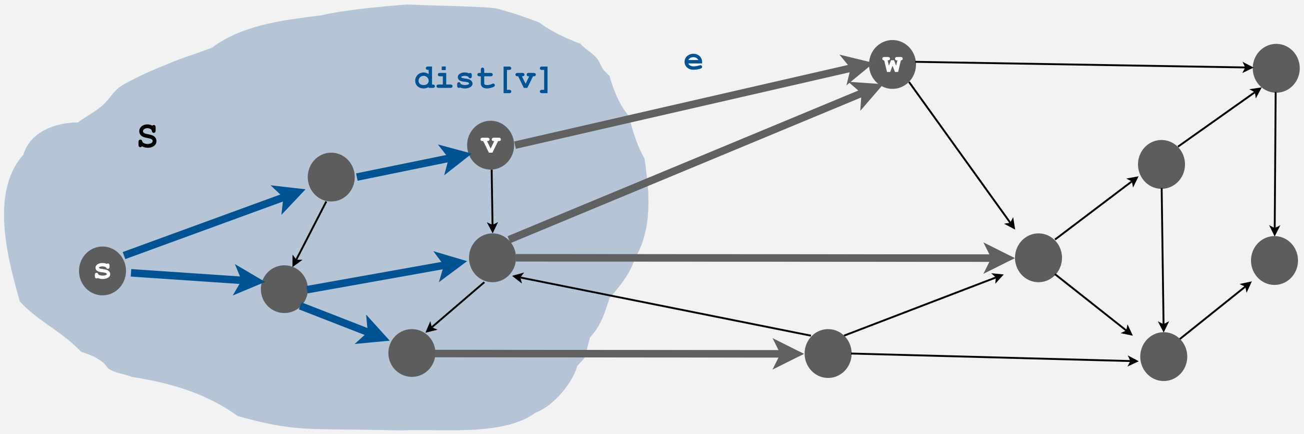
Observation. Use parent-link representation to store shortest path tree.



	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
dist[v]	0	15	9	32	45	34	14	50
pred[v]	–	0→1	0→2	6→3	5→4	3→5	0→6	5→7

Dijkstra's algorithm

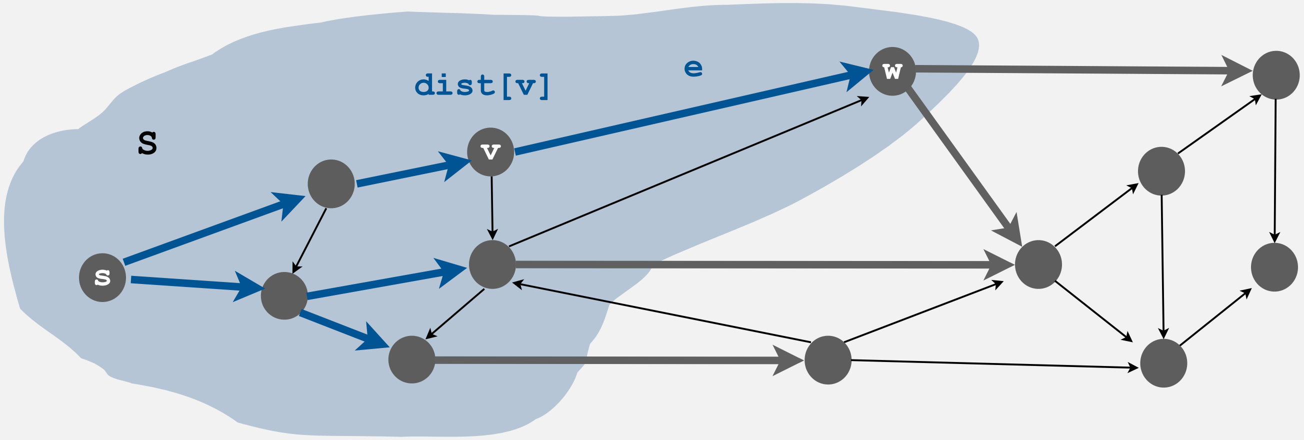
- Initialize S to `s`, `dist[s]` to `0`.
- Repeat until S contains all vertices connected to `s`:
  - find edge `e` with `v` in S and `w` not in S that minimizes `dist[v] + e.weight()`.



Dijkstra's algorithm

- Initialize S to `s`, `dist[s]` to `0`.
- Repeat until S contains all vertices connected to `s`:
  - find edge `e` with `v` in S and `w` not in S that minimizes `dist[v] + e.weight()`.
  - set `dist[w] = dist[v] + e.weight()` and `pred[w] = e`
  - add `w` to S

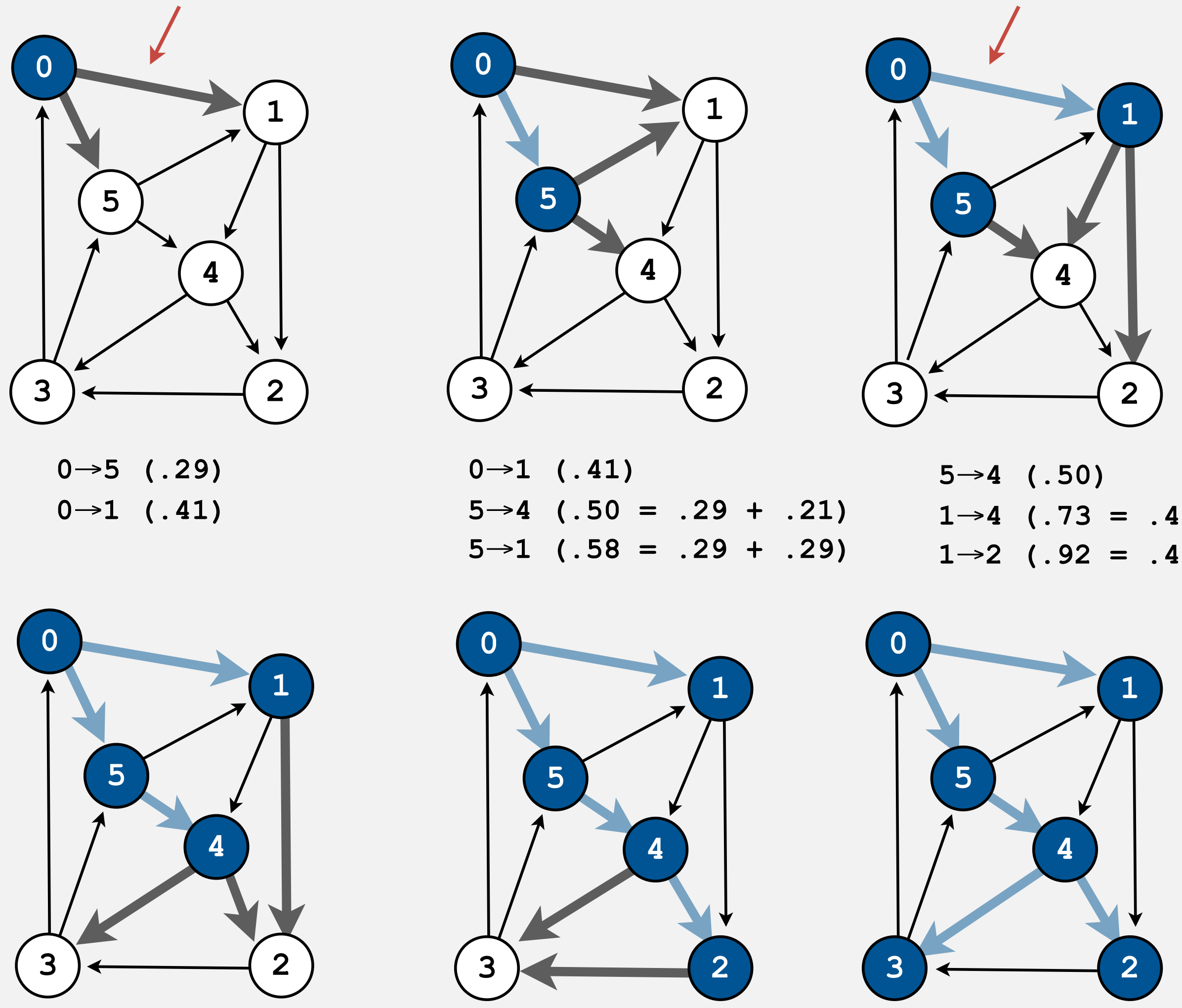
```
dist[w] = dist[v] + e.weight();
pred[w] = e;
```



Dijkstra's algorithm example

edge with v in S and w not in S

edge in shortest path tree



0→5 (.29)
0→1 (.41)

0→1 (.41)
5→4 (.50 = .29 + .21)
5→1 (.58 = .29 + .29)

5→4 (.50)
1→4 (.73 = .41 + .32)
1→2 (.92 = .41 + .51)

4→2 (.82 = .50 + .32)
4→3 (.86 = .50 + .36)
1→2 (.92)

4→3 (0.86)
2→3 (1.32 = .82 + .50)

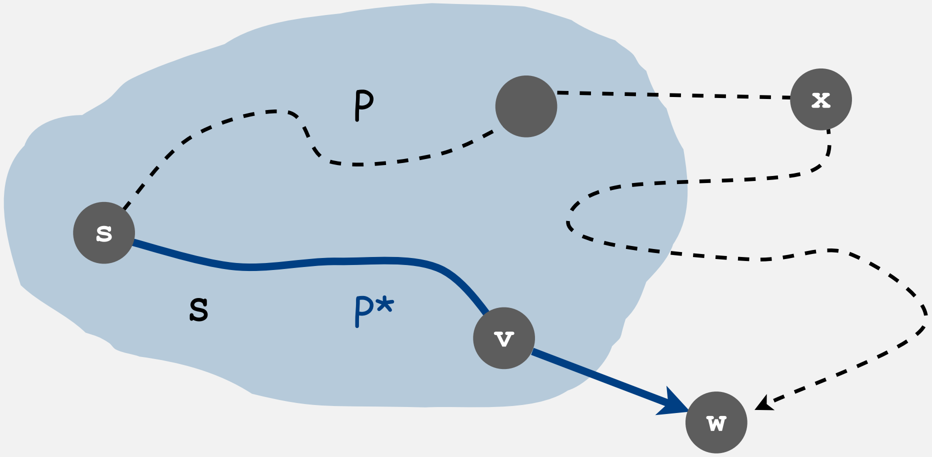
0→1	.41
0→5	.29
1→2	.51
1→4	.32
2→3	.50
3→0	.45
3→5	.38
4→2	.32
4→3	.36
5→1	.29
5→4	.21

Dijkstra's algorithm: correctness proof

Invariant. For `v` in S, `dist[v]` is the length of the shortest path from `s` to `v`.

Pf. (by induction on |S|)

- Let `w` be next vertex added to S.
- Let P* be the `s` → `w` path through `v`.
- Consider any other `s` → `w` path P, and let `x` be first node on path outside S.
- P is already as long as P* as soon as it reaches `x` by greedy choice.
- Thus, `dist[w]` is the length of the shortest path from `s` to `w`.



Shortest path trees

Remark. Dijkstra examines vertices in increasing distance from source.

- Dijkstra's algorithm
- **implementation**
- negative weights

Weighted directed graph API

public class DirectedEdge implements Comparable<DirectedEdge>		
	DirectedEdge(int v, int w, double weight)	*create a weighted edge v→w*
int	**from()**	*vertex v*
int	**to()**	*vertex w*
double	**weight()**	*the weight*

public class WeightedDigraph		*weighted digraph data type*
	WeightedDigraph(int V)	*create an empty digraph with V vertices*
	WeightedDigraph(In in)	*create a digraph from input stream*
void	**addEdge(DirectedEdge e)**	*add a weighted edge from v to w*
Iterable<DirectedEdge>	**adj(int v)**	*return an iterator over edges leaving v*
int	**V()**	*return number of vertices*

Weighted digraph: adjacency-set implementation in Java

```
public class WeightedDigraph
{
   private final int V;
   private final SET<Edge>[] adj;

   public WeightedDigraph(int V)
   {
      this.V = V;
      adj = (SET<DirectedEdge>[]) new SET[V];
      for (int v = 0; v < V; v++)
         adj[v] = new SET<DirectedEdge>();
   }

   public void addEdge(DirectedEdge e)
   {
      int v = e.from();
      adj[v].add(e);
   }

   public Iterable<DirectedEdge> adj(int v)
   {  return adj[v];   }

   public int V()
   {  return V;   }
}
```

same as weighted undirected graph, but only add edge to v's adjacency set

Weighted directed edge: implementation in Java

```
public class DirectedEdge implements Comparable<DirectedEdge>
{
   private final int v, w;
   private final double weight;

   public DirectedEdge(int v, int w, double weight)
   {
      this.v = v;
      this.w = w;
      this.weight = weight;
   }

   public int from()   {  return v;         }
   public int to()     {  return w;         }
   public int weight() {  return weight;    }

   public int compareTo(DirectedEdge that)
   {
      if (this.v < that.v) return -1;
      if (this.v > that.v) return +1;
      if (this.w < that.w) return -1;
      if (this.w > that.w) return +1;
      if (this.weight < that.weight) return -1;
      if (this.weight > that.weight) return +1;
      return 0;
    }
}
```

same as **`Edge`**, except **`from()`** and **`to()`** replace **`either()`** and **`other()`**

for use in a symbol table (allow parallel edges with different weights)

Shortest path data type

Design pattern.

- **`Dijkstra`** class is a **`WeightedDigraph`** client.
- Client query methods return distance and path iterator.

`public class Dijkstra`	
`Dijkstra(WeightedDigraph G, int s)`	*shortest path from s in graph G*
`double distanceTo(int v)`	*length of shortest path from s to v*
`Iterable <DirectedEdge> path(int v)`	*shortest path from s to v*

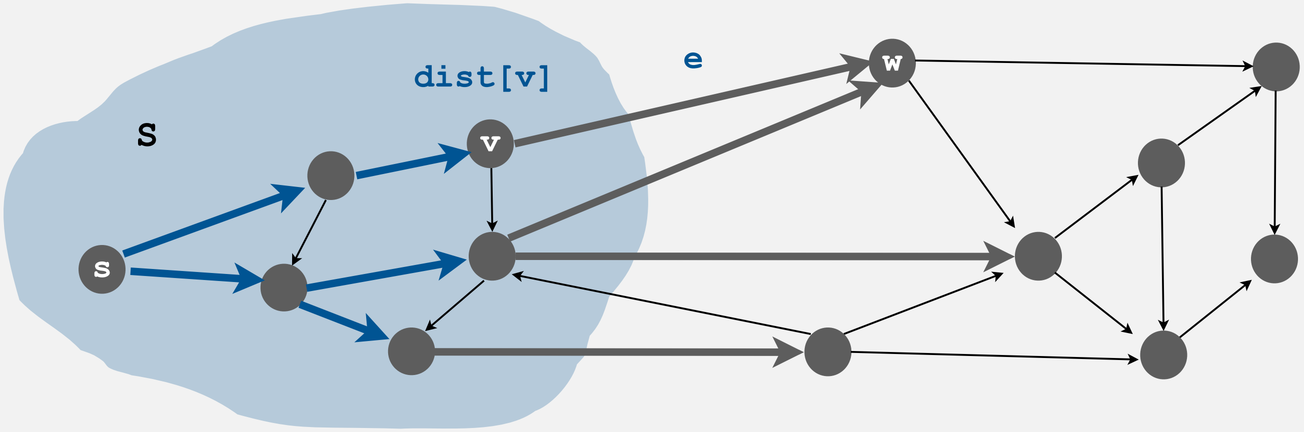
```
In in = new In("network.txt");
WeightedDigraph G = new WeightedDigraph(in);
int s = 0, t = G.V() - 1;
Dijktra dijkstra = new Dijkstra(G, s);
StdOut.println("distance = " + dijkstra.distanceTo(t));
for (DirectedEdge e : dijkstra.path(t))
    StdOut.println(e);
```

Dijkstra implementation challenge

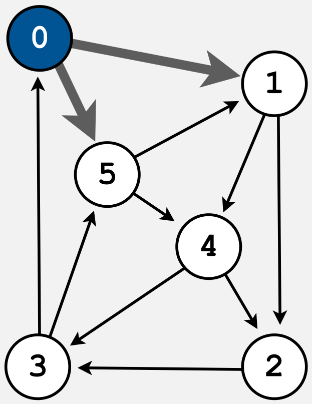
Find edge `e` with `v` in S and `w` not in S that minimizes `dist[v] + e.weight()`.

How difficult?

- Intractable.
- O(E) time. ← try all edges
- O(V) time.
- O(log E) time. ← Dijkstra with a binary heap
- O(log* E) time.
- Constant time.

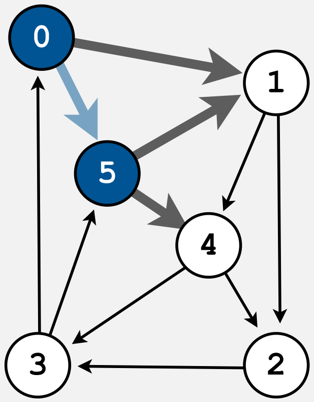


Lazy Dijkstra's algorithm example

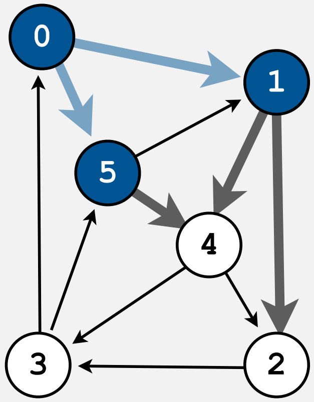


0→5 (.29)
0→1 (.41)

priority queue

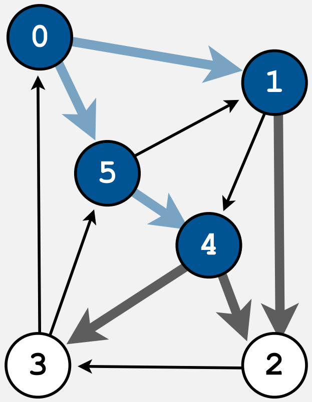


0→1 (.41)
5→4 (.50 = .29 + .21)
5→1 (.58 = .29 + .29)

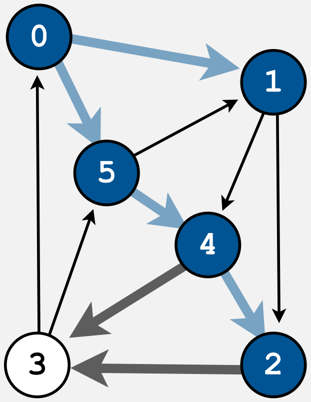


5→4 (.50)
1→4 (.73 = .41 + .32)
1→2 (.92 = .41 + .51)

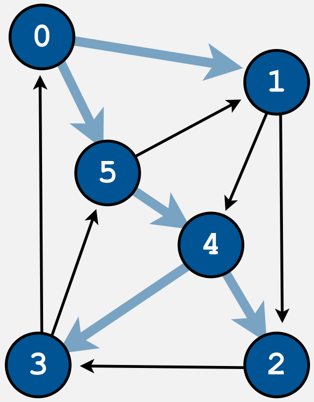
0→1	.41
0→5	.29
1→2	.51
1→4	.32
2→3	.50
3→0	.45
3→5	.38
4→2	.32
4→3	.36
5→1	.29
5→4	.21



1→4 (.73)
4→2 (.82 = .50 + .32)
4→3 (.86 = .50 + .36)
1→2 (.92)



4→3 (0.86)
1→2 (.92)
2→3 (1.32 = .82 + .50)



1→2 (.92)
2→3 (1.32)

Lazy implementation of Dijkstra's algorithm

```
public class LazyDijkstra
{
   private boolean[] scanned;
   private double[] dist;
   private DirectedEdge[] pred;
   private MinPQ<DirectedEdge> pq;

   private class ByDistanceFromSource implements Comparator<DirectedEdge>
   {
      public int compare(DirectedEdge e, DirectedEdge f) {
         double dist1 = dist[e.from()] + e.weight();
         double dist2 = dist[f.from()] + f.weight();
         if      (dist1 < dist2) return -1;
         else if (dist1 > dist2) return +1;
         else                    return  0;
      }
   }

   public LazyDijkstra(WeightedDigraph G, int s) {
      scanned = new boolean[G.V()];
      pred = new DirectedEdge[G.V()];
      dist = new double[G.V()];
      pq = new MinPQ<DirectedEdge>(new ByDistanceFromSource());
      dijkstra(G, s);
   }
```

compare edges in pq by `dist[v] + e.weight()`

Lazy implementation of Dijkstra's algorithm

```
private void dijkstra(WeightedDigraph G, int s)
{
   scan(G, s);
   while (!pq.isEmpty()) {
      DirectedEdge e = pq.delMin();
      int v = e.from(), w = e.to();
      if (scanned[w]) continue;
         pred[w] = e;
         dist[w] = dist[v] + e.weight();
         scan(G, w);
   }
}
```

both endpoints in S

found shortest path to w

```
private void scan(WeightedDigraph G, int v) {
   scanned[v] = true;
   for (DirectedEdge e : G.adj(v))
      if (!scanned[e.to()]) pq.insert(e);
}
```

add all edges v->w to pq,
provided w not already in S

Dijkstra's algorithm running time

Proposition. Dijkstra's algorithm computes shortest paths in O(E log E) time.

Pf.

operation	frequency	time per op
delete min	E	log E
insert	E	log E

Improvements.

- Eagerly eliminate obsolete edges from PQ.
- Maintain on PQ at most one edge incident to each vertex v not in T
  ⇒ at most V edges on PQ.
- Use fancier priority queue: best in theory yields O(E + V log V).

Priority-first search

Insight. All of our graph-search methods are the same algorithm!

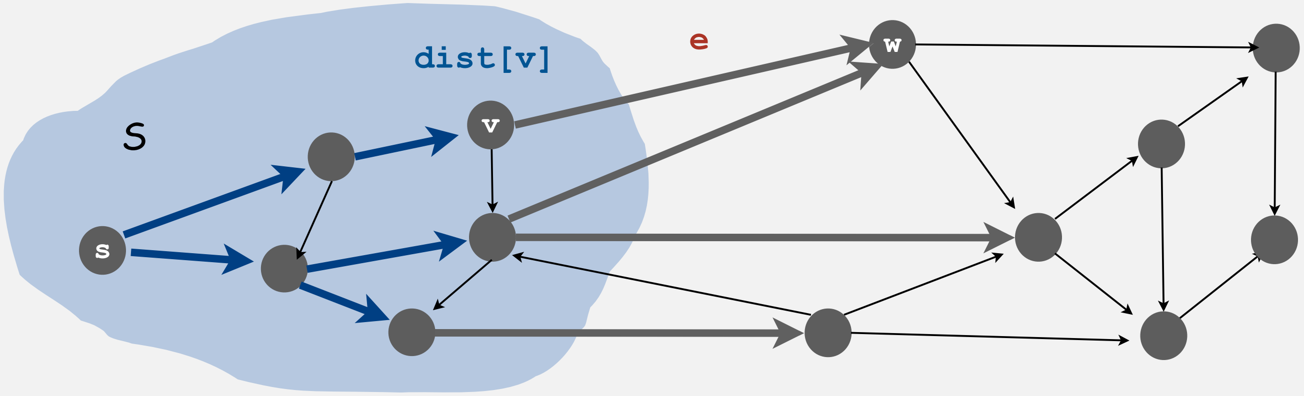
- Maintain a set of explored vertices S.
- Grow S by exploring edges with exactly one endpoint leaving S.

DFS. Take edge from vertex which was discovered most recently.

BFS. Take edge from vertex which was discovered least recently.

Prim. Take edge of minimum weight.

Dijkstra. Take edge to vertex that is closest to s.



Challenge. Express this insight in reusable Java code.

- Dijkstra's algorithm
- implementation
- **negative weights**

Currency conversion

Problem. Given currencies and exchange rates, what is best way to convert one ounce of gold to US dollars?

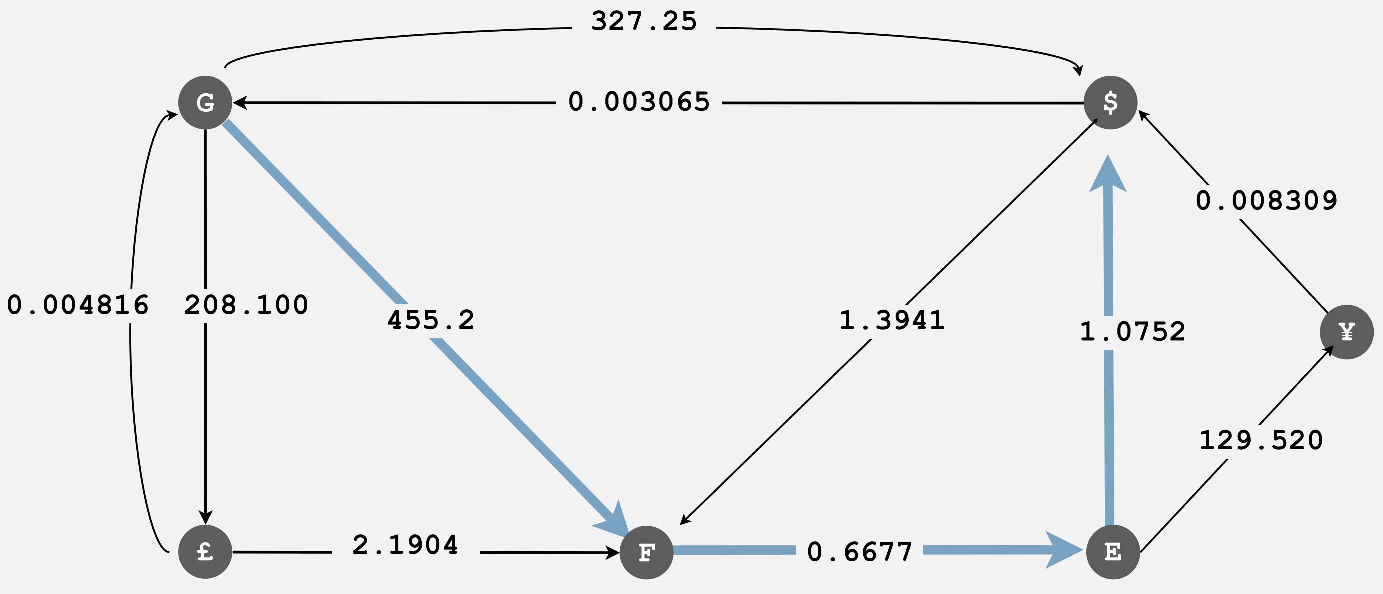
- 1 oz. gold ⇒ \$327.25.
- 1 oz. gold ⇒ £208.10 ⇒ \$327.00. [208.10 × 1.5714]
- 1 oz. gold ⇒ 455.2 Francs ⇒ 304.39 Euros ⇒ \$327.28. [455.2 × .6677 × 1.0752]

currency	£	Euro	¥	Franc	$	Gold
UK pound	1.0000	0.6853	0.005290	0.4569	0.6368	208.100
Euro	1.45999	1.0000	0.007721	0.6677	0.9303	304.028
Japanese Yen	189.50	129.520	1.0000	85.4694	120.400	39346.7
Swiss Franc	2.1904	1.4978	0.01574	1.0000	1.3941	455.200
US dollar	1.5714	1.0752	0.008309	0.7182	1.0000	327.250
Gold (oz.)	0.004816	0.003295	0.0000255	0.002201	0.003065	1.0000

Currency conversion

Graph formulation.

- Vertex = currency.
- Edge = transaction, with weight equal to exchange rate.
- Find path that maximizes product of weights.

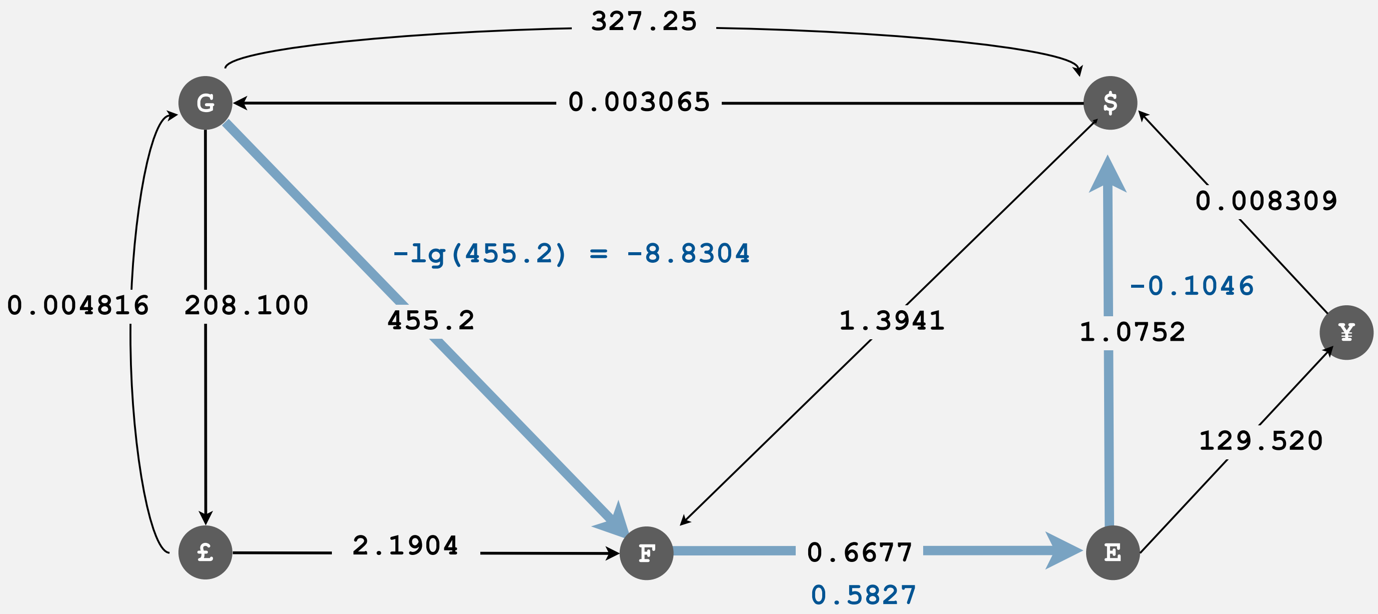


Challenge. Express as a shortest path problem.

Currency conversion

Reduce to shortest path problem by taking logs.

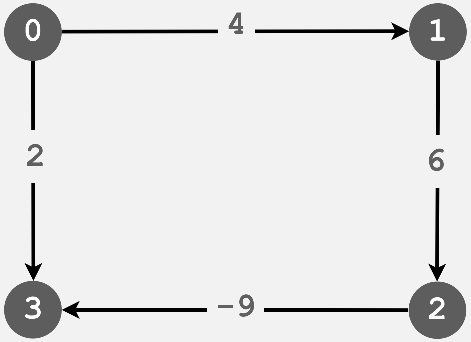
- Let weight of edge **v→w** be - lg (exchange rate from currency **v** to **w**).
- Multiplication turns to addition.
- Shortest path with given weights corresponds to best exchange sequence.



Challenge. Solve shortest path problem with negative weights.

Shortest paths with negative weights: failed attempts

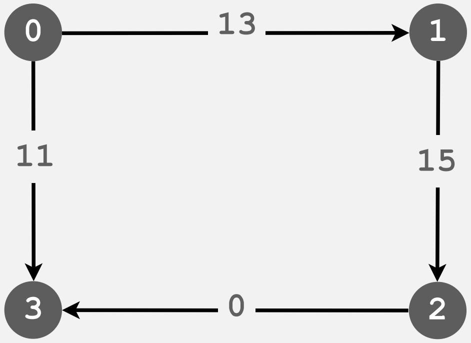
Dijkstra. Doesn't work with negative edge weights.



Dijkstra selects vertex 3 immediately after 0.

But shortest path from 0 to 3 is 0→1→2→3.

Re-weighting. Add a constant to every edge weight also doesn't work.

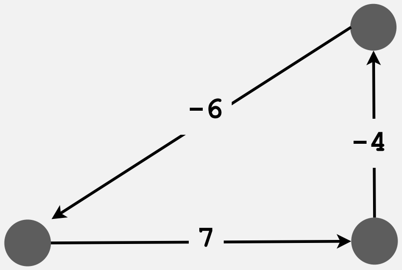


Adding 9 to each edge changes the shortest path
because it adds 9 to each edge;
wrong thing to do for paths with many edges.

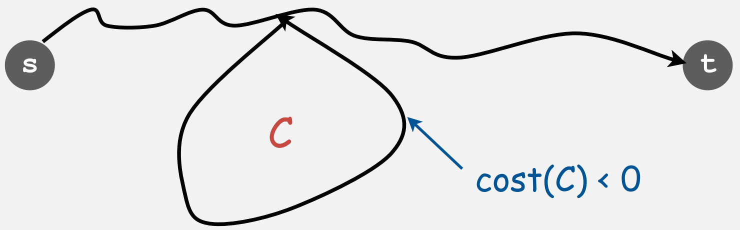
Bad news. Need a different algorithm.

Negative cycles

Def. A negative cycle is a directed cycle whose sum of edge weights is negative.



Observations. If negative cycle C is on a path from `s` to `t`, then shortest path can be made arbitrarily negative by spinning around cycle.

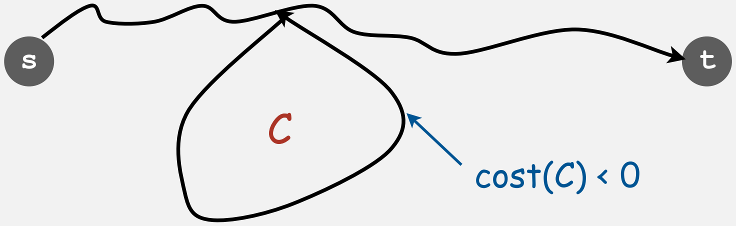


Worse news. Need a different problem.

Shortest paths with negative weights

Problem 1. Does a given digraph contain a negative cycle?

Problem 2. Find the shortest simple path from `s` to `t`.



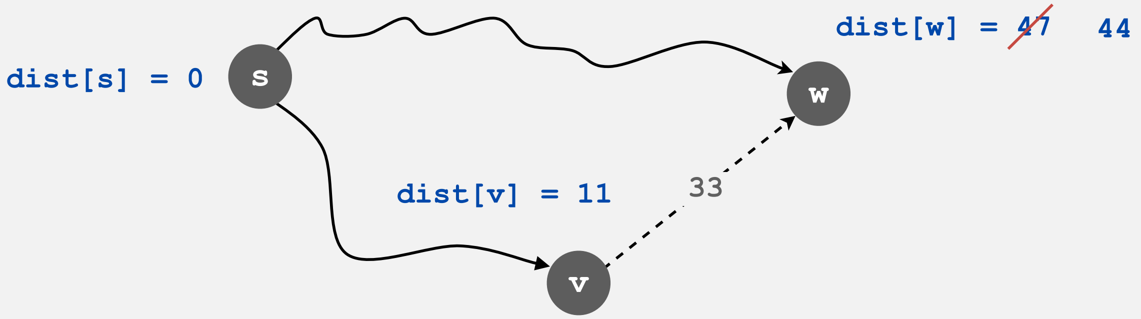
Bad news. Problem 2 is intractable.

Good news. Can solve problem 1 in O(VE) steps;
if no negative cycles, can solve problem 2 with same algorithm!

Edge relaxation

Relax edge `e` from `v` to `w`.

- `dist[v]` is length of some path from `s` to `v`.
- `dist[w]` is length of some path from `s` to `w`.
- If `v→w` gives a shorter path to `w` through `v`, update `dist[w]` and `pred[w]`.



```
int v = e.from(), w = e.to();
if (dist[w] > dist[v] + e.weight())
{
    dist[w] = dist[v] + e.weight());
    pred[w] = e;
}
```

Shortest paths with negative weights: dynamic programming algorithm

A simple solution that works!

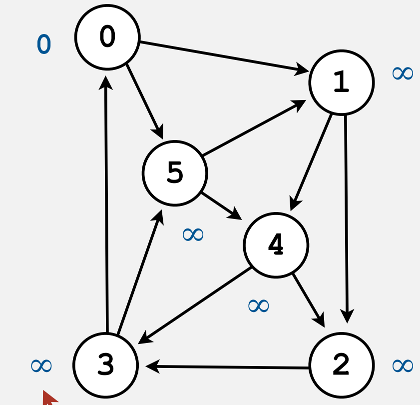
- Initialize `dist[v] = ∞`, `dist[s]= 0`.
- Repeat v times: relax each edge `e`.

```
for (int i = 1; i <= G.V(); i++)
   for (int v = 0; v < G.V(); v++)
      for (DirectedEdge e : G.adj(v))
      {
         int w = e.to();
         if (dist[w] > dist[v] + e.weight())
         {
             dist[w] = dist[v] + e.weight())
             pred[w] = e;
         }
      }
```

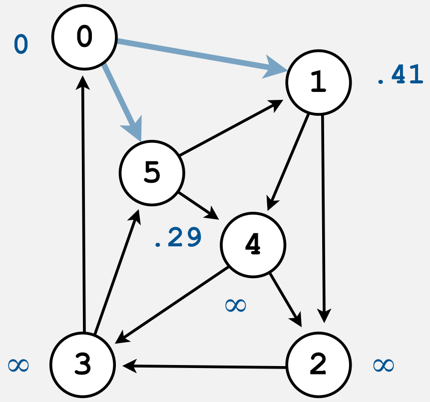
phase i

relax edge v-w

Dynamic programming algorithm trace

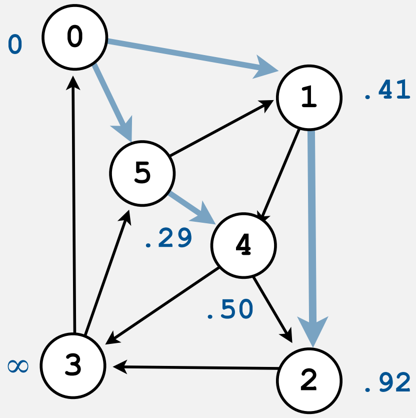


`dist[v]`



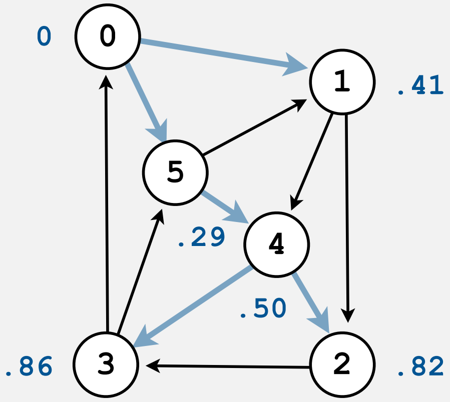
```
0→1  (.41 = 0 + .41)
0→5  (.50 = 0 + .50)
```

relaxed edges that update `dist[]`

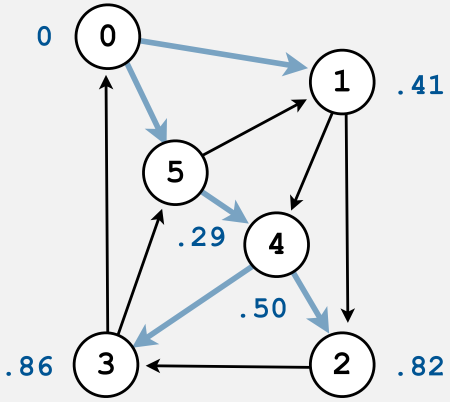


```
1→2  (.92 = .41 + .51)
1→4  (.73 = .41 + .32)
5→4  (.50 = .29 + .21)
```

0→1	.41
0→5	.29
1→2	.51
1→4	.32
2→3	.50
3→0	.45
3→5	.38
4→2	.32
4→3	.36
5→1	.29
5→4	.21



```
2→3  (1.33 = .83 + .50)
4→3  (.86 = .50 + .36)
4→2  (.82 = .50 + .32)
```



can stop early since
no entries in `dist[]` updated

Dynamic programming algorithm: analysis

Running time. Proportional to E V.

Invariant. At end of phase `i`, `dist[v]` ≤ length of any path from `s` to `v` using at most `i` edges.

Proposition. If there are no negative cycles, upon termination `dist[v]` is the length of the shortest path from from `s` to `v`.

and `pred[]` gives the shortest paths

Bellman-Ford-Moore algorithm

Observation. If `dist[v]` doesn't change during phase `i`, no need to relax any edge leaving `v` in phase `i+1`.

FIFO implementation. Maintain queue of vertices whose distance changed.

be careful to keep at most one copy of each vertex on queue

Running time.

- Proportional to EV in worst case.
- Much faster than that in practice.

Single source shortest paths implementation: cost summary

	algorithm	worst case	typical case
nonnegative costs	Dijkstra (binary heap)	*E log E*	*E*
no negative cycles	dynamic programming	*E V*	*E V*
	Bellman-Ford	*E V*	*E*

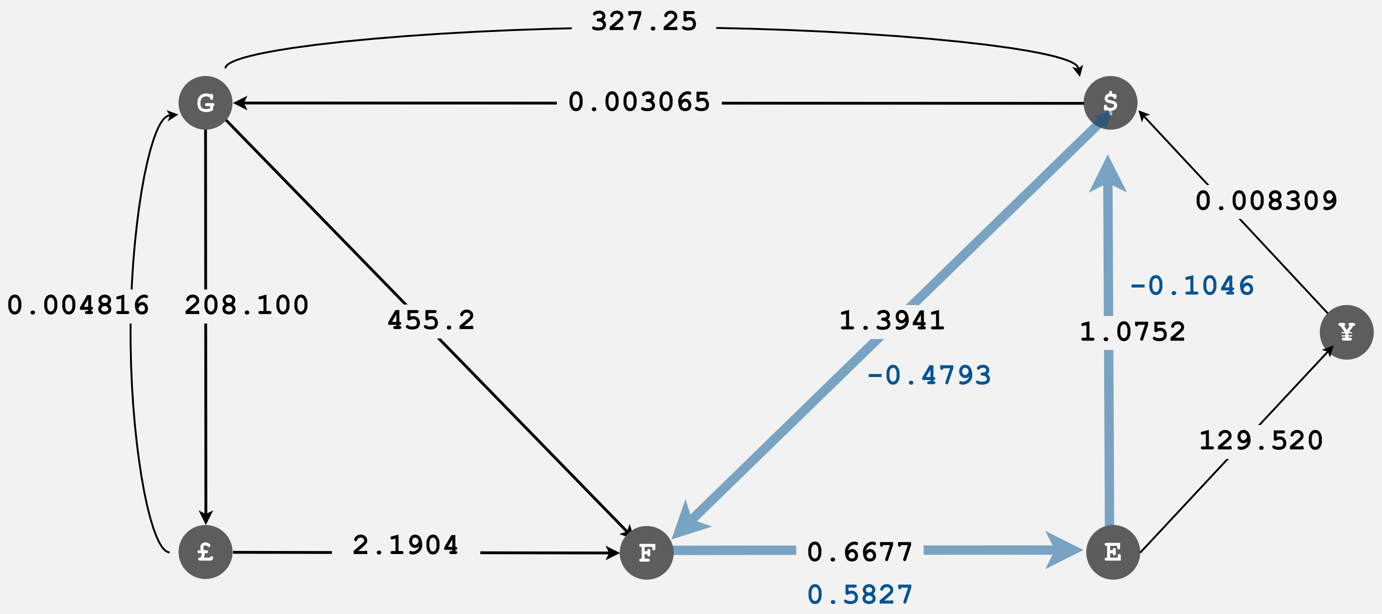
Remark 1. Negative weights makes the problem harder.

Remark 2. Negative cycles makes the problem intractable.

Shortest paths application: arbitrage

Is there an arbitrage opportunity in currency graph?

- Ex: \$1 ⇒ 1.3941 Francs ⇒ 0.9308 Euros ⇒ \$1.00084.
- Is there a negative cost cycle?



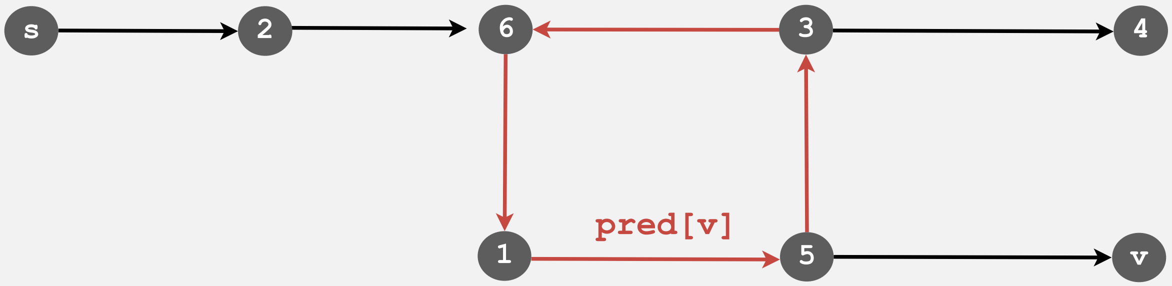
0.5827 - 0.1046 - 0.4793 < 0

Remark. Fastest algorithm is valuable!

Negative cycle detection

If there is a negative cycle reachable from s.

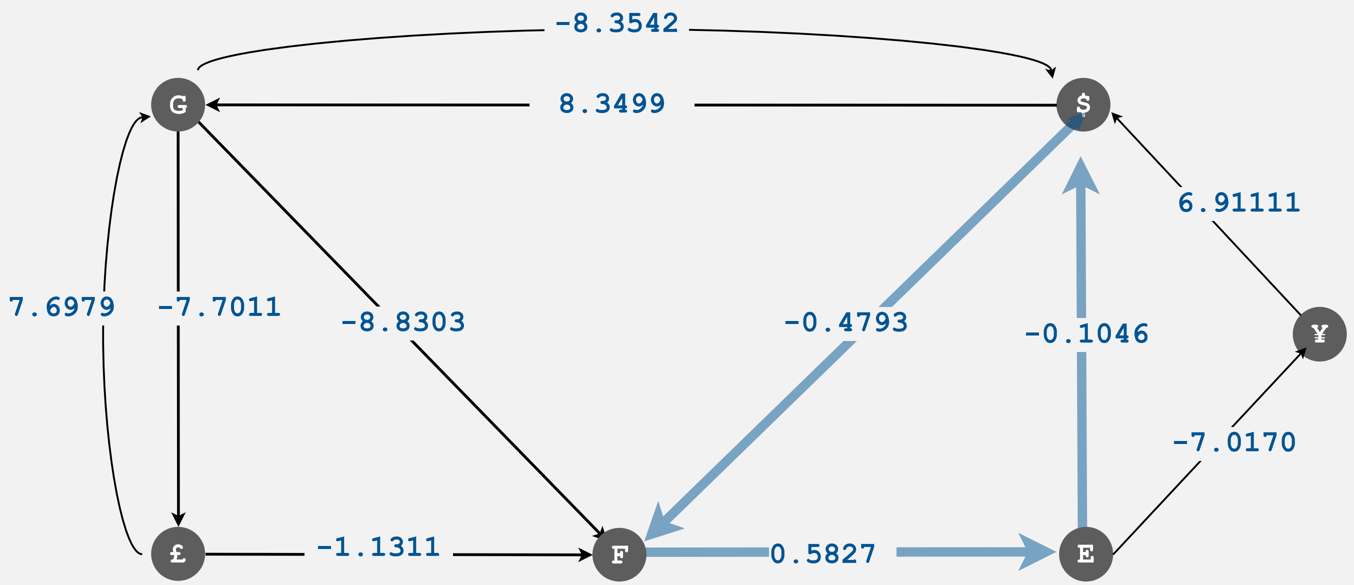
Bellman-Ford-Moore gets stuck in loop, updating vertices in cycle.



Proposition. If any vertex `v` is updated in phase v, there exists a negative cycle, and we can trace back `pred[v]` to find it.

Negative cycle detection

Goal. Identify a negative cycle (reachable from any vertex).



Solution. Initialize Bellman-Ford by setting `dist[v] = 0` for all vertices `v`.

Shortest paths summary

Dijkstra's algorithm.

- Nearly linear-time when weights are nonnegative.

Priority-first search.

- Generalization of Dijkstra's algorithm.
- Encompasses DFS, BFS, and Prim.
- Enables easy solution to many graph-processing problems.

Negative weights.

- Arise in applications.
- If negative cycles, problem is intractable (!)
- If no negative cycles, solvable via classic algorithms.

Shortest-paths is a broadly useful problem-solving model.

5. Strings

String processing

String. Sequence of characters.

Important fundamental abstraction.

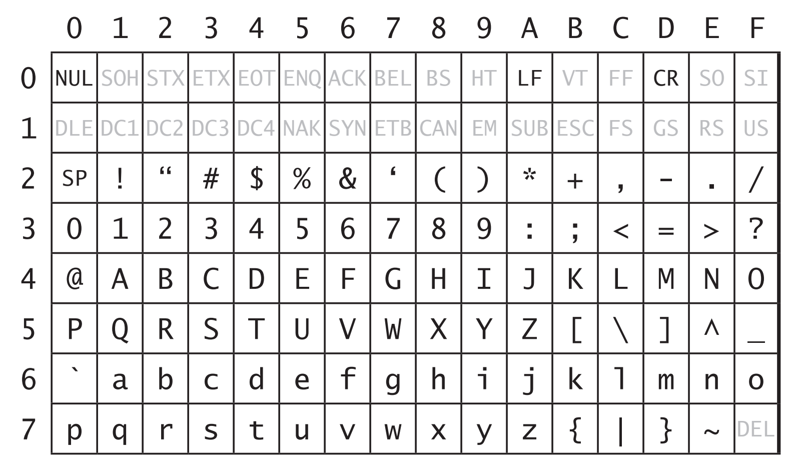
- Java programs.
- Natural languages.
- Genomic sequences.
- …

> “ *The digital information that underlies biochemistry, cell biology, and development can be represented by a simple string of G's, A's, T's and C's. This string is the root data structure of an organism's biology.* ” — *M. V. Olson*

The char data type

C char data type. Typically an 8-bit integer.

- Supports 7-bit ASCII.
- Need more bits to represent certain characters.



	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
0	NUL	SOH	STX	ETX	EOT	ENQ	ACK	BEL	BS	HT	LF	VT	FF	CR	SO	SI
1	DLE	DC1	DC2	DC3	DC4	NAK	SYN	ETB	CAN	EM	SUB	ESC	FS	GS	RS	US
2	SP	!	“	#	$	%	&	‘	(	)	*	+	,	-	.	/
3	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	:	;	<	=	>	?
4	@	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O
5	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	[	\	]	^	_
6	`	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o
7	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	{	|	}	~	DEL

Hexadecimal to ASCII conversion table

Java char data type. A 16-bit unsigned integer.

- Supports original 16-bit Unicode.
- Awkwardly supports 21-bit Unicode 3.0.

The String data type

Character extraction. Get the i^{th} character.

Substring extraction. Get a contiguous sequence of characters from a string.

String concatenation. Append one character to end of another string.

s	t	r	i	n	g	s
0	1	2	3	4	5	6

```
String s = "strings";              // s = "strings"
char   c = s.charAt(2);            // c = 'r'
String t = s.substring(2, 6);      // t = "ring"
String u = t + c;                  // u = "ringr"
```

Implementing strings in Java

Java strings are immutable ⇒ two strings can share underlying `char[]` array.

```
public final class String implements Comparable<String>
{
   private char[] value;  // characters
   private int offset;    // index of first char in array
   private int count;     // length of string
   private int hash;      // cache of hashCode()

   private String(int offset, int count, char[] value)
   {
      this.offset = offset;
      this.count  = count;
      this.value  = value;
   }

   public String substring(int from, int to)
   {  return new String(offset + from, to - from, value);  }

   public char charAt(int index)
   {  return value[index + offset];  }
   …
}
```

`java.lang.String`

constant time

Implementing strings in Java

```
public String concat(String that)
{
   char[] buffer = new char[this.length() + that.length()];
   for (int i = 0; i < this.length(); i++)
       buffer[i] = this.value[i];
   for (int j = 0; j < that.length(); j++)
       buffer[this.length() + j] = that.value[j];
   return new String(0, this.length() + that.length(), buffer);
}
```

Memory. 40 + 2N bytes for a virgin `String` of length N.

use `byte[]` or `char[]` instead of `String` to save space

operation	guarantee	extra space
`charAt()`	1	1
`substring()`	1	1
`concat()`	N	N

`String` vs. `StringBuilder`

`String`. [immutable] Constant substring, linear concatenation.

`StringBuilder`. [mutable] Linear substring, constant (amortized) append.

Ex. Reverse a `String`.

```
public static String reverse(String s)
{
   String rev = "";
   for (int i = s.length() - 1; i >= 0; i--)
      rev += s.charAt(i);
   return rev;
}
```

quadratic time

```
public static String reverse(String s)
{
   StringBuilder rev = new StringBuilder();
   for (int i = s.length() - 1; i >= 0; i--)
      rev.append(s.charAt(i));
   return rev.toString();
}
```

linear time

String challenge: array of suffixes

Challenge. How to efficiently form array of suffixes?

input string

a	a	c	a	a	g	t	t	t	a	c	a	a	g	c
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14

suffixes

0	a	a	c	a	a	g	t	t	t	a	c	a	a	g	c
1	a	c	a	a	g	t	t	t	a	c	a	a	g	c	
2	c	a	a	g	t	t	t	a	c	a	a	g	c		
3	a	a	g	t	t	t	a	c	a	a	g	c			
4	a	g	t	t	t	a	c	a	a	g	c				
5	g	t	t	t	a	c	a	a	g	c					
6	t	t	t	a	c	a	a	g	c						
7	t	t	a	c	a	a	g	c							
8	t	a	c	a	a	g	c								
9	a	c	a	a	g	c									
10	c	a	a	g	c										
11	a	a	g	c											
12	a	g	c												
13	g	c													
14	c														

String challenge: array of suffixes

Challenge. How to efficiently form array of suffixes?

A.

```
public static String[] suffixes(String s)
{
   int N = s.length();
   String[] suffixes = new String[N];
   for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
      suffixes[i] = s.substring(i, N);
   return suffixes;
}
```

← linear time and space

B.

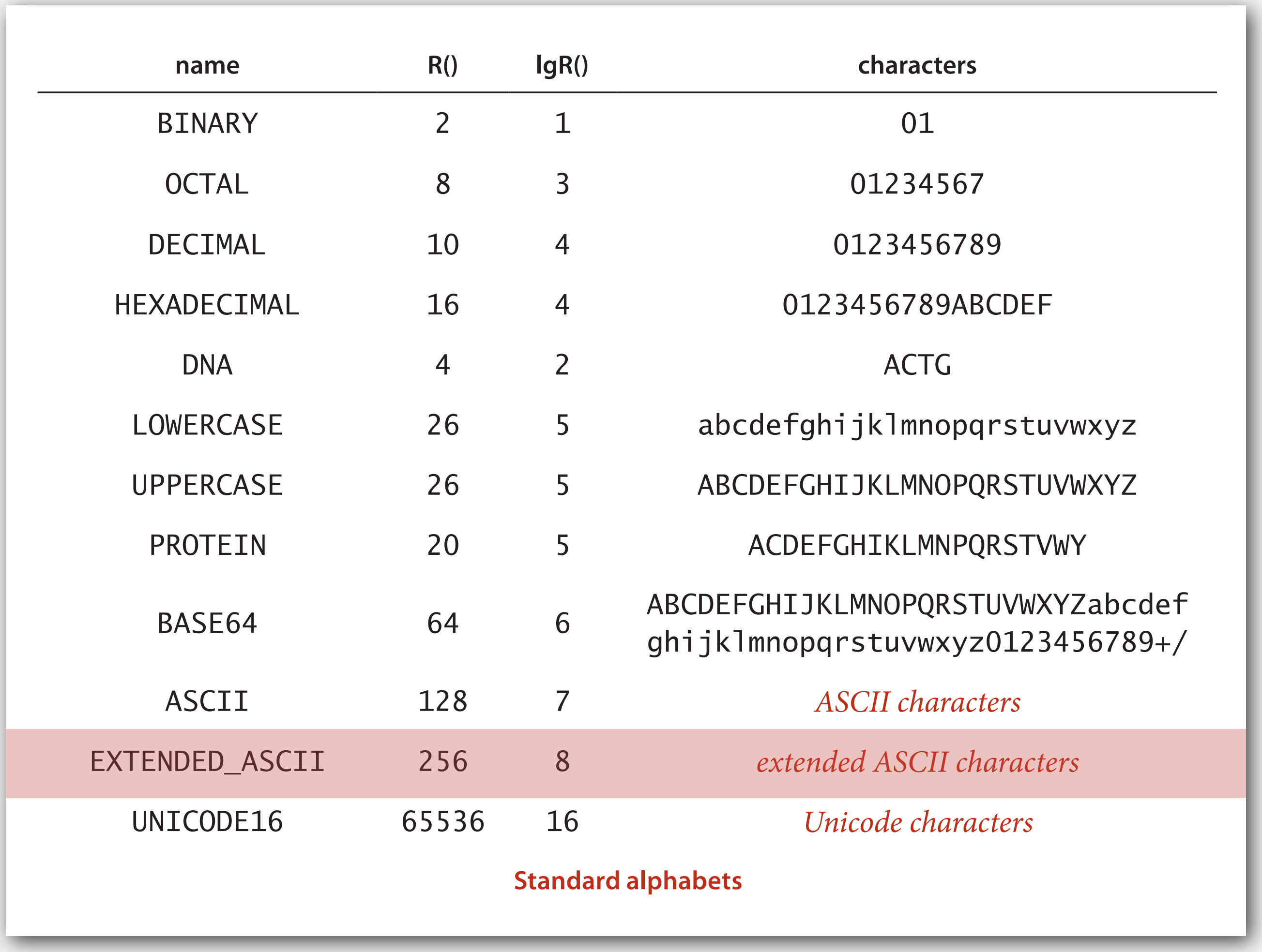
```
public static String[] suffixes(String s)
{
   int N = s.length();
   StringBuilder sb = new StringBuilder(s);
   String[] suffixes = new String[N];
   for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
      suffixes[i] = sb.substring(i, N);
   return suffixes;
}
```

← quadratic time and space!

Alphabets

Digital key. Sequence of digits over fixed alphabet.

Radix. Number of digits R in alphabet.



name	R()	lgR()	characters
`BINARY`	`2`	`1`	`01`
`OCTAL`	`8`	`3`	`01234567`
`DECIMAL`	`10`	`4`	`0123456789`
`HEXADECIMAL`	`16`	`4`	`0123456789ABCDEF`
`DNA`	`4`	`2`	`ACTG`
`LOWERCASE`	`26`	`5`	`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz`
`UPPERCASE`	`26`	`5`	`ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ`
`PROTEIN`	`20`	`5`	`ACDEFGHIKLMNPQRSTVWY`
`BASE64`	`64`	`6`	`ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZabcdef` `ghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz0123456789+/`
`ASCII`	`128`	`7`	*ASCII characters*
`EXTENDED_ASCII`	`256`	`8`	*extended ASCII characters*
`UNICODE16`	`65536`	`16`	*Unicode characters*

Standard alphabets

6.1 Sorting Strings

- key-indexed counting
- LSD string sort
- MSD string sort
- 3-way string quicksort
- suffix arrays

Review: summary of the performance of sorting algorithms

Frequency of operations = key compares.

algorithm	guarantee	random	extra space	stable?	operations on keys
insertion sort	$N^2 /2$	$N^2 /4$	no	yes	`compareTo()`
mergesort	N lg N	N lg N	N	yes	`compareTo()`
quicksort	1.39 N lg N *	1.39 N lg N	c lg N	no	`compareTo()`
heapsort	2 N lg N	2 N lg N	no	no	`compareTo()`

* probabilistic

Lower bound. ~ N lg N compares are required by any compare-based algorithm.

Q. Can we do better (despite the lower bound)?

A. Yes, if we don't depend on compares.

- **key-indexed counting**
- LSD string sort
- MSD string sort
- 3-way radix quicksort
- longest repeated substring

Key-indexed counting: assumptions about keys

Assumption. Keys are integers between 0 and R-1.

Implication. Can use key as an array index.

Applications.

- Sort string by first letter.
- Sort class roster by section.
- Sort phone numbers by area code.
- Subroutine in a sorting algorithm.

Remark. Keys may have associated data ⇒ can't just count up number of keys of each value.

input		sorted result	
name	*section*	*(by section)*	
Anderson	2	Harris	1
Brown	3	Martin	1
Davis	3	Moore	1
Garcia	4	Anderson	2
Harris	1	Martinez	2
Jackson	3	Miller	2
Johnson	4	Robinson	2
Jones	3	White	2
Martin	1	Brown	3
Martinez	2	Davis	3
Miller	2	Jackson	3
Moore	1	Jones	3
Robinson	2	Taylor	3
Smith	4	Williams	3
Taylor	3	Garcia	4
Thomas	4	Johnson	4
Thompson	4	Smith	4
White	2	Thomas	4
Williams	3	Thompson	4
Wilson	4	Wilson	4

↑ *keys are small integers*

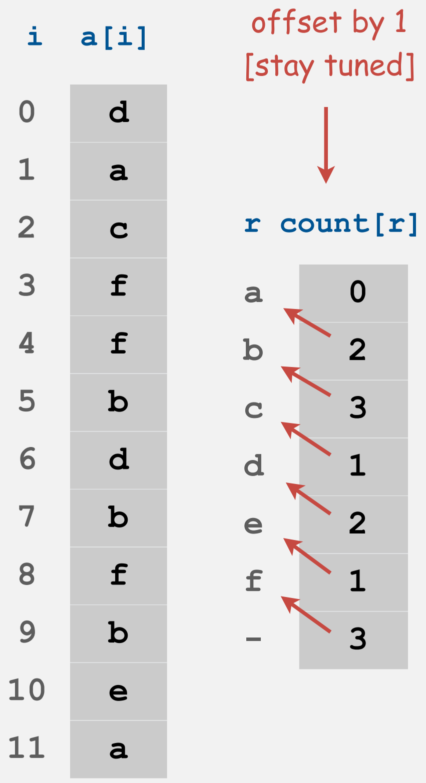
Key-indexed counting

Goal. Sort an array `a[]` of `N` integers between `0` and `R-1`.

- Count frequencies of each letter using key as index.
-
-
-

count frequencies →

```
int N = a.length;
int[] count = new int[R+1];

for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
   count[a[i]+1]++;

for (int r = 0; r < R; r++)
   count[r+1] += count[r];

for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
   aux[count[a[i]]++] = a[i];

for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
   a[i] = aux[i];
```



i	a[i]
0	d
1	a
2	c
3	f
4	f
5	b
6	d
7	b
8	f
9	b
10	e
11	a

offset by 1
[stay tuned]

r	count[r]
a	0
b	2
c	3
d	1
e	2
f	1
-	3

Key-indexed counting

Goal. Sort an array `a[]` of `N` integers between `0` and `R-1`.

- Count frequencies of each letter using key as index.
- Compute frequency cumulates which specify destinations.
-
-

compute cumulates

```
int N = a.length;
int[] count = new int[R+1];

for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
   count[a[i]+1]++;

for (int r = 0; r < R; r++)
   count[r+1] += count[r];

for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
   aux[count[a[i]]++] = a[i];

for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
   a[i] = aux[i];
```

i	a[i]
0	d
1	a
2	c
3	f
4	f
5	b
6	d
7	b
8	f
9	b
10	e
11	a

r	count[r]
a	0
b	2
c	5
d	6
e	8
f	9
-	12

6 keys < d, 8 keys < e
so d's go in `a[6]` and `a[7]`

Key-indexed counting

Goal. Sort an array `a[]` of `N` integers between `0` and `R-1`.

- Count frequencies of each letter using key as index.
- Compute frequency cumulates which specify destinations.
- Access cumulates using key as index to move records.
-

move records →

```
int N = a.length;
int[] count = new int[R+1];

for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
   count[a[i]+1]++;

for (int r = 0; r < R; r++)
   count[r+1] += count[r];

for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
   aux[count[a[i]]++] = a[i];

for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
   a[i] = aux[i];
```

i	a[i]
0	d
1	a
2	c
3	f
4	f
5	b
6	d
7	b
8	f
9	b
10	e
11	a

r	count[r]
a	0
b	2
c	5
d	6
e	8
f	9
-	12

i	aux[i]
0	
1	
2	
3	
4	
5	
6	
7	
8	
9	
10	
11	

Key-indexed counting

Goal. Sort an array `a[]` of `N` integers between `0` and `R-1`.

- Count frequencies of each letter using key as index.
- Compute frequency cumulates which specify destinations.
- Access cumulates using key as index to move records.
-

move records →

```
int N = a.length;
int[] count = new int[R+1];

for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
   count[a[i]+1]++;

for (int r = 0; r < R; r++)
   count[r+1] += count[r];

for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
   aux[count[a[i]]++] = a[i];

for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
   a[i] = aux[i];
```

i	a[i]
0	d
1	a
2	c
3	f
4	f
5	b
6	d
7	b
8	f
9	b
10	e
11	a

r	count[r]
a	0
b	2
c	5
d	7
e	8
f	9
-	12

i	aux[i]
0	
1	
2	
3	
4	
5	
6	d
7	
8	
9	
10	
11	

Key-indexed counting

Goal. Sort an array `a[]` of `N` integers between `0` and `R-1`.

- Count frequencies of each letter using key as index.
- Compute frequency cumulates which specify destinations.
- Access cumulates using key as index to move records.
-

```
int N = a.length;
int[] count = new int[R+1];

for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
   count[a[i]+1]++;

for (int r = 0; r < R; r++)
   count[r+1] += count[r];

for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
   aux[count[a[i]]++] = a[i];

for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
   a[i] = aux[i];
```

move records →

i	a[i]
0	d
1	a
2	c
3	f
4	f
5	b
6	d
7	b
8	f
9	b
10	e
11	a

r	count[r]
a	1
b	2
c	5
d	7
e	8
f	9
-	12

i	aux[i]
0	a
1	
2	
3	
4	
5	
6	d
7	
8	
9	
10	
11	

Key-indexed counting

Goal. Sort an array `a[]` of `N` integers between `0` and `R-1`.

- Count frequencies of each letter using key as index.
- Compute frequency cumulates which specify destinations.
- Access cumulates using key as index to move records.

```
int N = a.length;
int[] count = new int[R+1];

for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
   count[a[i]+1]++;

for (int r = 0; r < R; r++)
   count[r+1] += count[r];

for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
   aux[count[a[i]]++] = a[i];

for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
   a[i] = aux[i];
```

move records →

i	a[i]
0	d
1	a
2	c
3	f
4	f
5	b
6	d
7	b
8	f
9	b
10	e
11	a

r	count[r]
a	1
b	2
c	6
d	7
e	8
f	9
-	12

i	aux[i]
0	a
1	
2	
3	
4	
5	c
6	d
7	
8	
9	
10	
11	

Key-indexed counting

Goal. Sort an array `a[]` of `N` integers between `0` and `R-1`.

- Count frequencies of each letter using key as index.
- Compute frequency cumulates which specify destinations.
- Access cumulates using key as index to move records.
-

```
int N = a.length;
int[] count = new int[R+1];

for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
   count[a[i]+1]++;

for (int r = 0; r < R; r++)
   count[r+1] += count[r];

for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
   aux[count[a[i]]++] = a[i];

for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
   a[i] = aux[i];
```

move records →

i	a[i]
0	d
1	a
2	c
3	f
4	f
5	b
6	d
7	b
8	f
9	b
10	e
11	a

r	count[r]
a	1
b	2
c	6
d	7
e	8
f	10
-	12

i	aux[i]
0	a
1	
2	
3	
4	
5	c
6	d
7	
8	
9	f
10	
11	

Key-indexed counting

Goal. Sort an array `a[]` of `N` integers between `0` and `R-1`.

- Count frequencies of each letter using key as index.
- Compute frequency cumulates which specify destinations.
- Access cumulates using key as index to move records.
-

```
int N = a.length;
int[] count = new int[R+1];

for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
   count[a[i]+1]++;

for (int r = 0; r < R; r++)
   count[r+1] += count[r];

for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
   aux[count[a[i]]++] = a[i];

for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
   a[i] = aux[i];
```

move records

i	a[i]
0	d
1	a
2	c
3	f
4	f
5	b
6	d
7	b
8	f
9	b
10	e
11	a

r	count[r]
a	1
b	2
c	6
d	7
e	8
f	11
-	12

i	aux[i]
0	a
1	
2	
3	
4	
5	c
6	d
7	
8	
9	f
10	f
11	

Key-indexed counting

Goal. Sort an array `a[]` of `N` integers between `0` and `R-1`.

- Count frequencies of each letter using key as index.
- Compute frequency cumulates which specify destinations.
- Access cumulates using key as index to move records.

```
int N = a.length;
int[] count = new int[R+1];

for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
   count[a[i]+1]++;

for (int r = 0; r < R; r++)
   count[r+1] += count[r];

for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
   aux[count[a[i]]++] = a[i];

for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
   a[i] = aux[i];
```

move records

i	a[i]
0	d
1	a
2	c
3	f
4	f
5	b
6	d
7	b
8	f
9	b
10	e
11	a

r	count[r]
a	1
b	3
c	6
d	7
e	8
f	11
-	12

i	aux[i]
0	a
1	
2	b
3	
4	
5	c
6	d
7	
8	
9	f
10	f
11	

Key-indexed counting

Goal. Sort an array `a[]` of `N` integers between `0` and `R-1`.

- Count frequencies of each letter using key as index.
- Compute frequency cumulates which specify destinations.
- Access cumulates using key as index to move records.

```
int N = a.length;
int[] count = new int[R+1];

for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
   count[a[i]+1]++;

for (int r = 0; r < R; r++)
   count[r+1] += count[r];

for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
   aux[count[a[i]]++] = a[i];

for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
   a[i] = aux[i];
```

move records →

i	a[i]
0	d
1	a
2	c
3	f
4	f
5	b
6	d
7	b
8	f
9	b
10	e
11	a

r	count[r]
a	1
b	3
c	6
d	8
e	8
f	11
-	12

i	aux[i]
0	a
1	
2	b
3	
4	
5	c
6	d
7	d
8	
9	f
10	f
11	

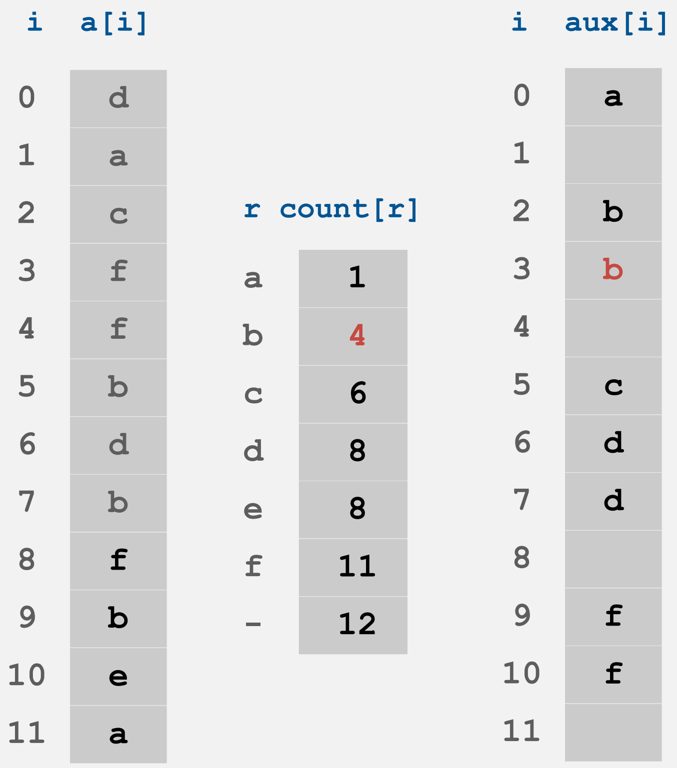
Key-indexed counting

Goal. Sort an array `a[]` of `N` integers between `0` and `R-1`.

- Count frequencies of each letter using key as index.
- Compute frequency cumulates which specify destinations.
- Access cumulates using key as index to move records.
-

```
int N = a.length;
int[] count = new int[R+1];

for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
   count[a[i]+1]++;

for (int r = 0; r < R; r++)
   count[r+1] += count[r];

for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
   aux[count[a[i]]++] = a[i];

for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
   a[i] = aux[i];
```

move records



i	a[i]
0	d
1	a
2	c
3	f
4	f
5	b
6	d
7	b
8	f
9	b
10	e
11	a

r	count[r]
a	1
b	4
c	6
d	8
e	8
f	11
-	12

i	aux[i]
0	a
1	
2	b
3	b
4	
5	c
6	d
7	d
8	
9	f
10	f
11	

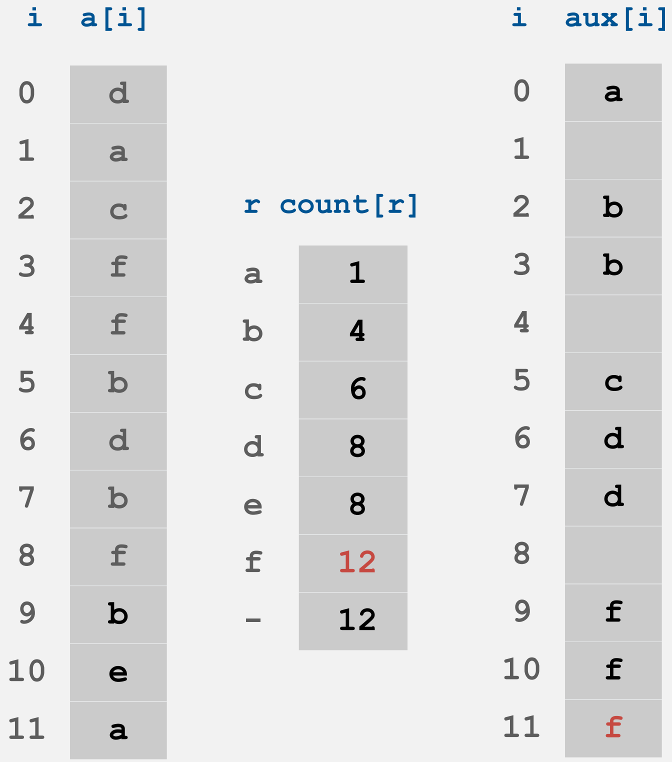
Key-indexed counting

Goal. Sort an array `a[]` of `N` integers between `0` and `R-1`.

- Count frequencies of each letter using key as index.
- Compute frequency cumulates which specify destinations.
- Access cumulates using key as index to move records.
-

```
int N = a.length;
int[] count = new int[R+1];

for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
   count[a[i]+1]++;

for (int r = 0; r < R; r++)
   count[r+1] += count[r];

for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
   aux[count[a[i]]++] = a[i];

for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
   a[i] = aux[i];
```

move records



i	a[i]
0	d
1	a
2	c
3	f
4	f
5	b
6	d
7	b
8	f
9	b
10	e
11	a

r	count[r]
a	1
b	4
c	6
d	8
e	8
f	12
-	12

i	aux[i]
0	a
1	
2	b
3	b
4	
5	c
6	d
7	d
8	
9	f
10	f
11	f

Key-indexed counting

Goal. Sort an array `a[]` of `N` integers between `0` and `R-1`.

- Count frequencies of each letter using key as index.
- Compute frequency cumulates which specify destinations.
- Access cumulates using key as index to move records.
-

```
int N = a.length;
int[] count = new int[R+1];

for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
   count[a[i]+1]++;

for (int r = 0; r < R; r++)
   count[r+1] += count[r];

for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
   aux[count[a[i]]++] = a[i];

for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
   a[i] = aux[i];
```

move records →

i	a[i]
0	d
1	a
2	c
3	f
4	f
5	b
6	d
7	b
8	f
9	b
10	e
11	a

r	count[r]
a	1
b	5
c	6
d	8
e	8
f	12
-	12

i	aux[i]
0	a
1	
2	b
3	b
4	b
5	c
6	d
7	d
8	
9	f
10	f
11	f

Key-indexed counting

Goal. Sort an array `a[]` of `N` integers between `0` and `R-1`.

- Count frequencies of each letter using key as index.
- Compute frequency cumulates which specify destinations.
- Access cumulates using key as index to move records.
-

```
int N = a.length;
int[] count = new int[R+1];

for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
   count[a[i]+1]++;

for (int r = 0; r < R; r++)
   count[r+1] += count[r];

for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
   aux[count[a[i]]++] = a[i];

for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
   a[i] = aux[i];
```

move records

i	a[i]
0	d
1	a
2	c
3	f
4	f
5	b
6	d
7	b
8	f
9	b
10	e
11	a

r	count[r]
a	1
b	5
c	6
d	8
e	9
f	12
-	12

i	aux[i]
0	a
1	
2	b
3	b
4	b
5	c
6	d
7	d
8	e
9	f
10	f
11	f

Key-indexed counting

Goal. Sort an array `a[]` of `N` integers between `0` and `R-1`.

- Count frequencies of each letter using key as index.
- Compute frequency cumulates which specify destinations.
- Access cumulates using key as index to move records.
-

move records

```
int N = a.length;
int[] count = new int[R+1];

for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
   count[a[i]+1]++;

for (int r = 0; r < R; r++)
   count[r+1] += count[r];

for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
   aux[count[a[i]]++] = a[i];

for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
   a[i] = aux[i];
```

i	a[i]
0	d
1	a
2	c
3	f
4	f
5	b
6	d
7	b
8	f
9	b
10	e
11	a

r	count[r]
a	2
b	5
c	6
d	8
e	9
f	12
-	12

i	aux[i]
0	a
1	a
2	b
3	b
4	b
5	c
6	d
7	d
8	e
9	f
10	f
11	f

Key-indexed counting

Goal. Sort an array `a[]` of `N` integers between `0` and `R-1`.

- Count frequencies of each letter using key as index.
- Compute frequency cumulates which specify destinations.
- Access cumulates using key as index to move records.

```
int N = a.length;
int[] count = new int[R+1];

for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
   count[a[i]+1]++;

for (int r = 0; r < R; r++)
   count[r+1] += count[r];

for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
   aux[count[a[i]]++] = a[i];

for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
   a[i] = aux[i];
```

move records →

i	a[i]
0	d
1	a
2	c
3	f
4	f
5	b
6	d
7	b
8	f
9	b
10	e
11	a

r	count[r]
a	2
b	5
c	6
d	8
e	9
f	12
-	12

i	aux[i]
0	a
1	a
2	b
3	b
4	b
5	c
6	d
7	d
8	e
9	f
10	f
11	f

Key-indexed counting

Goal. Sort an array `a[]` of `N` integers between `0` and `R-1`.

- Count frequencies of each letter using key as index.
- Compute frequency cumulates which specify destinations.
- Access cumulates using key as index to move records.
- Copy back into original array.

```
int N = a.length;
int[] count = new int[R+1];

for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
   count[a[i]+1]++;

for (int r = 0; r < R; r++)
   count[r+1] += count[r];

for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
   aux[count[a[i]]++] = a[i];

for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
   a[i] = aux[i];
```

copy back →

i	a[i]
0	a
1	a
2	b
3	b
4	b
5	c
6	d
7	d
8	e
9	f
10	f
11	f

r	count[r]
a	2
b	5
c	6
d	8
e	9
f	12
-	12

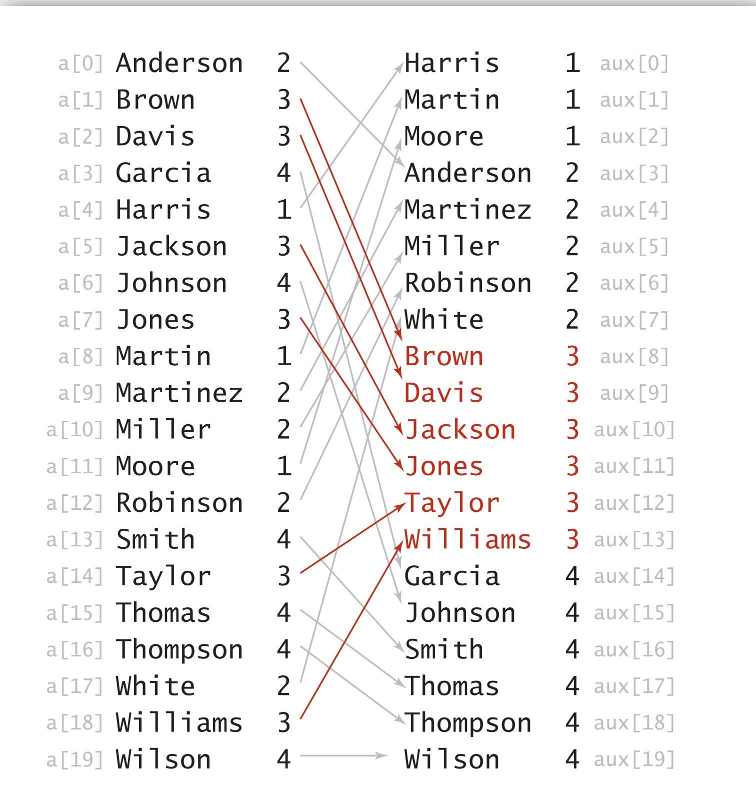
i	aux[i]
0	a
1	a
2	b
3	b
4	b
5	c
6	d
7	d
8	e
9	f
10	f
11	f

Key-indexed counting: analysis

Proposition. Key-indexed counting takes time proportional to N + R to sort N records whose keys are integers between 0 and R-1.

Proposition. Key-indexed counting uses extra space proportional to N + R.

Stable? Yes!



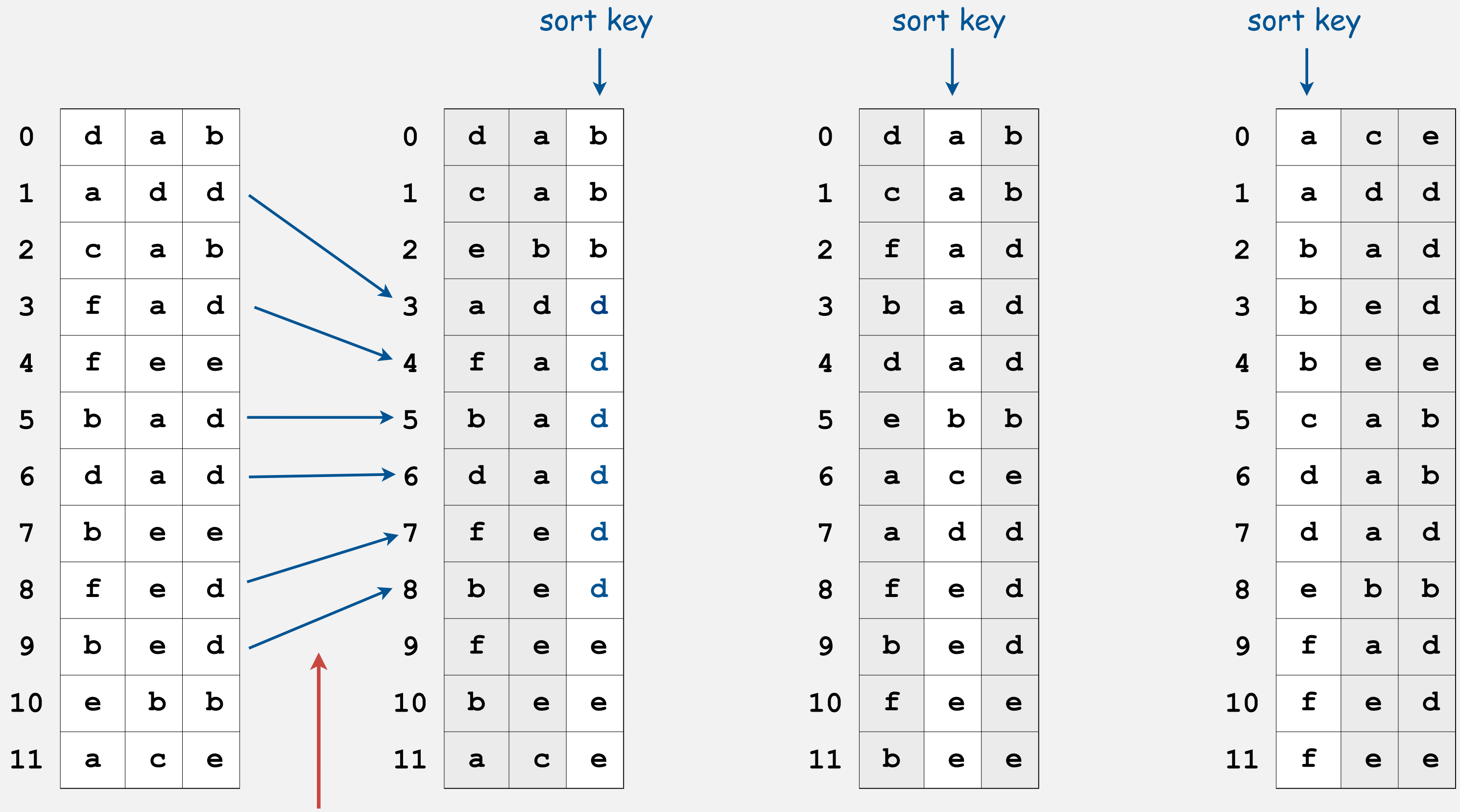
a[0]	Anderson	2	Harris	1	aux[0]
a[1]	Brown	3	Martin	1	aux[1]
a[2]	Davis	3	Moore	1	aux[2]
a[3]	Garcia	4	Anderson	2	aux[3]
a[4]	Harris	1	Martinez	2	aux[4]
a[5]	Jackson	3	Miller	2	aux[5]
a[6]	Johnson	4	Robinson	2	aux[6]
a[7]	Jones	3	White	2	aux[7]
a[8]	Martin	1	Brown	3	aux[8]
a[9]	Martinez	2	Davis	3	aux[9]
a[10]	Miller	2	Jackson	3	aux[10]
a[11]	Moore	1	Jones	3	aux[11]
a[12]	Robinson	2	Taylor	3	aux[12]
a[13]	Smith	4	Williams	3	aux[13]
a[14]	Taylor	3	Garcia	4	aux[14]
a[15]	Thomas	4	Johnson	4	aux[15]
a[16]	Thompson	4	Smith	4	aux[16]
a[17]	White	2	Thomas	4	aux[17]
a[18]	Williams	3	Thompson	4	aux[18]
a[19]	Wilson	4	Wilson	4	aux[19]

- key-indexed counting
- LSD string sort
- MSD string sort
- 3-way string quicksort
- suffix arrays

Least-significant-digit-first radix sort

LSD string sort.

- Consider characters from right to left.
- Stably sort using dth character as the key (using key-indexed counting).



0	d	a	b	0	d	a	b	0	d	a	b	0	a	c	e
1	a	d	d	1	c	a	b	1	c	a	b	1	a	d	d
2	c	a	b	2	e	b	b	2	f	a	d	2	b	a	d
3	f	a	d	3	a	d	d	3	b	a	d	3	b	e	d
4	f	e	e	4	f	a	d	4	d	a	d	4	b	e	e
5	b	a	d	5	b	a	d	5	e	b	b	5	c	a	b
6	d	a	d	6	d	a	d	6	a	c	e	6	d	a	b
7	b	e	e	7	f	e	d	7	a	d	d	7	d	a	d
8	f	e	d	8	b	e	d	8	f	e	d	8	e	b	b
9	b	e	d	9	f	e	e	9	b	e	d	9	f	a	d
10	e	b	b	10	b	e	e	10	f	e	e	10	f	e	d
11	a	c	e	11	a	c	e	11	b	e	e	11	f	e	e

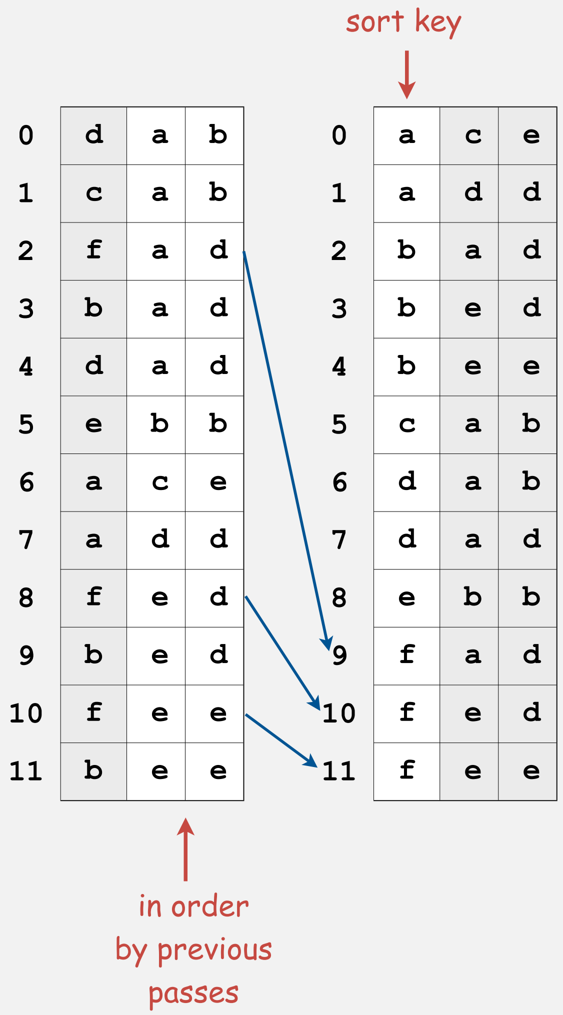
sort must be stable
(arrows do not cross)

LSD string sort: correctness proof

Proposition. LSD sorts fixed-length strings in ascending order.

Pf. [thinking about the future]

- If the characters not yet examined differ, it doesn't matter what we do now.
- If the characters not yet examined agree, stability ensures later pass won't affect order.



sort key

0	d	a	b
1	c	a	b
2	f	a	d
3	b	a	d
4	d	a	d
5	e	b	b
6	a	c	e
7	a	d	d
8	f	e	d
9	b	e	d
10	f	e	e
11	b	e	e

0	a	c	e
1	a	d	d
2	b	a	d
3	b	e	d
4	b	e	e
5	c	a	b
6	d	a	b
7	d	a	d
8	e	b	b
9	f	a	d
10	f	e	d
11	f	e	e

in order by previous passes

LSD string sort: Java implementation

```
public class LSD
{
   public static void sort(String[] a, int W)
   {
      int R = 256
      int N = a.length;
      String[] aux = new String[N];
      for (int d = W-1; d >= 0; d--)
      {
         int[] count = new int[R+1];
         for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
            count[a[i].charAt(d) + 1]++;
         for (int r = 0; r < R; r++)
            count[r+1] += count[r];
         for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
            aux[count[a[i].charAt(d)]++] = a[i];
         for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
            a[i] = aux[i];
      }
   }
}
```

fixed-length W strings

radix R

do key-indexed counting
for each digit from right to left

key-indexed counting

LSD string sort: example

Input	d = 6	d = 5	d = 4	d = 3	d= 2	d= 1	d = 0	Output
4PGC938	2IYE230	3CIO720	2IYE230	2RLA629	1ICK750	3ATW723	1ICK750	1ICK750
2IYE230	3CIO720	3CIO720	4JZY524	2RLA629	1ICK750	3CIO720	1ICK750	1ICK750
3CIO720	1ICK750	3ATW723	2RLA629	4PGC938	4PGC938	3CIO720	1OHV845	1OHV845
1ICK750	1ICK750	4JZY524	2RLA629	2IYE230	1OHV845	1ICK750	1OHV845	1OHV845
1OHV845	3CIO720	2RLA629	3CIO720	1ICK750	1OHV845	1ICK750	1OHV845	1OHV845
4JZY524	3ATW723	2RLA629	3CIO720	1ICK750	1OHV845	2IYE230	2IYE230	2IYE230
1ICK750	4JZY524	2IYE230	3ATW723	3CIO720	3CIO720	4JZY524	2RLA629	2RLA629
3CIO720	1OHV845	4PGC938	1ICK750	3CIO720	3CIO720	1OHV845	2RLA629	2RLA629
1OHV845	1OHV845	1OHV845	1ICK750	1OHV845	2RLA629	1OHV845	3ATW723	3ATW723
1OHV845	1OHV845	1OHV845	1OHV845	1OHV845	2RLA629	1OHV845	3CIO720	3CIO720
2RLA629	4PGC938	1OHV845	1OHV845	1OHV845	3ATW723	4PGC938	3CIO720	3CIO720
2RLA629	2RLA629	1ICK750	1OHV845	3ATW723	2IYE230	2RLA629	4JZY524	4JZY524
3ATW723	2RLA629	1ICK750	4PGC938	4JZY524	4JZY524	2RLA629	4PGC938	4PGC938

Summary of the performance of sorting algorithms

Frequency of operations.

algorithm	guarantee	random	extra space	stable?	operations on keys
insertion sort	$N^2 /2$	$N^2 /4$	1	yes	`compareTo()`
mergesort	N lg N	N lg N	N	yes	`compareTo()`
quicksort	1.39 N lg N *	1.39 N lg N	c lg N	no	`compareTo()`
heapsort	2 N lg N	2 N lg N	1	no	`compareTo()`
LSD †	2 W N	2 W N	N + R	yes	`charAt()`

* probabilistic
† fixed-length W keys

Sorting challenge 1

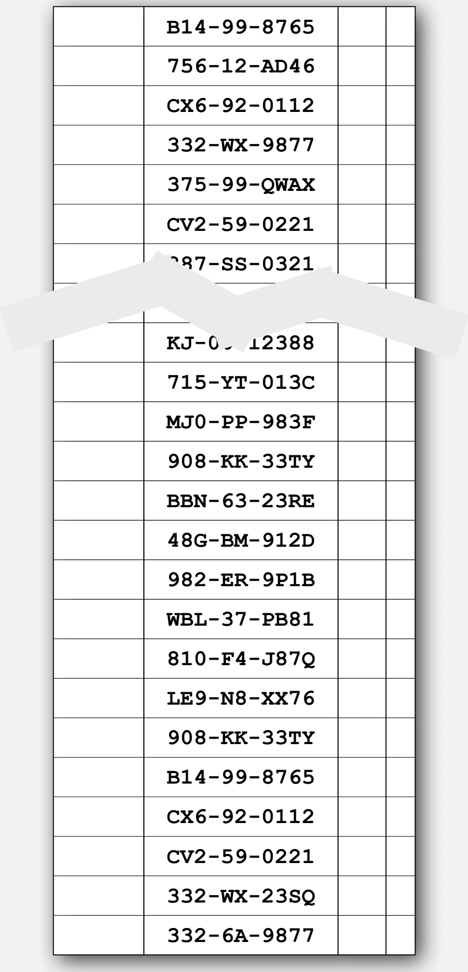
Problem. Sort a huge commercial database on a fixed-length key field.

Ex. Account number, date, SS number, ...

Which sorting method to use?

- Insertion sort.
- Mergesort.
- Quicksort.
- Heapsort.
- ✓ LSD string sort.

256 (or 65536) counters;
Fixed-length strings sort in W passes.



B14-99-8765
756-12-AD46
CX6-92-0112
332-WX-9877
375-99-QWAX
CV2-59-0221
387-SS-0321
KJ-0[illegible]12388
715-YT-013C
MJ0-PP-983F
908-KK-33TY
BBN-63-23RE
48G-BM-912D
982-ER-9P1B
WBL-37-PB81
810-F4-J87Q
LE9-N8-XX76
908-KK-33TY
B14-99-8765
CX6-92-0112
CV2-59-0221
332-WX-23SQ
332-6A-9877

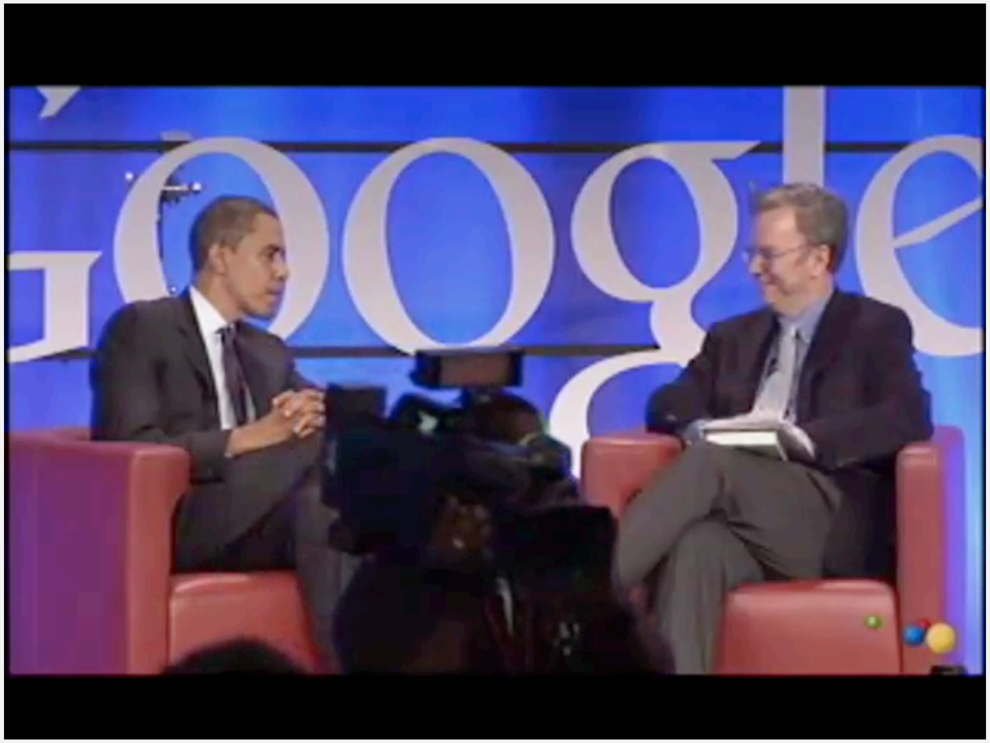
Sorting challenge 2a

Problem. Sort 1 million 32-bit integers.

Ex. Google interview or presidential interview.

Which sorting method to use?

- Insertion sort.
- Mergesort.
- Quicksort.
- Heapsort.
- LSD string sort.



LSD string sort: a moment in history (1960s)

card punch

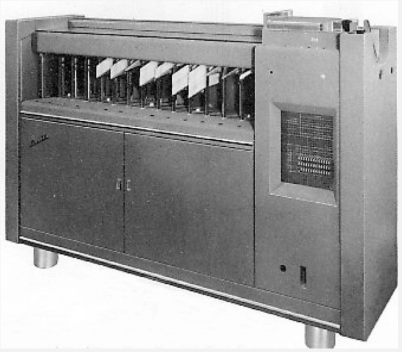
punched cards

card reader

mainframe

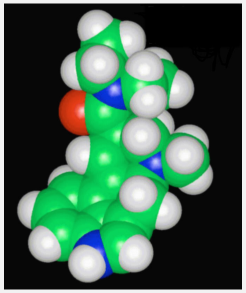
line printer

To sort a card deck
- start on right column
- put cards into hopper
- machine distributes into bins
- pick up cards (stable)
- move left one column
- continue until sorted



card sorter

not related to sorting



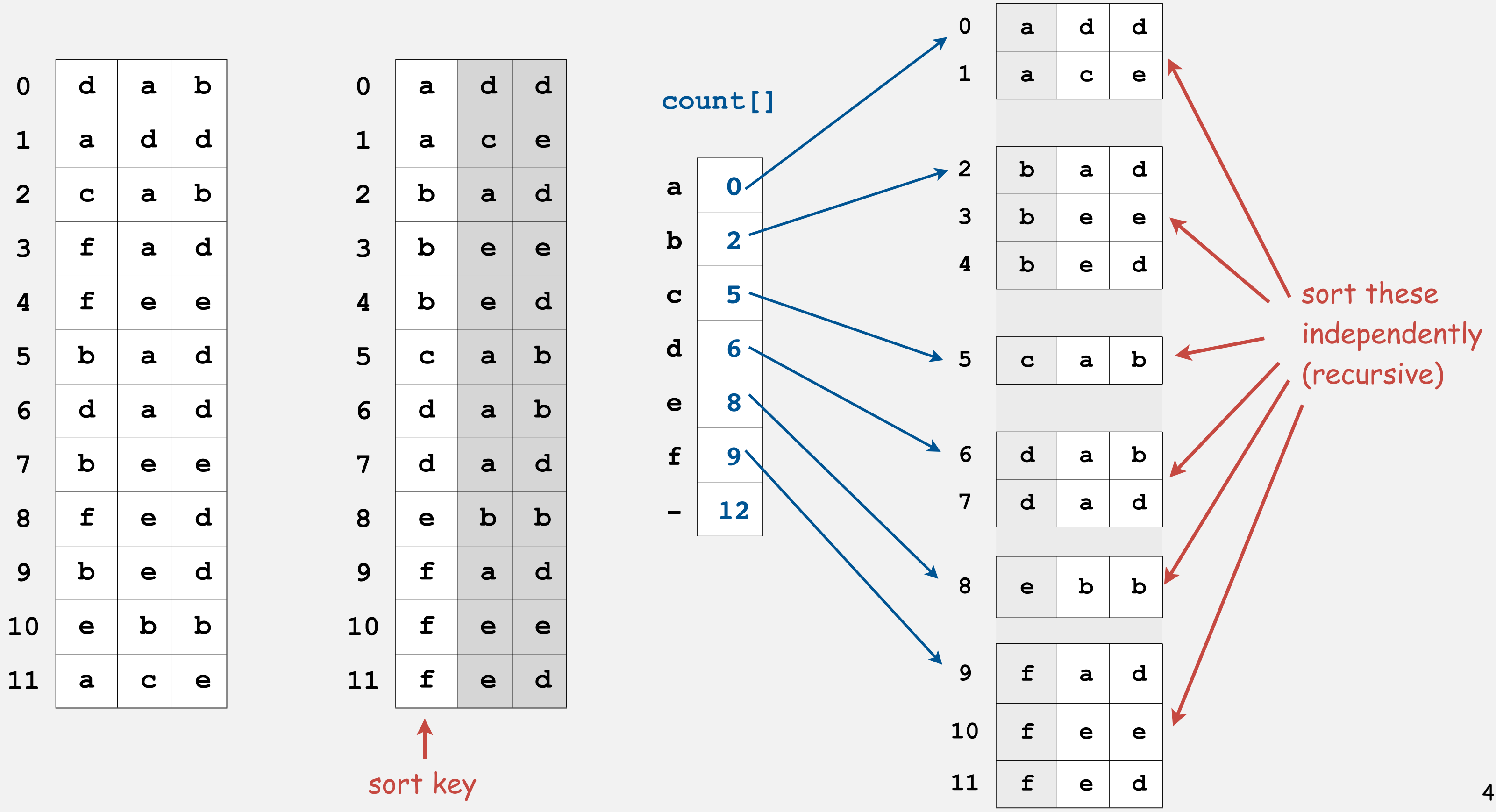
Lysergic Acid Diethylamide
(Lucy in the Sky with Diamonds)

- key-indexed counting
- LSD string sort
- **MSD string sort**
- 3-way string quicksort
- suffix arrays

Most-significant-digit-first string sort

MSD string sort.

- Partition file into R pieces according to first character (use key-indexed counting).
- Recursively sort all strings that start with each character (key-indexed counts delineate subarrays to sort).



0	d	a	b
1	a	d	d
2	c	a	b
3	f	a	d
4	f	e	e
5	b	a	d
6	d	a	d
7	b	e	e
8	f	e	d
9	b	e	d
10	e	b	b
11	a	c	e

0	a	d	d
1	a	c	e
2	b	a	d
3	b	e	e
4	b	e	d
5	c	a	b
6	d	a	b
7	d	a	d
8	e	b	b
9	f	a	d
10	f	e	e
11	f	e	d

sort key

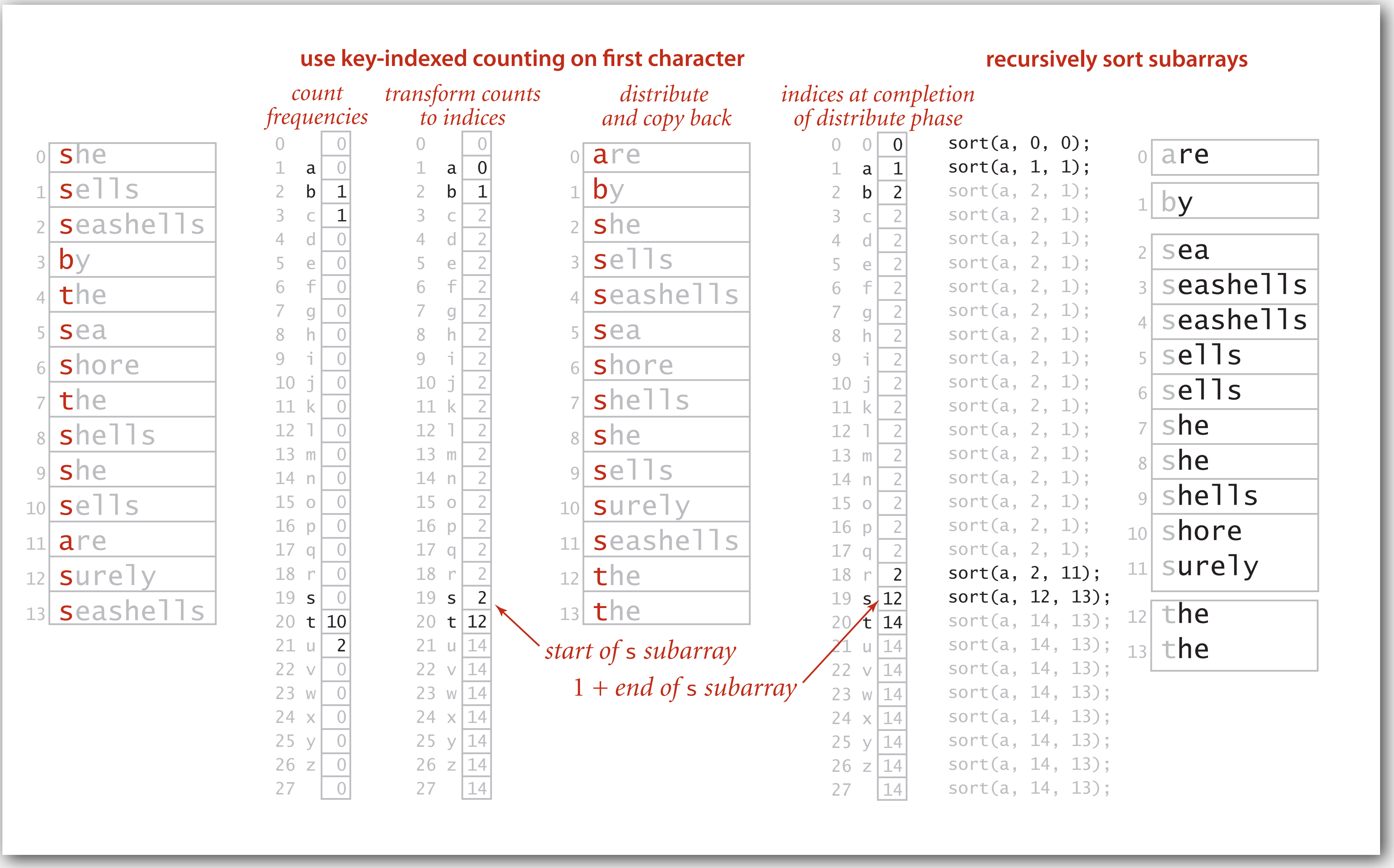
`count[]`

a	0
b	2
c	5
d	6
e	8
f	9
-	12

0	a	d	d
1	a	c	e
2	b	a	d
3	b	e	e
4	b	e	d
5	c	a	b
6	d	a	b
7	d	a	d
8	e	b	b
9	f	a	d
10	f	e	e
11	f	e	d

sort these independently (recursive)

MSD string sort: top level trace



use key-indexed counting on first character

recursively sort subarrays

0	she
1	sells
2	seashells
3	by
4	the
5	sea
6	shore
7	the
8	shells
9	she
10	sells
11	are
12	surely
13	seashells

		count frequencies	*transform counts to indices*	*indices at completion of distribute phase*
0		0	0	0
1	a	0	0	1
2	b	1	1	2
3	c	1	2	2
4	d	0	2	2
5	e	0	2	2
6	f	0	2	2
7	g	0	2	2
8	h	0	2	2
9	i	0	2	2
10	j	0	2	2
11	k	0	2	2
12	l	0	2	2
13	m	0	2	2
14	n	0	2	2
15	o	0	2	2
16	p	0	2	2
17	q	0	2	2
18	r	0	2	2
19	s	0	2	12
20	t	10	12	14
21	u	2	14	14
22	v	0	14	14
23	w	0	14	14
24	x	0	14	14
25	y	0	14	14
26	z	0	14	14
27		0	14	14

start of s subarray

1 + end of s subarray

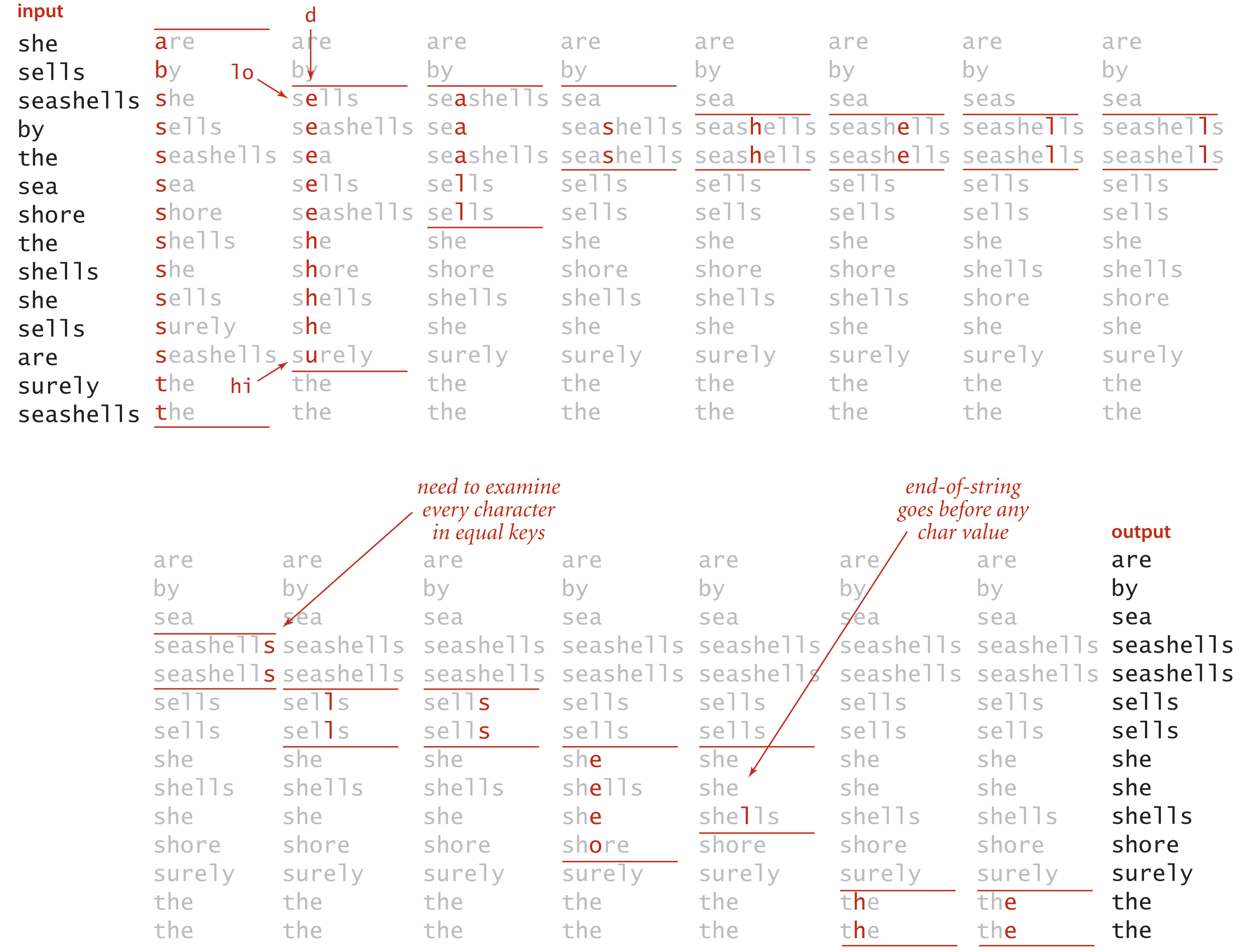
distribute and copy back

0	are
1	by
2	she
3	sells
4	seashells
5	sea
6	shore
7	shells
8	she
9	sells
10	surely
11	seashells
12	the
13	the

```
sort(a, 0, 0);
sort(a, 1, 1);
sort(a, 2, 1);
sort(a, 2, 1);
sort(a, 2, 1);
sort(a, 2, 1);
sort(a, 2, 1);
sort(a, 2, 1);
sort(a, 2, 1);
sort(a, 2, 1);
sort(a, 2, 1);
sort(a, 2, 1);
sort(a, 2, 1);
sort(a, 2, 1);
sort(a, 2, 1);
sort(a, 2, 1);
sort(a, 2, 1);
sort(a, 2, 1);
sort(a, 2, 11);
sort(a, 12, 13);
sort(a, 14, 13);
sort(a, 14, 13);
sort(a, 14, 13);
sort(a, 14, 13);
sort(a, 14, 13);
sort(a, 14, 13);
sort(a, 14, 13);
sort(a, 14, 13);
```

0	are
1	by
2	sea
3	seashells
4	seashells
5	sells
6	sells
7	she
8	she
9	shells
10	shore
11	surely
12	the
13	the

MSD string sort: example



Trace of recursive calls for MSD string sort (no cutoff for small subarrays, subarrays of size 0 and 1 omitted)

Variable-length strings

Treat strings as if they had an extra char at end (smaller than any char).

0	s	e	a	-1						
1	s	e	a	s	h	e	l	l	s	-1
2	s	e	l	l	s	-1				
3	s	h	e	-1						
4	s	h	e	-1						
5	s	h	e	l	l	s	-1			
6	s	h	o	r	e	-1				
7	s	u	r	e	l	y	-1			

`she` before `shells`

```
private static int charAt(String s, int d)
{
   if (d < s.length()) return s.charAt(d);
   else return -1;
}
```

C strings. Have extra char `'\0'` at end ⇒ no extra work needed.

MSD string sort: Java implementation

```
public static void sort(String[] a)
{
  aux = new String[a.length];
  sort(a, aux, 0, a.length, 0);
}

private static void sort(String[] a, String[] aux, int lo, int hi, int d)
{
   if (hi <= lo) return;
   int[] count = new int[R+2];
   for (int i = lo; i <= hi; i++)
      count[charAt(a[i], d) + 2]++;
   for (int r = 0; r < R+1; r++)
      count[r+1] += count[r];
   for (int i = lo; i <= hi; i++)
      aux[count[charAt(a[i], d) + 1]++] = a[i];
   for (int i = lo; i <= hi; i++)
      a[i] = aux[i - lo];

   for (int r = 0; r < R; r++)
      sort(a, aux, lo + count[r], lo + count[r+1] - 1, d+1);
}
```

can recycle `aux[]`
but not `count[]`

key-indexed counting

recursively sort subarrays

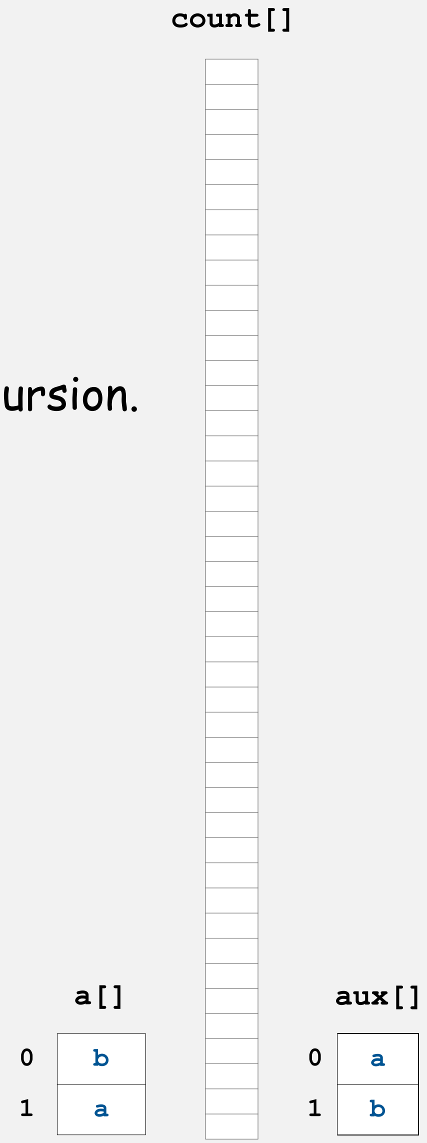
MSD string sort: potential for disastrous performance

Observation 1. Much too slow for small subarrays.

- The `count[]` array must be re-initialized.
- ASCII (256 counts): 100x slower than copy pass for N = 2.
- Unicode (65536 counts): 32,000x slower for N = 2.

Observation 2. Huge number of small subarrays because of recursion.

Solution. Cutoff to insertion sort for small N.



Cutoff to insertion sort

Solution. Cutoff to insertion sort for small N.

- Insertion sort, but start at dth character.
- Implement `less()` so that it compares starting at dth character.

```
public static void sort(String[] a, int lo, int hi, int d)
{
   for (int i = lo; i <= hi; i++)
      for (int j = i; j > lo && less(a[j], a[j-1], d); j--)
         exch(a, j, j-1);
}
```

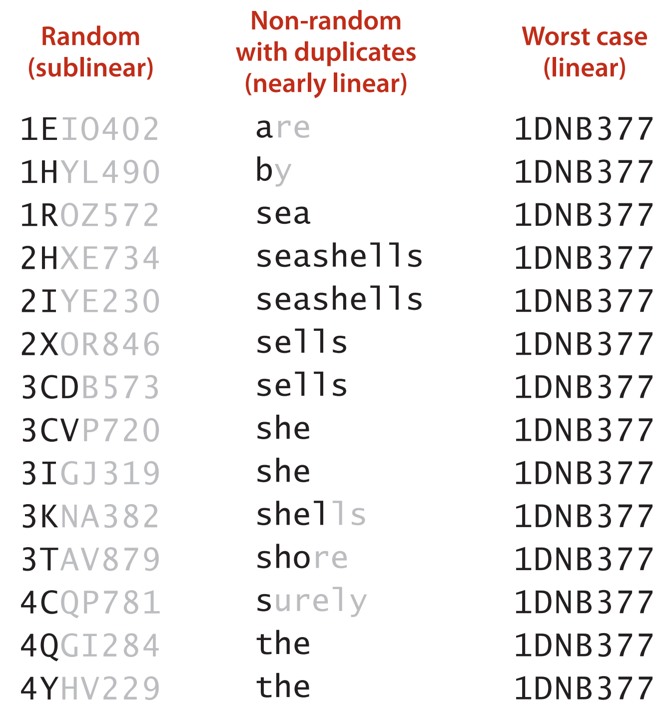
```
private static boolean less(String v, String w, int d)
{  return v.substring(d).compareTo(w.substring(d)) < 0;  }
```

in Java, forming and comparing substrings is faster than directly comparing chars with `charAt()` !

MSD string sort: performance

Number of characters examined.

- MSD examines just enough characters to sort the keys.
- Number of characters examined depends on keys.
- Can be sublinear!



Random (sublinear)	Non-random with duplicates (nearly linear)	Worst case (linear)
1EIO402	are	1DNB377
1HYL490	by	1DNB377
1ROZ572	sea	1DNB377
2HXE734	seashells	1DNB377
2IYE230	seashells	1DNB377
2XOR846	sells	1DNB377
3CDB573	sells	1DNB377
3CVP720	she	1DNB377
3IGJ319	she	1DNB377
3KNA382	shells	1DNB377
3TAV879	shore	1DNB377
4CQP781	surely	1DNB377
4QGI284	the	1DNB377
4YHV229	the	1DNB377

Characters examined by MSD string sort

Summary of the performance of sorting algorithms

Frequency of operations.

algorithm	guarantee	random	extra space	stable?	operations on keys
insertion sort	$N^2 /2$	$N^2 /4$	1	yes	`compareTo()`
mergesort	N lg N	N lg N	N	yes	`compareTo()`
quicksort	1.39 N lg N *	1.39 N lg N	c lg N	no	`compareTo()`
heapsort	2 N lg N	2 N lg N	1	no	`compareTo()`
LSD †	2 N W	2 N W	N + R	yes	`charAt()`
MSD ‡	2 N W	$N \log_R N$	N + D R	yes	`charAt()`

stack depth D = length of longest prefix match

* probabilistic
† fixed-length W keys
‡ average-length W keys

MSD string sort vs. quicksort for strings

Disadvantages of MSD string sort.

- Accesses memory "randomly" (cache inefficient).
- Inner loop has a lot of instructions.
- Extra space for `count[]`.
- Extra space for `aux[]`.

Disadvantage of quicksort.

- Linearithmic number of string compares (not linear).
- Has to rescan long keys for compares.

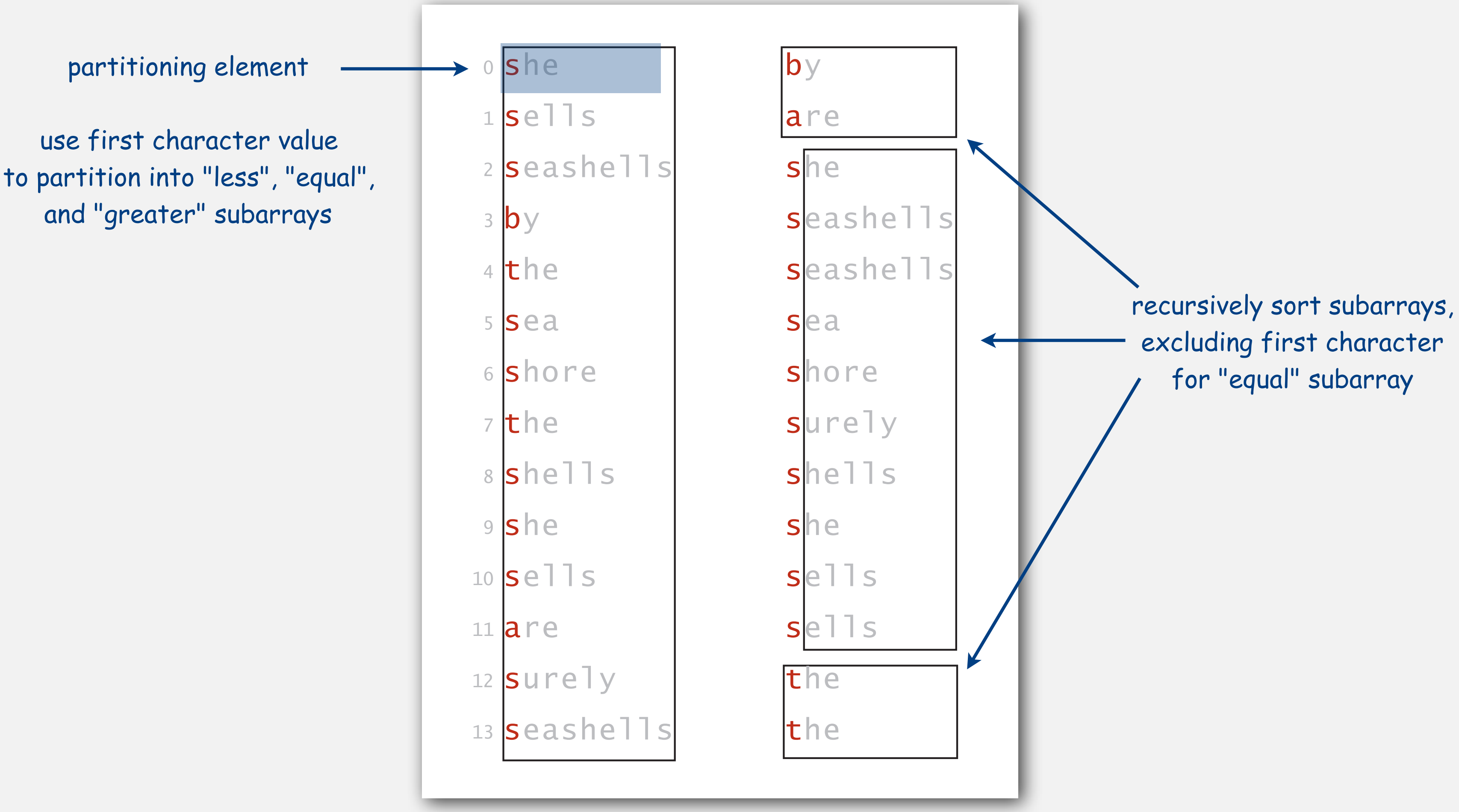
  [but stay tuned]

- key-indexed counting
- LSD string sort
- MSD string sort
- **3-way string quicksort**
- suffix arrays

3-way string quicksort (Bentley and Sedgewick, 1997)

Overview. Do 3-way partitioning on the d^th^ character.

- Cheaper than R-way partitioning of MSD string sort.
- Need not examine again characters equal to the partitioning char.

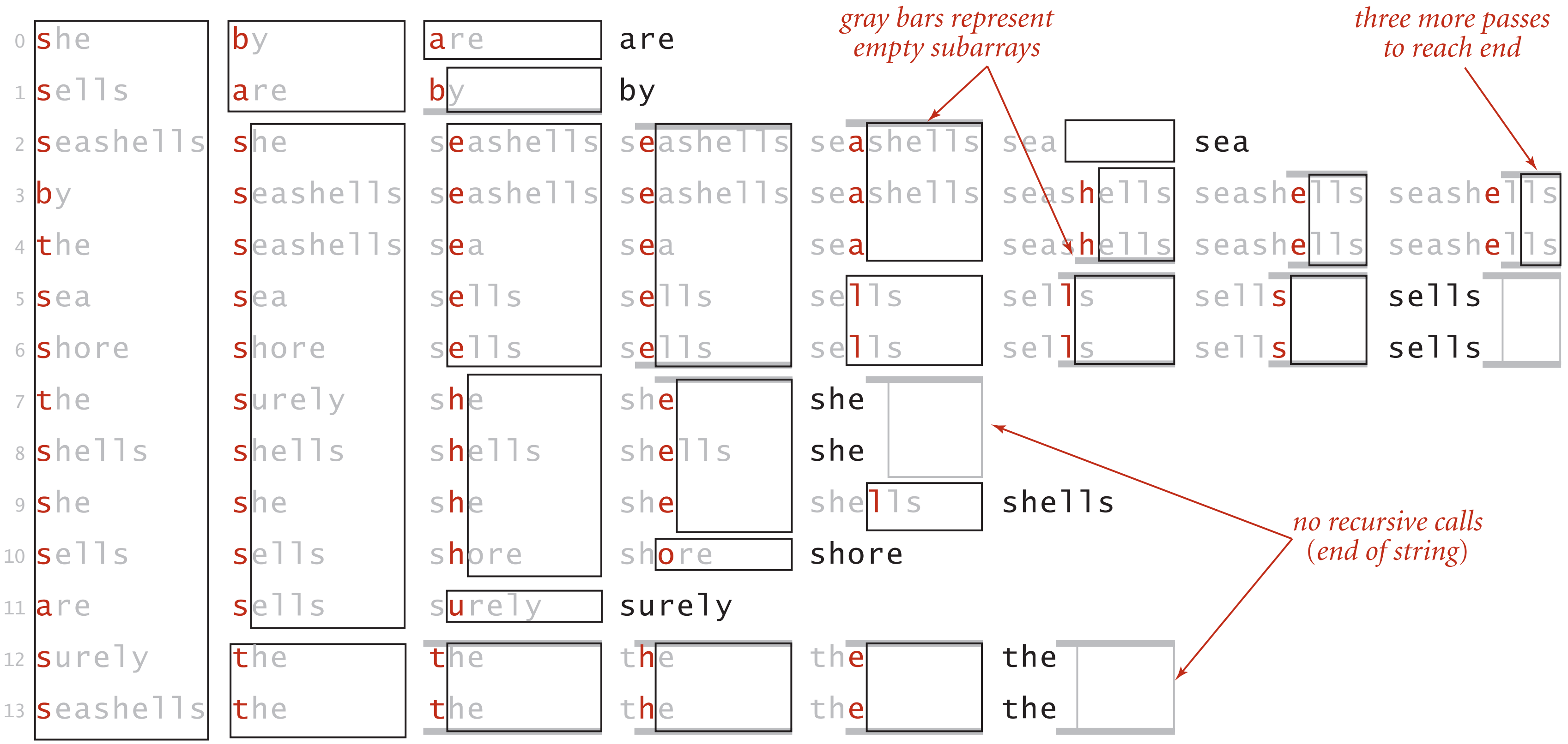


partitioning element

use first character value to partition into "less", "equal", and "greater" subarrays

recursively sort subarrays, excluding first character for "equal" subarray

3-way string quicksort: trace of recursive calls



Trace of recursive calls for 3-way string quicksort (no cutoff for small subarrays)

3-way string quicksort: Java implementation

```
private static void sort(String[] a)
{  sort(a, 0, a.length - 1, 0);  }

private static void sort(String[] a, int lo, int hi, int d)
{
   int lt = lo, gt = hi;
   int v = charAt(a[lo], d);
   int i = lo + 1;
   while (i <= gt)
   {
      int t = charAt(a[i], d);
      if      (t < v) exch(a, lt++, i++);
      else if (t > v) exch(a, i, gt--);
      else            i++;
   }

   sort(a, lo, lt-1, d);
   if (v >= 0) sort(a, lt, gt, d+1);
   sort(a, gt+1, hi, d);
}
```

3-way partitioning, using d^{th} character

← sort 3 pieces recursively

3-way string quicksort vs. standard quicksort

Standard quicksort.

- Uses 2N ln N string compares on average.
- Costly for long keys that differ only at the end (and this is a common case!)

3-way string quicksort.

- Uses 2 N ln N character compares on average for random strings.
- Avoids recomparing initial parts of the string.
- Adapts to data: uses just "enough" characters to resolve order.
- Sublinear when strings are long.

Proposition. 3-way string quicksort is optimal (to within a constant factor); no sorting algorithm can (asymptotically) examine fewer chars.

Pf. Ties cost to entropy. Beyond scope of 226.

3-way string quicksort vs. MSD string sort

MSD string sort.

- Has a long inner loop.
- Is cache-inefficient.
- Too much overhead reinitializing `count[]` and `aux[]`.

3-way string quicksort.

- Has a short inner loop.
- Is cache-friendly.
- Is in-place.

library call numbers

```
WUS-------10706-----7---10
WUS-------12692-----4---27
WLSOC------2542----30
LTK--6015-P-63-1988
LDS---361-H-4
...
```

Bottom line. 3-way string quicksort is the method of choice for sorting strings.

Summary of the performance of sorting algorithms

Frequency of operations.

algorithm	guarantee	random	extra space	stable?	operations on keys
insertion sort	$N^2 /2$	$N^2 /4$	1	yes	`compareTo()`
mergesort	N lg N	N lg N	N	yes	`compareTo()`
quicksort	1.39 N lg N *	1.39 N lg N	c lg N	no	`compareTo()`
heapsort	2 N lg N	2 N lg N	1	no	`compareTo()`
LSD †	2 N W	2 N W	N + R	yes	`charAt()`
MSD ‡	2 N W	$N \log_R N$	N + D R	yes	`charAt()`
3-way string quicksort	1.39 W N lg N *	1.39 N lg N	log N + W	no	`charAt()`

* probabilistic
† fixed-length W keys
‡ average-length W keys

- key-indexed counting
- LSD string sort
- MSD string sort
- 3-way radix quicksort
- **suffix arrays**

Warmup: longest common prefix

LCP. Given two strings, find the longest substring that is a prefix of both.

p	r	e	f	e	t	c	h
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
p	r	e	f	i	x		

```
public static String lcp(String s, String t)
{
   int n = Math.min(s.length(), t.length());
   for (int i = 0; i < n; i++)
   {
      if (s.charAt(i) != t.charAt(i))
         return s.substring(0, i);
   }
   return s.substring(0, n);
}
```

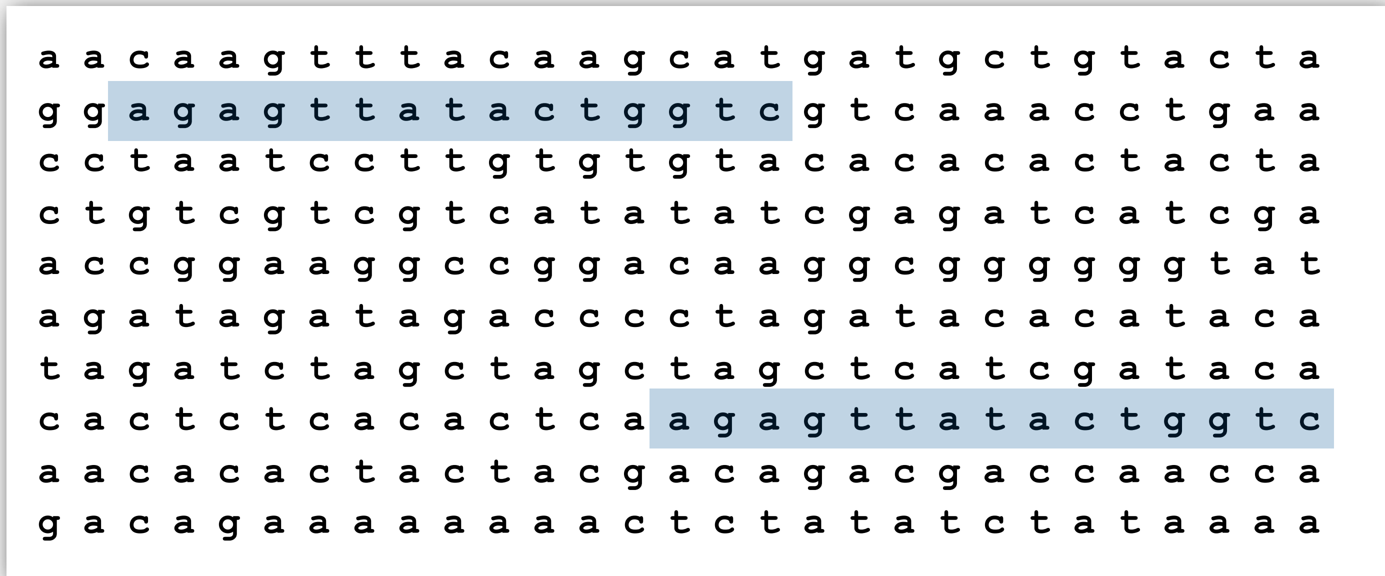
Running time. Linear-time in length of prefix match.

Space. Constant extra space.

Longest repeated substring

LRS. Given a string of N characters, find the longest repeated substring.

Ex.



```
a a c a a g t t t a c a a g c a t g a t g c t g t a c t a
g g a g a g t t a t a c t g g t c g t c a a a c c t g a a
c c t a a t c c t t g t g t g t a c a c a c a c t a c t a
c t g t c g t c g t c a t a t a t c g a g a t c a t c g a
a c c g g a a g g c c g g a c a a g g c g g g g g g t a t
a g a t a g a t a g a c c c c t a g a t a c a c a t a c a
t a g a t c t a g c t a g c t a g c t c a t c g a t a c a
c a c t c t c a c a c t c a a g a g t t a t a c t g g t c
a a c a c a c t a c t a c g a c a g a c g a c c a a c c a
g a c a g a a a a a a a a c t c t a t a t c t a t a a a a
```

Applications. Bioinformatics, cryptanalysis, data compression, ...

Longest repeated substring: a musical application

Visualize repetitions in music. `http://www.bewitched.com`

Mary Had a Little Lamb

Bach's Goldberg Variations

Longest repeated substring

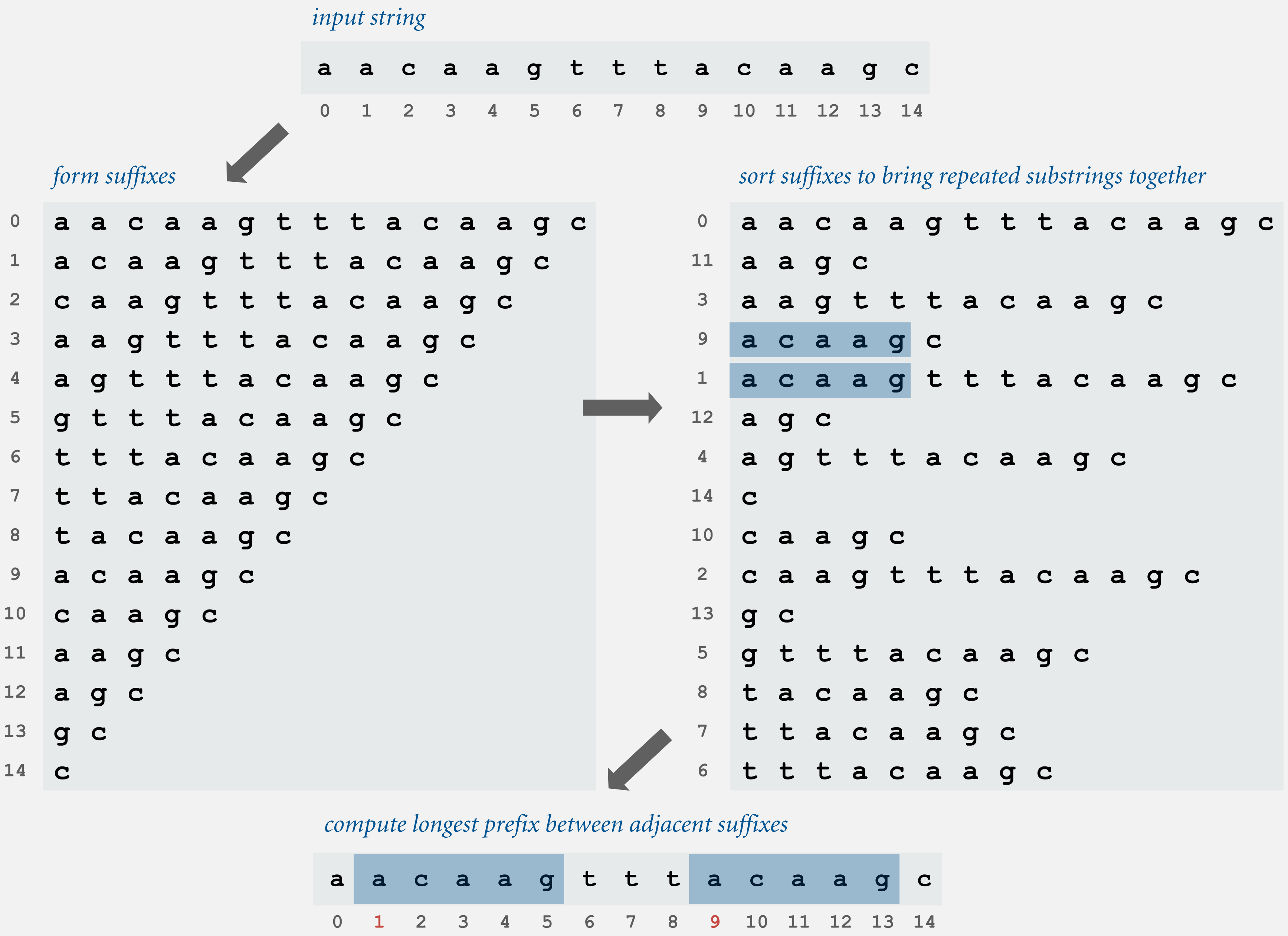
LRS. Given a string of N characters, find the longest repeated substring.

Brute force algorithm.

- Try all indices `i` and `j` for start of possible match.
- Compute longest common prefix (LCP) for each pair.

Analysis. Running time ≤ M N^2, where M is length of longest match.

Longest repeated substring: a sorting solution



input string

a	a	c	a	a	g	t	t	t	a	c	a	a	g	c
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14

form suffixes

0	a a c a a g t t t a c a a g c
1	a c a a g t t t a c a a g c
2	c a a g t t t a c a a g c
3	a a g t t t a c a a g c
4	a g t t t a c a a g c
5	g t t t a c a a g c
6	t t t a c a a g c
7	t t a c a a g c
8	t a c a a g c
9	a c a a g c
10	c a a g c
11	a a g c
12	a g c
13	g c
14	c

sort suffixes to bring repeated substrings together

0	a a c a a g t t t a c a a g c
11	a a g c
3	a a g t t t a c a a g c
9	a c a a g c
1	a c a a g t t t a c a a g c
12	a g c
4	a g t t t a c a a g c
14	c
10	c a a g c
2	c a a g t t t a c a a g c
13	g c
5	g t t t a c a a g c
8	t a c a a g c
7	t t a c a a g c
6	t t t a c a a g c

compute longest prefix between adjacent suffixes

a	a	c	a	a	g	t	t	t	a	c	a	a	g	c
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14

Longest repeated substring: Java implementation

```
public String lrs(String s)
{
  int N = s.length();

  String[] suffixes = new String[N];
  for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
     suffixes[i] = s.substring(i, N);

  Arrays.sort(suffixes);

  String lrs = "";
  for (int i = 0; i < N-1; i++)
  {
     String x = lcp(suffixes[i], suffixes[i+1]);
     if (x.length() > lrs.length()) lrs = x;
  }
  return lrs;
}
```

create suffixes
(linear time and space)

sort suffixes

find LCP between
suffixes that are adjacent
after sorting

```
% java LRS < mobydick.txt
,- Such a funny, sporty, gamy, jesty, joky, hoky-poky lad, is the Ocean, oh! Th
```

Sorting challenge

Problem. Five scientists A, B, C, D, and E are looking for long repeated substring in a genome with over 1 billion nucleotides.

- A has a grad student do it by hand.
- B uses brute force (check all pairs).
- C uses suffix sorting solution with insertion sort.
- D uses suffix sorting solution with LSD string sort.
- ✓ E uses suffix sorting solution with 3-way string quicksort.

only if LRS is not long (!)

Q. Which one is more likely to lead to a cure cancer?

Longest repeated substring: empirical analysis

input file	characters	brute	suffix sort	length of LRS
`LRS.java`	2,162	0.6 sec	0.14 sec	73
`amendments.txt`	18,369	37 sec	0.25 sec	216
`aesop.txt`	191,945	1.2 hours	1.0 sec	58
`mobydick.txt`	1.2 million	43 hours †	7.6 sec	79
`chromosome11.txt`	7.1 million	2 months †	61 sec	12,567
`pi.txt`	10 million	4 months †	84 sec	14

† estimated

Suffix sorting: worst-case input

Longest repeated substring not long. Hard to beat 3-way string quicksort.

Longest repeated substring very long.

- Radix sorts are quadratic in the length of the longest match.
- Ex: two copies of Aesop's fables.

```
% more abcdefgh2.txt
abcdefgh
abcdefghabcdefgh
bcdefgh
bcdefghabcdefgh
cdefgh
cdefghabcdefgh
defgh
efghabcdefgh
efgh
fghabcdefgh
fgh
ghabcdefgh
fh
habcdefgh
h
```

	time to suffix sort (seconds)	
algorithm	`mobydick.txt`	`aesopaesop.txt`
brute-force	36,000 †	4000 †
quicksort	9.5	167
LSD	not fixed length	not fixed length
MSD	395	out of memory
MSD with cutoff	6.8	162
3-way string quicksort	2.8	400

† estimated

Suffix sorting challenge

Problem. Suffix sort an arbitrary string of length N.

Q. What is worst-case running time of best algorithm for problem?

- Quadratic.
- ✓ Linearithmic. ← Manber's algorithm
- ✓ Linear. ← suffix trees (see COS 423)
- Nobody knows.

Suffix sorting in linearithmic time

Manber's MSD algorithm.

- Phase 0: sort on first character using key-indexed counting sort.
- Phase i: given array of suffixes sorted on first 2^{i-1} characters, create array of suffixes sorted on first 2^i characters.

Worst-case running time. N log N.

- Finishes after lg N phases.
- Can perform a phase in linear time. (!) [stay tuned]

Linearithmic suffix sort example: phase 0

original suffixes

0	b a b a a a a b c b a b a a a a a 0
1	a b a a a a b c b a b a a a a a 0
2	b a a a a b c b a b a a a a a 0
3	a a a a b c b a b a a a a a 0
4	a a a b c b a b a a a a a 0
5	a a b c b a b a a a a a 0
6	a b c b a b a a a a a 0
7	b c b a b a a a a a 0
8	c b a b a a a a a 0
9	b a b a a a a a 0
10	a b a a a a a 0
11	b a a a a a 0
12	a a a a a 0
13	a a a a 0
14	a a a 0
15	a a 0
16	a 0
17	0

key-indexed counting sort (first character)

17	0	
1	a	b a a a a b c b a b a a a a a 0
16	a	0
3	a	a a a b c b a b a a a a a 0
4	a	a a b c b a b a a a a a 0
5	a	a b c b a b a a a a a 0
6	a	b c b a b a a a a a 0
15	a	a 0
14	a	a a 0
13	a	a a a 0
12	a	a a a a 0
10	a	b a a a a a 0
0	b	a b a a a a b c b a b a a a a a 0
9	b	a b a a a a a 0
11	b	a a a a a 0
7	b	c b a b a a a a a 0
2	b	a a a a b c b a b a a a a a 0
8	c	b a b a a a a a 0

↑ *sorted*

Linearithmic suffix sort example: phase 1

original suffixes

0	b a b a a a a b c b a b a a a a a 0
1	a b a a a a b c b a b a a a a a 0
2	b a a a a b c b a b a a a a a 0
3	a a a a b c b a b a a a a a 0
4	a a a b c b a b a a a a a 0
5	a a b c b a b a a a a a 0
6	a b c b a b a a a a a 0
7	b c b a b a a a a a 0
8	c b a b a a a a a 0
9	b a b a a a a a 0
10	a b a a a a a 0
11	b a a a a a 0
12	a a a a a 0
13	a a a a 0
14	a a a 0
15	a a 0
16	a 0
17	0

index sort (first two characters)

17	0	
16	a 0	
12	a a	a a a 0
3	a a	a a b c b a b a a a a a 0
4	a a	a b c b a b a a a a a 0
5	a a	b c b a b a a a a a 0
13	a a	a a 0
15	a a	0
14	a a	a 0
6	a b	c b a b a a a a a 0
1	a b	a a a a b c b a b a a a a a 0
10	a b	a a a a a 0
0	b a	b a a a a b c b a b a a a a a 0
9	b a	b a a a a a 0
11	b a	a a a a 0
2	b a	a a a b c b a b a a a a a 0
7	b c	b a b a a a a a 0
8	c b	a b a a a a a 0

↑ sorted

Linearithmic suffix sort example: phase 2

original suffixes

0	b a b a a a a b c b a b a a a a a 0
1	a b a a a a b c b a b a a a a a 0
2	b a a a a b c b a b a a a a a 0
3	a a a a b c b a b a a a a a 0
4	a a a b c b a b a a a a a 0
5	a a b c b a b a a a a a 0
6	a b c b a b a a a a a 0
7	b c b a b a a a a a 0
8	c b a b a a a a a 0
9	b a b a a a a a 0
10	a b a a a a a 0
11	b a a a a a 0
12	a a a a a 0
13	a a a a 0
14	a a a 0
15	a a 0
16	a 0
17	0

index sort (first four characters)

17	0	
16	a 0	
15	a a 0	
14	a a a 0	
3	a a a a	b c b a b a a a a a 0
12	a a a a	a 0
13	a a a a	0
4	a a a b	c b a b a a a a a 0
5	a a b c	b a b a a a a a 0
1	a b a a	a a b c b a b a a a a a 0
10	a b a a	a a a 0
6	a b c b	a b a a a a a 0
2	b a a a	a b c b a b a a a a a 0 a 0
11	b a a a	a a 0
0	b a b a	a a a b c b a b a a a a a 0
9	b a b a	a a a a 0
7	b c b a	b a a a a a 0
8	c b a b	a a a a a 0

↑ sorted

Linearithmic suffix sort example: phase 3

original suffixes

0	b a b a a a a b c b a b a a a a a 0
1	a b a a a a b c b a b a a a a a 0
2	b a a a a b c b a b a a a a a 0
3	a a a a b c b a b a a a a a 0
4	a a a b c b a b a a a a a 0
5	a a b c b a b a a a a a 0
6	a b c b a b a a a a a 0
7	b c b a b a a a a a 0
8	c b a b a a a a a 0
9	b a b a a a a a 0
10	a b a a a a a 0
11	b a a a a a 0
12	a a a a a 0
13	a a a a 0
14	a a a 0
15	a a 0
16	a 0
17	0

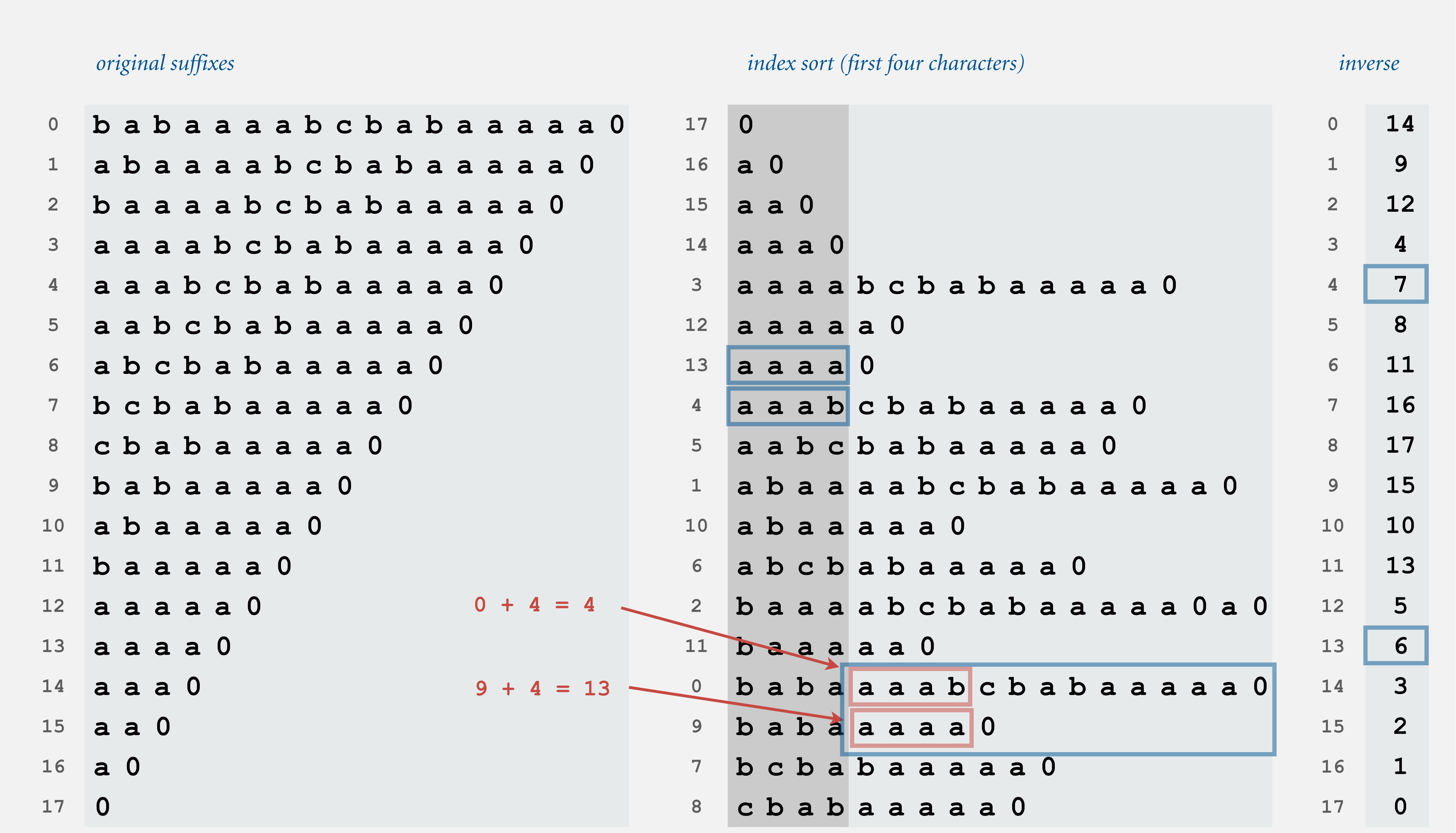
index sort (first eight characters)

17	0
16	a 0
15	a a 0
14	a a a 0
13	a a a a 0
12	a a a a a 0
3	a a a a b c b a b a a a a a 0
4	a a a b c b a b a a a a a 0
5	a a b c b a b a a a a a 0
10	a b a a a a a 0
1	a b a a a a b c b a b a a a a a 0
6	a b c b a b a a a a a 0
11	b a a a a a 0
2	b a a a a b c b a b a a a a a 0 a 0
9	b a b a a a a a 0
0	b a b a a a a b c b a b a a a a a 0
7	b c b a b a a a a a 0
8	c b a b a a a a a 0

↑
sorted

FINISHED! (no equal keys)

Achieve constant-time string compare by indexing into inverse



	original suffixes		*index sort (first four characters)*		*inverse*
0	babaaaabcbabaaaaa0	17	0	0	14
1	abaaaabcbabaaaaa0	16	a0	1	9
2	baaaabcbabaaaaa0	15	aa0	2	12
3	aaaabcbabaaaaa0	14	aaa0	3	4
4	aaabcbabaaaaa0	3	aaaabcbabaaaaa0	4	7
5	aabcbabaaaaa0	12	aaaaa0	5	8
6	abcbabaaaaa0	13	aaaa0	6	11
7	bcbabaaaaa0	4	aaabcbabaaaaa0	7	16
8	cbabaaaaa0	5	aabcbabaaaaa0	8	17
9	babaaaaa0	1	abaaaabcbabaaaaa0	9	15
10	abaaaaa0	10	abaaaaa0	10	10
11	baaaaa0	6	abcbabaaaaa0	11	13
12	aaaaa0	2	baaaabcbabaaaaa0a0	12	5
13	aaaa0	11	baaaaa0	13	6
14	aaa0	0	babaaaabcbabaaaaa0	14	3
15	aa0	9	babaaaaa0	15	2
16	a0	7	bcbabaaaaa0	16	1
17	0	8	cbabaaaaa0	17	0

suffixes$_4$[13] ≤ **suffixes$_4$[4]** (*because* **inverse[13]** < **inverse[4]**)

so **suffixes$_8$[9]** ≤ **suffixes$_8$[0]**

Suffix sort: experimental results

	time to suffix sort (seconds)	
algorithm	`mobydick.txt`	`aesopaesop.txt`
brute-force	36.000 †	4000 †
quicksort	9.5	167
LSD	not fixed length	not fixed length
MSD	395	out of memory
MSD with cutoff	6.8	162
3-way string quicksort	2.8	400
Manber MSD	17	8.5

† estimated

String sorting summary

We can develop linear-time sorts.

- Compares not necessary for string keys.
- Use digits to index an array.

We can develop sublinear-time sorts.

- Should measure amount of data in keys, not number of keys.
- Not all of the data has to be examined.

3-way string quicksort is asymptotically optimal.

- 1.39 N lg N chars for random data.

Long strings are rarely random in practice.

- Goal is often to learn the structure!
- May need specialized algorithms.

5.2 Tries

- tries
- TSTs
- applications

Review: summary of the performance of symbol-table implementations

Frequency of operations.

implementation	typical case			ordered operations	operations on keys
	search	insert	delete		
red-black BST	1.00 lg N	1.00 lg N	1.00 lg N	yes	**`compareTo()`**
hashing	1 †	1 †	1 †	no	**`equals()`** **`hashcode()`**

† under uniform hashing assumption

Q. Can we do better?

A. Yes, if we can avoid examining the entire key, as with string sorting.

String symbol table basic API

String symbol table. Symbol table specialized to string keys.

`public class StringST<Value>`	*string symbol table type*
`StringST()`	*create an empty symbol table*
`void put(String key, Value val)`	*put key-value pair into the symbol table*
`Value get(String key)`	*return value paired with given key*
`boolean contains(String key)`	*is there a value paired with the given key?*

Goal. As fast as hashing, more flexible than binary search trees.

String symbol table implementations cost summary

	character accesses (typical case)				dedup	
implementation	search hit	search miss	insert	space (links)	`moby.txt`	`actors.txt`
red-black BST	$L + c \lg^2 N$	$c \lg^2 N$	$c \lg^2 N$	$4 N$	1.40	97.4
hashing	L	L	L	$4 N$ to $16 N$	0.76	40.6

Parameters

- N = number of strings
- L = length of string
- R = radix

file	size	words	distinct
`moby.txt`	1.2 MB	210 K	32 K
`actors.txt`	82 MB	11.4 M	900 K

Challenge. Efficient performance for string keys.

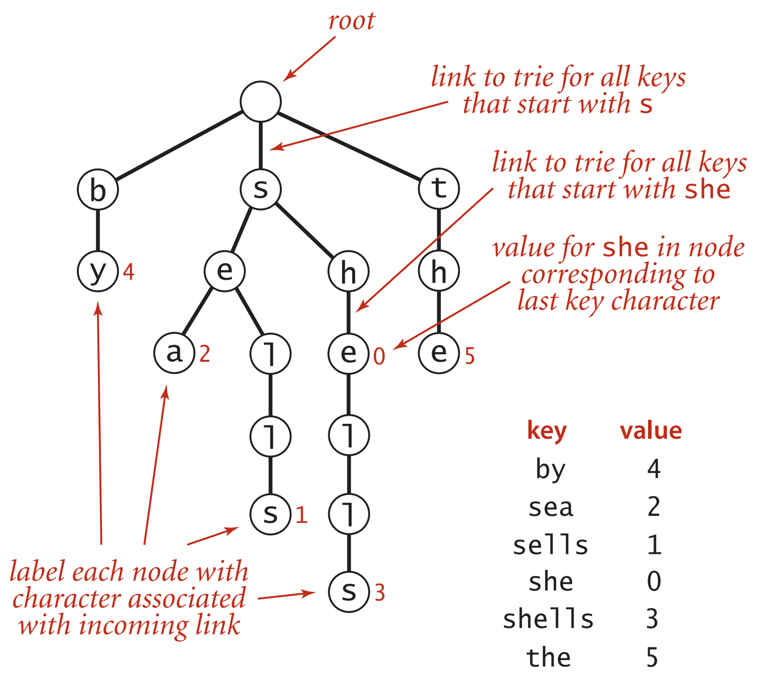
- **tries**
- TSTs
- string symbol table API

Tries

Tries. [from re**trie**val, but pronounced "try"]

- Store characters and values in nodes (not keys).
- Each node has R children, one for each possible character.

Ex. `she sells sea shells by the`



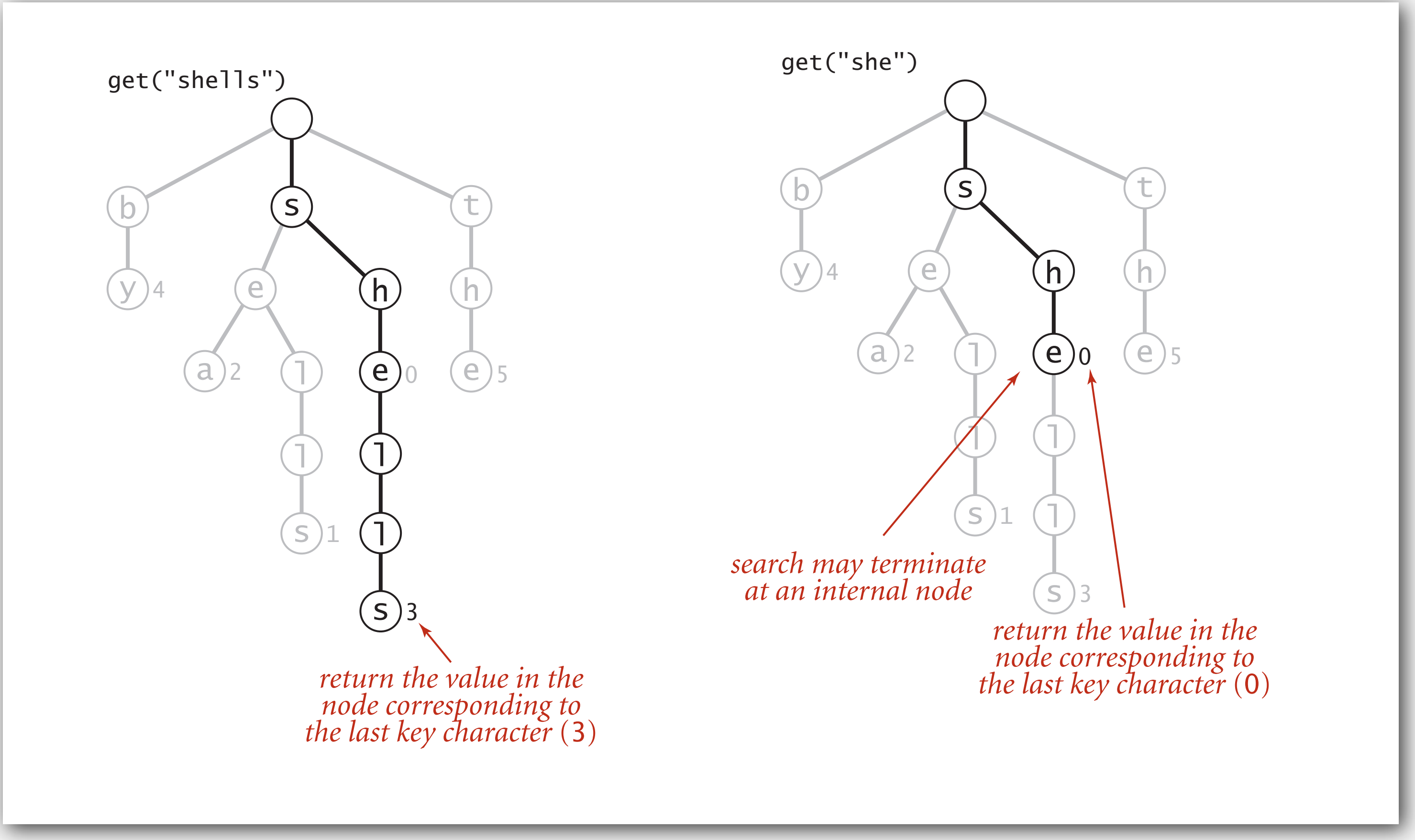
key	value
by	4
sea	2
sells	1
she	0
shells	3
the	5

Anatomy of a trie

Search in a trie

Follow links corresponding to each character in the key.

- Search hit: node where search ends has a non-null value.
- Search miss: reach a null link or node where search ends has null value.



return the value in the node corresponding to the last key character (3)

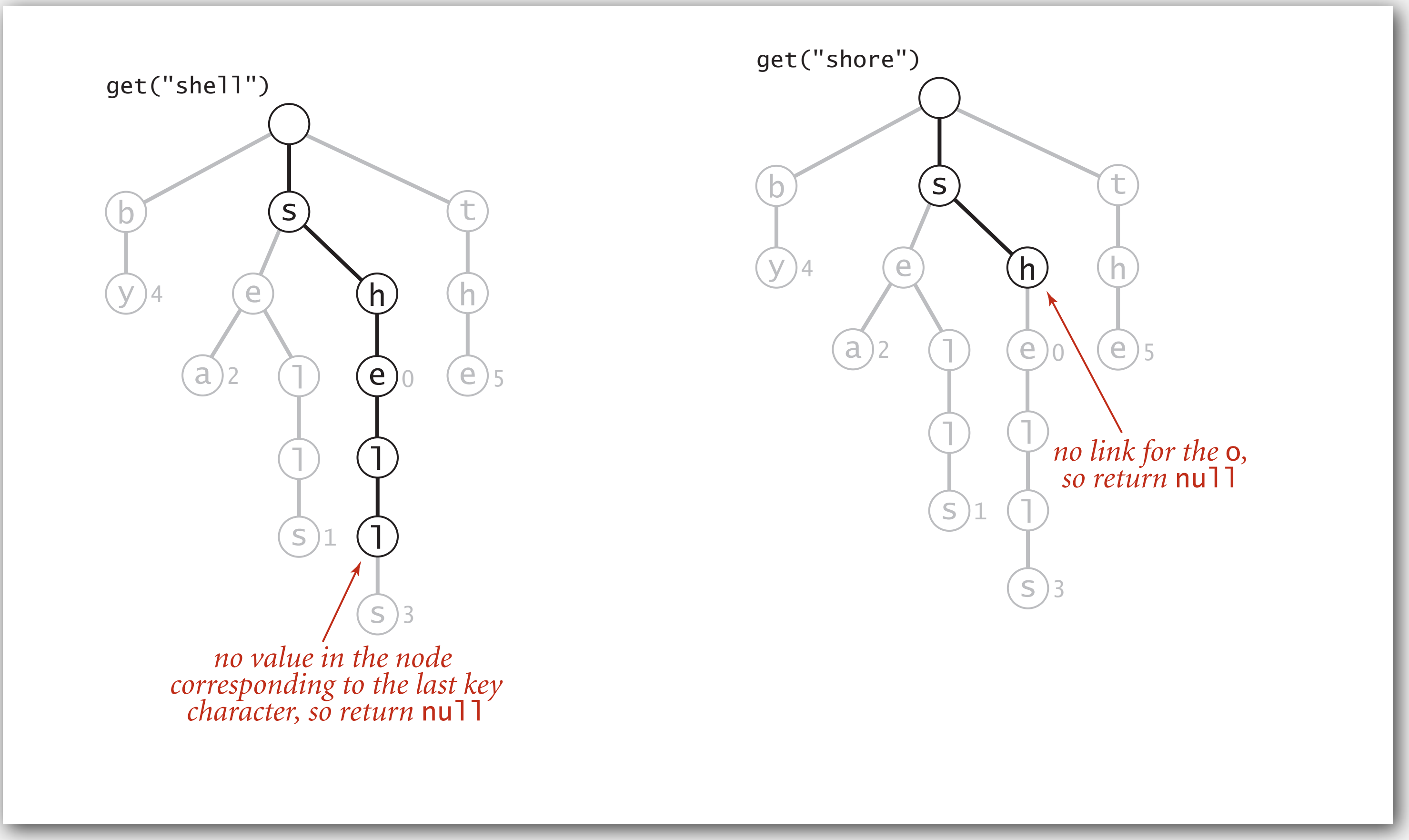
search may terminate at an internal node

return the value in the node corresponding to the last key character (0)

Search in a trie

Follow links corresponding to each character in the key.

- Search hit: node where search ends has a non-null value.
- Search miss: reach a null link or node where search ends has null value.



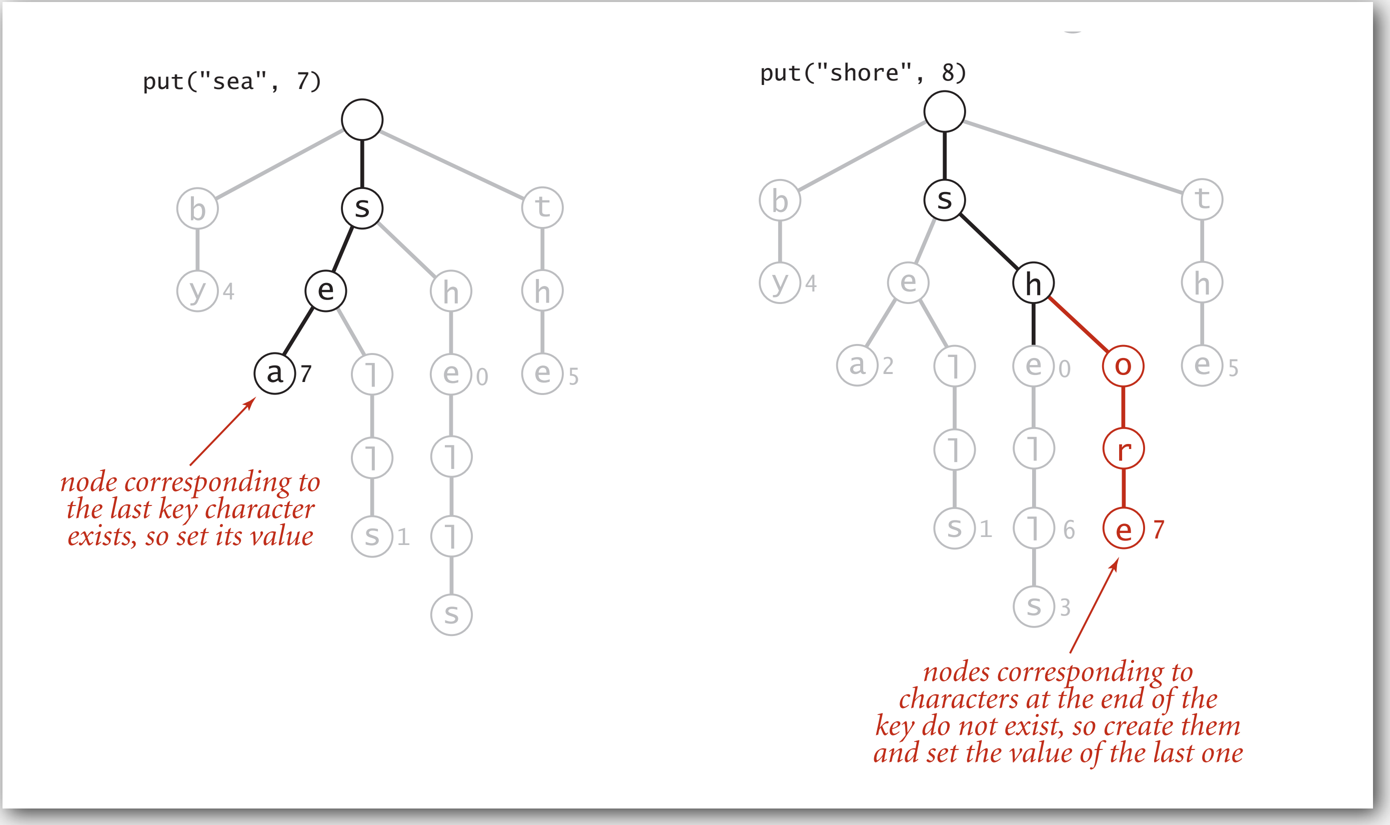
no value in the node corresponding to the last key character, so return `null`

no link for the `o`*, so return* `null`

Insertion into a trie

Follow links corresponding to each character in the key.

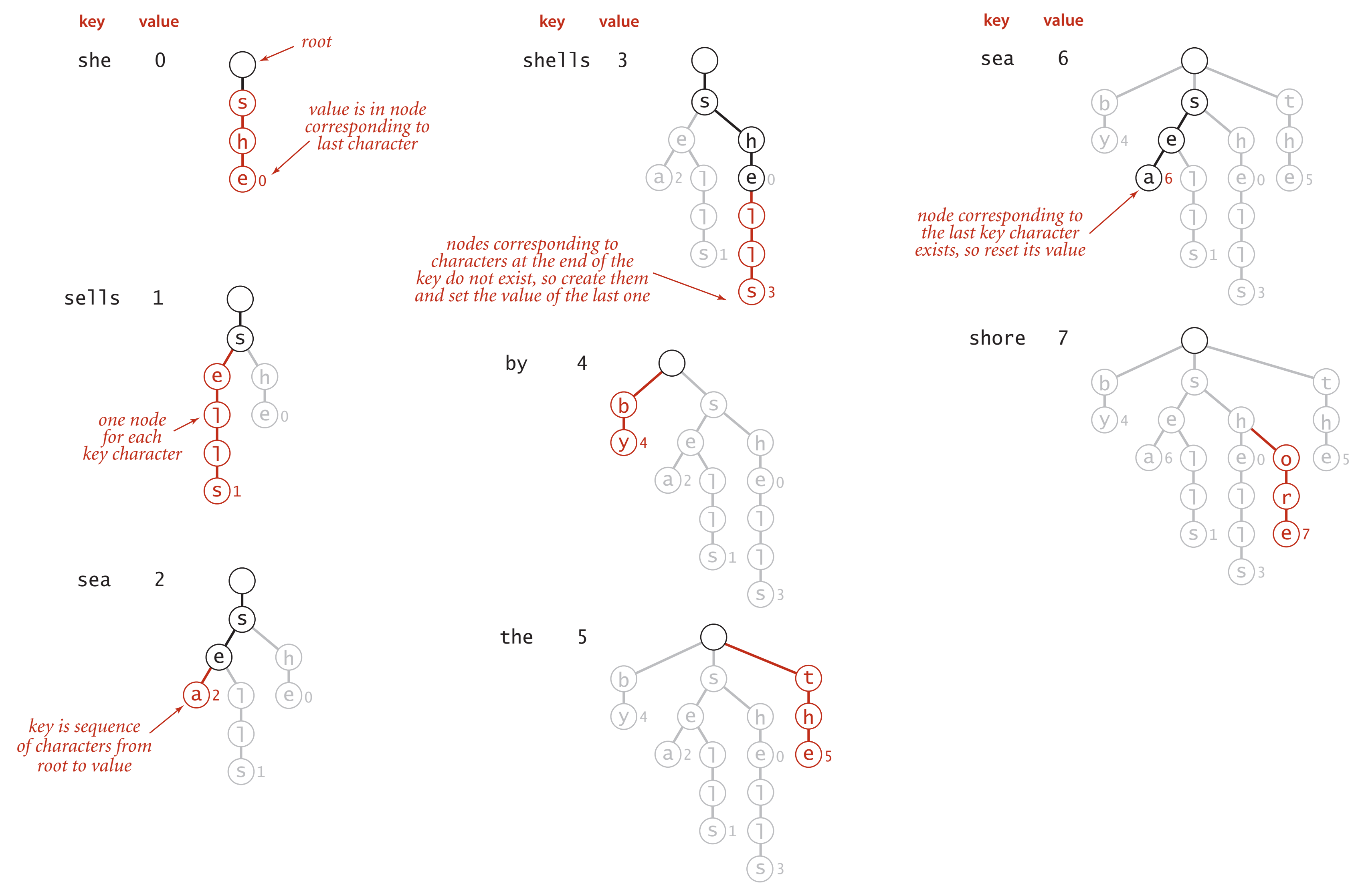
- Encounter a null link: create new node.
- Encounter the last character of the key: set value in that node.



node corresponding to the last key character exists, so set its value

nodes corresponding to characters at the end of the key do not exist, so create them and set the value of the last one

Trie construction example



root

value is in node corresponding to last character

one node for each key character

key is sequence of characters from root to value

nodes corresponding to characters at the end of the key do not exist, so create them and set the value of the last one

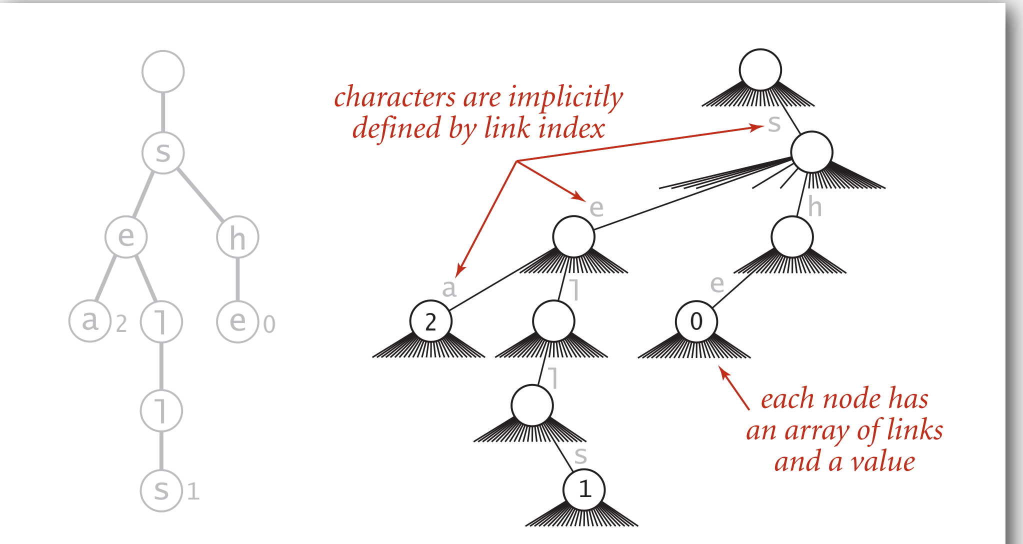
node corresponding to the last key character exists, so reset its value

Trie representation: Java implementation

Node. A value, plus references to R nodes.

```
private static class Node
{
   private Object value;
   private Node[] next = new Node[R];
}
```

use `Object` instead of `Value` since no generic array creation in Java



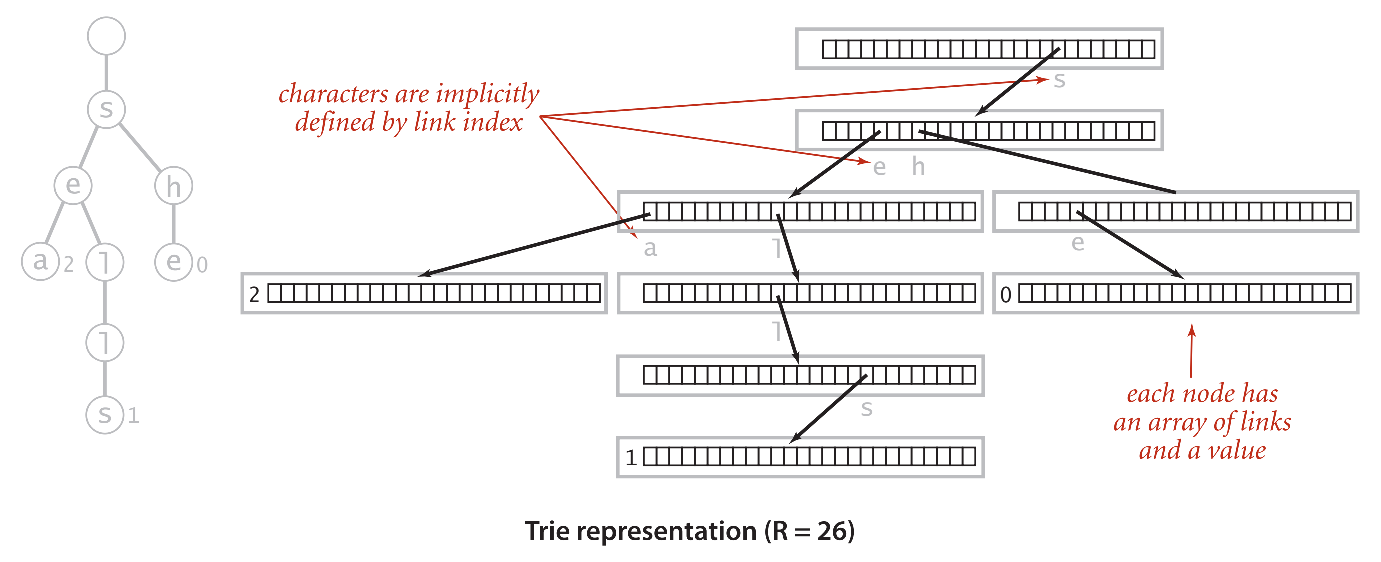
Trie representation

Trie representation: Java implementation

Node. A value, plus references to R nodes.

```
private static class Node
{
   private Object value;
   private Node[] next = new Node[R];
}
```

use `Object` instead of `Value` since no generic array creation in Java



Trie representation (R = 26)

R-way trie: Java implementation

```
public class TrieST<Value>
{
   private static final int R = 256;
   private Node root;

   private static class Node
   {  /* see previous slide */  }

   public void put(String key, Value val)
   {  root = put(root, key, val, 0);  }

   private Node put(Node x, String key, Value val, int d)
   {
      if (x == null) x = new Node();
      if (d == key.length()) { x.val = val; return x; }
      char c = key.charAt(d);
      x.next[c] = put(x.next[c], key, val, d+1);
      return x;
   }

}
```

extended ASCII

R-way trie: Java implementation (continued)

```
public boolean contains(String key)
{  return get(key) != null;  }

public Value get(String key)
{
   Node x = get(root, key, 0);
   if (x == null) return null;
   return (Value) x.val;
}

private Node get(Node x, String key, int d)
{
   if (x == null) return null;
   if (d == key.length()) return x;
   char c = key.charAt(d);
   return get(x.next[c], key, d+1);
}
```

Trie performance

Search miss.

- Could have mismatch on first character.
- Typical case: examine only a few characters.

Search hit. Need to examine all L characters for equality.

Space. R null links at each leaf.
(but sublinear space possible if many short strings share common prefixes)

Bottom line. Fast search hit, sublinear-time search miss, wasted space.

String symbol table implementations cost summary

	character accesses (typical case)				dedup	
implementation	search hit	search miss	insert	space (links)	`moby.txt`	`actors.txt`
red-black BST	$L + c \lg^2 N$	$c \lg^2 N$	$c \lg^2 N$	$4N$	1.40	97.4
hashing	L	L	L	$4N$ to $16N$	0.76	40.6
R-way trie	L	$\log_R N$	L	$(R+1)N$	1.12	out of memory

R-way trie.

- Method of choice for small R.
- Too much memory for large R.

Challenge. Use less memory, e.g., 65,536-way trie for Unicode!

Digression: out of memory?

" 640 K ought to be enough for anybody. "

— attributed to Bill Gates, 1981

(commenting on the amount of RAM in personal computers)

" 64 MB of RAM may limit performance of some Windows XP features; therefore, 128 MB or higher is recommended for best performance. " *— Windows XP manual, 2002*

" 64 bit is coming to desktops, there is no doubt about that. But apart from Photoshop, I can't think of desktop applications where you would need more than 4GB of physical memory, which is what you have to have in order to benefit from this technology. Right now, it is costly. " *— Bill Gates, 2003*

Digression: out of memory?

A short (approximate) history.

machine	year	address bits	addressable memory	typical actual memory	cost
PDP-8	1960s	12	6 KB	6 KB	$16K
PDP-10	1970s	18	256 KB	256 KB	$1M
IBM S/360	1970s	24	4 MB	512 KB	$1M
VAX	1980s	32	4 GB	1 MB	$1M
Pentium	1990s	32	4 GB	1 GB	$1K
Xeon	2000s	64	enough	4 GB	$100
??	future	128+	enough	enough	$1

> *" 512-bit words ought to be enough for anybody. "*
>
> *— RS, 1995*

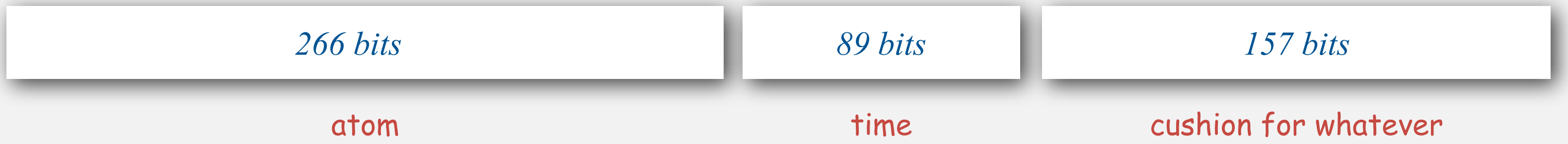
A modest proposal

Number of atoms in the universe (estimated). $\le 2^{266}$.

Age of universe (estimated). 14 billion years ~ 2^{59} seconds $\le 2^{89}$ nanoseconds.

Q. How many bits address every atom that ever existed?

A. Use a unique 512-bit address for every atom at every time quantum.



266 bits	*89 bits*	*157 bits*
atom	time	cushion for whatever

Ex. Use 256-way trie to map atom to location.

- Represent atom as 64 8-bit chars (512 bits).
- 256-way trie wastes 255/256 actual memory.
- Need better use of memory.

- tries
- **TSTs**
- string symbol table API

Ternary search tries

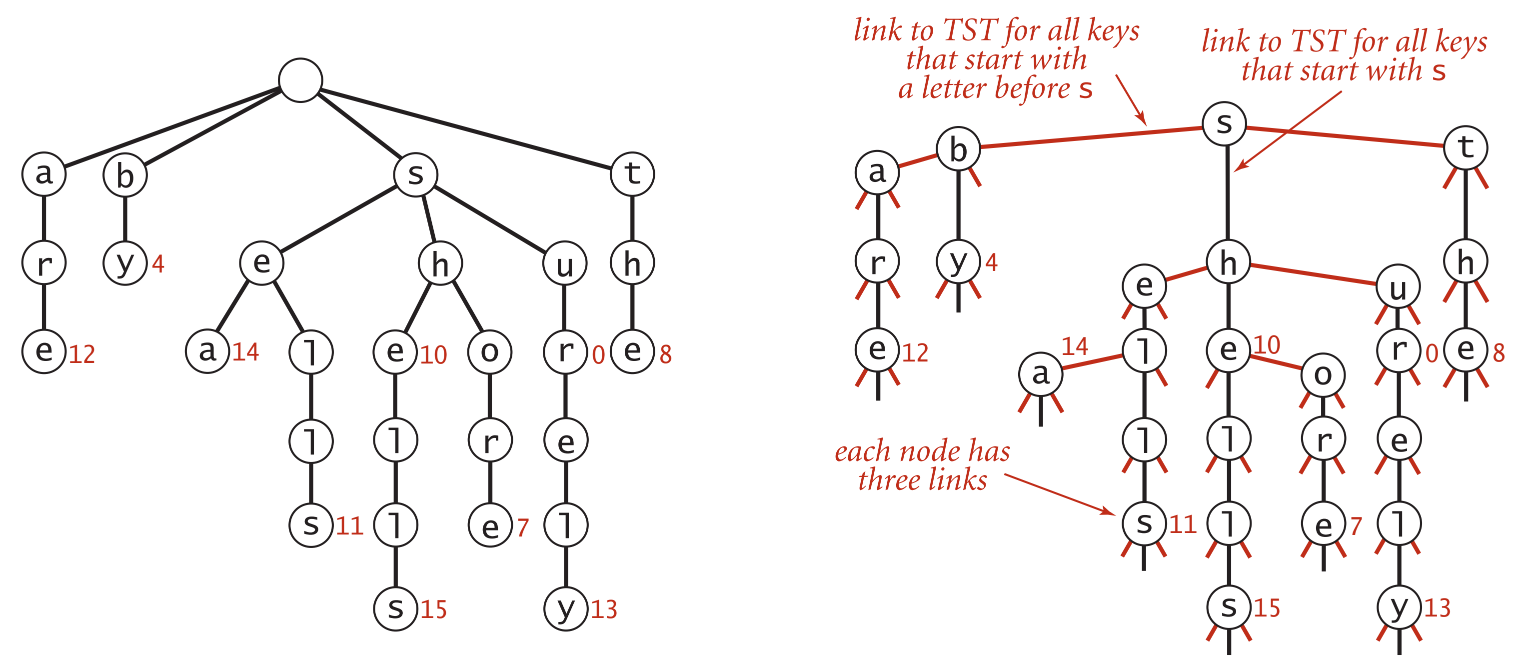
TST. [Bentley-Sedgewick, 1997]

- Store characters and values in nodes (not keys).
- Each node has three children: smaller (left), equal (middle), larger (right).

Ternary search tries

TST. [Bentley-Sedgewick, 1997]

- Store characters and values in nodes (not keys).
- Each node has three children: smaller (left), equal (middle), larger (right).



TST representation of a trie

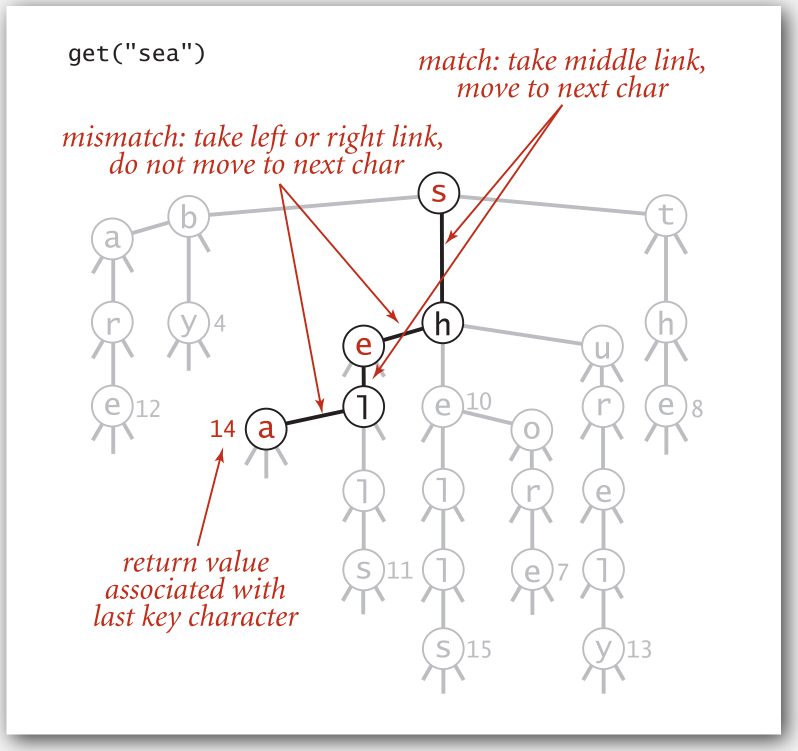
Search in a TST

Follow links corresponding to each character in the key.

- If less, take left link; if greater, take right link.
- If equal, take the middle link and move to the next key character.

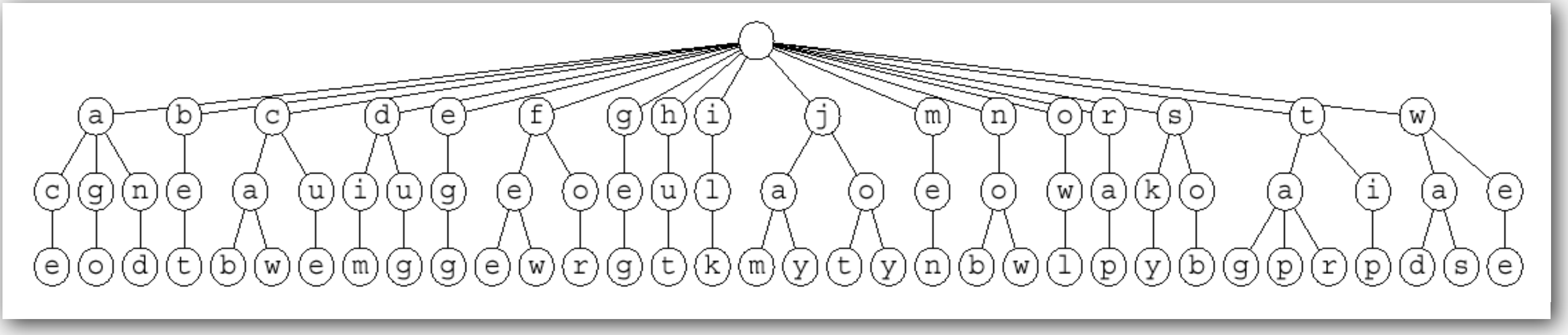
Search hit. Node where search ends has a non-null value.

Search miss. Reach a null link or node where search ends has null value.



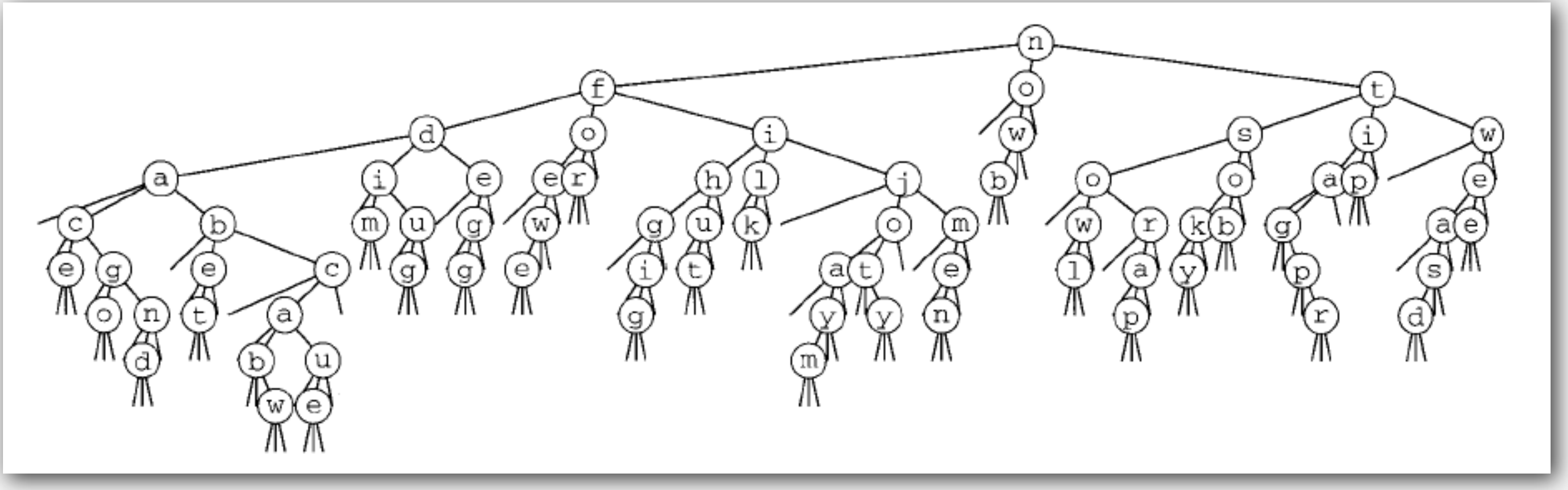
26-way trie vs. TST

26-way trie. 26 null links in each leaf.



26-way trie (1035 null links, not shown)

TST. 3 null links in each leaf.



TST (155 null links)

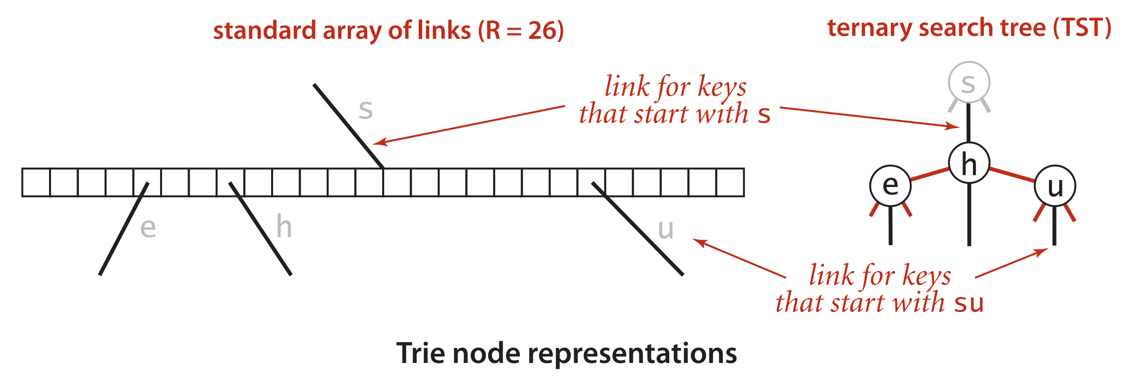
```
now
for
tip
ilk
dim
tag
jot
sob
nob
sky
hut
ace
bet
men
egg
few
jay
owl
joy
rap
gig
wee
was
cab
wad
caw
cue
fee
tap
ago
tar
jam
dug
and
```

TST representation in Java

A TST node is five fields:

- A value.
- A character c.
- A reference to a left TST.
- A reference to a middle TST.
- A reference to a right TST.

```
private class Node
{
   private Value val;
   private char c;
   private Node left, mid, right;
}
```



Trie node representations

TST: Java implementation

```
public class TST<Value>
{
   private Node root;

   private class Node
   {  /* see previous slide */  }

   public void put(String key, Value val)
   {  root = put(root, key, val, 0);  }

   private Node put(Node x, String key, Value val, int d)
   {
      char c = s.charAt(d);
      if (x == null) {  x = new Node(); x.c = c;  }
      if      (c < x.c)                x.left  = put(x.left,  key, val, d);
      else if (c > x.c)                x.right = put(x.right, key, val, d);
      else if (d < s.length() - 1) x.mid   = put(x.mid,   key, val, d+1);
      else                             x.val   = val;
      return x;
   }

}
```

TST: Java implementation (continued)

```
public boolean contains(String key)
{  return get(key) != null;  }

public Value get(String key)
{
   Node x = get(root, key, 0);
   if (x == null) return null;
   return x.val;
}

private Node get(Node x, String key, int d)
{
   if (x == null) return null;
   char c = s.charAt(d);
   if      (c < x.c)                return get(x.left,  key, d);
   else if (c > x.c)                return get(x.right, key, d);
   else if (d < key.length() - 1) return get(x.mid,   key, d+1);
   else                             return x;
}
```

String symbol table implementation cost summary

	character accesses (typical case)				dedup	
implementation	search hit	search miss	insert	space (links)	`moby.txt`	`actors.txt`
red-black BST	$L + c \lg^2 N$	$c \lg^2 N$	$c \lg^2 N$	$4N$	1.40	97.4
hashing	L	L	L	$4N$ to $16N$	0.76	40.6
R-way trie	L	$\log_R N$	L	$(R + 1) N$	1.12	out of memory
TST	$L + \ln N$	$\ln N$	$L + \ln N$	$4N$	0.72	38.7

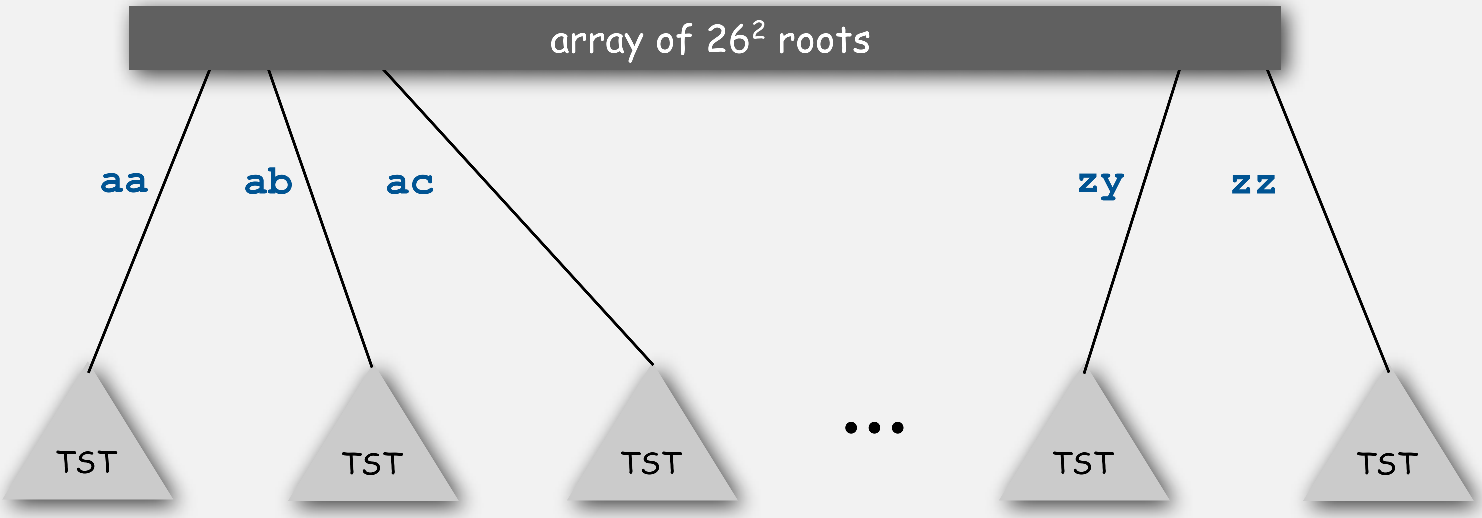
Remark. Can build balanced TSTs via rotations to achieve $L + \log N$ worst-case guarantees.

Bottom line. TST is as fast as hashing (for string keys), space efficient.

TST with R^2 branching at root

Hybrid of R-way trie and TST.

- Do R^2-way branching at root.
- Each of R^2 root nodes points to a TST.



Q. What about one- and two-letter words?

String symbol table implementation cost summary

	character accesses (typical case)				dedup	
implementation	search hit	search miss	insert	space (links)	`moby.txt`	`actors.txt`
red-black BST	$L + c \lg^2 N$	$c \lg^2 N$	$c \lg^2 N$	$4 N$	1.40	97.4
hashing	L	L	L	$4 N$ to $16 N$	0.76	40.6
R-way trie	L	$\log_R N$	L	$(R + 1) N$	1.12	out of memory
TST	$L + \ln N$	$\ln N$	$L + \ln N$	$4 N$	0.72	38.7
TST with R^2	$L + \ln N$	$\ln N$	$L + \ln N$	$4 N + R^2$	0.51	32.7

TST vs. hashing

Hashing.

- Need to examine entire key.
- Search hits and misses cost about the same.
- Need good hash function for every key type.
- No help for ordered symbol table operations.

TSTs.

- Works only for strings (or digital keys).
- Only examines just enough key characters.
- Search miss may only involve a few characters.
- Can handle ordered symbol table operations (plus others!).

Bottom line. TSTs are:

- Faster than hashing (especially for search misses).
  More flexible than red-black trees (next).

- tries
- TSTs
- **string symbol table API**

String symbol table API

Character-based operations. The string symbol table API supports several useful character-based operations.

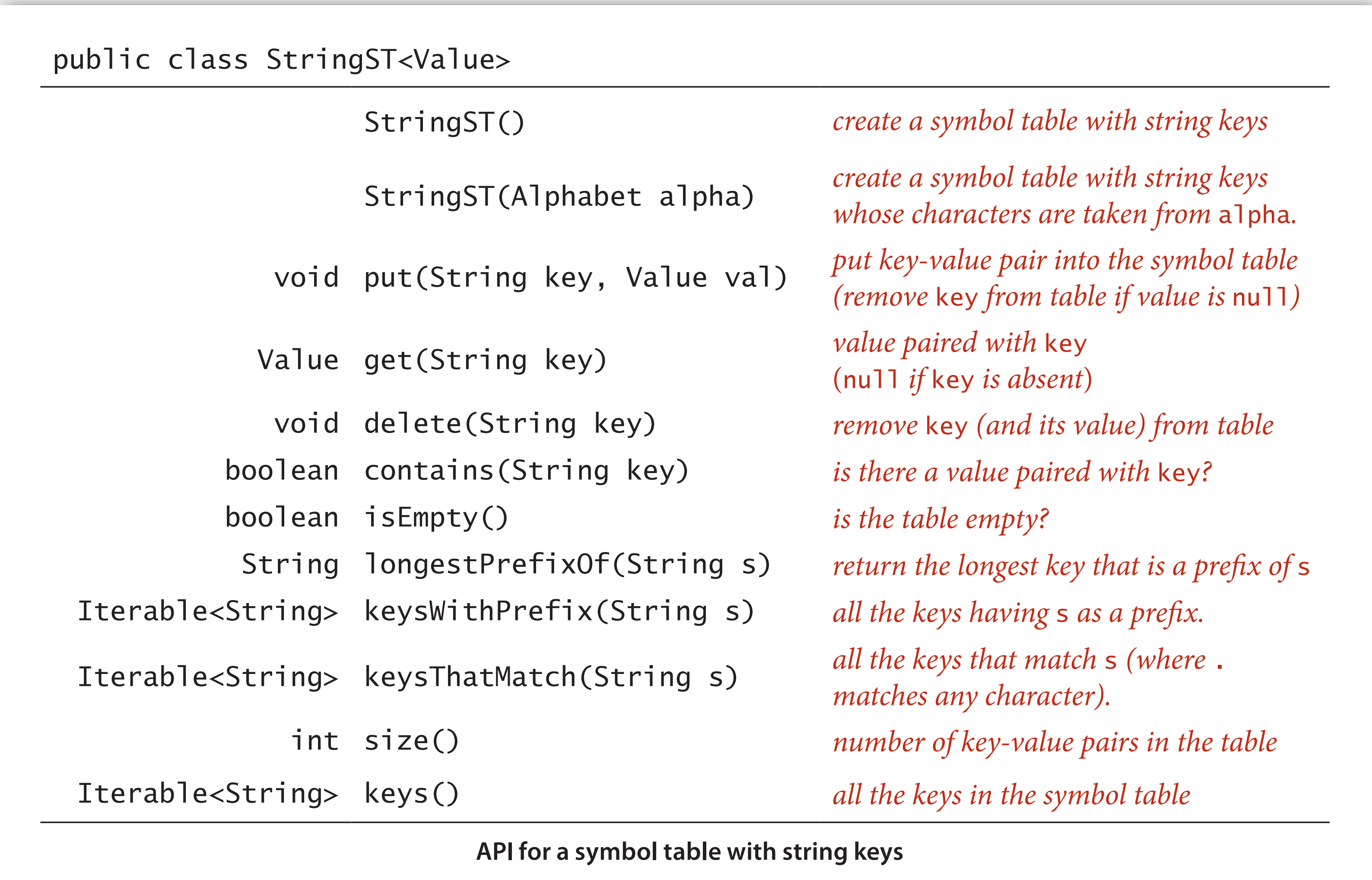
```
by sea sells she shells shore the
```

Prefix match. The keys with prefix `"sh"` are `"she"`, `"shells"`, and `"shore"`.

Longest prefix. The key that is the longest prefix of `"shellsort"` is `"shells"`.

Wildcard match. The key that match `".he"` are `"she"` and `"the"`.

String symbol table API



`public class StringST<Value>`

	`StringST()`	*create a symbol table with string keys*
	`StringST(Alphabet alpha)`	*create a symbol table with string keys whose characters are taken from* `alpha`*.*
`void`	`put(String key, Value val)`	*put key-value pair into the symbol table (remove* `key` *from table if value is* `null`*)*
`Value`	`get(String key)`	*value paired with* `key` *(*`null` *if* `key` *is absent)*
`void`	`delete(String key)`	*remove* `key` *(and its value) from table*
`boolean`	`contains(String key)`	*is there a value paired with* `key`*?*
`boolean`	`isEmpty()`	*is the table empty?*
`String`	`longestPrefixOf(String s)`	*return the longest key that is a prefix of* `s`
`Iterable<String>`	`keysWithPrefix(String s)`	*all the keys having* `s` *as a prefix.*
`Iterable<String>`	`keysThatMatch(String s)`	*all the keys that match* `s` *(where* `.` *matches any character).*
`int`	`size()`	*number of key-value pairs in the table*
`Iterable<String>`	`keys()`	*all the keys in the symbol table*

API for a symbol table with string keys

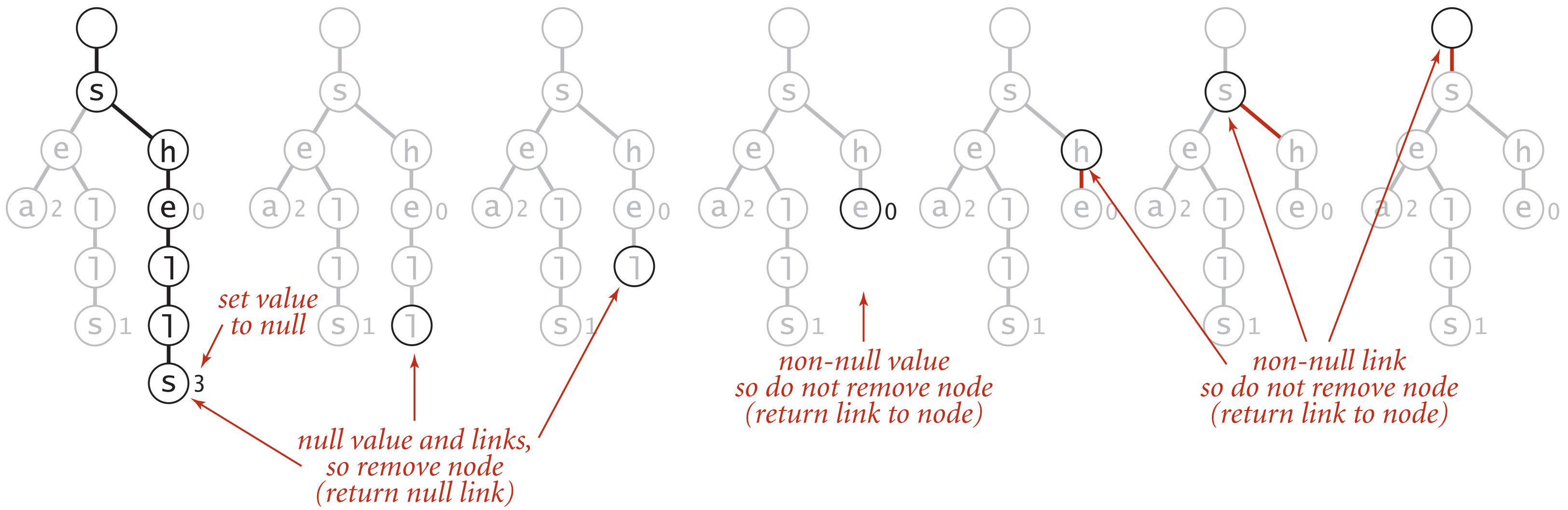
Remark. Can also add other ordered ST methods, e.g., **`floor()`** and **`rank()`**.

Deletion in an R-way trie

To delete a key-value pair:

- Find the node corresponding to key and set value to null.
- If that node has all null links, remove that node (and recur).

`delete("shells");`



Deleting a key (and its associated value) from a trie

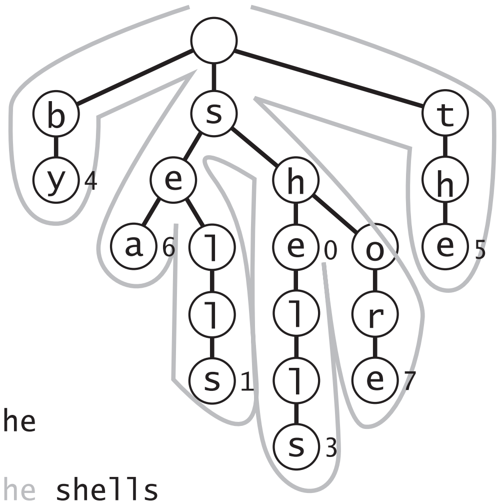
Ordered iteration

To iterate through all keys in sorted order:

- Do inorder traversal of trie; add keys encountered to a queue.
- Maintain sequence of characters on path from root to node.

`keysWithPrefix("");`

key	q
b	
by	by
s	
se	
sea	by sea
sel	
sell	
sells	by sea sells
sh	
she	by sea sells she
shell	
shells	by sea sells she shells
sho	
shor	
shore	by sea sells she shells shore
t	
th	
the	by sea sells she shells shore the



Collecting the keys in a trie (trace)

Ordered iteration: Java implementation

To iterate through all keys in sorted order:

- Do inorder traversal of trie; add keys encountered to a queue.
- Maintain sequence of characters on path from root to node.

```
public Iterable<String> keys()
{
   Queue<String> queue = new Queue<String>();
   collect(root, "", queue);
   return queue;
}

private void collect(Node x, String prefix, Queue<String> q)
{
   if (x == null) return;
   if (x.val != null) q.enqueue(prefix);
   for (char c = 0; c < R; c++)
      collect(x.next[c], prefix + c, q);
}
```

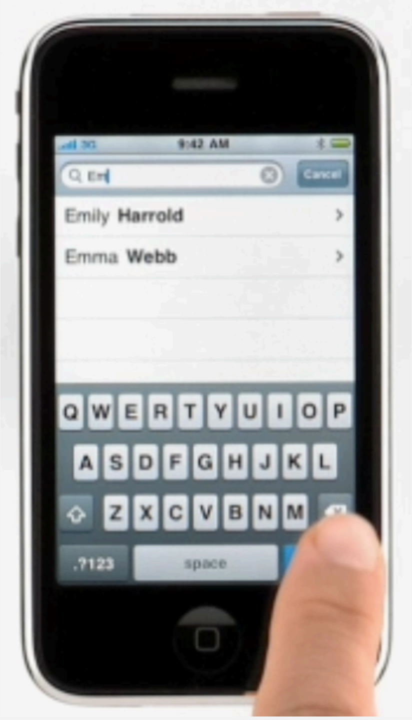
sequence of characters
on path from root to x

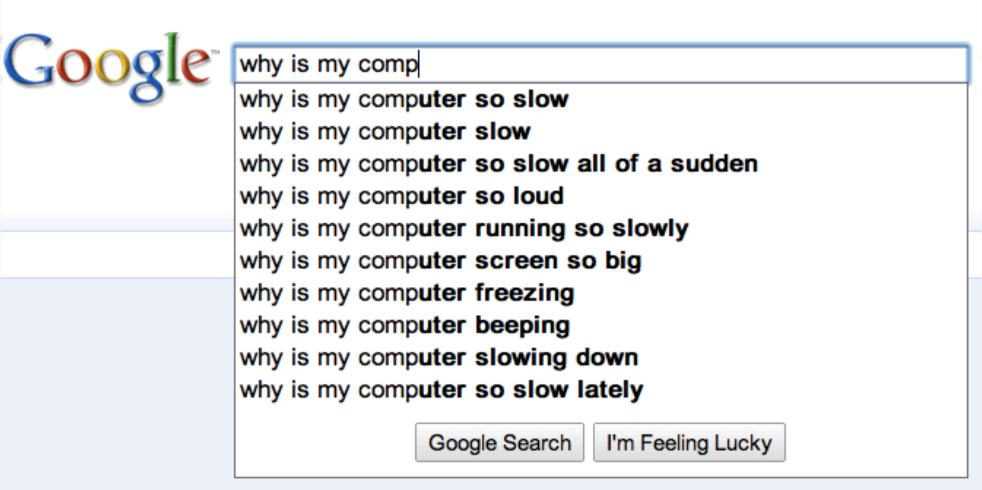
Prefix matches

Find all keys in symbol table starting with a given prefix.

Ex. Autocomplete in a cell phone, search bar, text editor, or shell.

- User types characters one at a time.
- System reports all matching strings.





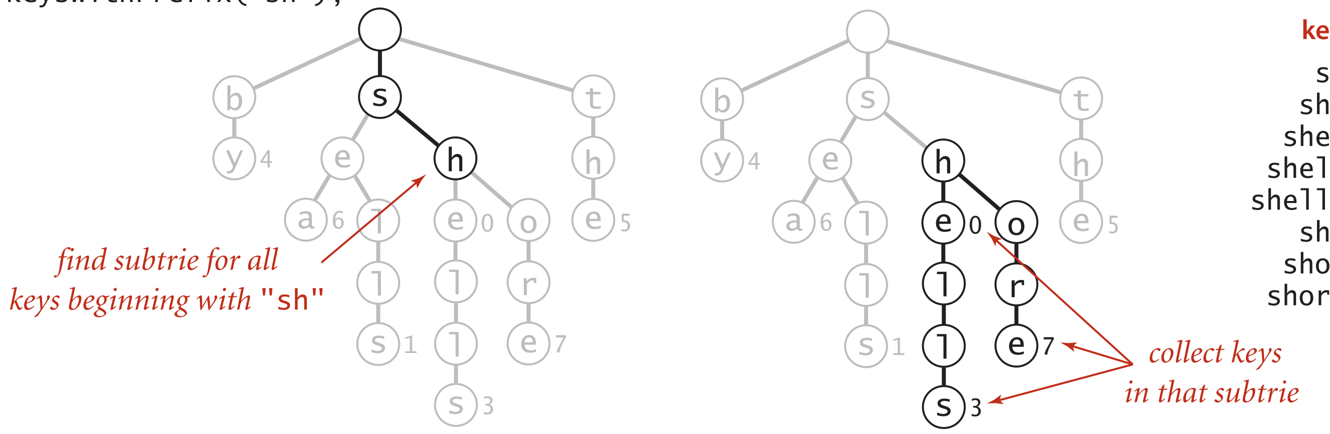
why is my comp

why is my computer **so slow**
why is my computer **slow**
why is my computer **so slow all of a sudden**
why is my computer **so loud**
why is my computer **running so slowly**
why is my computer **screen so big**
why is my computer **freezing**
why is my computer **beeping**
why is my computer **slowing down**
why is my computer **so slow lately**

Prefix matches

Find all keys in symbol table starting with a given prefix.

`keysWithPrefix("sh");`



find subtrie for all keys beginning with `"sh"`

collect keys in that subtrie

key	q
sh	
she	she
shel	
shell	
shells	she shells
sho	
shor	
shore	she shells shore

Prefix match in a trie

```
public Iterable<String> keysWithPrefix(String prefix)
{
   Queue<String> queue = new Queue<String>();
   Node x = get(root, prefix, 0);
   collect(x, prefix, queue);
   return queue;
}
```

root of subtrie for all strings beginning with given prefix

Longest prefix

Find longest key in symbol table that is a prefix of query string.

Ex. Search IP database for longest prefix matching destination IP, and route packets accordingly.

```
"128"
"128.112"
"128.112.055"
"128.112.055.15"
"128.112.136"
"128.112.155.11"
"128.112.155.13"
"128.222"
"128.222.136"

prefix("128.112.136.11") = "128.112.136"
prefix("128.166.123.45") = "128"
```

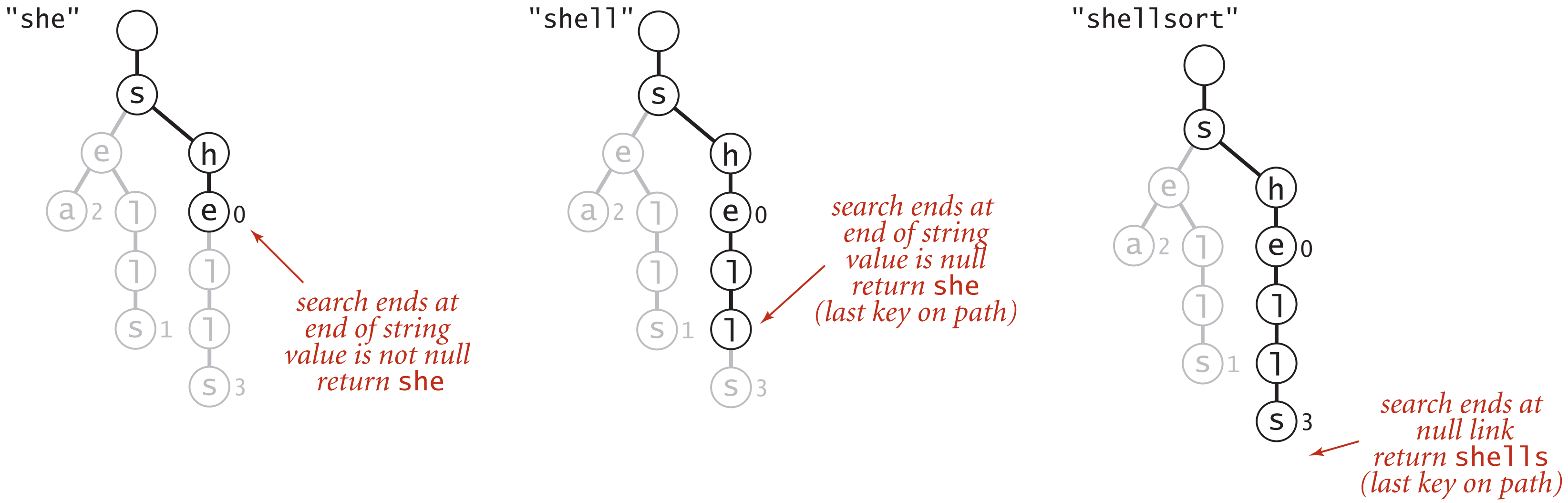
← represented as 32-bit binary number for IPv4 (instead of string)

Q. Why isn't longest prefix match the same as floor or ceiling?

Longest prefix

Find longest key in symbol table that is a prefix of query string.

- Search for query string.
- Keep track of longest key encountered.



Possibilities for `longestPrefixOf()`

Longest prefix: Java implementation

Find longest key in symbol table that is a prefix of query string.

- Search for query string.
- Keep track of longest key encountered.

```java
public String longestPrefixOf(String query)
{
   int length = search(root, query, 0, 0);
   return query.substring(0, length);
}

private int search(Node x, String query, int d, int length)
{
   if (x == null) return length;
   if (x.val != null) length = d;
   if (d == query.length()) return length;
   char c = query.charAt(d);
   return search(x.next[c], query, d+1, length);
}
```

T9 texting

Goal. Type text messages on a phone keypad.

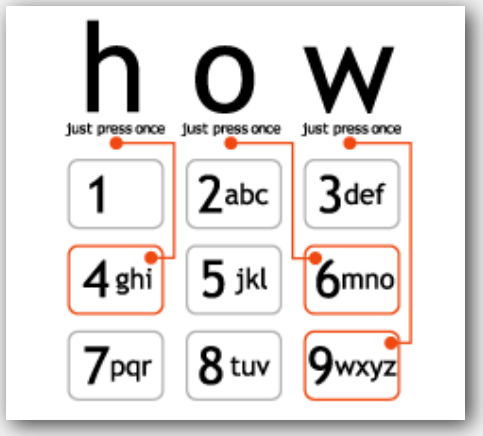
Multi-tap input. Enter a letter by repeatedly pressing a key until the desired letter appears.

T9 text input. ["A much faster and more fun way to enter text."]

- Find all words that correspond to given sequence of numbers.
- Press 0 to see all completion options.

Ex. `hello`

- Multi-tap: `4 4 3 3 5 5 5 5 5 5 6 6 6`
- T9: `4 3 5 5 6`



www.t9.com

A Letter to t9.com

To: info@t9support.com
Date: Tue, 25 Oct 2005 14:27:21 -0400 (EDT)

Dear T9 texting folks,

I enjoyed learning about the T9 text system
from your webpage, and used it as an example
in my data structures and algorithms class.
However, one of my students noticed a bug
in your phone keypad

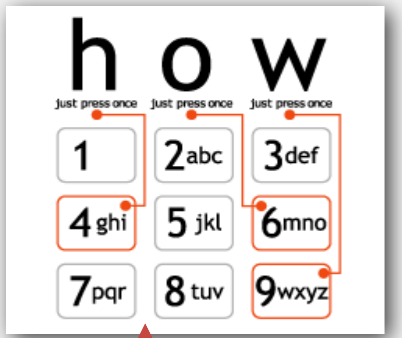
http://www.t9.com/images/how.gif

Somehow, it is missing the letter s. (!)

Just wanted to bring this information to
your attention and thank you for your website.

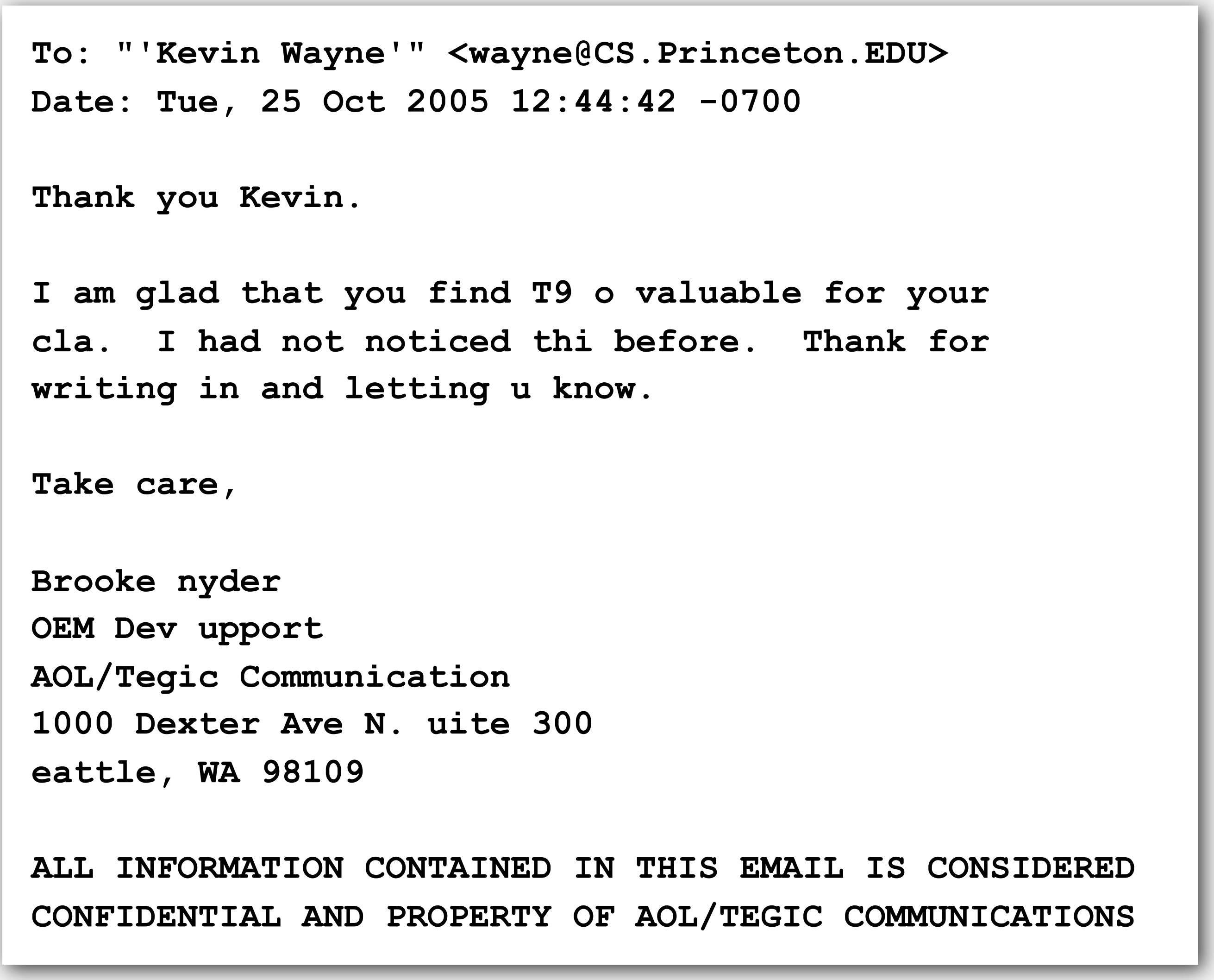
Regards,

Kevin



where's the "s" ??

A world without "s" ??



To: "'Kevin Wayne'" <wayne@CS.Princeton.EDU>
Date: Tue, 25 Oct 2005 12:44:42 -0700

Thank you Kevin.

I am glad that you find T9 o valuable for your cla. I had not noticed thi before. Thank for writing in and letting u know.

Take care,

Brooke nyder
OEM Dev upport
AOL/Tegic Communication
1000 Dexter Ave N. uite 300
eattle, WA 98109

ALL INFORMATION CONTAINED IN THIS EMAIL IS CONSIDERED CONFIDENTIAL AND PROPERTY OF AOL/TEGIC COMMUNICATIONS

Compressing a trie

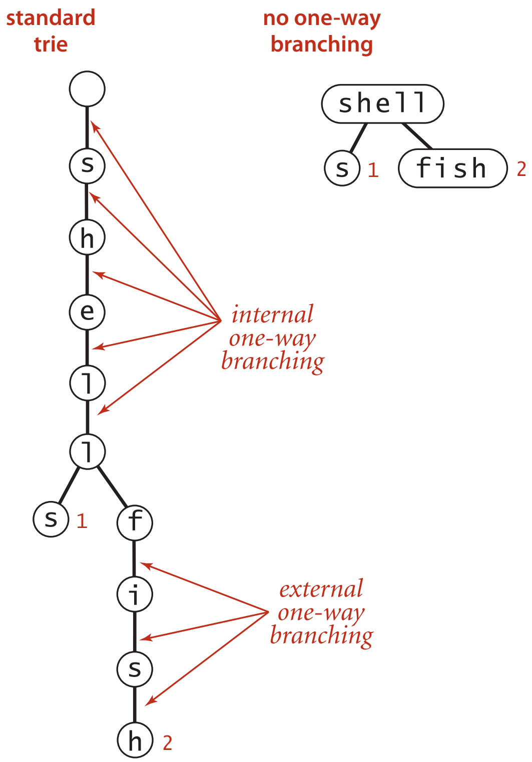
Collapsing 1-way branches at bottom.

Internal node stores character; leaf node stores suffix (or full key).

Collapsing interior 1-way branches.

Node stores a sequence of characters.

```
put("shells", 1);
put("shellfish", 2);
```

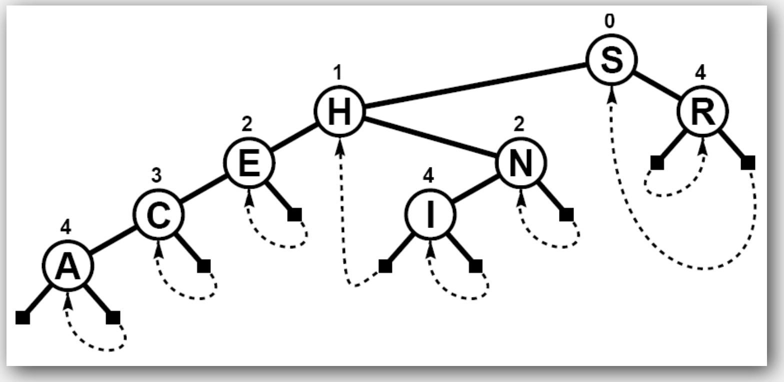


Removing one-way branching in a trie

A classic algorithm

Patricia tries. [Practical Algorithm to Retrieve Information Coded in Alphanumeric]

- Collapse one-way branches in binary trie.
- Thread trie to eliminate multiple node types.



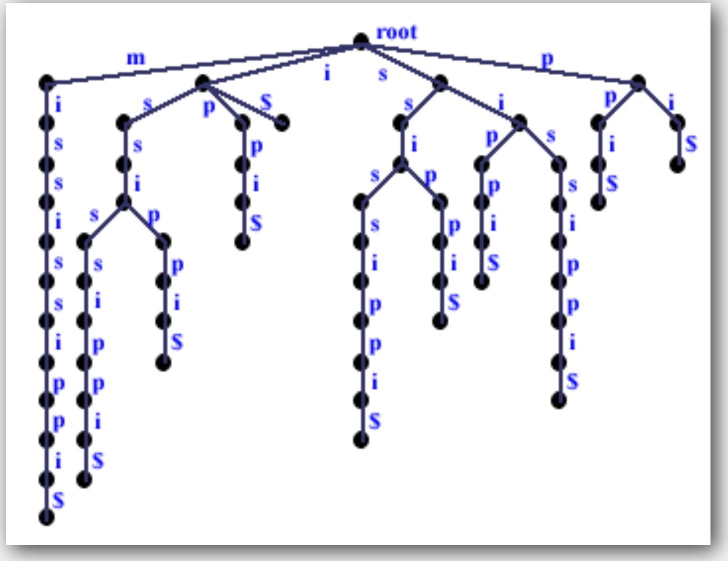
Applications.

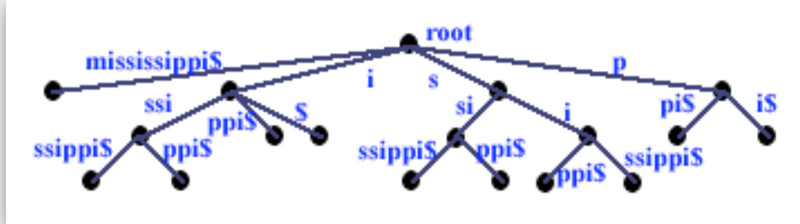
- Database search.
- P2P network search.
- IP routing tables: find longest prefix match.
- Compressed quad-tree for N-body simulation.
- Efficiently storing and querying XML documents.

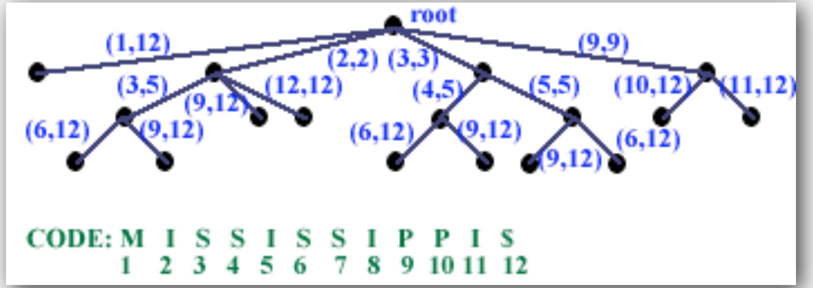
Implementation. One step beyond this lecture.

Suffix tree

Suffix tree. Threaded trie with collapsed 1-way branching for string suffixes.







Applications.

- Linear-time longest repeated substring.
- Computational biology databases (BLAST, FASTA).

Implementation. One step beyond this lecture.

String symbol tables summary

A success story in algorithm design and analysis.

Red-black tree.

- Performance guarantee: log N key compares.
- Supports ordered symbol table API.

Hash tables.

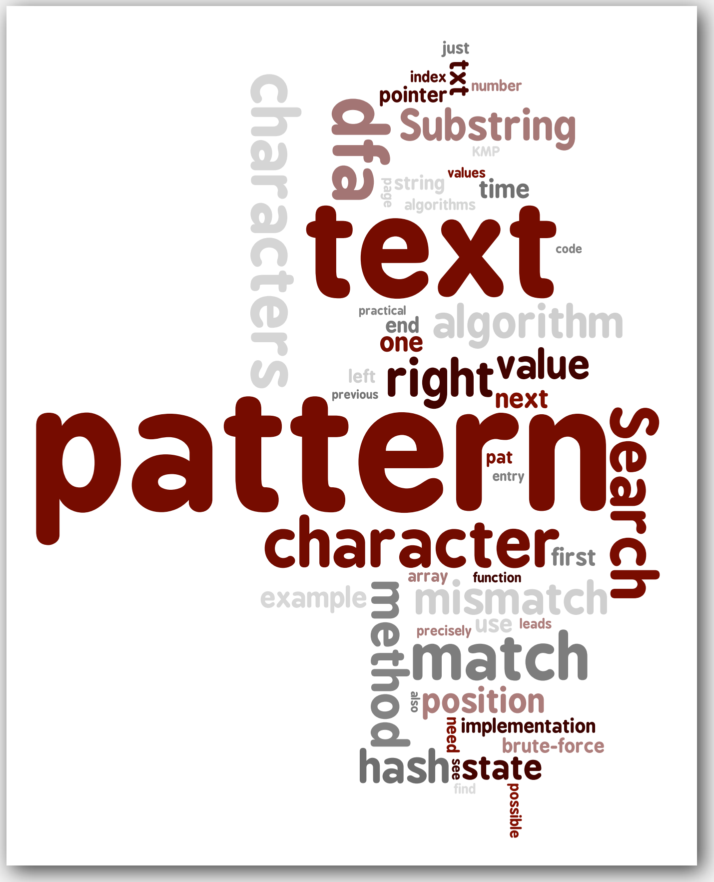
- Performance guarantee: constant number of probes.
- Requires good hash function for key type.

Tries. R-way, TST.

- Performance guarantee: log N characters accessed.
- Supports extensions to API based on partial keys.

Bottom line. You can get at anything by examining 50-100 bits (!!!)

5.3 Substring Search



- brute force
- Knuth-Morris-Pratt
- Boyer-Moore
- Rabin-Karp

Substring search

Goal. Find pattern of length M in a text of length N.

typically N >> M

pattern → N E E D L E

text → I N A H A Y S T A C K N E E D L E I N A

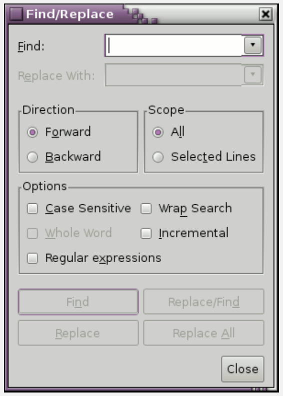
match

Computer forensics. Search memory or disk for signatures, e.g., all URLs or RSA keys that the user has entered.

`http://citp.princeton.edu/memory`

Applications

- Parsers.
- Spam filters.
- Digital libraries.
- Screen scrapers.
- Word processors.
- Web search engines.
- Electronic surveillance.
- Natural language processing.
- Computational molecular biology.
- FBIs Digital Collection System 3000.
- Feature detection in digitized images.
- ...



Find:

Replace With:

Direction
● Forward
○ Backward

Scope
● All
○ Selected Lines

Options
☐ Case Sensitive
☐ Wrap Search
☐ Whole Word
☐ Incremental
☐ Regular expressions

Application: Spam filtering

Identify patterns indicative of spam.

- `PROFITS`
- `L0SE WE1GHT`
- `herbal Viagra`
- `There is no catch.`
- `LOW M0RTGAGE RATES`
- `This is a one-time mailing.`
- `This message is sent in compliance with spam regulations.`
- `You're getting this message because you registered with one of our marketing partners.`

Application: Electronic surveillance

Need to monitor all internet traffic. (security)

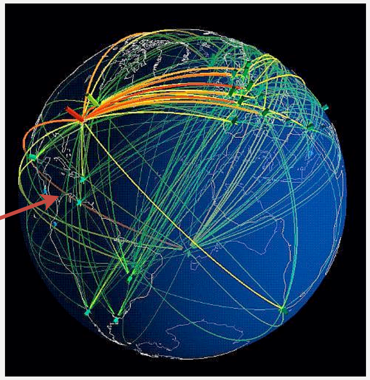
No way! (privacy)

Well, we're mainly interested in "ATTACK AT DAWN"

OK. Build a machine that just looks for that.

"ATTACK AT DAWN" substring search machine

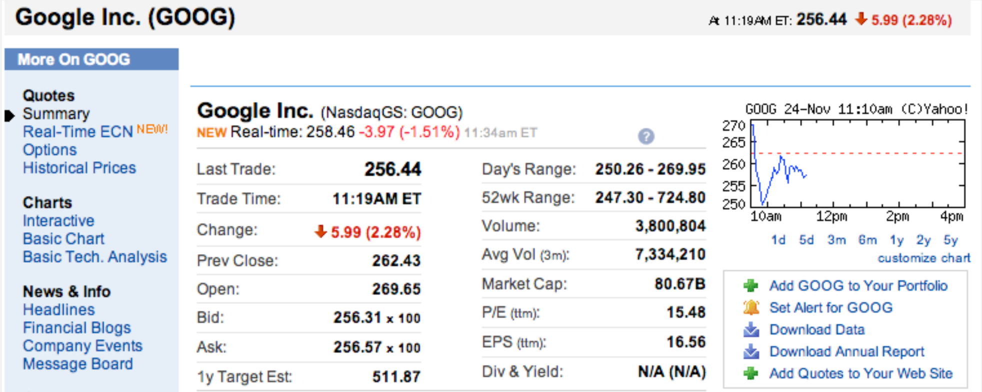
found ○



Application: Screen scraping

Goal. Extract relevant data from web page.

Ex. Find string delimited by `<b>` and `</b>` after first occurrence of pattern **`Last Trade:`**.



Google Inc. (GOOG)

At 11:19AM ET: 256.44 ↓ 5.99 (2.28%)

Google Inc. (NasdaqGS: GOOG)

NEW Real-time: 258.46 -3.97 (-1.51%) 11:34am ET

Last Trade:	256.44
Trade Time:	11:19AM ET
Change:	↓ 5.99 (2.28%)
Prev Close:	262.43
Open:	269.65
Bid:	256.31 x 100
Ask:	256.57 x 100
1y Target Est:	511.87

Day's Range:	250.26 - 269.95
52wk Range:	247.30 - 724.80
Volume:	3,800,804
Avg Vol (3m):	7,334,210
Market Cap:	80.67B
P/E (ttm):	15.48
EPS (ttm):	16.56
Div & Yield:	N/A (N/A)

`http://finance.yahoo.com/q?s=goog`

```
...
<tr>
<td class= "yfnc_tablehead1"
width= "48%">
Last Trade:
</td>
<td class= "yfnc_tabledata1">
<big><b>452.92</b></big>
</td></tr>
<td class= "yfnc_tablehead1"
width= "48%">
Trade Time:
</td>
<td class= "yfnc_tabledata1">
...
```

Screen scraping: Java implementation

Java library. The `indexOf()` method in Java's string library returns the index of the first occurrence of a given string, starting at a given offset.

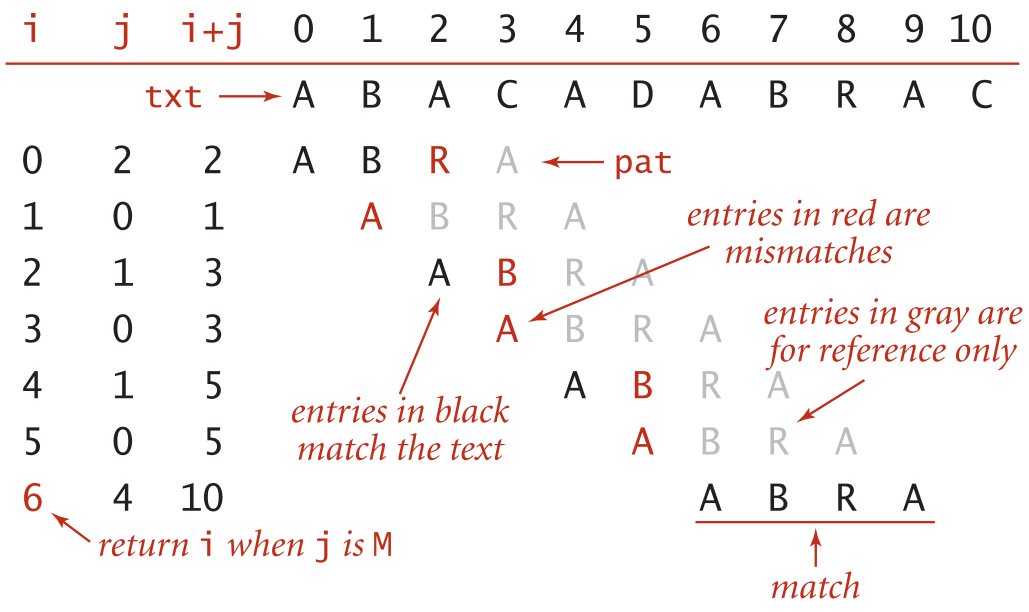
```
public class StockQuote
{
   public static void main(String[] args)
   {
      String name = "http://finance.yahoo.com/q?s=";
      In in = new In(name + args[0]);
      String text = in.readAll();
      int start    = text.indexOf("Last Trade:", 0);
      int from     = text.indexOf("<b>",  start);
      int to       = text.indexOf("</b>", from);
      String price = text.substring(from + 3, to);
      StdOut.println(price);
   }
}
```

```
% java StockQuote goog
256.44

% java StockQuote msft
19.68
```

- **brute force**
- Knuth-Morris-Pratt
- Boyer-Moore
- Rabin-Karp

Brute-force substring search

Check for pattern starting at each text position.



i	j	i+j	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
		txt →	A	B	A	C	A	D	A	B	R	A	C
0	2	2	A	B	R	A							
1	0	1		A	B	R	A						
2	1	3			A	B	R	A					
3	0	3				A	B	R	A				
4	1	5					A	B	R	A			
5	0	5						A	B	R	A		
6	4	10							A	B	R	A	

Brute-force substring search

Brute-force substring search: Java implementation

Check for pattern starting at each text position.

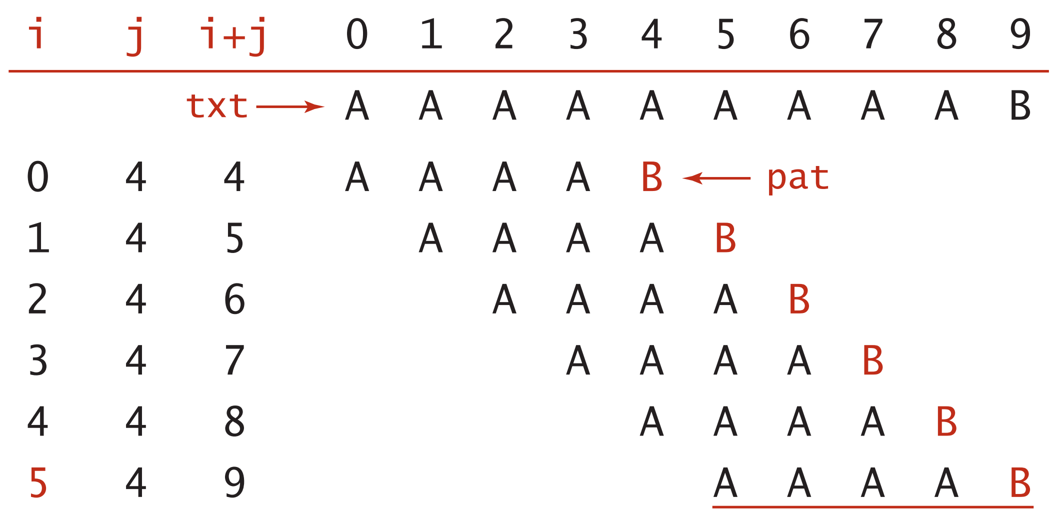
```
public static int search(String pat, String txt)
{
   int M = pat.length();
   int N = txt.length();
   for (int i = 0; i <= N - M; i++)
   {
      int j;
      for (j = 0; j < M; j++)
         if (txt.charAt(i+j) != pat.charAt(j))
            break;
      if (j == M) return i;
   }
   return N;
}
```

index in text where pattern starts

not found

Brute-force substring search: worst case

Brute-force algorithm can be slow if text and pattern are repetitive.



i	j	i+j	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
		txt →	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	B
0	4	4	A	A	A	A	B	← pat				
1	4	5		A	A	A	A	B				
2	4	6			A	A	A	A	B			
3	4	7				A	A	A	A	B		
4	4	8					A	A	A	A	B	
5	4	9						A	A	A	A	B

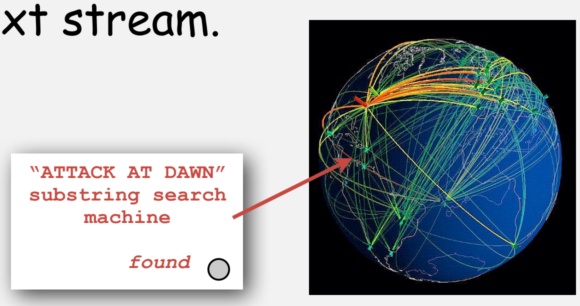
Brute-force substring search (worst case)

Worst case. ~ M N char compares.

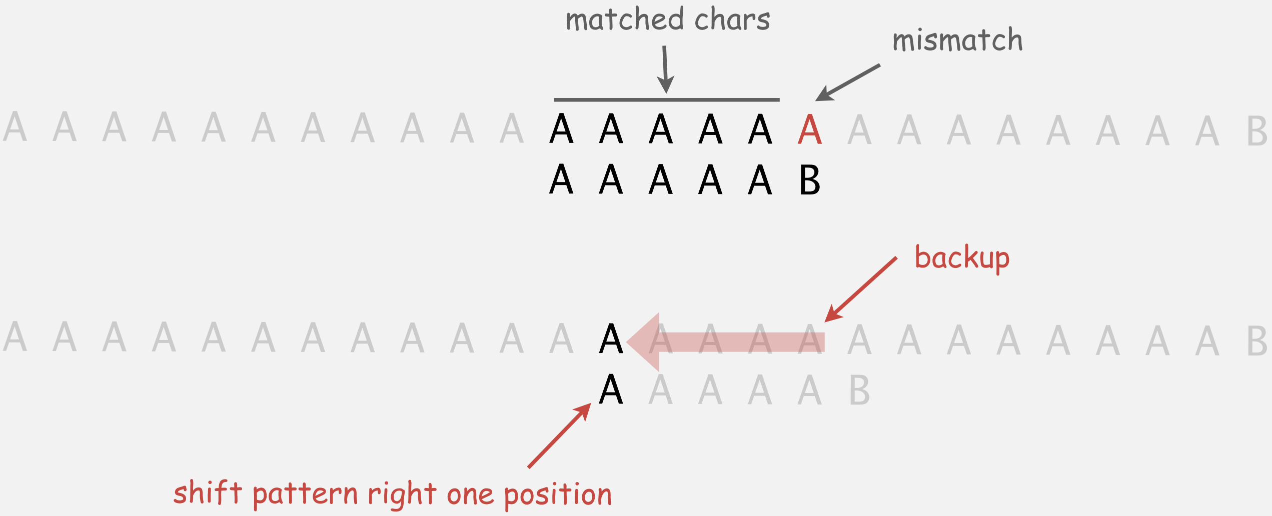
Backup

In typical applications, we want to avoid backup in text stream.

- Treat input as stream of data.
- Abstract model: `StdIn`.



Brute-force algorithm needs backup for every mismatch



matched chars

mismatch

A A A A A A A A A A A **A A A A A** A A A A A A A A A B

A A A A A B

backup

A A A A A A A A A A A A **A** A A A A A A A A A A A A B

A A A A A B

shift pattern right one position

Approach 1. Maintain buffer of size `M` (build backup into `StdIn`)

Approach 2. Stay tuned.

Brute-force substring search: alternate implementation

Same sequence of char compares as previous implementation.

- `i` points to end of sequence of already-matched chars in text.
- `j` stores number of already-matched chars (end of sequence in pattern).

```
public static int search(String pat, String txt)
{
   int i, N = txt.length();
   int j, M = pat.length();
   for (i = 0, j = 0; i < N && j < M; i++)
   {
      if (txt.charAt(i) == pat.charAt(j)) j++;
      else { i -= j; j = 0;  }
   }
   if (j == M) return i - M;
   else             return N;
}
```

backup

Algorithmic challenges in substring search

Brute-force is often not good enough.

Theoretical challenge. Linear-time guarantee. ← fundamental algorithmic problem

Practical challenge. Avoid backup in text stream. ← often no room or time to save text

```
Now is the time for all people to come to the aid of their party. Now is the time for all good people to
come to the aid of their party. Now is the time for many good people to come to the aid of their party.
Now is the time for all good people to come to the aid of their party. Now is the time for a lot of good
people to come to the aid of their party. Now is the time for all of the good people to come to the aid of
their party. Now is the time for all good people to come to the aid of their party. Now is the time for
each good person to come to the aid of their party. Now is the time for all good people to come to the aid
of their party. Now is the time for all good Republicans to come to the aid of their party. Now is the
time for all good people to come to the aid of their party. Now is the time for many or all good people to
come to the aid of their party. Now is the time for all good people to come to the aid of their party. Now
is the time for all good Democrats to come to the aid of their party. Now is the time for all people to
come to the aid of their party. Now is the time for all good people to come to the aid of their party. Now
is the time for many good people to come to the aid of their party. Now is the time for all good people to
come to the aid of their party. Now is the time for a lot of good people to come to the aid of their
party. Now is the time for all of the good people to come to the aid of their party. Now is the time for
all good people to come to the aid of their attack at dawn party. Now is the time for each person to come
to the aid of their party. Now is the time for all good people to come to the aid of their party. Now is
the time for all good Republicans to come to the aid of their party. Now is the time for all good people
to come to the aid of their party. Now is the time for many or all good people to come to the aid of their
party. Now is the time for all good people to come to the aid of their party. Now is the time for all good
Democrats to come to the aid of their party.
```

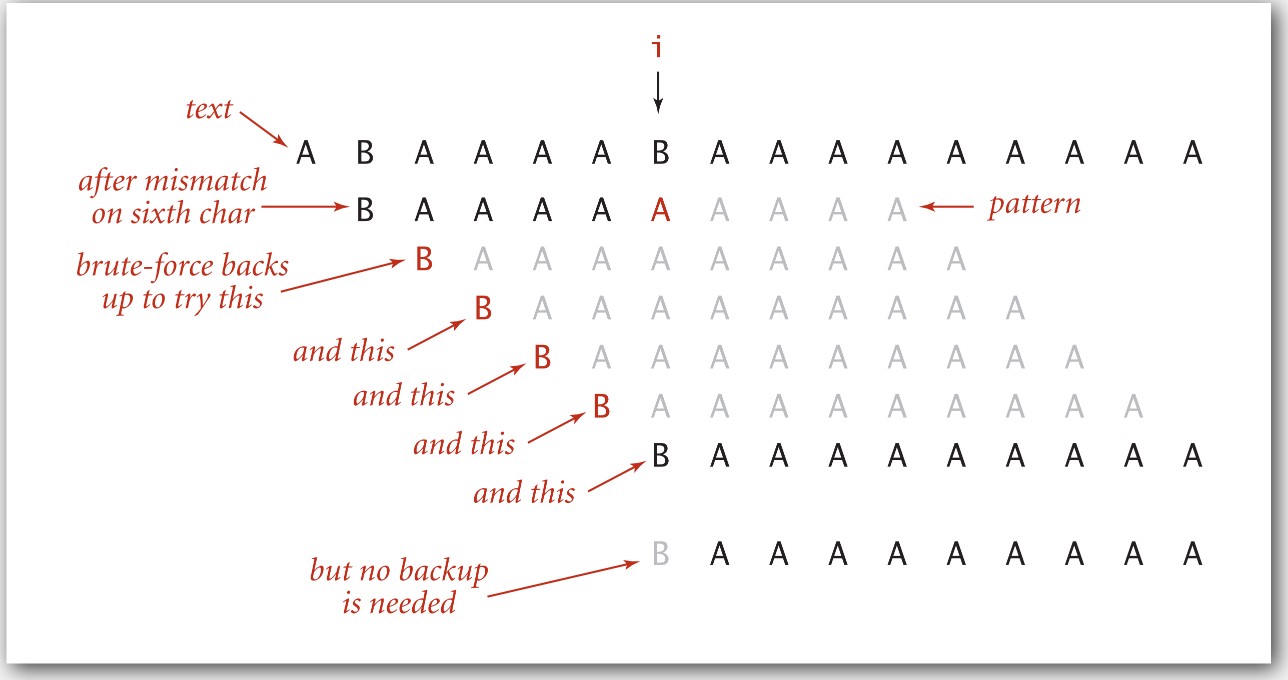
- brute force
- **Knuth-Morris-Pratt**
- Boyer-Moore
- Rabin-Karp

Knuth-Morris-Pratt substring search

Intuition. Suppose we are searching in text for pattern **`BAAAAAAAAA`**.

- Suppose we match 5 chars in pattern, with mismatch on 6th char.
- We know previous 6 chars in text are **`BAAAAB`**.
- Don't need to back up text pointer!

assuming {A, B} alphabet

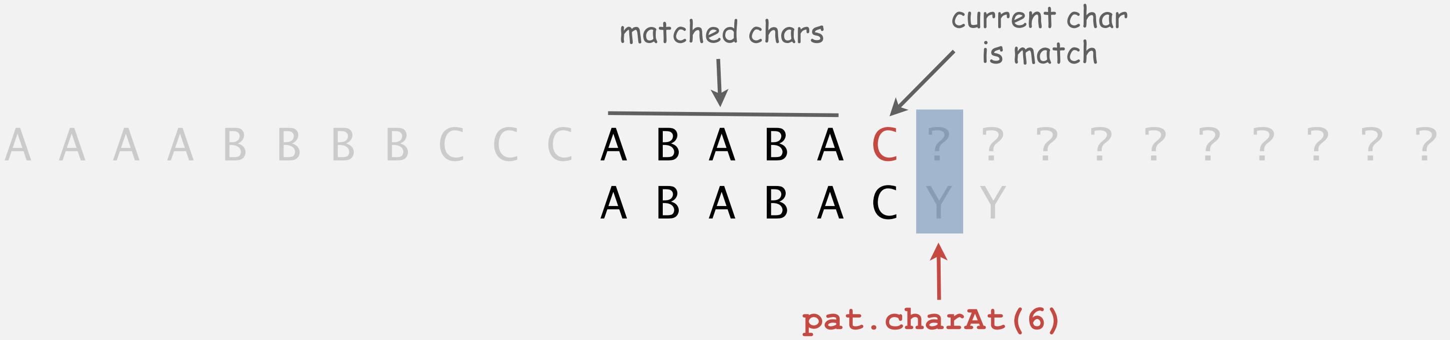


Remark. It is always possible to avoid backup (!)

KMP substring search preprocessing (concept)

Q. What pattern char do we compare to the next text char on match?

A. Easy: compare next pattern char to next text char.



	j	0	1	2	3	4	5
pat.charAt(j)		A	B	A	B	A	C
	A	1	1	3	1	5	1
dfa[][j]	B	0	2	0	4	0	4
	C	0	0	0	0	0	6

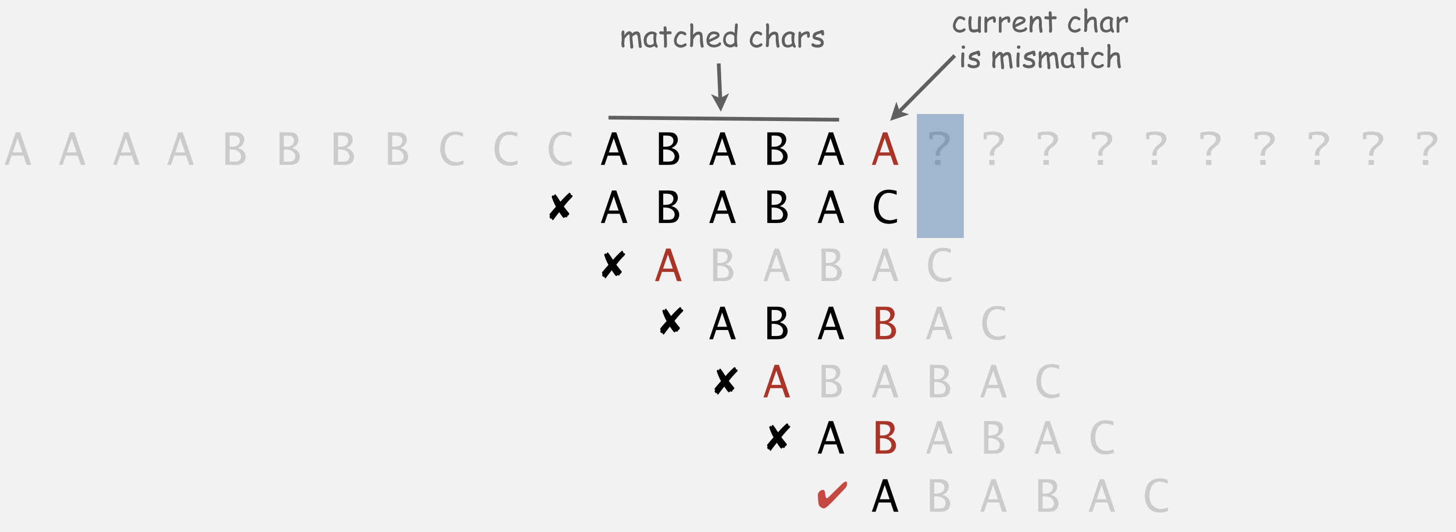
table giving pattern char to compare to the next text char

current text char: `c`
current pattern index: `j`
next pattern index: `dfa[c][j]`

KMP substring search preprocessing (concept)

Q. What pattern char do we compare to the next text char on mismatch?

A. Check each position, working from left to right.



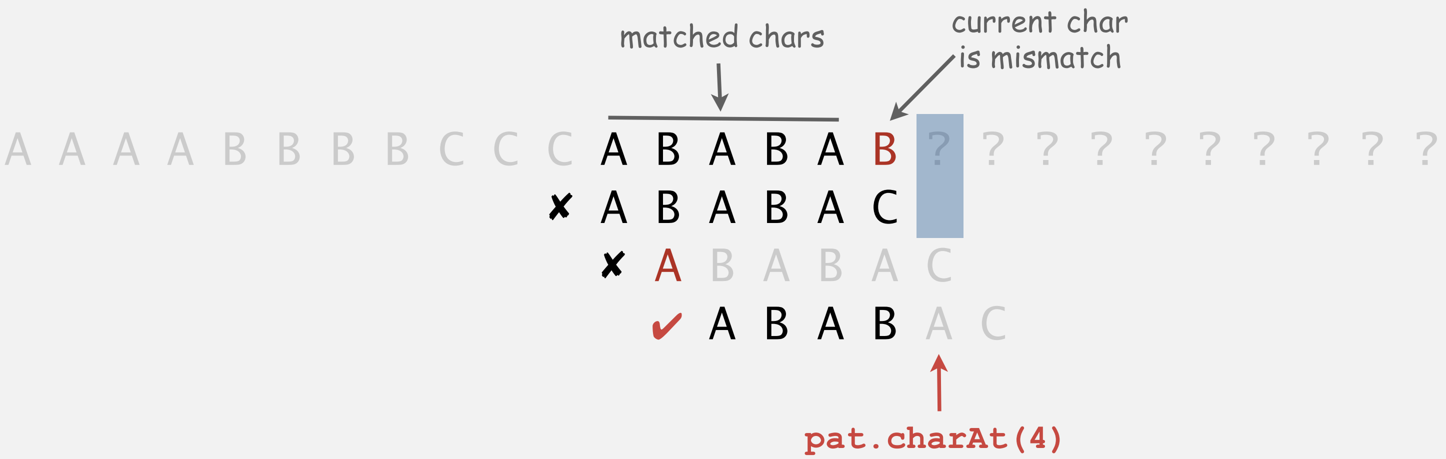
	j	0	1	2	3	4	5
pat.charAt(j)		A	B	A	B	A	C
dfa[][j]	A	1	1	3	1	5	1
	B	0	2	0	4	0	4
	C	0	0	0	0	0	6

table giving pattern char to compare to the next text char

KMP substring search preprocessing (concept)

Q. What pattern char do we compare to the next text char on mismatch?

A. Check each position, working from left to right.

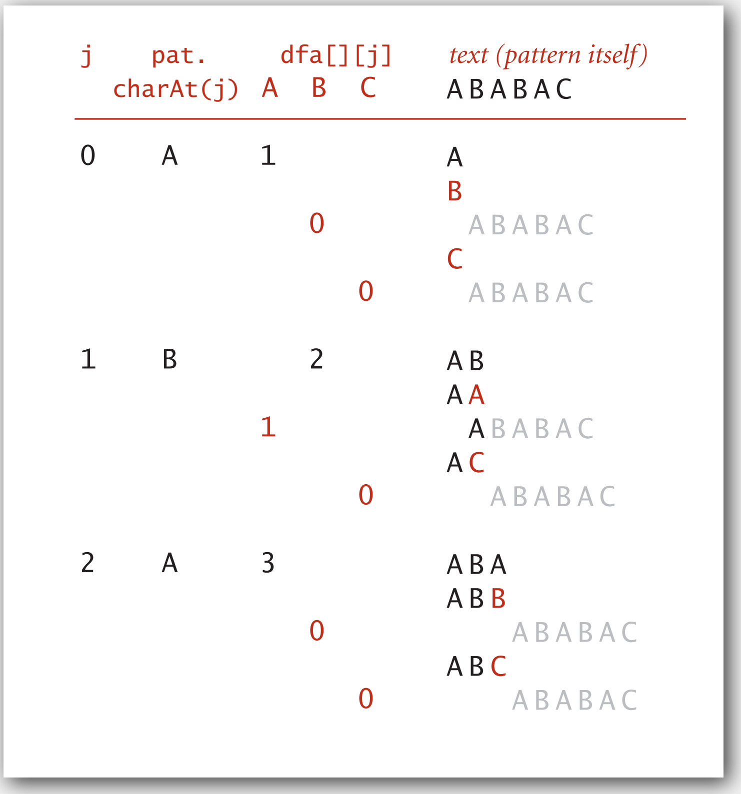


	j	0	1	2	3	4	5
pat.charAt(j)		A	B	A	B	A	C
dfa[][j]	A	1	1	3	1	5	1
	B	0	2	0	4	0	4
	C	0	0	0	0	0	6

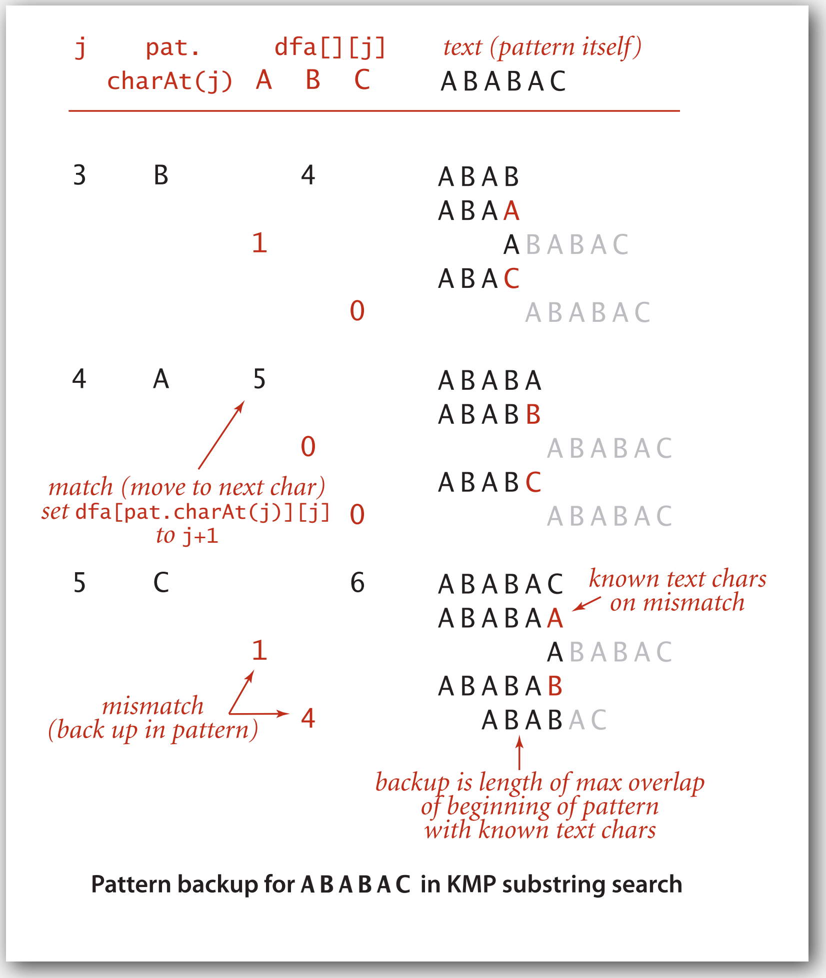
table giving pattern char to compare to the next text char

KMP substring search preprocessing (concept)

Fill in table columns by doing computation for each possible mismatch position.



j	pat.charAt(j)	dfa[][j] A	B	C	text (pattern itself) ABABAC
0	A	1			A
					B
			0		ABABAC
					C
				0	ABABAC
1	B		2		AB
					AA
		1			ABABAC
					AC
				0	ABABAC
2	A	3			ABA
					ABB
			0		ABABAC
					ABC
				0	ABABAC



j	pat.charAt(j)	dfa[][j] A	B	C	text (pattern itself) ABABAC
3	B		4		ABAB
					ABAA
		1			ABABAC
					ABAC
				0	ABABAC
4	A	5			ABABA
					ABABB
			0		ABABAC
					ABABC
				0	ABABAC
5	C			6	ABABAC
					ABABAA
		1			ABABAC
					ABABAB
			4		ABABAC

match (move to next char)
set `dfa[pat.charAt(j)][j]` *to* `j+1`

known text chars on mismatch

mismatch (back up in pattern)

backup is length of max overlap of beginning of pattern with known text chars

Pattern backup for ABABAC in KMP substring search

Deterministic finite state automaton (DFA)

DFA is abstract string-searching machine.

- Finite number of states (including start and halt).
- Exactly one transition for each char in alphabet.
- Accept if sequence of transitions leads to halt state.

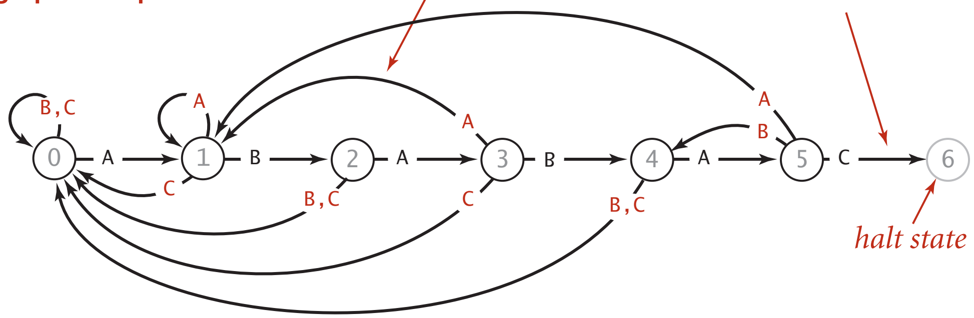
internal representation

j		0	1	2	3	4	5
`pat.charAt(j)`		A	B	A	B	A	C
`dfa[][j]`	A	1	1	3	1	5	1
	B	0	2	0	4	0	4
	C	0	0	0	0	0	6

mismatch transition (back up)

match transition (increment)

graphical representation

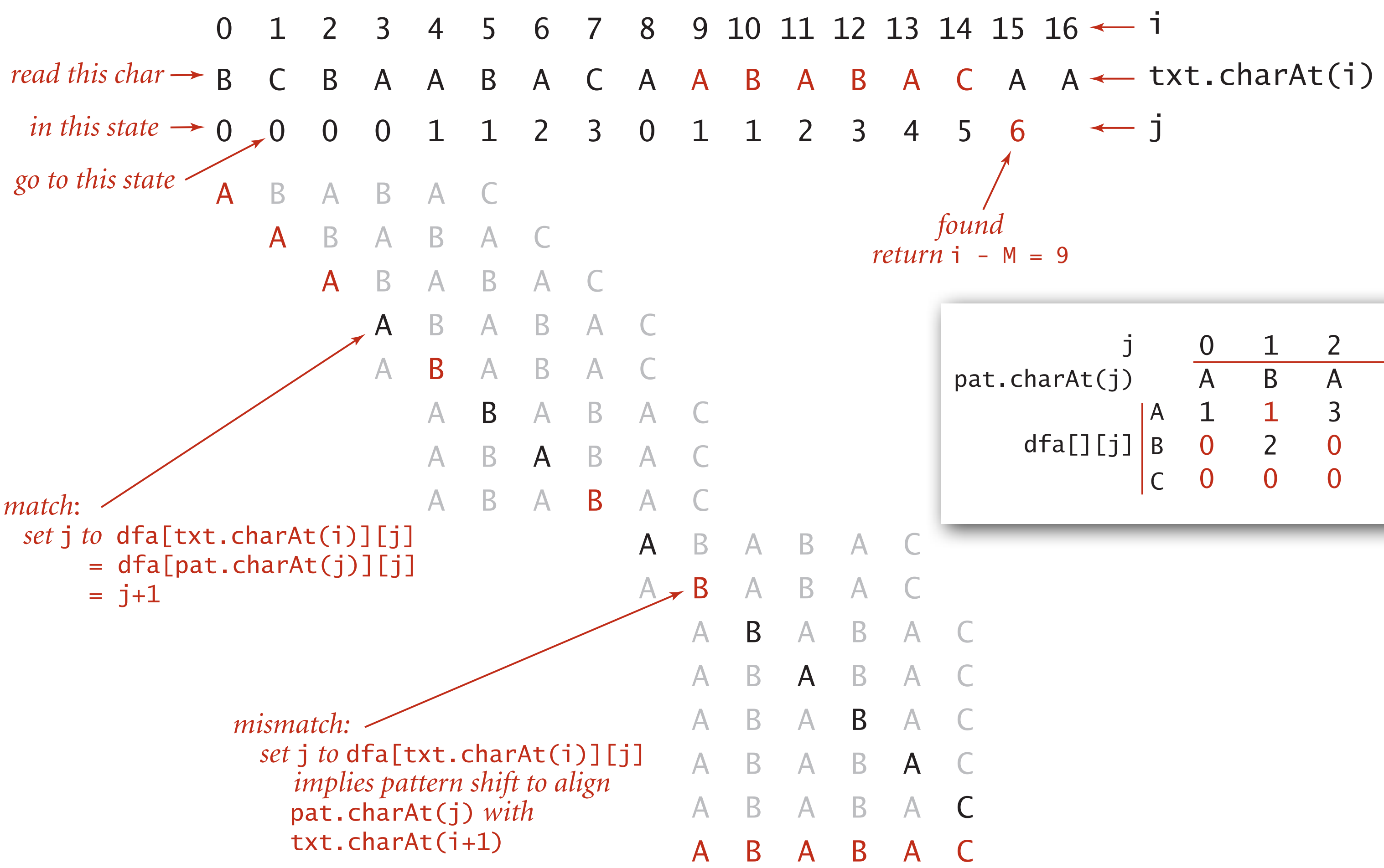


halt state

DFA corresponding to the string A B A B A C

If in state `j` reading char `c`:
halt if `j` is 6
else move to state `dfa[c][j]`

KMP substring search: trace



	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	← i
read this char →	B	C	B	A	A	B	A	C	A	A	B	A	B	A	C	A	A	← txt.charAt(i)
in this state →	0	0	0	0	1	1	2	3	0	1	1	2	3	4	5	6		← j
go to this state	A	B	A	B	A	C												
		A	B	A	B	A	C											
			A	B	A	B	A	C										
				A	B	A	B	A	C									
				A	B	A	B	A	C									
					A	B	A	B	A	C								
					A	B	A	B	A	C								
					A	B	A	B	A	C								
									A	B	A	B	A	C				
									A	B	A	B	A	C				
										A	B	A	B	A	C			
										A	B	A	B	A	C			
										A	B	A	B	A	C			
										A	B	A	B	A	C			
										A	B	A	B	A	C			
										A	B	A	B	A	C			
										A	B	A	B	A	C			

found
return `i - M = 9`

match:
set `j` *to* `dfa[txt.charAt(i)][j]`
`= dfa[pat.charAt(j)][j]`
`= j+1`

mismatch:
set `j` *to* `dfa[txt.charAt(i)][j]`
implies pattern shift to align
`pat.charAt(j)` *with*
`txt.charAt(i+1)`

		0	1	2	3	4	5
j		0	1	2	3	4	5
pat.charAt(j)		A	B	A	B	A	C
dfa[][j]	A	1	1	3	1	5	1
	B	0	2	0	4	0	4
	C	0	0	0	0	0	6

Trace of KMP substring search (DFA simulation) for A B A B A C

KMP search: Java implementation

KMP implementation. Build machine for pattern, simulate it on text.

Key differences from brute-force implementation.

- Text pointer `i` never decrements.
- Need to precompute `dfa[][]` table from pattern.

```
public int search(String txt)
{
   int i, j, N = txt.length();
   for (i = 0, j = 0; i < N && j < M; i++)
      j = dfa[txt.charAt(i)][j];
   if (j == M) return i - M;
   else        return N;
}
```

Running time.

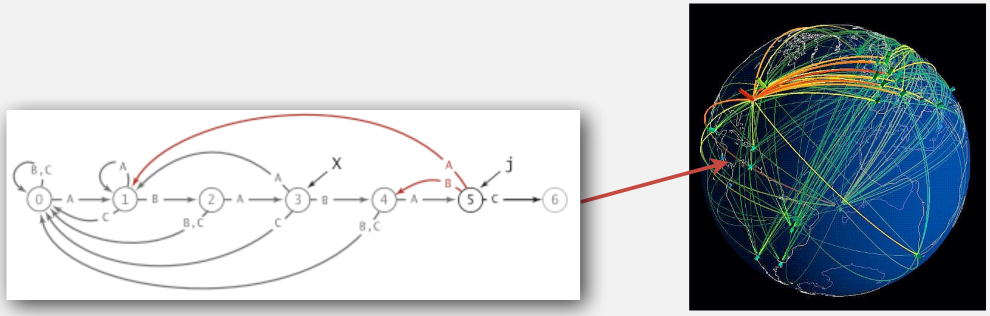
- Simulate DFA: at most N character accesses.
- Build DFA: at most $M^2 R$ character accesses (stay tuned for better method).

KMP search: Java implementation

Key differences from brute-force implementation.

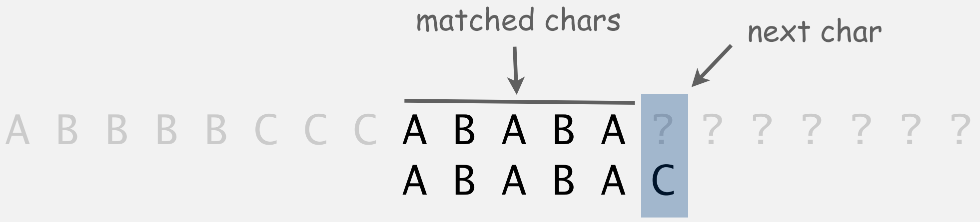
- Text pointer `i` never decrements.
- Need to precompute `dfa[][]` table from pattern.
- Could use input stream.

```
public int search(In in)
{
   int i, j;
   for (i = 0, j = 0; !in.isEmpty() && j < M; i++)
      j = dfa[in.readChar()][j];
   if (j == M) return i - M;
   else        return i;
}
```



Efficiently constructing the DFA for KMP substring search

Q. What state X would the DFA be in if it were restarted to correspond to shifting the pattern one position to the right?



A. Use the (partially constructed) DFA to find X!

	j	0	1	2	3	4	5
pat.charAt(j)		A	B	A	B	A	C
	A	1	1	3	1	5	?
dfa[][j]	B	0	2	0	4	0	?
	C	0	0	0	0	0	?

Consequence.

- We want the same transitions as X for the next state on mismatch.

  copy **`dfa[][X]`** to **`dfa[][j]`**
- But a different transition (to j+1) on match.

  set **`dfa[pat.charAt(j)][j]`** to **`j+1`**

	j	0	1	2	3	4	5
pat.charAt(j)		A	B	A	B	A	C
	A	1	1	3	1	5	1
dfa[][j]	B	0	2	0	4	0	4
	C	0	0	0	0	0	6

Efficiently constructing the DFA for KMP substring search

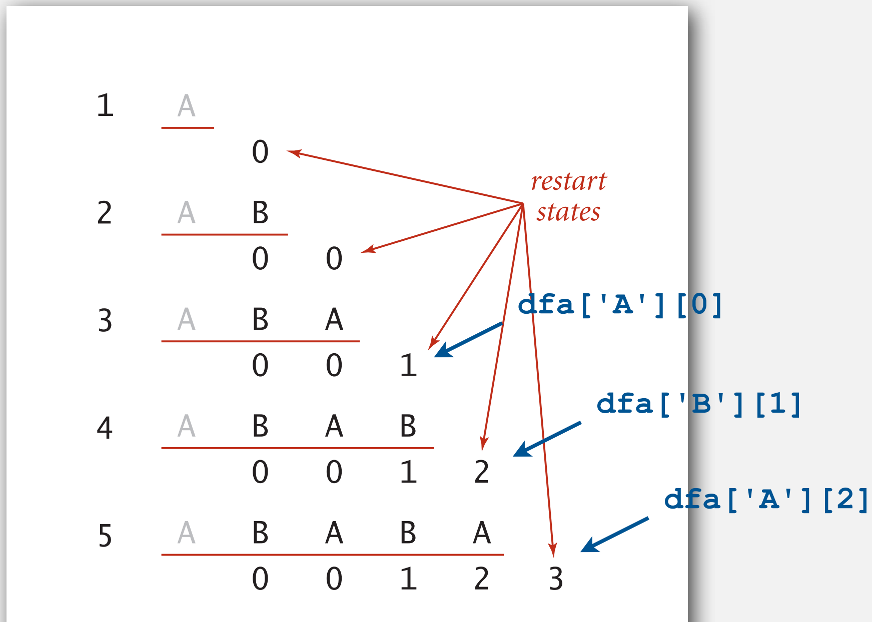
Build table by finding answer to Q for each pattern position.

Q. What state X would the DFA be in if it were restarted to correspond to shifting the pattern one position to the right?

	j	0	1	2	3	4	5
	pat.charAt(j)	A	B	A	B	A	C
dfa[][j]	A	1	1	3	1	5	1
	B	0	2	0	4	0	4
	C	0	0	0	0	0	6

Observation. No need to restart DFA.

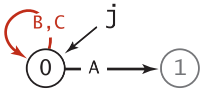
- Remember last restart state in X.
- Use DFA to update X.
- `X = dfa[pat.charAt(j)][X]`



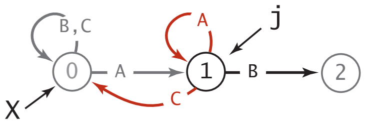
DFA simulations to compute restart states for A B A B A C

Constructing the DFA for KMP substring search: example

j		0			
pat.charAt(j)		A			
dfa[][j]	A	1			
	B	0			
	C	0			



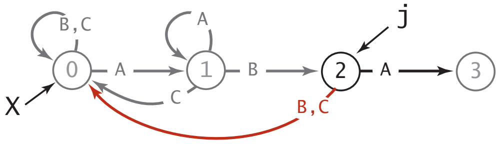
		X		
j		0	1	
pat.charAt(j)		A	B	
dfa[][j]	A	1	1	
	B	0	2	
	C	0	0	



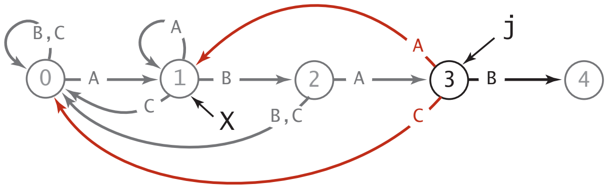
copy `dfa[][X]` *to* `dfa[][j]`

```
dfa[pat.charAt(j)][j] = j+1;
X = dfa[pat.charAt(j)][X]];
```

		X		
j		0	1	2
pat.charAt(j)		A	B	A
dfa[][j]	A	1	1	3
	B	0	2	0
	C	0	0	0



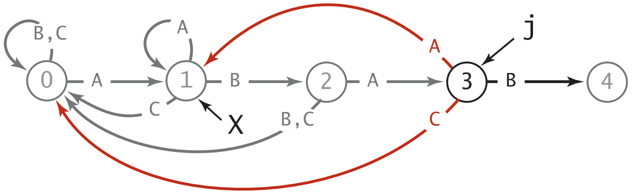
			X		
j		0	1	2	3
pat.charAt(j)		A	B	A	B
dfa[][j]	A	1	1	3	1
	B	0	2	0	4
	C	0	0	0	0



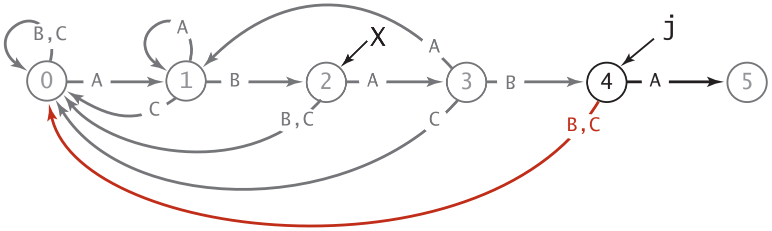
Constructing the DFA for KMP substring search for A B A B A C

Constructing the DFA for KMP substring search: example

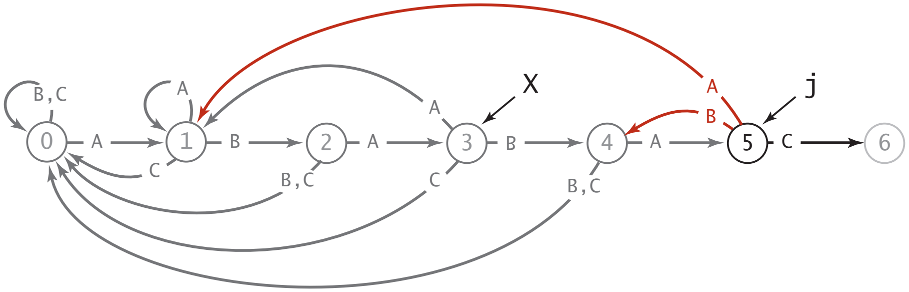
			X		
j		0	1	2	3
pat.charAt(j)		A	B	A	B
dfa[][j]	A	1	1	3	1
	B	0	2	0	4
	C	0	0	0	0



				X		
j		0	1	2	3	4
pat.charAt(j)		A	B	A	B	A
dfa[][j]	A	1	1	3	1	5
	B	0	2	0	4	0
	C	0	0	0	0	0



					X		
j		0	1	2	3	4	5
pat.charAt(j)		A	B	A	B	A	C
dfa[][j]	A	1	1	3	1	5	1
	B	0	2	0	4	0	4
	C	0	0	0	0	0	6



Constructing the DFA for KMP substring search for A B A B A C

Constructing the DFA for KMP substring search: Java implementation

For each `j`:

- Copy `dfa[][X]` to `dfa[][j]` for mismatch case.
- Set `dfa[pat.charAt(j)][j]` to `j+1` for match case.
- Update `X`.

```
public KMP(String pat)
{
   this.pat = pat;
   M = pat.length();
   dfa = new int[R][M];
   dfa[pat.charAt(0)][0] = 1;
   for (int X = 0, j = 1; j < M; j++)
   {
      for (int c = 0; c < R; c++)
         dfa[c][j] = dfa[c][X];
      dfa[pat.charAt(j)][j] = j+1;
      X = dfa[pat.charAt(j)][X];
   }
}
```

copy mismatch cases

set match case

update restart state

Running time. M character accesses.

KMP substring search analysis

Proposition. KMP substring search accesses no more than M + N chars to search for a pattern of length M in a text of length N.

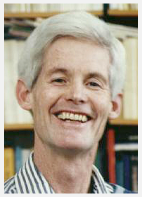
Pf. We access each pattern char once when constructing the DFA, and each text char once (in the worst case) when simulating the DFA.

Remark. Takes time and space proportional to R M to construct `dfa[][]`, but with cleverness, can reduce time and space to M.

Knuth-Morris-Pratt: brief history

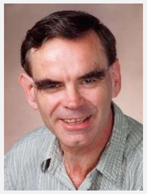
Brief history.

- Inspired by esoteric theorem of Cook.
- Discovered in 1976 independently by two theoreticians and a hacker.
  - Knuth: discovered linear-time algorithm
  - Pratt: made running time independent of alphabet
  - Morris: trying to build a text editor
- Theory meets practice.


Stephen Cook


Don Knuth


Jim Morris


Vaughan Pratt

- brute force
- Knuth-Morris-Pratt
- **Boyer-Moore**
- Rabin-Karp

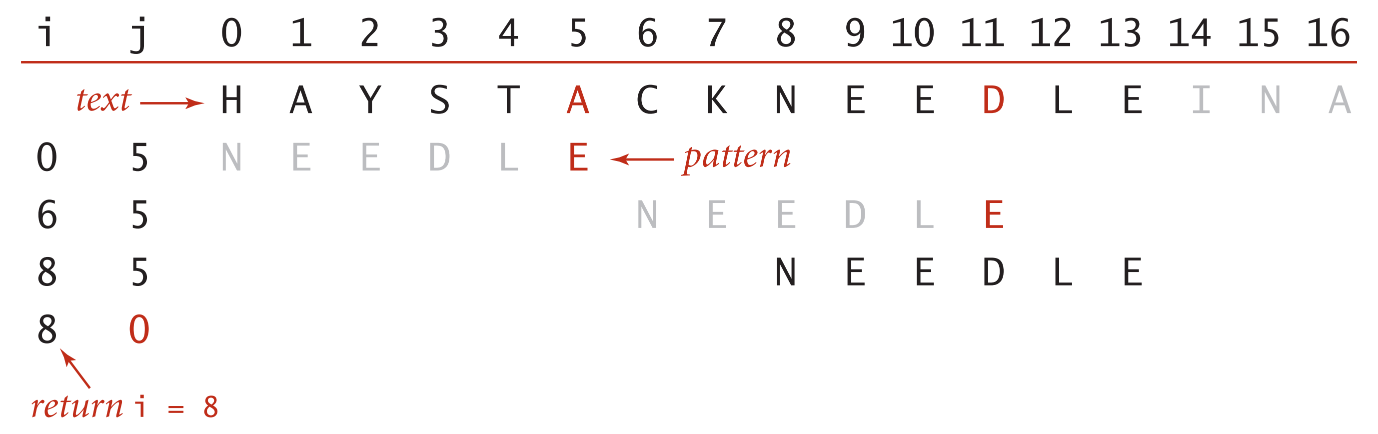
Robert Boyer

J. Strother Moore

Boyer-Moore: mismatched character heuristic

Intuition.

- Scan characters in pattern from right to left.
- Can skip M text chars when finding one not in the pattern.



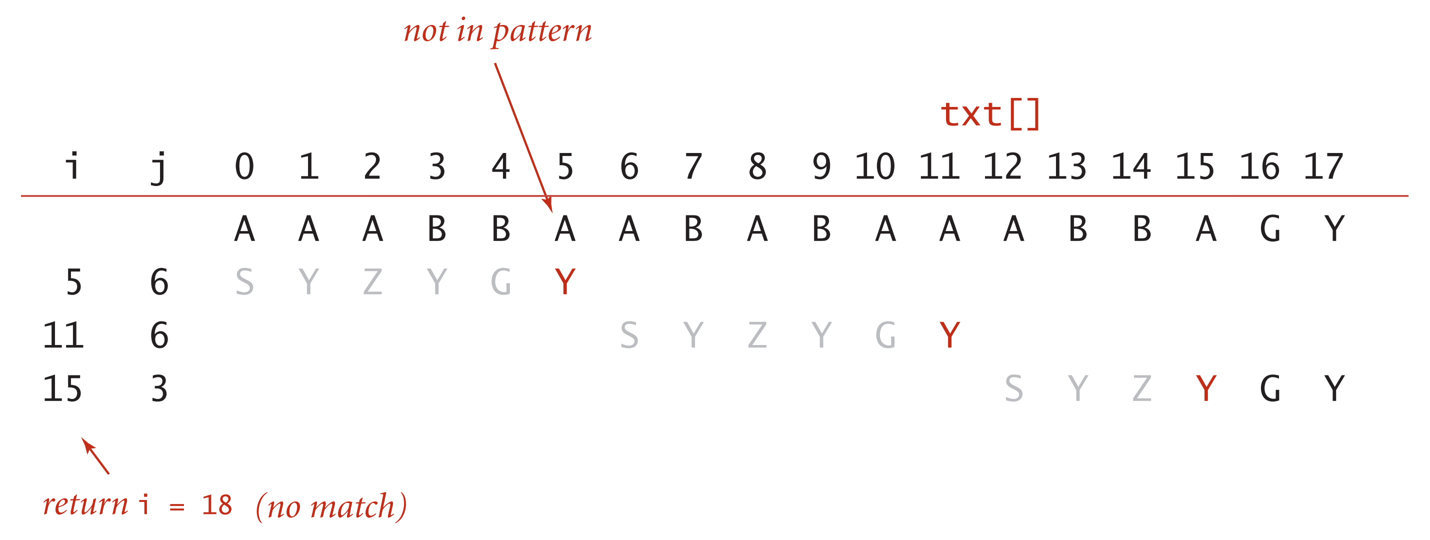
i	j	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16
text →		H	A	Y	S	T	A	C	K	N	E	E	D	L	E	I	N	A
0	5	N	E	E	D	L	E	← *pattern*										
6	5							N	E	E	D	L	E					
8	5									N	E	E	D	L	E			
8	0																	

return i = 8

Boyer-Moore: mismatched character heuristic

Intuition.

- Scan characters in pattern from right to left.
- Can skip M text chars when finding one not in the pattern.



not in pattern

txt[]

i	j	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17
		A	A	A	B	B	A	A	B	A	B	A	A	A	B	B	A	G	Y
5	6	S	Y	Z	Y	G	Y												
11	6							S	Y	Z	Y	G	Y						
15	3													S	Y	Z	Y	G	Y

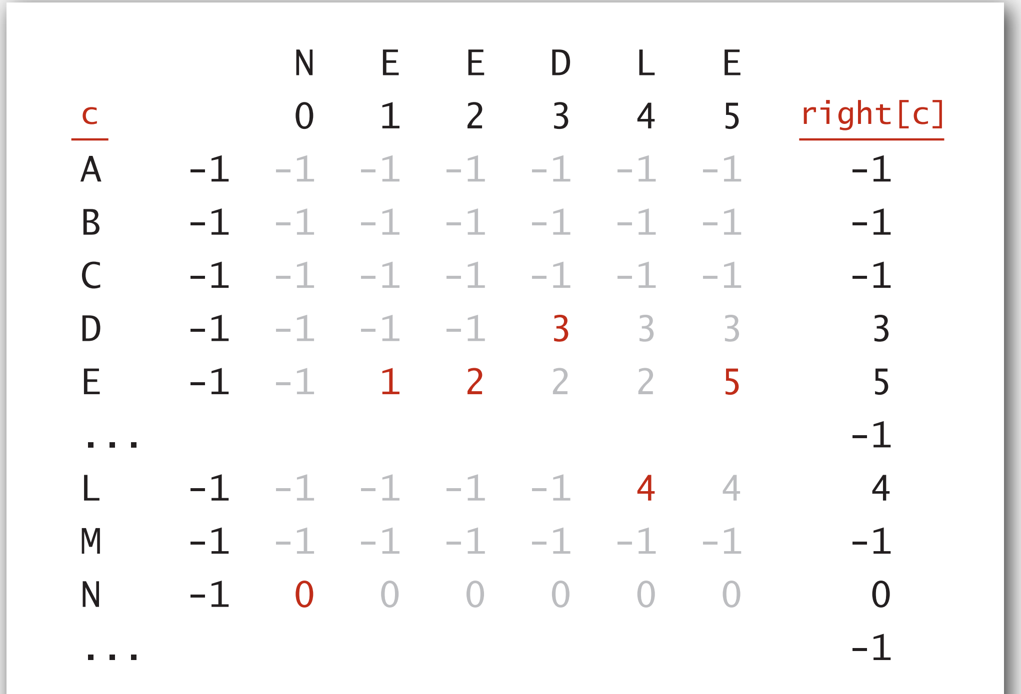
return i = 18 *(no match)*

Boyer-Moore: mismatched character heuristic

Q. How much to skip?

A. Compute `right[c]` = rightmost occurrence of character `c` in `pat[]`.

```
right = new int[R];
for (int c = 0; c < R; c++)
   right[c] = -1;
for (int j = 0; j < M; j++)
   right[pat.charAt(j)] = j;
```



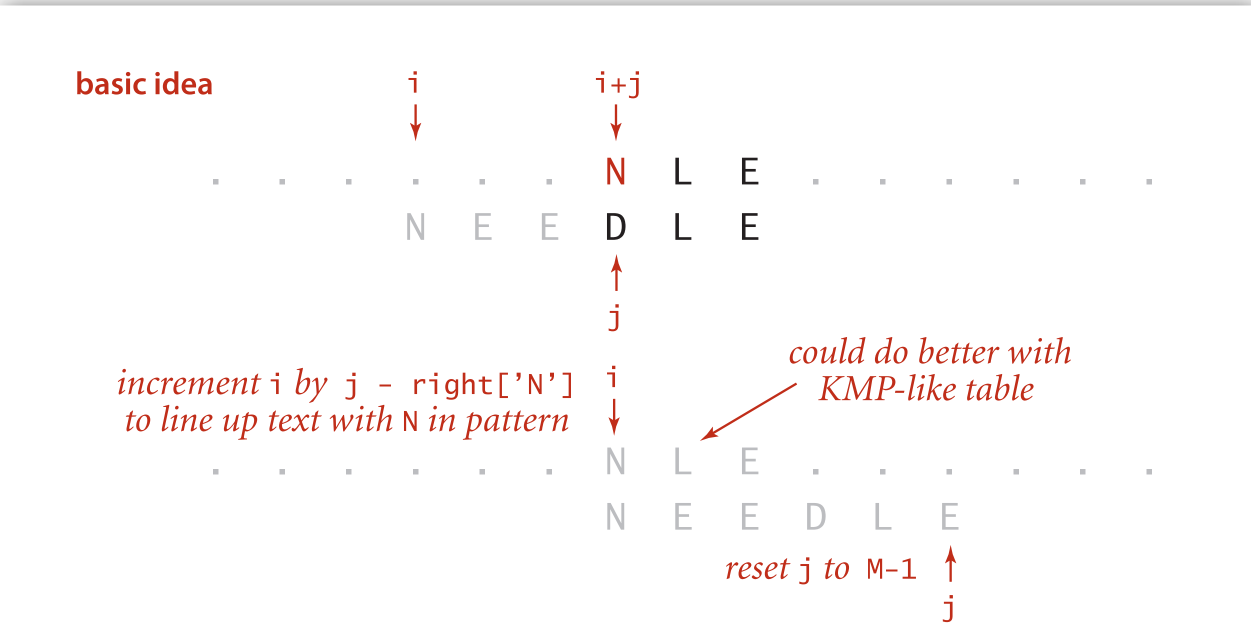
		N	E	E	D	L	E	
c		0	1	2	3	4	5	right[c]
A	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1
B	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1
C	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1
D	-1	-1	-1	-1	3	3	3	3
E	-1	-1	1	2	2	2	5	5
...								-1
L	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	4	4	4
M	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1
N	-1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
...								-1

Boyer-Moore skip table computation

Boyer-Moore: mismatched character heuristic

Q. How much to skip?

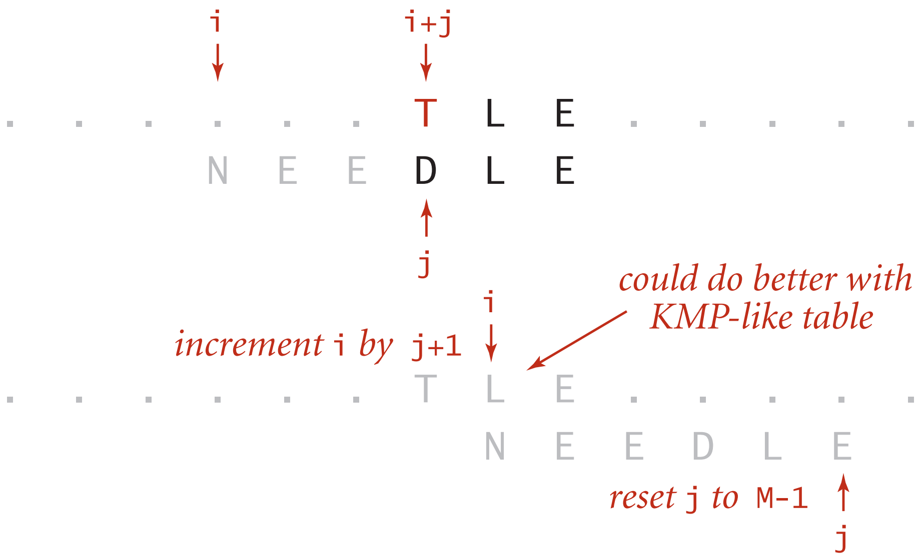
A. Compute `right[c]` = rightmost occurrence of character `c` in `pat[]`.



Boyer-Moore: mismatched character heuristic

Q. How much to skip?

A. Compute `right[c]` = rightmost occurrence of character `c` in `pat[]`.



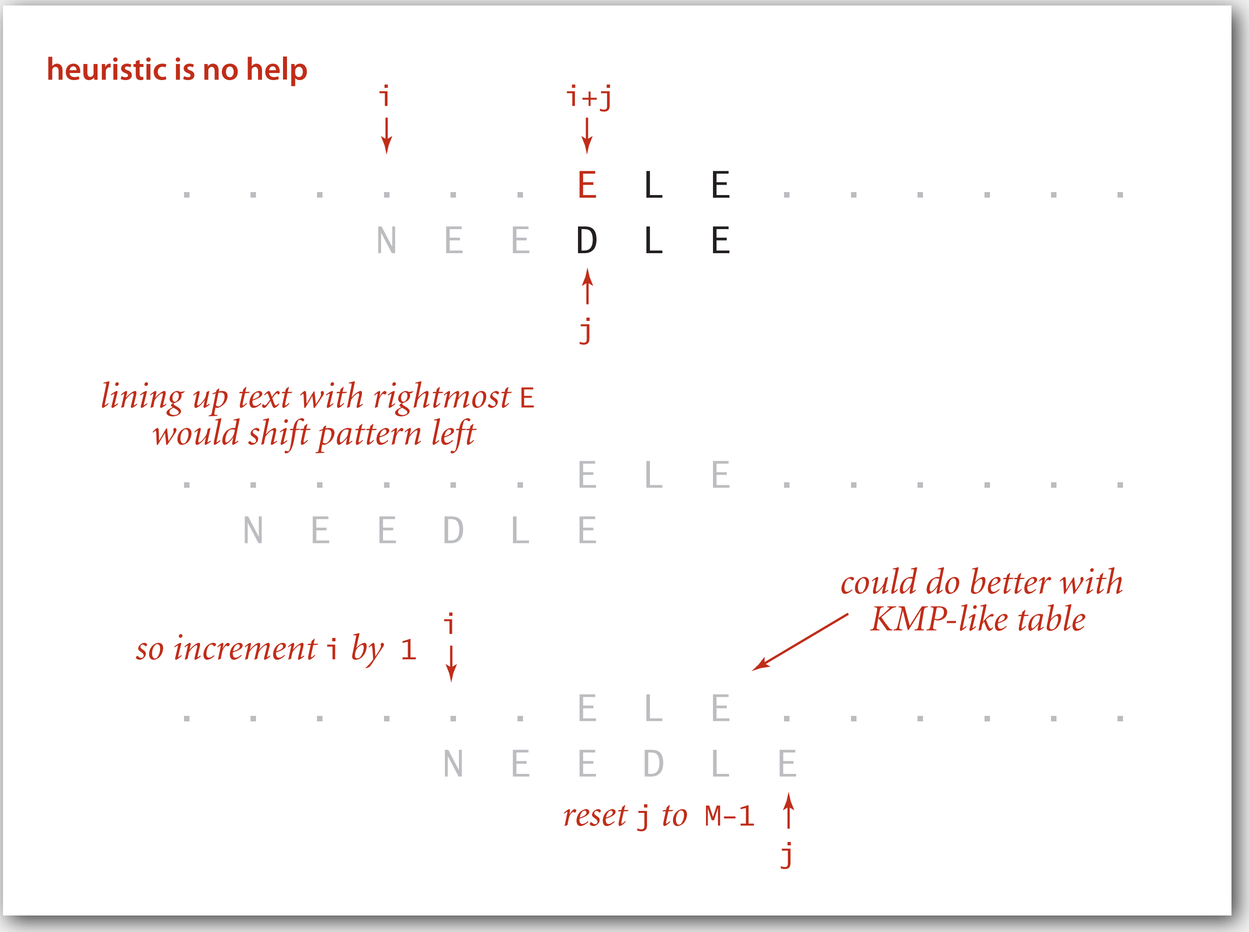
Mismatched character heuristic (mismatch not in pattern)

Easy fix. Set `right[c]` to -1 for characters not in pattern.

Boyer-Moore: mismatched character heuristic

Q. How much to skip?

A. Compute `right[c]` = rightmost occurrence of character `c` in `pat[]`.



Boyer-Moore: Java implementation

```
public int search(String txt)
 {
    int N = txt.length();
    int M = pat.length();
    int skip;
    for (int i = 0; i <= N-M; i += skip)
    {
       skip = 0;
       for (int j = M-1; j >= 0; j--)
          if (pat.charAt(j) != txt.charAt(i+j))
          {
             skip = Math.max(1, j - right[txt.charAt(i+j)]);
             break;
          }
       if (skip == 0) return i;
    }
    return N;
}
```

compute skip value

match

Boyer-Moore: analysis

Property. Substring search with the Boyer-Moore mismatched character heuristic takes about ~ N/M character compares to search for a pattern of length M in a text of length N.

sublinear

Worst-case. Can be as bad as ~ M N.

i	skip	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
	txt →	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B
0	0	A	B	B	B	B ← pat					
1	1		A	B	B	B	B				
2	1			A	B	B	B	B			
3	1				A	B	B	B	B		
4	1					A	B	B	B	B	
5	1						A	B	B	B	B

Boyer-Moore variant. Can improve worst case to ~ 3 N by adding a KMP-like rule to guard against repetitive patterns.

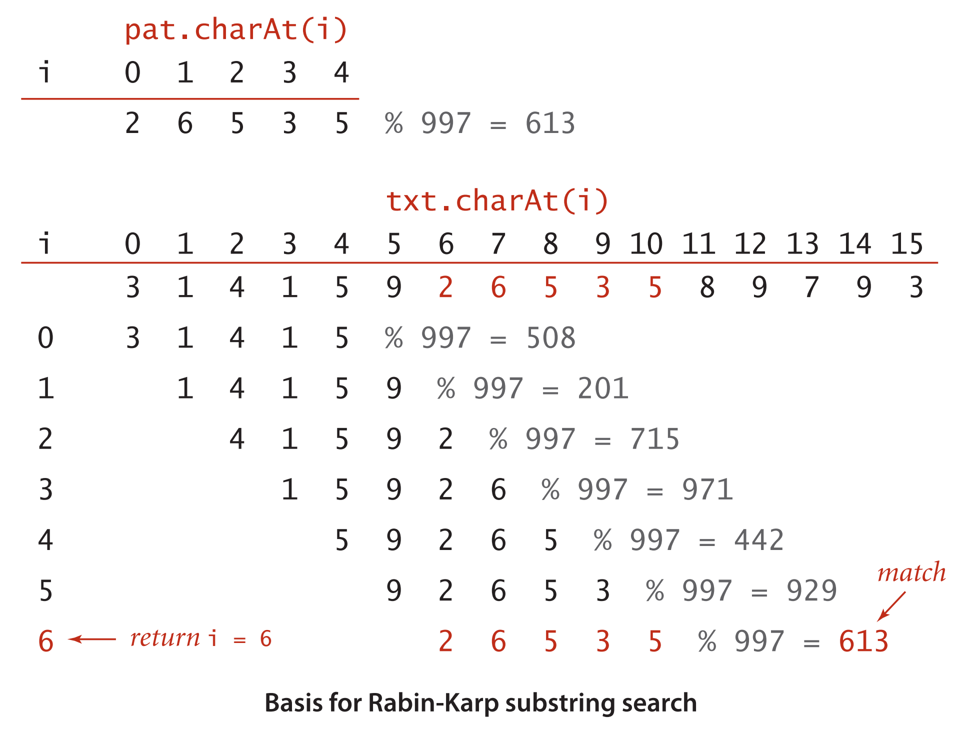
- brute force
- Knuth-Morris-Pratt
- Boyer-Moore
- **Rabin-Karp**

Michael Rabin, Turing Award '76
and Dick Karp, Turing Award '85

Rabin-Karp fingerprint search

Basic idea.

- Compute a hash of pattern characters 0 to M-1.
- For each i, compute a hash of text characters i to M+i-1.
- If pattern hash = text substring hash, check for a match.



pat.charAt(i)

i	0	1	2	3	4	
	2	6	5	3	5	% 997 = 613

txt.charAt(i)

i	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
	3	1	4	1	5	9	2	6	5	3	5	8	9	7	9	3
0	3	1	4	1	5	% 997 = 508										
1		1	4	1	5	9	% 997 = 201									
2			4	1	5	9	2	% 997 = 715								
3				1	5	9	2	6	% 997 = 971							
4					5	9	2	6	5	% 997 = 442						
5						9	2	6	5	3	% 997 = 929					
6 ← *return* i = 6							2	6	5	3	5	% 997 = 613				

Basis for Rabin-Karp substring search

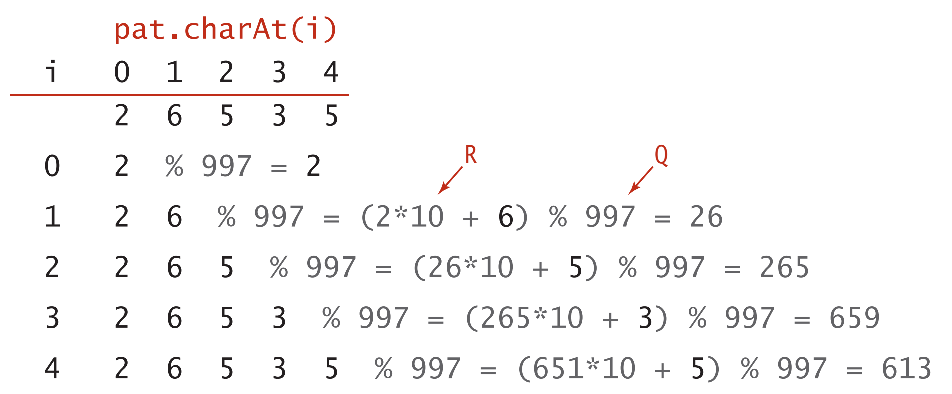
Efficiently computing the hash function

Modular hash function. Using the notation t_i for `txt.charAt(i)`, we wish to compute

$$x_i = t_i \, R^{M-1} + t_{i+1} \, R^{M-2} + \ldots + t_{i+M-1} \, R^{0} \pmod{Q}$$

Intuition. M-digit, base-R integer, modulo Q.

Horner's method. Linear-time method to evaluate degree-M polynomial.



```
i    0  1  2  3  4
     2  6  5  3  5
0    2  % 997 = 2
1    2  6  % 997 = (2*10 + 6) % 997 = 26
2    2  6  5  % 997 = (26*10 + 5) % 997 = 265
3    2  6  5  3  % 997 = (265*10 + 3) % 997 = 659
4    2  6  5  3  5  % 997 = (651*10 + 5) % 997 = 613
```

Computing the hash value for the pattern with Horner's method

```
// Compute hash for M-digit key
private int hash(String key)
{
   int h = 0;
   for (int i = 0; i < M; i++)
      h = (R * h + key.charAt(j)) % Q;
   return h;
}
```

Efficiently computing the hash function

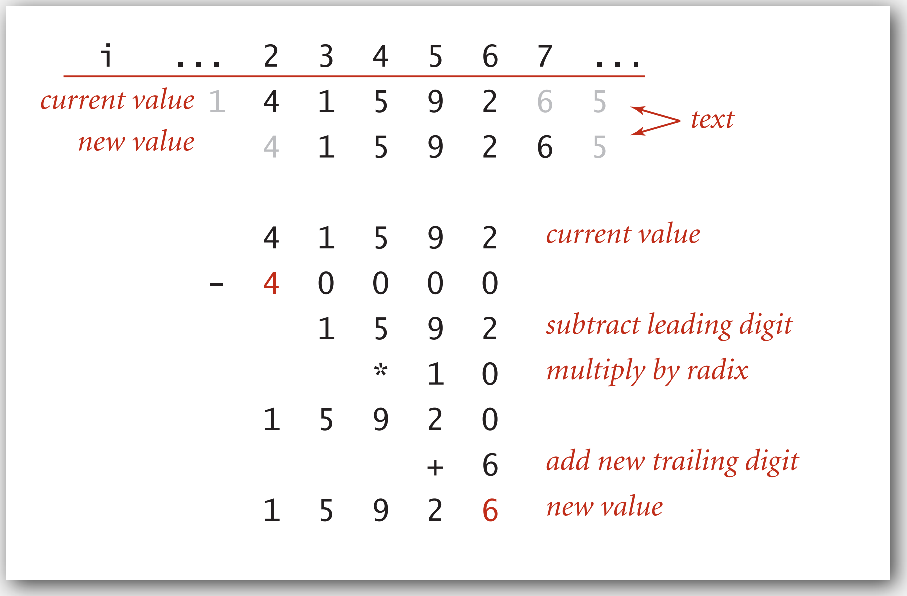
Challenge. How to efficiently compute x_{i+1} given that we know x_i.

$$x_i = t_i\, R^{\,M-1} + t_{i+1}\, R^{\,M-2} + \ldots + t_{i+M-1}\, R^0$$

$$x_{i+1} = t_{i+1}\, R^{\,M-1} + t_{i+2}\, R^{\,M-2} + \ldots + t_{i+M}\, R^0$$

Key property. Can do it in constant time!

$$x_{i+1} = (x_i - t_i\, R^{\,M-1})\, R + t_{i+M}$$



i	...	2	3	4	5	6	7	...	
current value	1	4	1	5	9	2	6	5	text
new value		4	1	5	9	2	6	5	

	4	1	5	9	2	current value
-	4	0	0	0	0	
		1	5	9	2	subtract leading digit
			*	1	0	multiply by radix
	1	5	9	2	0	
				+	6	add new trailing digit
	1	5	9	2	6	new value

Rabin-Karp: Java implementation

```
public class RabinKarp {
    private String pat;      // the pattern
    private int patHash;     // pattern hash value
    private int M;           // pattern length
    private int Q = 8355967; // modulus
    private int R;           // radix
    private int RM;          // R^(M-1) % Q

    public RabinKarp(String pat) {
        this.R = 256;
        this.pat = pat;
        this.M = pat.length;

        RM = 1;
        for (int i = 1; i <= M-1; i++)
           RM = (R * RM) % Q;
        patHash = hash(pat);
     }

    private int hash(String key)
    {   /* as before */   }

    public int search(String txt)
    {   /* see next slide */   }
}
```

a large prime, but small enough to avoid 32-bit integer overflow

precompute R^{M-1} (mod Q)

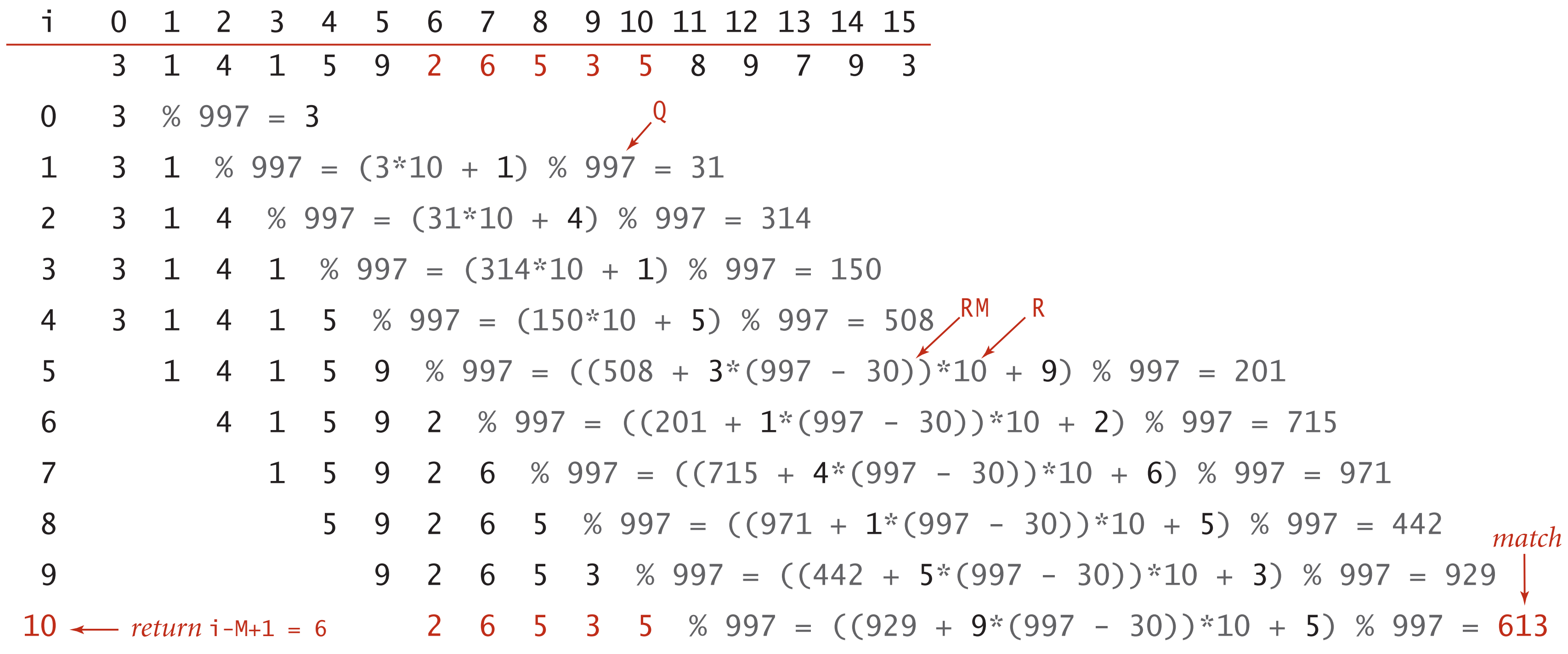
Rabin-Karp: Java implementation (continued)

```
public int search(String txt)
{
   int N = txt.length();
   if (N < M) return N;
   int offset = hashSearch(txt);
   if (offset == N) return N;

   for (int i = 0; i < M; i++)
        if (pat.charAt(i) != txt.charAt(offset + i))
            return N;
    return offset;
}

private int hashSearch(String txt)
{
    int N = txt.length();
    int txtHash = hash(txt);
    if (patHash == txtHash) return 0;
    for (int i = M; i < N; i++)
    {
        txtHash = (txtHash + Q - RM*txt.charAt(i-M) % Q) % Q;
        txtHash = (txtHash*R + txt.charAt(i)) % Q;
        if (patHash == txtHash) return i - M + 1;
    }
    return N;
}
```

check if hash collision
corresponds to a match

check for hash collision
using rolling hash function

Rabin-Karp substring search example



i	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
	3	1	4	1	5	9	2	6	5	3	5	8	9	7	9	3
0	3	% 997 = 3														
1	3	1	% 997 = (3*10 + 1) % 997 = 31													
2	3	1	4	% 997 = (31*10 + 4) % 997 = 314												
3	3	1	4	1	% 997 = (314*10 + 1) % 997 = 150											
4	3	1	4	1	5	% 997 = (150*10 + 5) % 997 = 508										
5		1	4	1	5	9	% 997 = ((508 + 3*(997 - 30))*10 + 9) % 997 = 201									
6			4	1	5	9	2	% 997 = ((201 + 1*(997 - 30))*10 + 2) % 997 = 715								
7				1	5	9	2	6	% 997 = ((715 + 4*(997 - 30))*10 + 6) % 997 = 971							
8					5	9	2	6	5	% 997 = ((971 + 1*(997 - 30))*10 + 5) % 997 = 442						
9						9	2	6	5	3	% 997 = ((442 + 5*(997 - 30))*10 + 3) % 997 = 929					
10	← *return* i-M+1 = 6						2	6	5	3	5	% 997 = ((929 + 9*(997 - 30))*10 + 5) % 997 = 613				

Rabin-Karp substring search example

Rabin-Karp analysis

Proposition. Rabin-Karp substring search is extremely likely to be linear-time.

Worst-case. Takes time proportional to MN.

- In worst case, all substrings hash to same value.
- Then, need to check for match at each text position.

Theory. If Q is a sufficiently large random prime (about MN^2), then probability of a false collision is about 1/N ⇒ expected running time is linear.

Practice. Choose Q to avoid integer overflow. Under reasonable assumptions, probability of a collision is about 1/Q ⇒ linear in practice.

Rabin-Karp fingerprint search

Advantages.

- Extends to 2D patterns.
- Extends to finding multiple patterns.

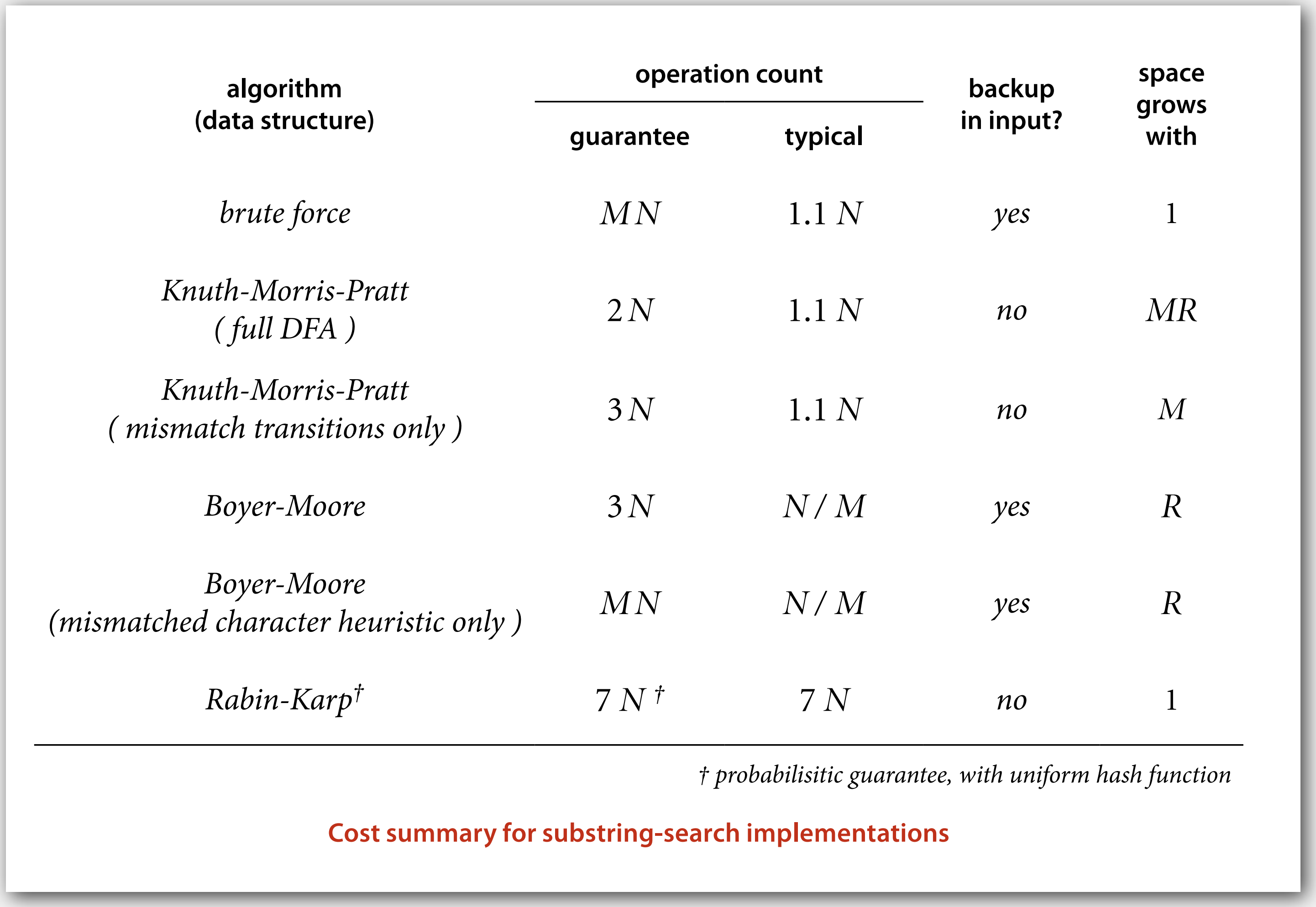
Disadvantages.

- Arithmetic ops slower than char compares.
- Poor worst-case guarantee.
- Requires backup.

Q. How would you extend Rabin-Karp to efficiently search for any one of P possible patterns in a text of length N?

Substring search cost summary

Cost of searching for an M-character pattern in an N-character text.



algorithm (data structure)	operation count		backup in input?	space grows with
	guarantee	typical		
brute force	MN	$1.1\,N$	*yes*	1
Knuth-Morris-Pratt *(full DFA)*	$2\,N$	$1.1\,N$	*no*	MR
Knuth-Morris-Pratt *(mismatch transitions only)*	$3\,N$	$1.1\,N$	*no*	M
Boyer-Moore	$3\,N$	N / M	*yes*	R
Boyer-Moore *(mismatched character heuristic only)*	MN	N / M	*yes*	R
Rabin-Karp†	$7\,N^{\dagger}$	$7\,N$	*no*	1

† probabilisitic guarantee, with uniform hash function

Cost summary for substring-search implementations

5.4 Pattern Matching

- regular expressions
- REs and NFAs
- NFA simulation
- NFA construction
- applications

- regular expressions
- NFAs
- NFA simulation
- NFA construction
- applications

Pattern matching

Substring search. Find a single string in text.

Pattern matching. Find one of a specified set of strings in text.

Ex. [genomics]

- Fragile X syndrome is a common cause of mental retardation.
- Human genome contains triplet repeats of CGG or AGG, bracketed by GCG at the beginning and CTG at the end.
- Number of repeats is variable, and correlated with syndrome.

pattern `GCG(CGG|AGG)*CTG`

text `GCGGCGTGTGTGCGAGAGAGTGGGTTTAAAGCTGGCGCGGAGGCGGCTGGCGCGGAGGCTG`

Pattern matching: applications

Test if a string matches some pattern.

- Process natural language.
- Scan for virus signatures.
- Access information in digital libraries.
- Filter text (spam, NetNanny, Carnivore, malware).
- Validate data-entry fields (dates, email, URL, credit card).
- Search for markers in human genome using PROSITE patterns.

Parse text files.

- Compile a Java program.
- Crawl and index the Web.
- Read in data stored in ad hoc input file format.
- Automatically create Java documentation from Javadoc comments.

Regular expressions

A regular expression is a notation to specify a (possibly infinite) set of strings.

a "language"

operation	example RE	matches	does not match
concatenation	**AABAAB**	**AABAAB**	every other string
or	**AA | BAAB**	**AA** **BAAB**	every other string
closure	**AB*A**	**AA** **ABBBBBBBBA**	**AB** **ABABA**
parentheses	**A(A|B)AAB**	**AAAAB** **ABAAB**	every other string
	(AB)*A	**A** **ABABABABABA**	**AA** **ABBA**

Regular expression shortcuts

Additional operations are often added for convenience.

Ex. `[A-E]+` is shorthand for `(A|B|C|D|E)(A|B|C|D|E)*`

operation	example RE	matches	does not match
wildcard	`.U.U.U.`	`CUMULUS` `JUGULUM`	`SUCCUBUS` `TUMULTUOUS`
at least 1	`A(BC)+DE`	`ABCDE` `ABCBCDE`	`ADE` `BCDE`
character classes	`[A-Za-z][a-z]*`	`word` `Capitalized`	`camelCase` `4illegal`
exactly k	`[0-9]{5}-[0-9]{4}`	`08540-1321` `19072-5541`	`111111111` `166-54-111`
complement	`[^AEIOU]{6}`	`RHYTHM`	`DECADE`

Regular expression examples

Notation is surprisingly expressive

regular expression	matches	does not match
`.*SPB.*` *(contains the trigraph spb)*	RASPBERRY CRISPBREAD	SUBSPACE SUBSPECIES
`[0-9]{3}-[0-9]{2}-[0-9]{4}` *(Social Security numbers)*	166-11-4433 166-45-1111	11-55555555 8675309
`[a-z]+@([a-z]+\.)+(edu|com)` *(valid email addresses)*	wayne@princeton.edu rs@princeton.edu	spam@nowhere
`[$_A-Za-z][$_A-Za-z0-9]*` *(valid Java identifiers)*	ident3 PatternMatcher	3a ident#3

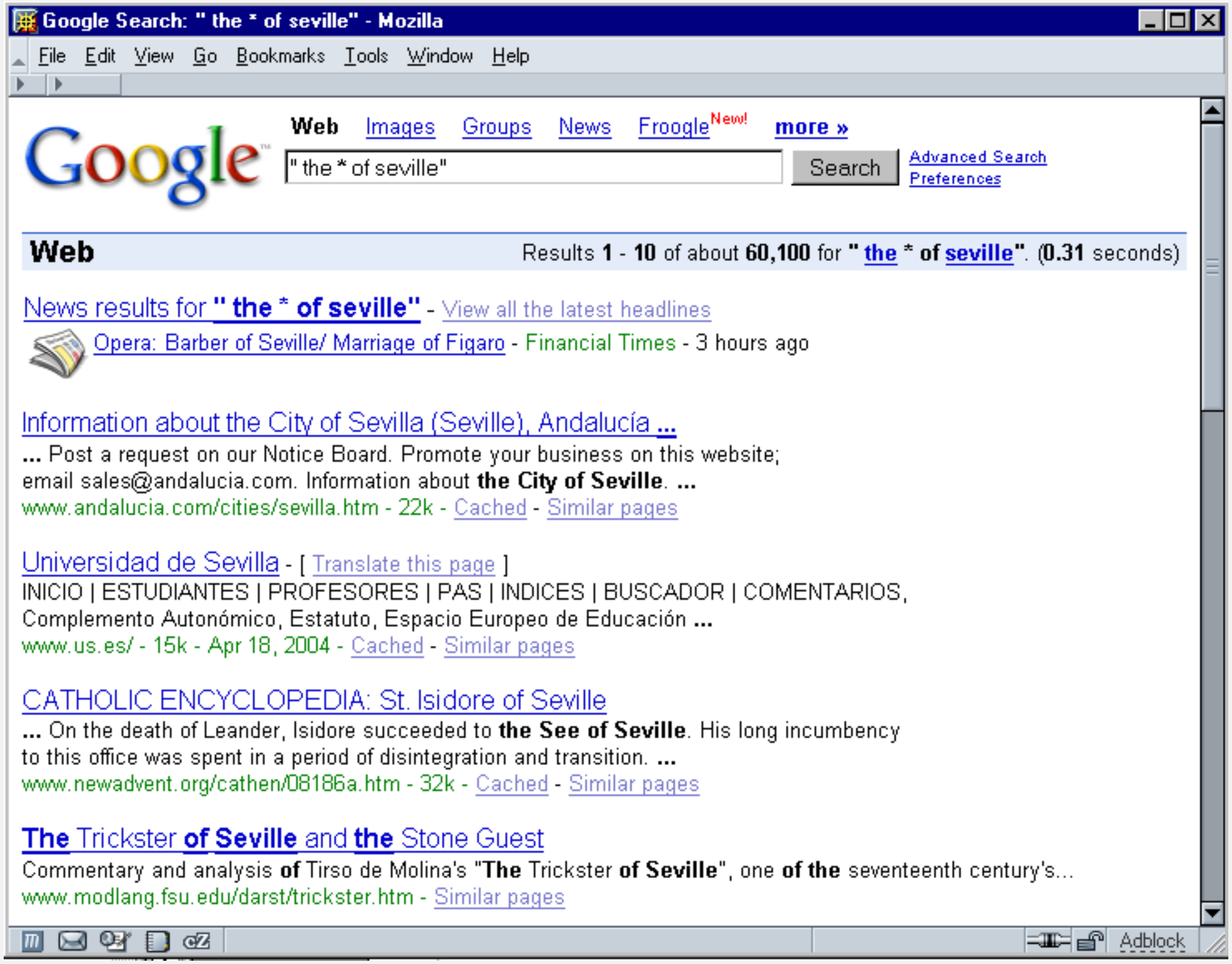
and plays a well-understood role in the theory of computation.

Regular expressions to the rescue

http://xkcd.com/208/

Can the average web surfer learn to use REs?

Google. Supports * for full word wildcard and | for union.



Web Results **1** - **10** of about **60,100** for " **the** * **of seville**". (**0.31** seconds)

News results for " **the * of seville**" - View all the latest headlines
Opera: Barber of Seville/ Marriage of Figaro - Financial Times - 3 hours ago

Information about the City of Sevilla (Seville), Andalucía ...
... Post a request on our Notice Board. Promote your business on this website; email sales@andalucia.com. Information about **the City of Seville**. ...
www.andalucia.com/cities/sevilla.htm - 22k - Cached - Similar pages

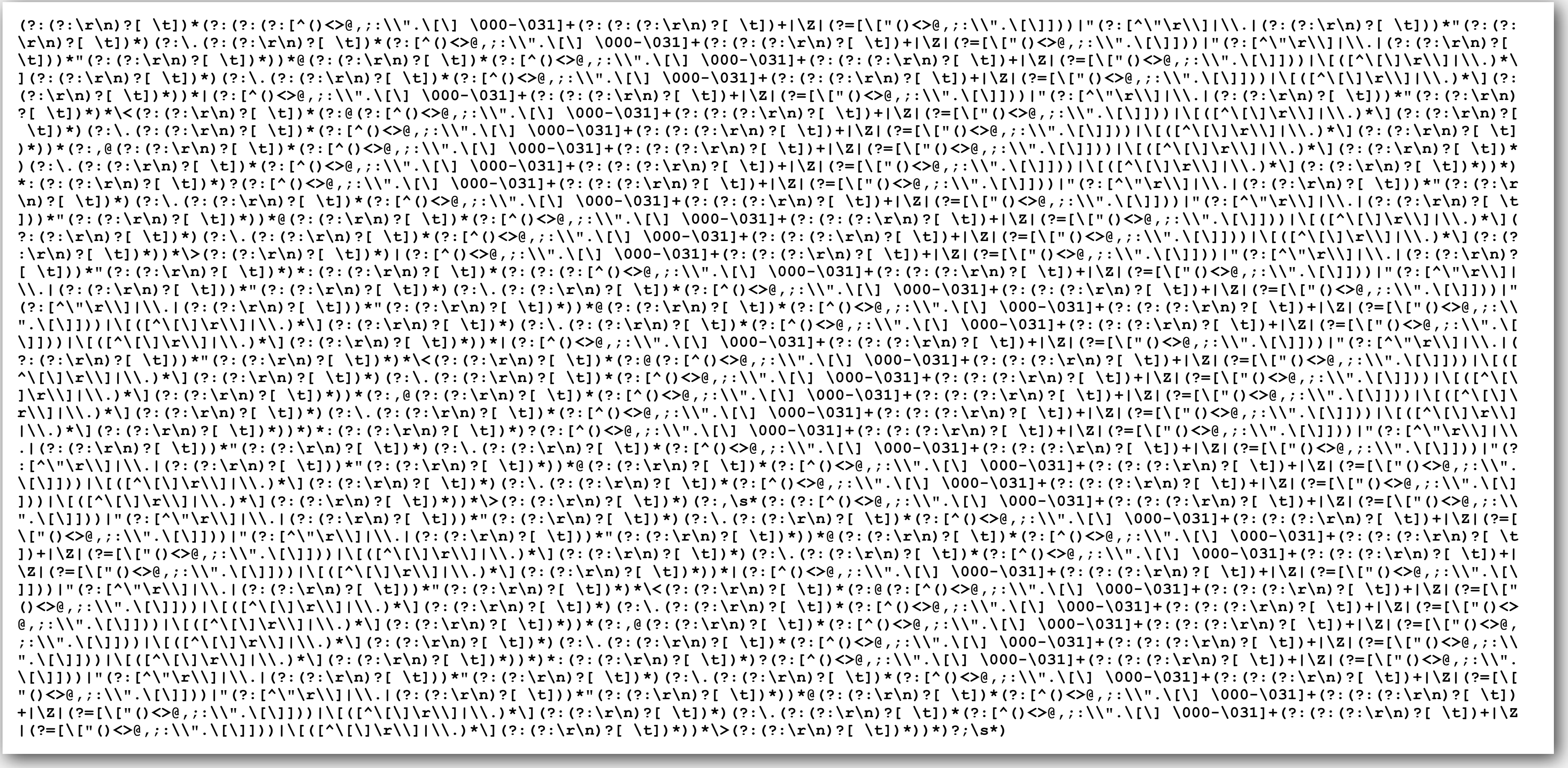
Universidad de Sevilla - [Translate this page]
INICIO | ESTUDIANTES | PROFESORES | PAS | INDICES | BUSCADOR | COMENTARIOS, Complemento Autonómico, Estatuto, Espacio Europeo de Educación ...
www.us.es/ - 15k - Apr 18, 2004 - Cached - Similar pages

CATHOLIC ENCYCLOPEDIA: St. Isidore of Seville
... On the death of Leander, Isidore succeeded to **the See of Seville**. His long incumbency to this office was spent in a period of disintegration and transition. ...
www.newadvent.org/cathen/08186a.htm - 32k - Cached - Similar pages

The Trickster **of Seville** and **the** Stone Guest
Commentary and analysis **of** Tirso de Molina's "**The** Trickster **of Seville**", one **of the** seventeenth century's...
www.modlang.fsu.edu/darst/trickster.htm - Similar pages

Can the average programmer learn to use REs?

Perl RE for valid RFC822 email addresses



```
(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*(?:(?:(?:[^()<>@,;:\\".\[\] \000-\031]+(?:(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])+|\Z|(?=[\["()<>@,;:\\".\[\]]))|"(?:[^\"\r\\]|\\.|(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t]))*"(?:(?:
\r\n)?[ \t])*)(?:\.(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*(?:[^()<>@,;:\\".\[\] \000-\031]+(?:(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])+|\Z|(?=[\["()<>@,;:\\".\[\]]))|"(?:[^\"\r\\]|\\.|(?:(?:\r\n)?[
\t]))*"(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*))*@(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*(?:[^()<>@,;:\\".\[\] \000-\031]+(?:(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])+|\Z|(?=[\["()<>@,;:\\".\[\]]))|\[([^\[\]\r\\]|\\.)*\
](?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*)(?:\.(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*(?:[^()<>@,;:\\".\[\] \000-\031]+(?:(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])+|\Z|(?=[\["()<>@,;:\\".\[\]]))|\[([^\[\]\r\\]|\\.)*\](?:
(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*))*|(?:[^()<>@,;:\\".\[\] \000-\031]+(?:(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])+|\Z|(?=[\["()<>@,;:\\".\[\]]))|"(?:[^\"\r\\]|\\.|(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t]))*"(?:(?:\r\n)
?[ \t])*)*\<(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*(?:@(?:[^()<>@,;:\\".\[\] \000-\031]+(?:(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])+|\Z|(?=[\["()<>@,;:\\".\[\]]))|\[([^\[\]\r\\]|\\.)*\](?:(?:\r\n)?[
 \t])*)(?:\.(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*(?:[^()<>@,;:\\".\[\] \000-\031]+(?:(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])+|\Z|(?=[\["()<>@,;:\\".\[\]]))|\[([^\[\]\r\\]|\\.)*\](?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t]
)*))*(?:,@(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*(?:[^()<>@,;:\\".\[\] \000-\031]+(?:(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])+|\Z|(?=[\["()<>@,;:\\".\[\]]))|\[([^\[\]\r\\]|\\.)*\](?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*
)(?:\.(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*(?:[^()<>@,;:\\".\[\] \000-\031]+(?:(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])+|\Z|(?=[\["()<>@,;:\\".\[\]]))|\[([^\[\]\r\\]|\\.)*\](?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*))*)
*:(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*)?(?:[^()<>@,;:\\".\[\] \000-\031]+(?:(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])+|\Z|(?=[\["()<>@,;:\\".\[\]]))|"(?:[^\"\r\\]|\\.|(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t]))*"(?:(?:\r
\n)?[ \t])*)(?:\.(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*(?:[^()<>@,;:\\".\[\] \000-\031]+(?:(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])+|\Z|(?=[\["()<>@,;:\\".\[\]]))|"(?:[^\"\r\\]|\\.|(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t
]))*"(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*))*@(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*(?:[^()<>@,;:\\".\[\] \000-\031]+(?:(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])+|\Z|(?=[\["()<>@,;:\\".\[\]]))|\[([^\[\]\r\\]|\\.)*\](
?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*)(?:\.(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*(?:[^()<>@,;:\\".\[\] \000-\031]+(?:(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])+|\Z|(?=[\["()<>@,;:\\".\[\]]))|\[([^\[\]\r\\]|\\.)*\](?:(?
:\r\n)?[ \t])*))*\>(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*)|(?:[^()<>@,;:\\".\[\] \000-\031]+(?:(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])+|\Z|(?=[\["()<>@,;:\\".\[\]]))|"(?:[^\"\r\\]|\\.|(?:(?:\r\n)?
[ \t]))*"(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*)*:(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*(?:(?:(?:[^()<>@,;:\\".\[\] \000-\031]+(?:(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])+|\Z|(?=[\["()<>@,;:\\".\[\]]))|"(?:[^\"\r\\]|
\\.|(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t]))*"(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*)(?:\.(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*(?:[^()<>@,;:\\".\[\] \000-\031]+(?:(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])+|\Z|(?=[\["()<>@,;:\\".\[\]]))|"
(?:[^\"\r\\]|\\.|(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t]))*"(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*))*@(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*(?:[^()<>@,;:\\".\[\] \000-\031]+(?:(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])+|\Z|(?=[\["()<>@,;:\\
".\[\]]))|\[([^\[\]\r\\]|\\.)*\](?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*)(?:\.(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*(?:[^()<>@,;:\\".\[\] \000-\031]+(?:(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])+|\Z|(?=[\["()<>@,;:\\".\[
\]]))|\[([^\[\]\r\\]|\\.)*\](?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*))*|(?:[^()<>@,;:\\".\[\] \000-\031]+(?:(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])+|\Z|(?=[\["()<>@,;:\\".\[\]]))|"(?:[^\"\r\\]|\\.|(
?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t]))*"(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*)*\<(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*(?:@(?:[^()<>@,;:\\".\[\] \000-\031]+(?:(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])+|\Z|(?=[\["()<>@,;:\\".\[\]]))|\[([
^\[\]\r\\]|\\.)*\](?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*)(?:\.(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*(?:[^()<>@,;:\\".\[\] \000-\031]+(?:(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])+|\Z|(?=[\["()<>@,;:\\".\[\]]))|\[([^\[\
]\r\\]|\\.)*\](?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*))*(?:,@(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*(?:[^()<>@,;:\\".\[\] \000-\031]+(?:(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])+|\Z|(?=[\["()<>@,;:\\".\[\]]))|\[([^\[\]\
r\\]|\\.)*\](?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*)(?:\.(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*(?:[^()<>@,;:\\".\[\] \000-\031]+(?:(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])+|\Z|(?=[\["()<>@,;:\\".\[\]]))|\[([^\[\]\r\\]
|\\.)*\](?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*))*)*:(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*)?(?:[^()<>@,;:\\".\[\] \000-\031]+(?:(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])+|\Z|(?=[\["()<>@,;:\\".\[\]]))|"(?:[^\"\r\\]|\\
.|(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t]))*"(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*)(?:\.(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*(?:[^()<>@,;:\\".\[\] \000-\031]+(?:(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])+|\Z|(?=[\["()<>@,;:\\".\[\]]))|"(?
:[^\"\r\\]|\\.|(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t]))*"(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*))*@(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*(?:[^()<>@,;:\\".\[\] \000-\031]+(?:(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])+|\Z|(?=[\["()<>@,;:\\".
\[\]]))|\[([^\[\]\r\\]|\\.)*\](?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*)(?:\.(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*(?:[^()<>@,;:\\".\[\] \000-\031]+(?:(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])+|\Z|(?=[\["()<>@,;:\\".\[\]
]))|\[([^\[\]\r\\]|\\.)*\](?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*))*\>(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*)(?:,\s*(?:(?:[^()<>@,;:\\".\[\] \000-\031]+(?:(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])+|\Z|(?=[\["()<>@,;:\\
".\[\]]))|"(?:[^\"\r\\]|\\.|(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t]))*"(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*)(?:\.(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*(?:[^()<>@,;:\\".\[\] \000-\031]+(?:(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])+|\Z|(?=[
\["()<>@,;:\\".\[\]]))|"(?:[^\"\r\\]|\\.|(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t]))*"(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*))*@(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*(?:[^()<>@,;:\\".\[\] \000-\031]+(?:(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t
])+|\Z|(?=[\["()<>@,;:\\".\[\]]))|\[([^\[\]\r\\]|\\.)*\](?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*)(?:\.(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*(?:[^()<>@,;:\\".\[\] \000-\031]+(?:(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])+|
\Z|(?=[\["()<>@,;:\\".\[\]]))|\[([^\[\]\r\\]|\\.)*\](?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*))*|(?:[^()<>@,;:\\".\[\] \000-\031]+(?:(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])+|\Z|(?=[\["()<>@,;:\\".\[\
]]))|"(?:[^\"\r\\]|\\.|(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t]))*"(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*)*\<(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*(?:@(?:[^()<>@,;:\\".\[\] \000-\031]+(?:(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])+|\Z|(?=[\["
()<>@,;:\\".\[\]]))|\[([^\[\]\r\\]|\\.)*\](?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*)(?:\.(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*(?:[^()<>@,;:\\".\[\] \000-\031]+(?:(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])+|\Z|(?=[\["()<>
@,;:\\".\[\]]))|\[([^\[\]\r\\]|\\.)*\](?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*))*(?:,@(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*(?:[^()<>@,;:\\".\[\] \000-\031]+(?:(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])+|\Z|(?=[\["()<>@,
;:\\".\[\]]))|\[([^\[\]\r\\]|\\.)*\](?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*)(?:\.(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*(?:[^()<>@,;:\\".\[\] \000-\031]+(?:(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])+|\Z|(?=[\["()<>@,;:\\
".\[\]]))|\[([^\[\]\r\\]|\\.)*\](?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*))*)*:(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*)?(?:[^()<>@,;:\\".\[\] \000-\031]+(?:(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])+|\Z|(?=[\["()<>@,;:\\".
\[\]]))|"(?:[^\"\r\\]|\\.|(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t]))*"(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*)(?:\.(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*(?:[^()<>@,;:\\".\[\] \000-\031]+(?:(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])+|\Z|(?=[\[
"()<>@,;:\\".\[\]]))|"(?:[^\"\r\\]|\\.|(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t]))*"(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*))*@(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*(?:[^()<>@,;:\\".\[\] \000-\031]+(?:(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])
+|\Z|(?=[\["()<>@,;:\\".\[\]]))|\[([^\[\]\r\\]|\\.)*\](?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*)(?:\.(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*(?:[^()<>@,;:\\".\[\] \000-\031]+(?:(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])+|\Z
|(?=[\["()<>@,;:\\".\[\]]))|\[([^\[\]\r\\]|\\.)*\](?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*))*\>(?:(?:\r\n)?[ \t])*))*)?;\s*)
```

http `http://www.ex-parrot.com/~pdw/Mail-RFC822-Address.html`

Regular expression caveat

Writing a RE is like writing a program.

- Need to understand programming model.
- Can be easier to write than read.
- Can be difficult to debug.

> *" Some people, when confronted with a problem, think 'I know I'll use regular expressions.' Now they have two problems. "*
>
> *— Jamie Zawinski (flame war on alt.religion.emacs)*

Bottom line. REs are amazingly powerful and expressive, but using them in applications can be amazingly complex and error-prone.

- regular expressions
- **NFAs**
- NFA simulation
- NFA construction
- applications

Pattern matching implementation: basic plan (first attempt)

Overview is the same as for KMP!

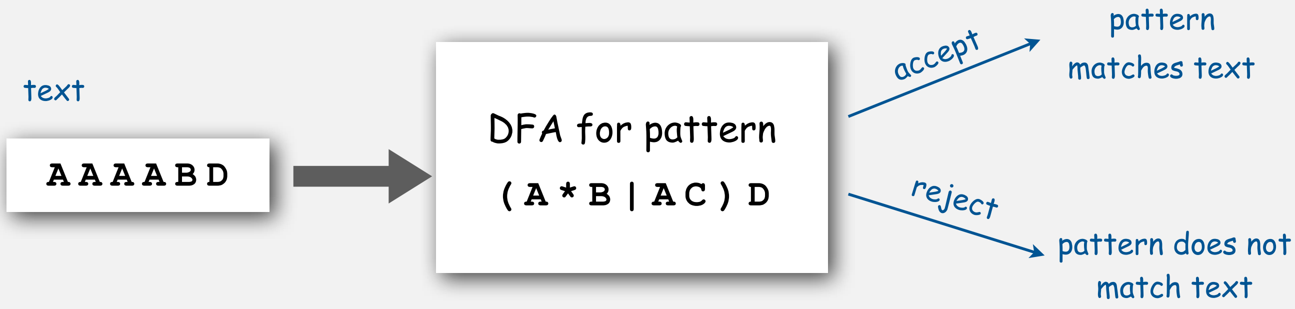
- No backup in text input stream.
- Linear-time guarantee.

Ken Thompson

Underlying abstraction. Deterministic finite state automata (DFA).

Basic plan.

- Build DFA from RE.
- Simulate DFA with text as input.



text

`AAAABD`

DFA for pattern

`( A * B | A C ) D`

accept

pattern matches text

reject

pattern does not match text

Bad news. Basic plan is infeasible (DFA may have exponential number of states).

Pattern matching implementation: basic plan (revised)

Overview is similar to KMP.

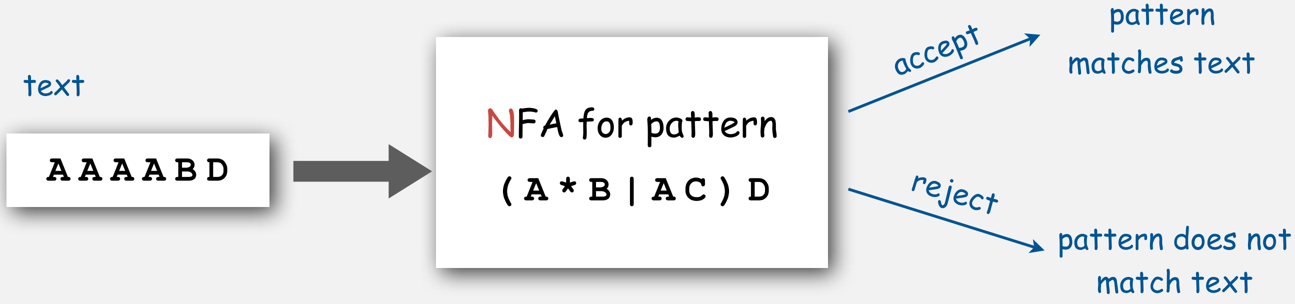
- No backup in text input stream.
- Quadratic-time guarantee (linear-time typical).

Ken Thompson

Underlying abstraction. Nondeterministic finite state automata (NFA).

Basic plan.

- Build NFA from RE.
- Simulate NFA with text as input.



text

`AAAABD`

NFA for pattern

`( A * B | A C ) D`

accept

pattern matches text

reject

pattern does not match text

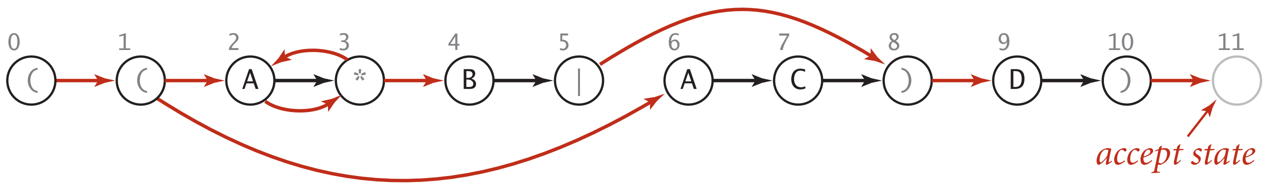
Nondeterministic finite-state automata

Pattern matching NFA.

- Pattern enclosed in parentheses.
- One state per pattern character (start = 0, accept = M).
- Red ε-transition (change state, but don't scan input).
- Black match transition (change state and scan to next char).
- Accept if any sequence of transitions ends in accept state.

Nondeterminism.

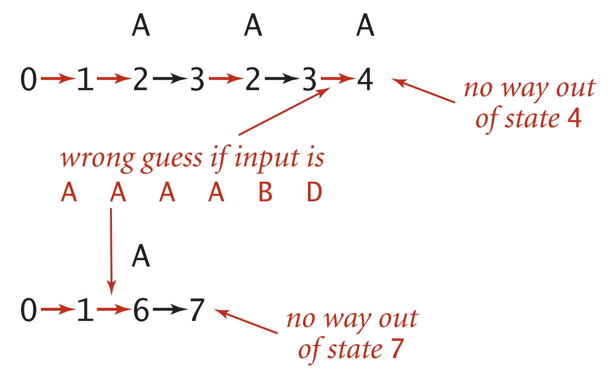
- One view: machine can guess the proper sequence of state transitions.
- Another view: sequence is a proof that the machine accepts the text.

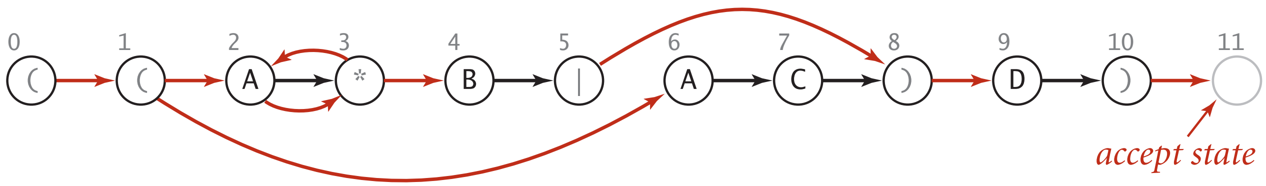


NFA corresponding to the pattern ((A * B | A C) D)

Nondeterministic finite-state automata

Ex. Is **AAAABD** matched by NFA?

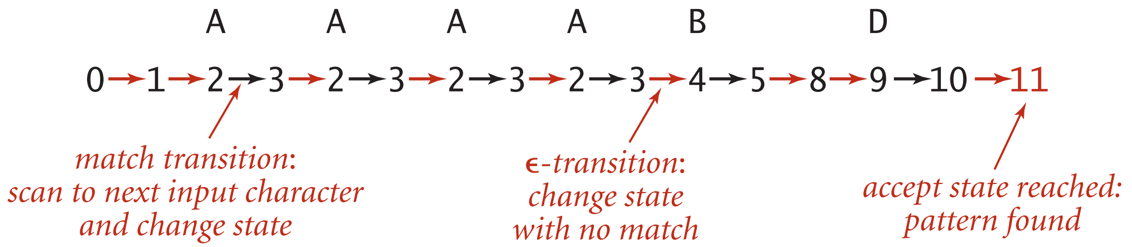




NFA corresponding to the pattern **((A * B | A C) D)**

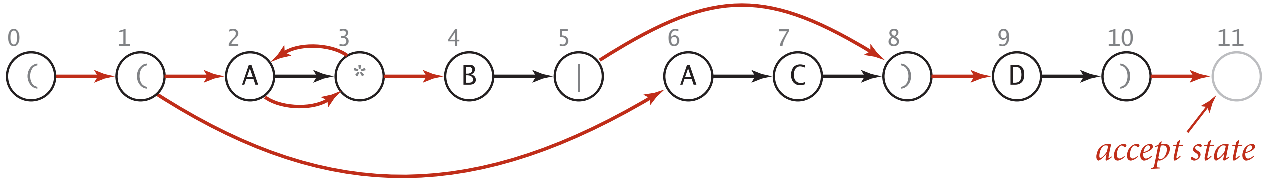
Nondeterministic finite-state automata

Ex. Is `AAAABD` matched by NFA?



yes!

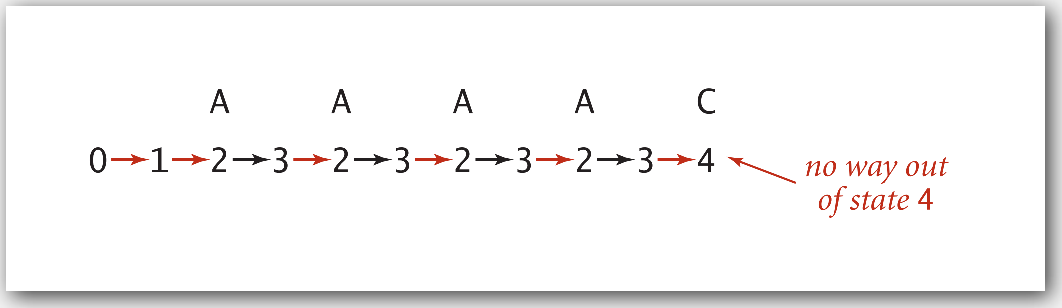
Note: any sequence of legal transitions that ends in state `11` is a proof.



NFA corresponding to the pattern **((A * B | A C) D)**

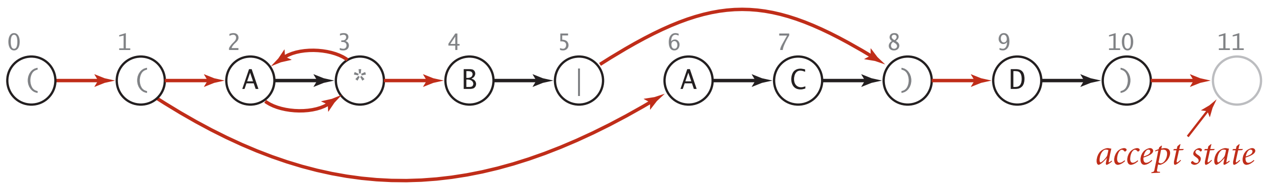
Nondeterministic finite-state automata

Ex. Is `AAAAC` matched by NFA?



no

Note: this is not a complete proof!
(need to mention the infinite number of sequences involving ε-transitions between 2 and 3)



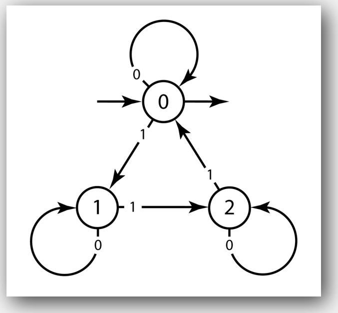
NFA corresponding to the pattern **((A * B | A C) D)**

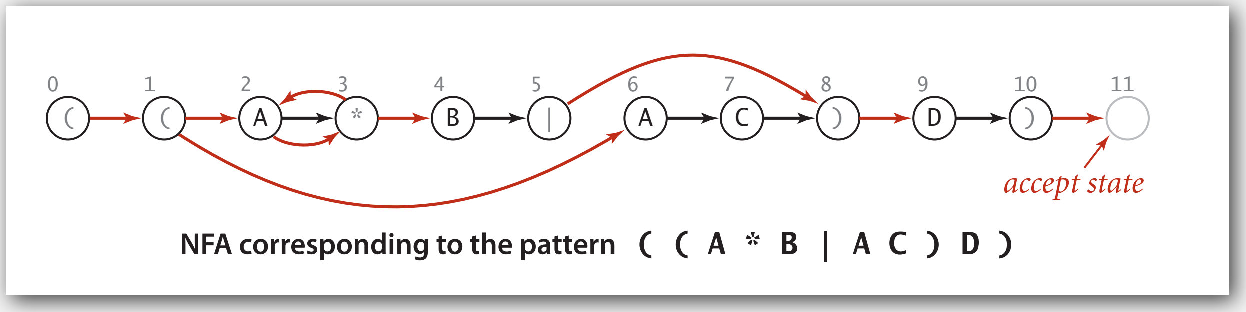
Nondeterminism

Q. How to determine whether a string is recognized by an automaton?

DFA. Deterministic ⇒ exactly one applicable transition.

NFA. Nondeterministic ⇒ can be several applicable transitions; need to select the right one!





NFA corresponding to the pattern ((A * B | A C) D)

Q. How to simulate NFA?

A. Systematically consider all possible transition sequences.

Pattern matching implementation: basic plan (revised)


Ken Thompson

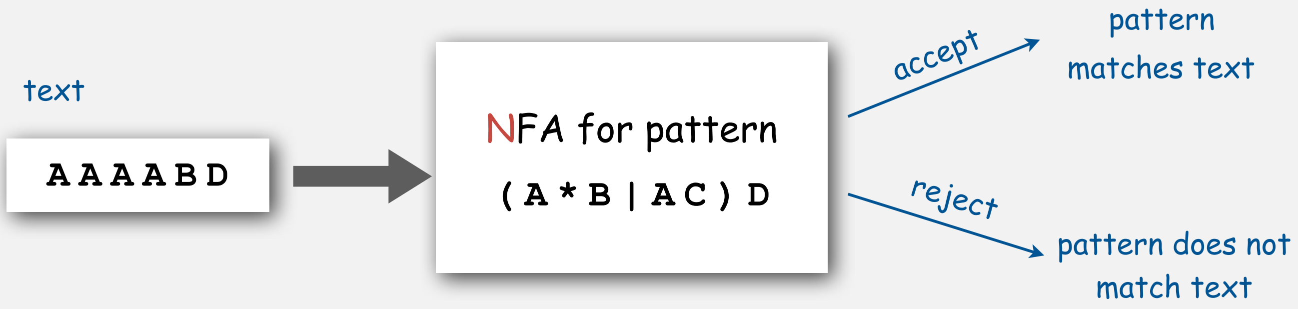
Overview is similar to KMP.

- No backup in text input stream.
- Quadratic-time guarantee (linear-time typical).

Underlying abstraction. Nondeterministic finite state automata (NFA).

Basic plan.

- Build NFA from RE.
- Simulate NFA with text as input.



- regular expressions
- NFAs
- **NFA simulation**
- NFA construction
- applications

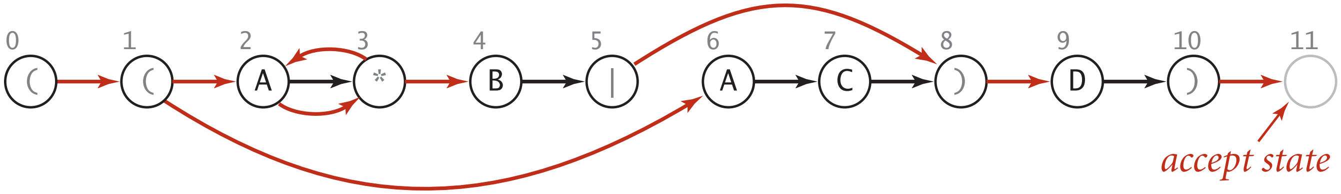
NFA representation

State names. Integers from `0` to `M`.

Match-transitions. Keep regular expression in array `re[]`.

ε-transitions. Store in a digraph `G`.

- 0→1, 1→2, 1→6, 2→3, 3→2, 3→4, 5→8, 8→9, 10→11

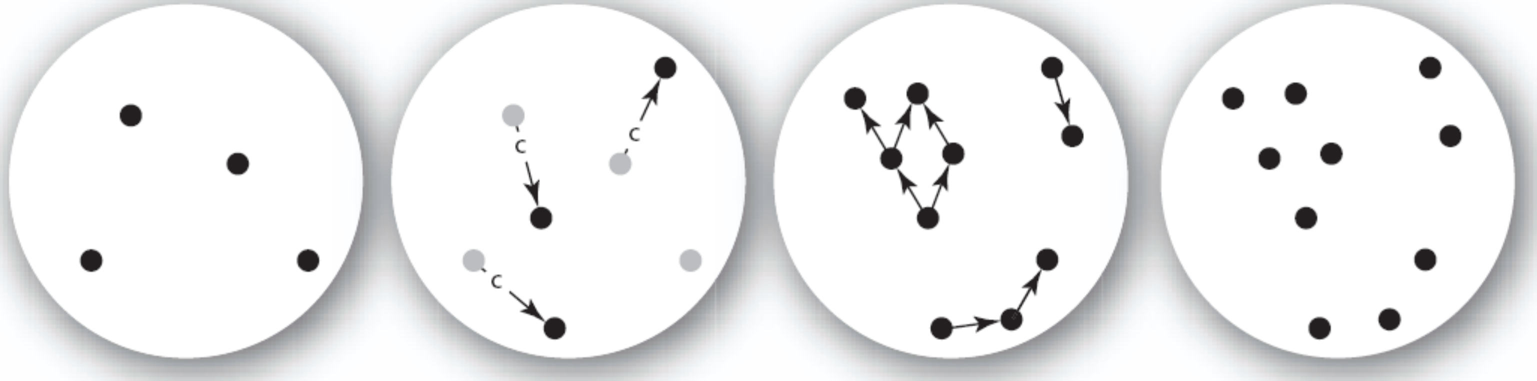


NFA corresponding to the pattern ((A * B | A C) D)

NFA simulation

Q. How to efficiently simulate an NFA?

A. Maintain set of all possible states that NFA could be in after reading in the first i text characters.



all states reachable after reading i symbols

possible transitions on reading (i+1)st symbol c

possible null transitions before reading next symbol

all states reachable after reading i+1 symbols

One step in simulating an NFA

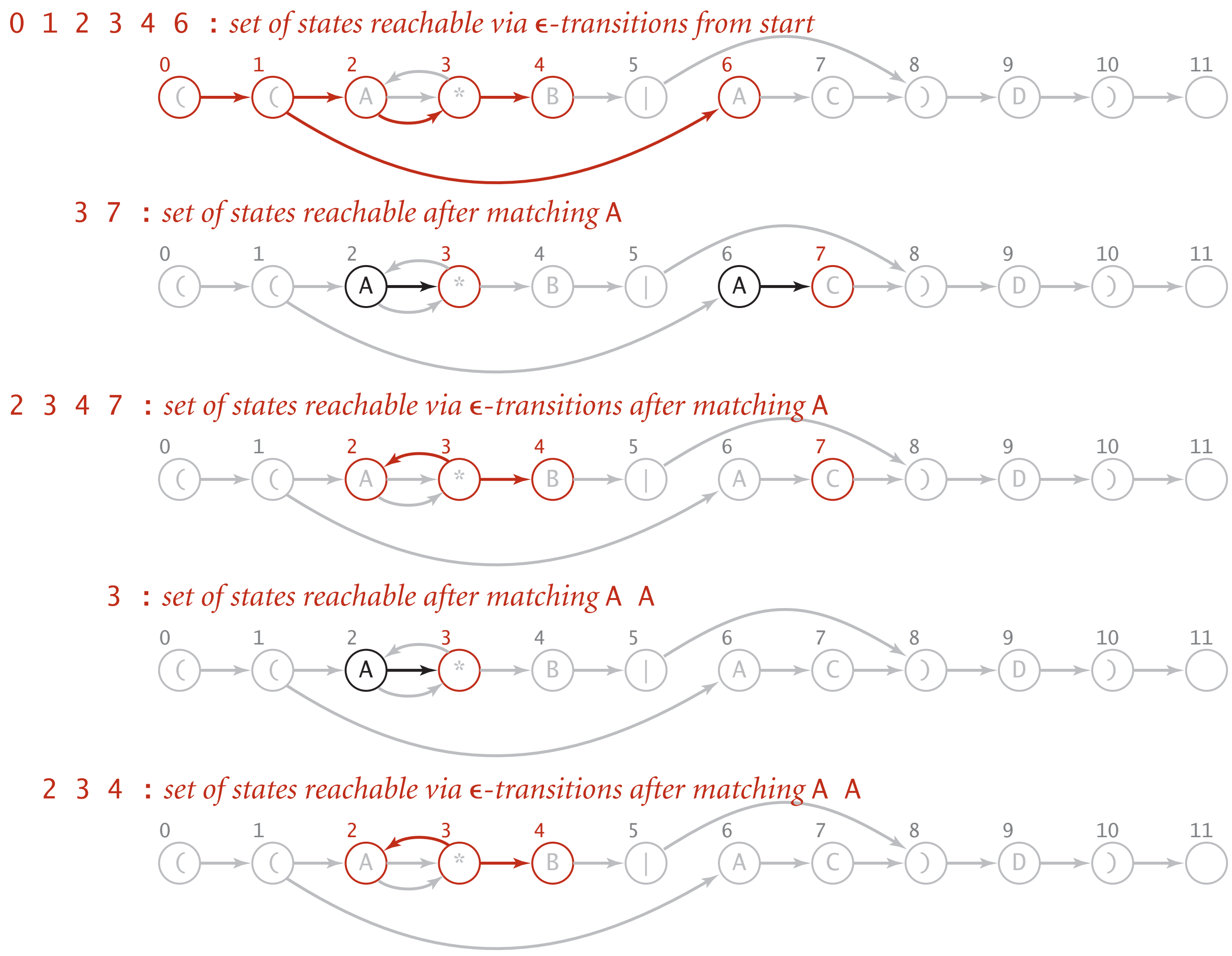
Q. How to perform reachability?

Digraph reachability

Find all vertices reachable from a given set of vertices.

```
public class DFS
{
   private SET<Integer> marked;
   private Digraph G;

   public DFS(Digraph G)
   {  this.G = G; }

   private void search(int v)
   {
      marked.add(v);
      for (int w : G.adj(v))
         if (!marked.contains(w)) search(w);
   }

   public SET<Integer> reachable(SET<Integer> s)
   {
      marked = new SET<Integer>();
      for (int v : s) search(v);
      return marked;
   }
}
```

NFA simulation example



0 1 2 3 4 6 : *set of states reachable via ϵ-transitions from start*

3 7 : *set of states reachable after matching* A

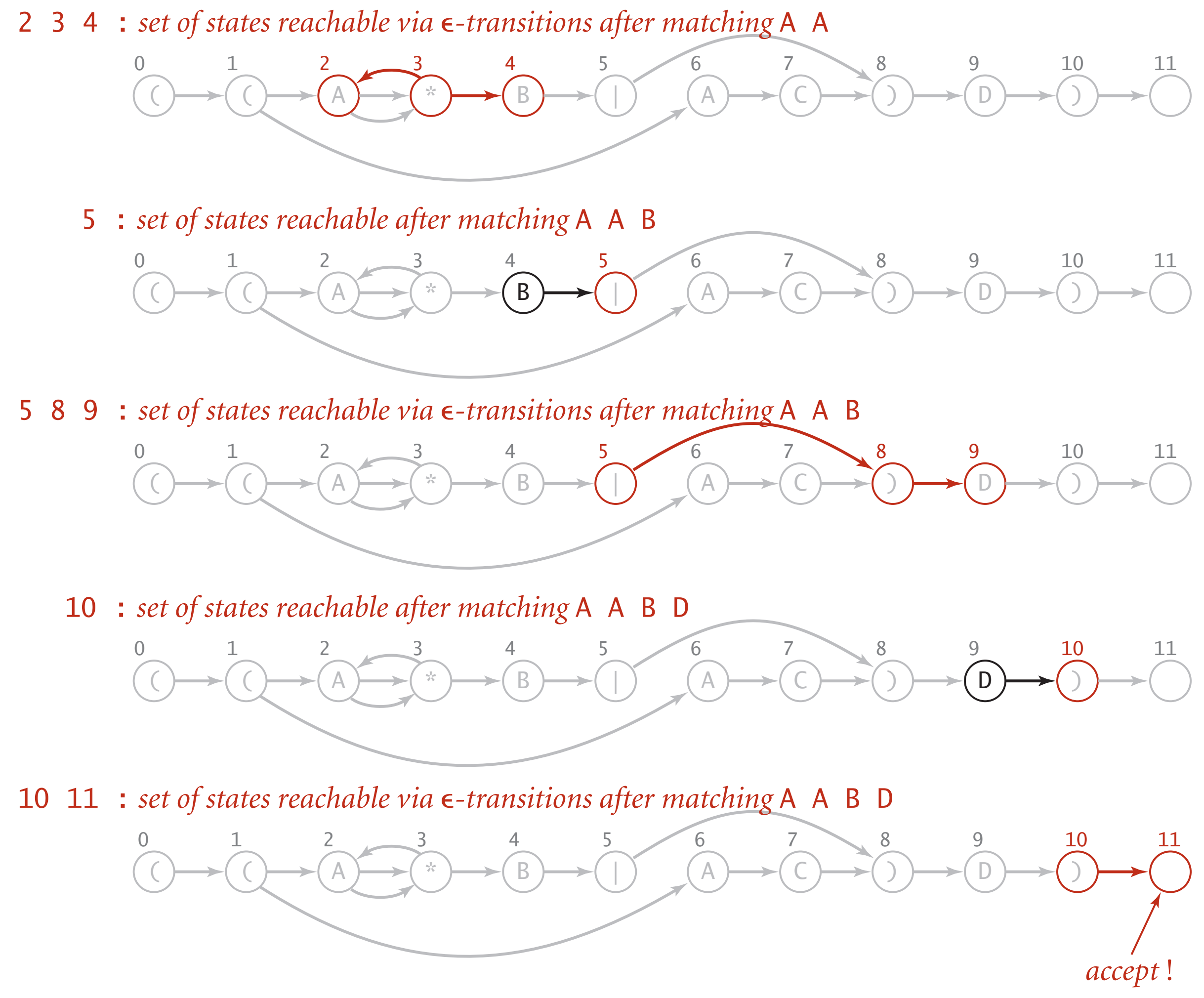
2 3 4 7 : *set of states reachable via ϵ-transitions after matching* A

3 : *set of states reachable after matching* A A

2 3 4 : *set of states reachable via ϵ-transitions after matching* A A

Simulation of ((A * B | A C) D) NFA for input A A B D

NFA simulation example


2 3 4 : *set of states reachable via ε-transitions after matching* A A

5 : *set of states reachable after matching* A A B

5 8 9 : *set of states reachable via ε-transitions after matching* A A B

10 : *set of states reachable after matching* A A B D

10 11 : *set of states reachable via ε-transitions after matching* A A B D

Simulation of ((A * B | A C) D) NFA for input A A B D

NFA simulation: Java implementation

```
public boolean recognizes(String txt)
{
   DFS dfs = new DFS(G);

   SET<Integer> pc = new dfs.reachable(0);

   for (int i = 0; i < txt.length(); i++)
   {
      SET<Integer> match = new SET<Integer>();
      for (int v : pc) {
         if (v == M) continue;
         if ((re[v] == txt.charAt(i)) || re[v] == '.')
            match.add(v+1);
      }

      pc = dfs.reachable(match);
   }

   return pc.contains(M);
}
```

states reachable from
start by ε-transitions

all possible states
after scanning past
`txt.charAt(i)`

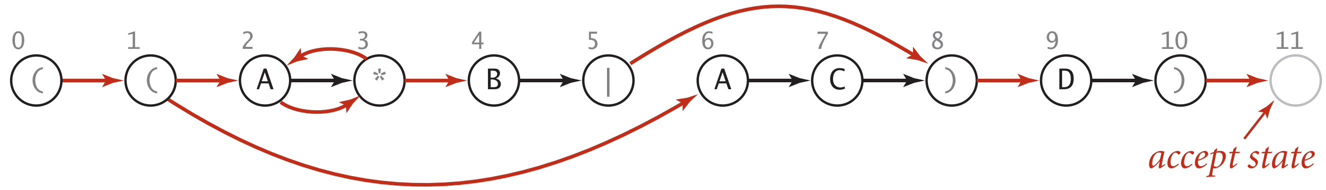
follow ε-transitions

accept if you can
end in state M

NFA simulation: analysis

Proposition 1. Determining whether an N-character text string is recognized by the NFA corresponding to an M-character pattern takes time proportional to NM in the worst case.

Pf. For each of the N text characters, we iterate through a set of states of size no more than M and run DFS on the graph of ε-transitions.
(The construction we consider ensures the number of edges is at most M.)

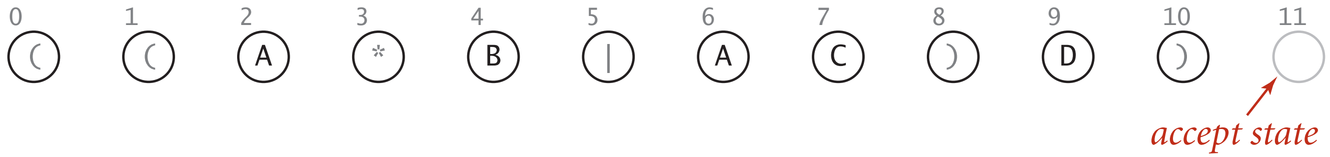


NFA corresponding to the pattern ((A * B | A C) D)

- regular expressions
- NFAs
- NFA simulation
- **NFA construction**
- applications

Building an NFA corresponding to an RE

States. Include a state for each symbol in the RE, plus an accept state.



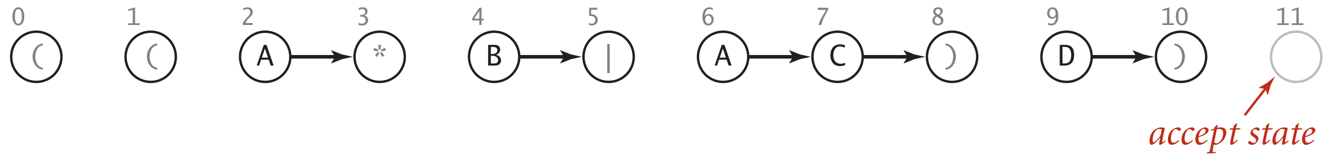
NFA corresponding to the pattern ((A * B | A C) D)

Building an NFA corresponding to an RE

Concatenation. Add match-transition edge from state corresponding to letters in the alphabet to next state.

Alphabet. `A B C D`

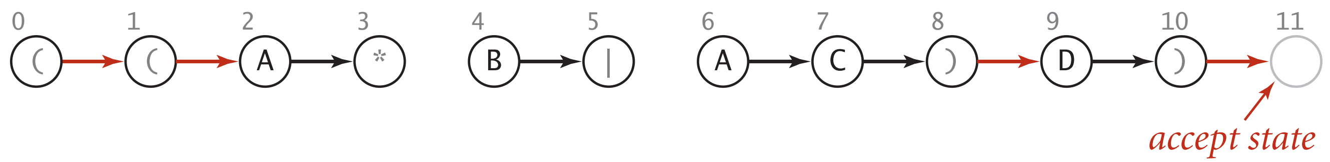
Metacharacters. `( ) . * |`



NFA corresponding to the pattern ((A * B | A C) D)

Building an NFA corresponding to an RE

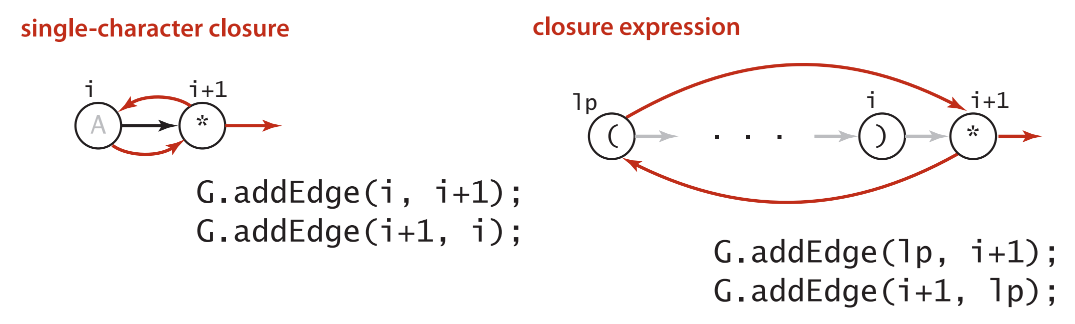
Parentheses. Add ε-transition edge from parentheses to next state.



NFA corresponding to the pattern ((A * B | A C) D)

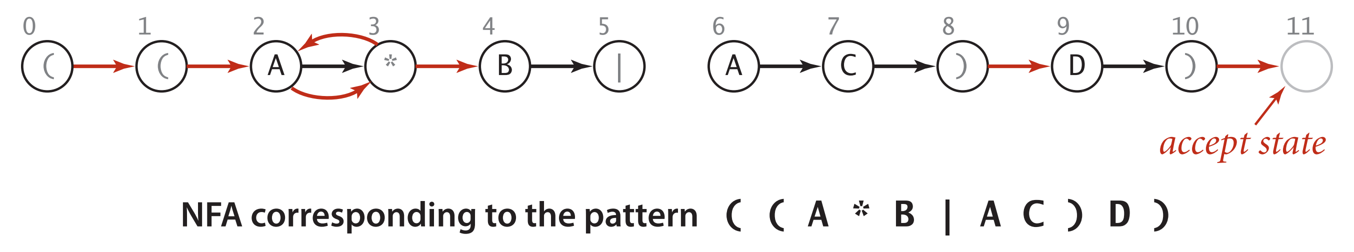
Building an NFA corresponding to an RE

Closure. Add three ε-transition edges for each * operator.



```
G.addEdge(i, i+1);
G.addEdge(i+1, i);
```

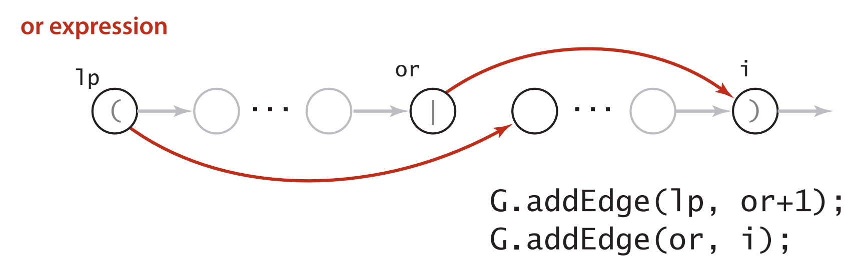
```
G.addEdge(lp, i+1);
G.addEdge(i+1, lp);
```



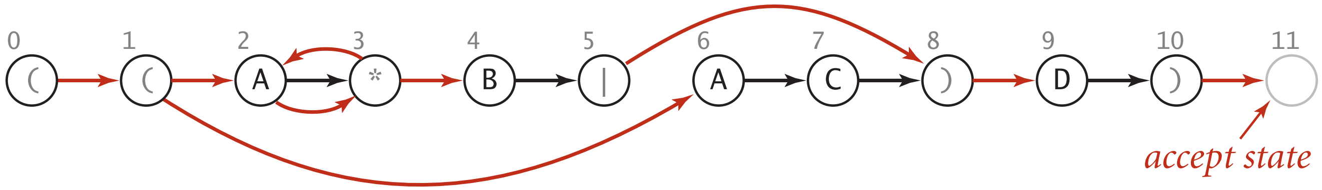
NFA corresponding to the pattern ((A * B | A C) D)

Building an NFA corresponding to an RE

Or. Add two ε-transition edges for each | operator.



```
G.addEdge(lp, or+1);
G.addEdge(or, i);
```



NFA corresponding to the pattern ((A * B | A C) D)

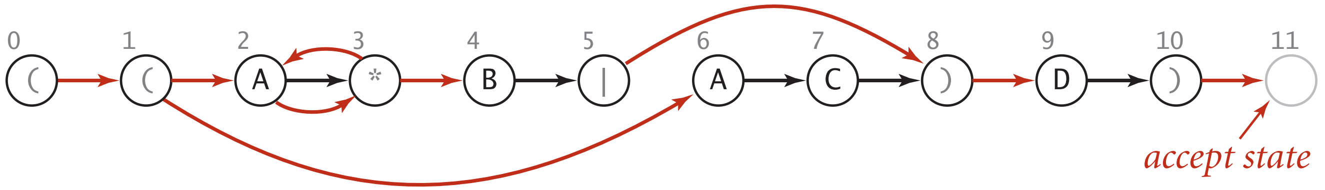
NFA construction: implementation

Goal. Write a program to build the ε-transition digraph.

Challenge. Need to remember left parentheses to implement closure and or; need to remember `|` to implement or.

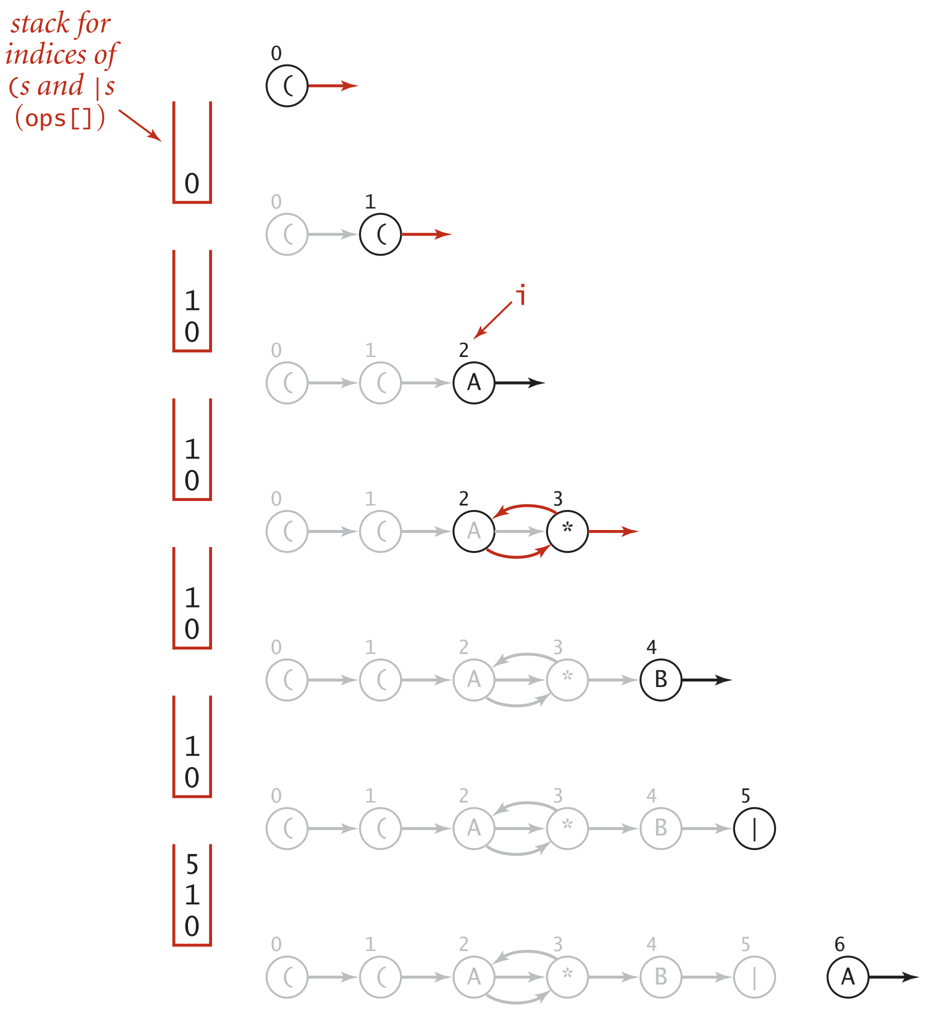
Solution. Maintain a stack.

- Left parenthesis: push onto stack.
- `|` symbol: push onto stack.
- Right parenthesis: add edges for closure and or.



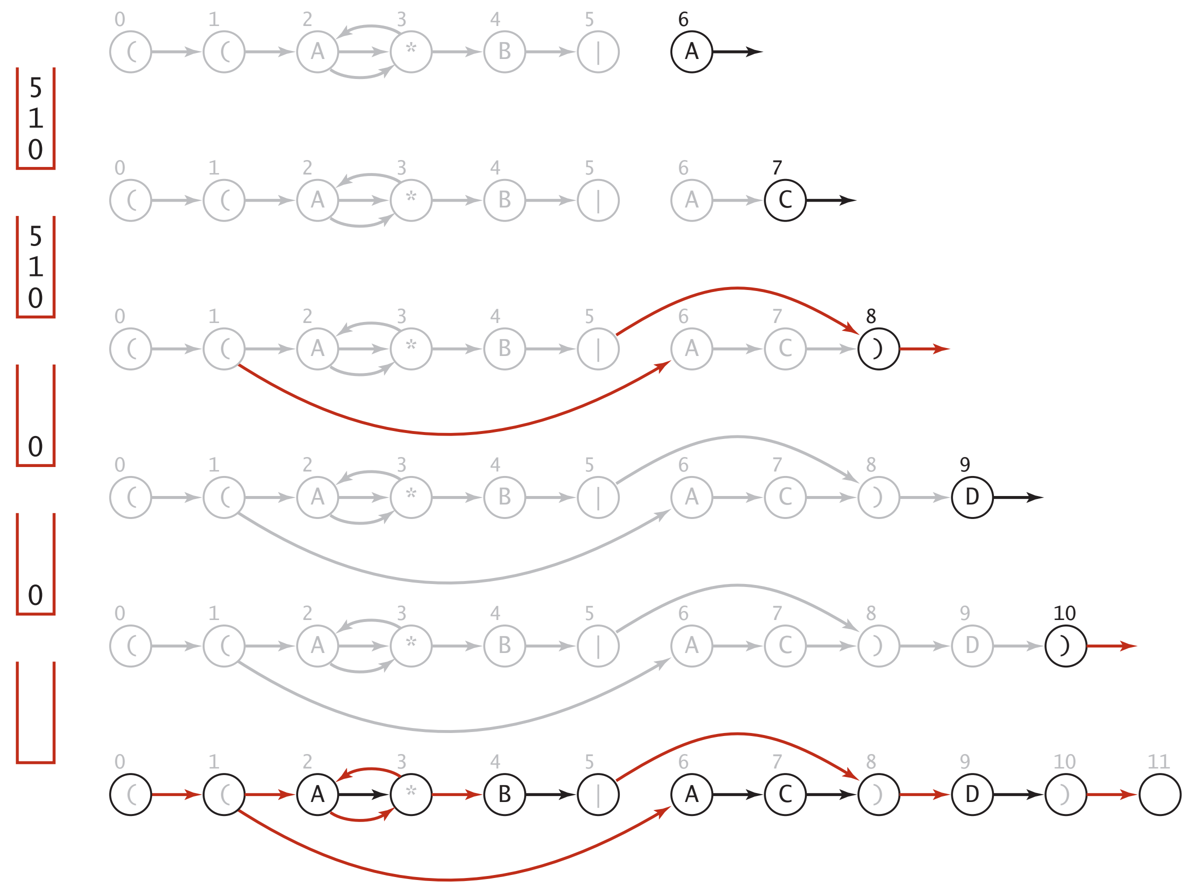
NFA corresponding to the pattern **((A * B | A C) D)**

NFA construction: example



Building the NFA corresponding to ((A * B | A C) D)

NFA construction: example



Building the NFA corresponding to ((A * B | A C) D)

NFA construction: Java implementation

```
public NFA(String regexp) {
   Stack<Integer> ops = new Stack<Integer>();
   this.re = re.toCharArray();
   M = re.length;
   G = new Digraph(M+1);
   for (int i = 0; i < M; i++) {
      int lp = i;

      if (re[i] == '(' || re[i] == '|') ops.push(i);

      else if (re[i] == ')') {
         int or = ops.pop();
         if (re[or] == '|') {
            lp = ops.pop();
            G.addEdge(lp, or+1);
            G.addEdge(or, i);
         }
         else lp = or;
      }

      if (i < M-1 && re[i+1] == '*') {
         G.addEdge(lp, i+1);
         G.addEdge(i+1, lp);
      }

      if (re[i] == '(' || re[i] == '*' || re[i] == ')')
         G.addEdge(i, i+1);
   }
}
```

left parentheses and |

or

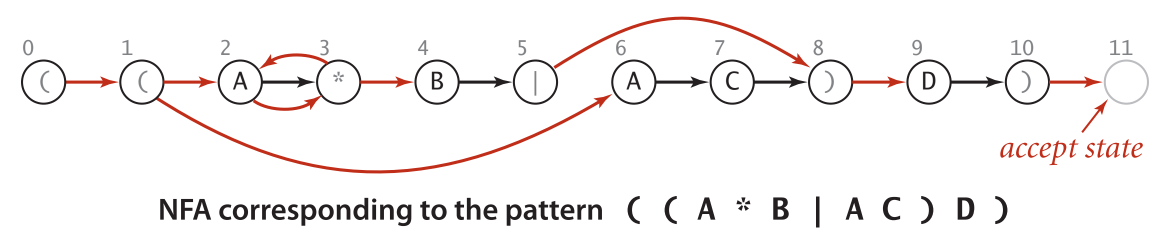
closure
(needs lookahead)

metasymbols

NFA construction: analysis

Proposition 2. Building the NFA corresponding to an M-character pattern takes time and space proportional to M in the worst case.

Pf. For each of the M characters in the pattern, we add one or two ε-transitions and perhaps execute one or two stack operations.



NFA corresponding to the pattern ((A * B | A C) D)

- regular expressions
- NFAs
- NFA simulation
- NFA construction
- **applications**

Generalized regular expression print

Grep. Takes a pattern as a command-line argument and prints the lines from standard input having some substring that is matched by the pattern.

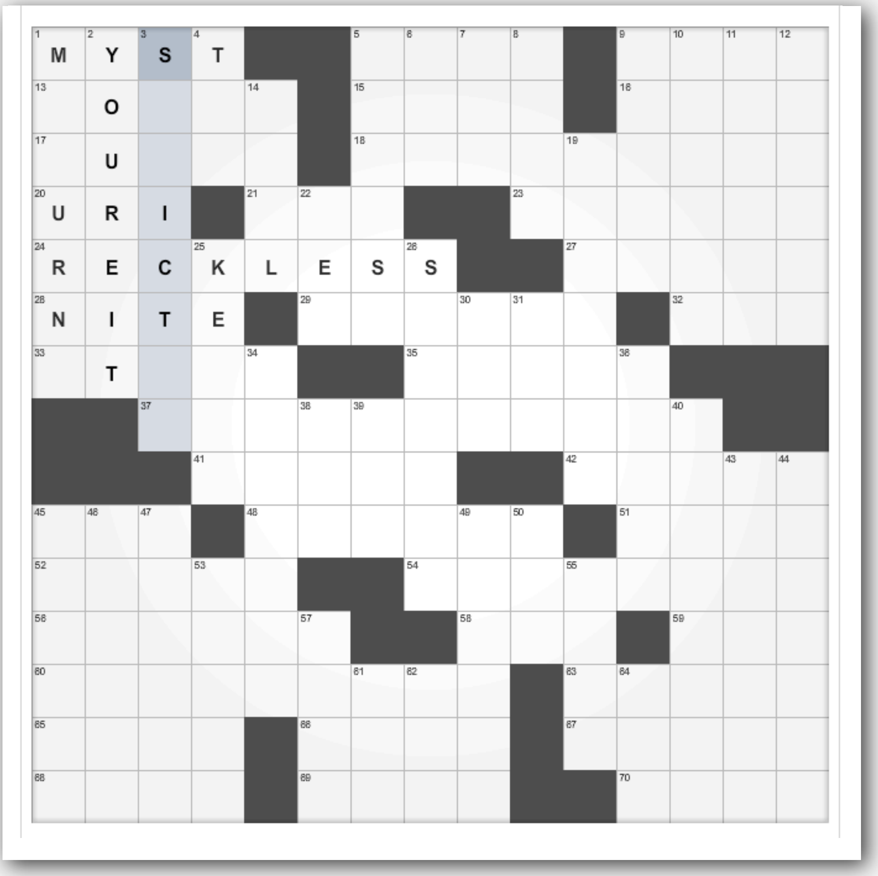
```
public class GREP
{
   public static void main(String[] args)
   {
      String regexp = "(.*" + args[0] + ".*)";
      while (!StdIn.isEmpty())
      {
         String line = StdIn.readLine();
         NFA nfa = new NFA(regexp);
         if (nfa.recognizes(line))
            StdOut.println(line);
      }
   }
}
```

find lines containing RE as a substring

Bottom line. Worst-case for grep (proportional to MN) is the same as for elementary exact substring match.

Typical grep application

Crossword puzzle



dictionary
(standard in UNIX)
also on booksite

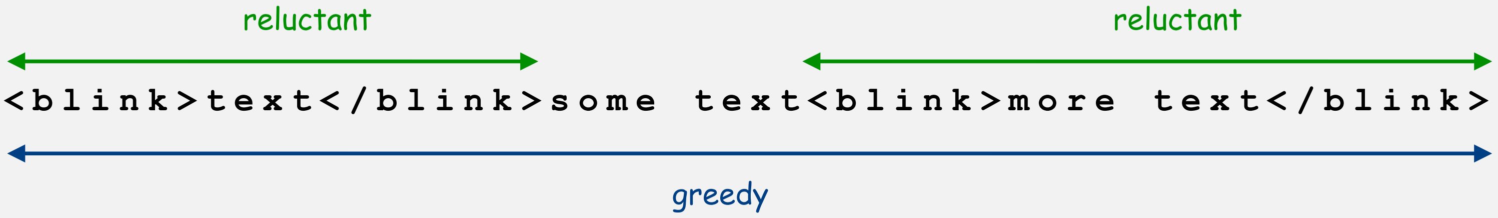
```
% more words.txt
a
aback
abacus
abalone
abandon
...

% grep s..ict.. words.txt
constrictor
stricter
stricture
```

Industrial-strength grep implementation

To complete the implementation:

- Add character classes.
- Handling metacharacters.
- Add capturing capabilities.
- Extend the closure operator.
- Error checking and recovery.
- Greedy vs. reluctant matching.

Ex. Which substring(s) should be matched by the RE `<blink>.*</blink>` ?



Regular expressions in other languages

Broadly applicable programmer's tool.

- Originated in Unix in the 1970s
- Many languages support extended regular expressions.
- Built into grep, awk, emacs, Perl, PHP, Python, JavaScript.

```
% grep NEWLINE */*.java
```

print all lines containing **`NEWLINE`** which occurs in any file with a **`.java`** extension

```
% egrep '^[qwertyuiop]*[zxcvbnm]*$' dict.txt | egrep '...........'
```

PERL. Practical Extraction and Report Language.

```
% perl -p -i -e 's|from|to|g' input.txt
```

replace all occurrences of **`from`** with **`to`** in the file **`input.txt`**

```
% perl -n -e 'print if /^[A-Za-z][a-z]*$/' dict.txt
```

print all uppercase words

do for each line

Regular expressions in Java

Validity checking. Does the `input` match the `regexp`?

Java string library. Use `input.matches(regexp)` for basic RE matching.

```
public class Validate
{
   public static void main(String[] args)
   {
      String regexp = args[0];
      String input  = args[1];
      StdOut.println(input.matches(regexp));
   }
}
```

```
% java Validate "[$_A-Za-z][$_A-Za-z0-9]*" ident123
true

% java Validate "[a-z]+@([a-z]+\.)+(edu|com)" rs@cs.princeton.edu
true

% java Validate "[0-9]{3}-[0-9]{2}-[0-9]{4}" 166-11-4433
true
```

← legal Java identifier

← valid email address (simplified)

← Social Security number

Harvesting information

Goal. Print all substrings of input that match a RE.

```
% java Harvester "gcg(cgg|agg)*ctg" chromosomeX.txt
gcgcggcggcggcggcggctg
gcgctg
gcgctg
gcgcggcggcggaggcggaggcggctg
```

harvest patterns from DNA

harvest links from website

```
% java Harvester "http://(\\w+\\.)*(\\w+)" http://www.cs.princeton.edu
http://www.princeton.edu
http://www.google.com
http://www.cs.princeton.edu/news
```

Harvesting information

RE pattern matching is implemented in Java's `Pattern` and `Matcher` classes.

```
import java.util.regex.Pattern;
import java.util.regex.Matcher;

public class Harvester
{
   public static void main(String[] args)
   {
      String regexp   = args[0];
      In in           = new In(args[1]);
      String input    = in.readAll();
      Pattern pattern = Pattern.compile(regexp);
      Matcher matcher = pattern.matcher(input);
      while (matcher.find())
         StdOut.println(matcher.group());
   }
}
```

`compile()` creates a `Pattern` (NFA) from RE

`matcher()` creates a `Matcher` (NFA simulator) from NFA and text

`find()` looks for the next match

`group()` returns the substring most recently found by `find()`

Algorithmic complexity attacks

Warning. Typical implementations do not guarantee performance!

Unix grep, Java, Perl

```
% java Validate "(a|aa)*b" aaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaac          1.6 seconds
% java Validate "(a|aa)*b" aaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaac        3.7 seconds
% java Validate "(a|aa)*b" aaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaac      9.7 seconds
% java Validate "(a|aa)*b" aaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaac   23.2 seconds
% java Validate "(a|aa)*b" aaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaac  62.2 seconds
% java Validate "(a|aa)*b" aaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaac 161.6 seconds
```

SpamAssassin regular expression.

```
% java RE "[a-z]+@[a-z]+([a-z\.]+\.)+[a-z]+" spammer@x......................
```

- Takes exponential time on pathological email addresses.
- Troublemaker can use such addresses to DOS a mail server.

Not-so-regular expressions

Back-references.

- `\1` notation matches sub-expression that was matched earlier.
- Supported by typical RE implementations.

```
% java Harvester "\b(.+)\1\b"  dictionary.txt
beriberi
couscous
```

word boundary

Some non-regular languages.

- Set of strings of the form ww for some string w: **`beriberi`**.
- Set of bitstrings with an equal number of 0s and 1s: **`01110100`**.
- Set of Watson-Crick complemented palindromes: **`atttcggaaat`**.

Remark. Pattern matching with back-references is intractable.

Context

Abstract machines, languages, and nondeterminism.

- basis of the theory of computation
- intensively studied since the 1930s
- basis of programming languages

Compiler. A program that translates a program to machine code.

- KMP string ⇒ DFA.
- `grep` RE ⇒ NFA.
- `javac` Java language ⇒ Java byte code.

	KMP	grep	Java
pattern	string	RE	program
parser	unnecessary	check if legal	check if legal
compiler output	DFA	NFA	byte code
simulator	DFA simulator	NFA simulator	JVM

Summary of pattern-matching algorithms

Programmer.

- Implement exact pattern matching via DFA simulation.
- Implement RE pattern matching via NFA simulation.

Theoretician.

- RE is a compact description of a set of strings.
- NFA is an abstract machine equivalent in power to RE.
- DFAs and REs have limitations.

You. Practical application of core CS principles.

Example of essential paradigm in computer science.

- Build intermediate abstractions.
- Pick the right ones!
- Solve important practical problems.

5.5 Data Compression

- basics
- run-length encoding
- Huffman compression
- LZW compression

Data compression

Compression reduces the size of a file:

- To save space when storing it.
- To save time when transmitting it.
- Most files have lots of redundancy.

Who needs compression?

- Moore's law: # transistors on a chip doubles every 18-24 months.
- Parkinson's law: data expands to fill space available.
- Text, images, sound, video, …

> *" All of the books in the world contain no more information than is broadcast as video in a single large American city in a single year. Not all bits have equal value. "* — *Carl Sagan*

Basic concepts ancient (1950s), best technology recently developed.

Applications

Generic file compression.
- Files: GZIP, BZIP, BOA.
- Archivers: PKZIP.
- File systems: NTFS.

Multimedia.
- Images: GIF, JPEG.
- Sound: MP3.
- Video: MPEG, DivX™, HDTV.

Communication.
- ITU-T T4 Group 3 Fax.
- V.42bis modem.

Databases. Google.

Google™

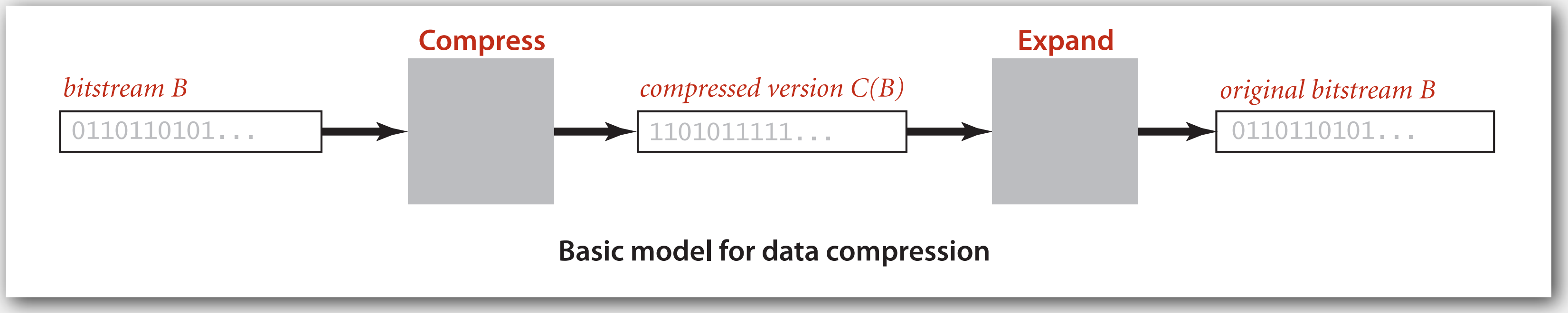
Lossless compression and expansion

uses fewer bits (you hope)

Message. Binary data B we want to compress.

Compress. Generates a "compressed" representation $C(B)$.

Expand. Reconstructs original bitstream B.



Basic model for data compression

Compression ratio. Bits in $C(B)$ / bits in B.

Ex. 50-75% or better compression ratio for natural language.

Food for thought

Data compression has been omnipresent since antiquity:

- Number systems.
- Natural languages.
- Mathematical notation.

has played a central role in communications technology,

- Braille.
- Morse code.
- Telephone system.

and is part of modern life.

- MP3.
- MPEG.

Q. What role will it play in the future?

- binary I/O
- genomic encoding
- run-length encoding
- Huffman compression
- LZW compression

Reading and writing binary data

Binary standard input and standard output. Libraries to read and write bits from standard input and to standard output.

`public class BinaryStdIn`

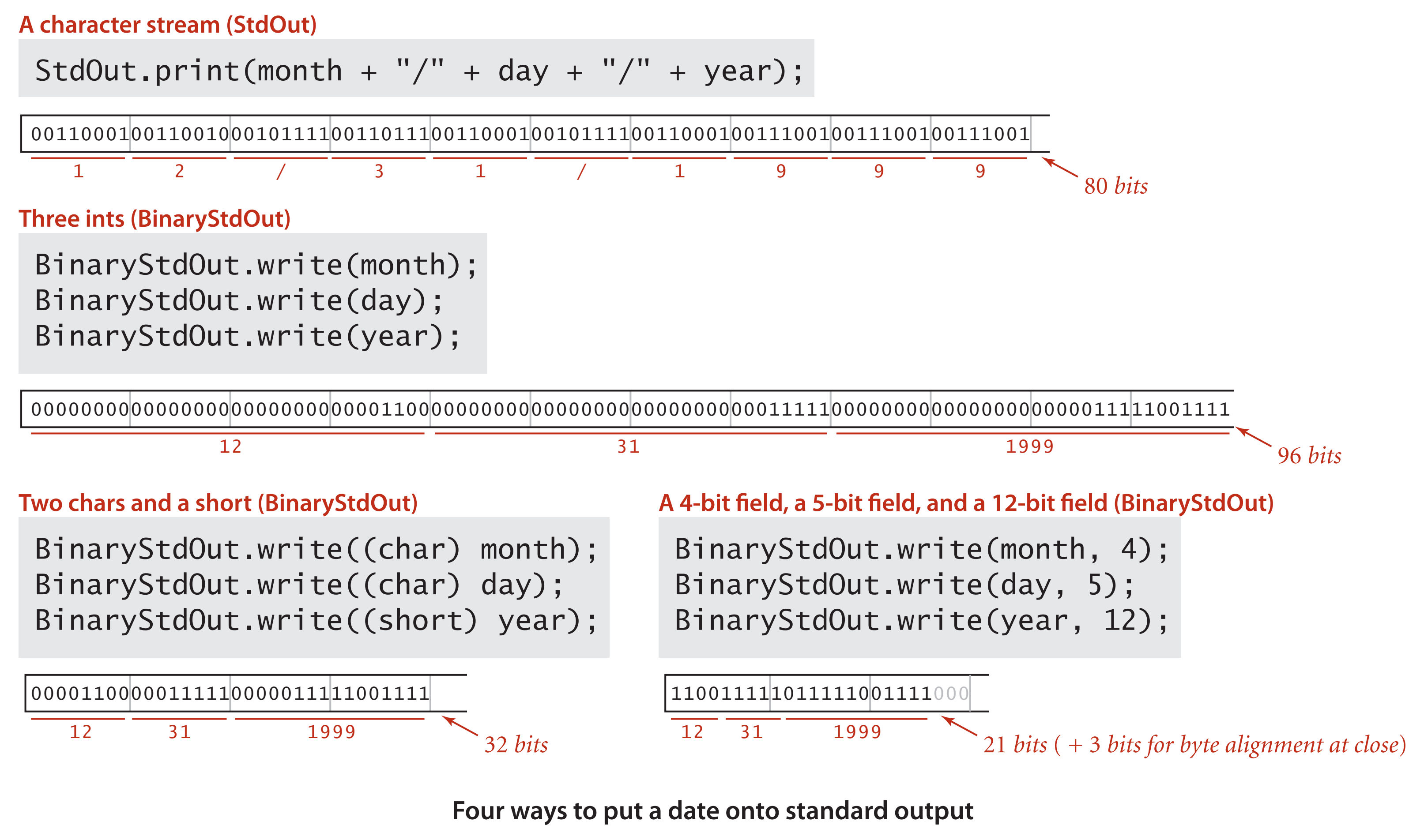
`boolean`	`readBoolean()`	*read 1 bit of data and return as a* `boolean` *value*
`char`	`readChar()`	*read 8 bits of data and return as a* `char` *value*
`char`	`readChar(int r)`	*read* `r` *bits of data and return as a* `char` *value*
[similar methods for `byte` *(8 bits);* `short` *(16 bits);* `int` *(32 bits);* `long` *and* `double` *(64 bits)]*		
`boolean`	`isEmpty()`	*is the bitstream empty?*
`void`	`close()`	*close the bitstream*

`public class BinaryStdOut`

`void`	`write(boolean b)`	*write the specified bit*
`void`	`write(char c)`	*write the specified 8-bit* `char`
`void`	`write(char c, int r)`	*write the* `r` *least significant bits of the specified* `char`
[similar methods for `byte` *(8 bits);* `short` *(16 bits);* `int` *(32 bits);* `long` *and* `double` *(64 bits)]*		
`void`	`close()`	*close the bitstream*

Writing binary data

Date representation. Different ways to represent 12/31/1999.



A character stream (StdOut)

```
StdOut.print(month + "/" + day + "/" + year);
```

```
00110001|00110010|00101111|00110011|00110001|00101111|00110001|00111001|00111001|00111001
    1        2        /        3        1        /        1        9        9        9
```

80 bits

Three ints (BinaryStdOut)

```
BinaryStdOut.write(month);
BinaryStdOut.write(day);
BinaryStdOut.write(year);
```

```
00000000|00000000|00000000|00001100|00000000|00000000|00000000|00011111|00000000|00000000|00000111|11001111
                12                                 31                                 1999
```

96 bits

Two chars and a short (BinaryStdOut)

```
BinaryStdOut.write((char) month);
BinaryStdOut.write((char) day);
BinaryStdOut.write((short) year);
```

```
00001100|00011111|00000111|11001111
   12       31         1999
```

32 bits

A 4-bit field, a 5-bit field, and a 12-bit field (BinaryStdOut)

```
BinaryStdOut.write(month, 4);
BinaryStdOut.write(day, 5);
BinaryStdOut.write(year, 12);
```

```
11001111|10111110|01111000
 12   31      1999
```

21 bits (+ 3 bits for byte alignment at close)

Four ways to put a date onto standard output

Binary dumps

Q. How to examine the contents of a bitstream?

Standard character stream

```
% more abra.txt
ABRACADABRA!
```

Bitstream represented as 0 and 1 characters

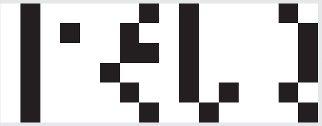
```
% java BinaryDump 16 < abra.txt
0100000101000010
0101001001000001
0100001101000001
0100010001000001
0100001001010010
0100000100100001
96 bits
```

Bitstream represented with hex digits

```
%  java HexDump 4 < abra.txt
41 42 52 41
43 41 44 41
42 52 41 21
96 bits
```

Bitstream represented as pixels in a `Picture`

```
% java PictureDump 16 < abra.txt
```



16-by-6 pixel window, magnified

```
96 bits
```

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
0	NUL	SOH	STX	ETX	EOT	ENQ	ACK	BEL	BS	HT	LF	VT	FF	CR	SO	SI
1	DLE	DC1	DC2	DC3	DC4	NAK	SYN	ETB	CAN	EM	SUB	ESC	FS	GS	RS	US
2	SP	!	“	#	$	%	&	‘	(	)	*	+	,	-	.	/
3	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	:	;	<	=	>	?
4	@	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O
5	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	[	\	]	^	_
6	`	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o
7	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	{	|	}	~	DEL

Hexadecimal to ASCII conversion table

- binary I/O
- **limitations**
- genomic encoding
- run-length encoding
- Huffman compression
- LZW compression

Universal data compression

US Patent 5,533,051 on "Methods for Data Compression", which is capable of compression all files.

Slashdot reports of the Zero Space Tuner™ and BinaryAccelerator™.

> *“ ZeoSync has announced a breakthrough in data compression that allows for 100:1 lossless compression of random data. If this is true, our bandwidth problems just got a lot smaller.… ”*

Universal data compression

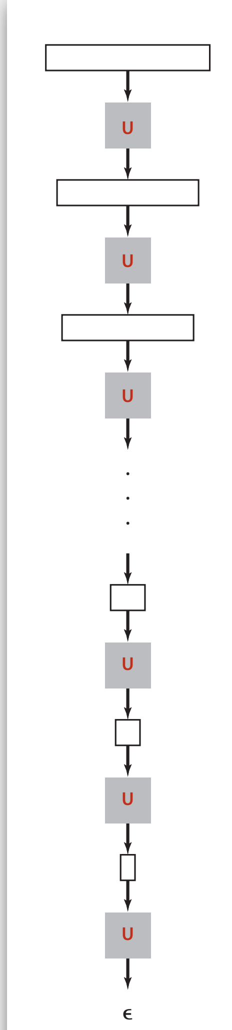
Proposition. No algorithm can compress every bitstring.

Pf 1. [by contradiction]

- Suppose you have a universal data compression algorithm U that can compress every bitstream.
- Given bintstring B_0, compress it to get smaller bitstring B_1.
- Compress B_1 to get a smaller bitstring B_2.
- Continue until reaching bitstring of size 0.
- Implication: all bitstrings can be compressed with 0 bits!

Pf 2. [by counting]

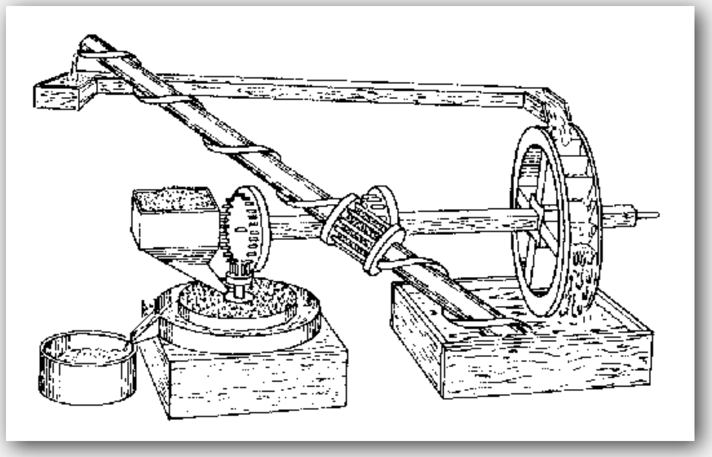
- Suppose your algorithm that can compress all 1,000-bit strings.
- 2^{1000} possible bitstrings with 1000 bits.
- Only $1 + 2 + 4 + \ldots + 2^{998} + 2^{999}$ can be encoded with ≤ 999 bits.
- Similarly, only 1 in 2^{499} bitstrings can be encoded with ≤ 500 bits!



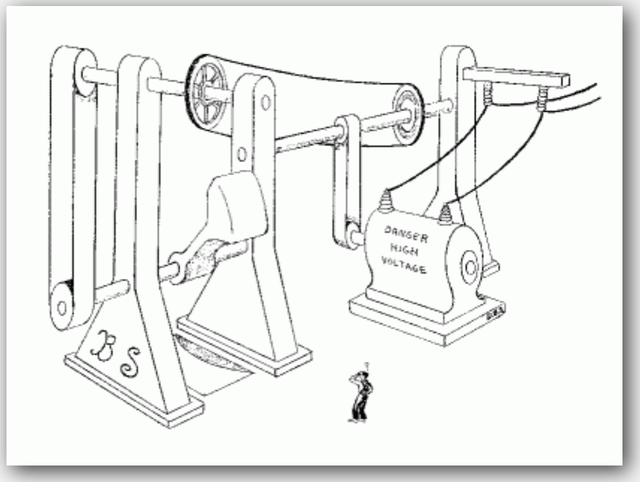
Universal
data compression?

Perpetual motion machines

Universal data compression is the analog of perpetual motion.



Closed-cycle mill by Robert Fludd, 1618

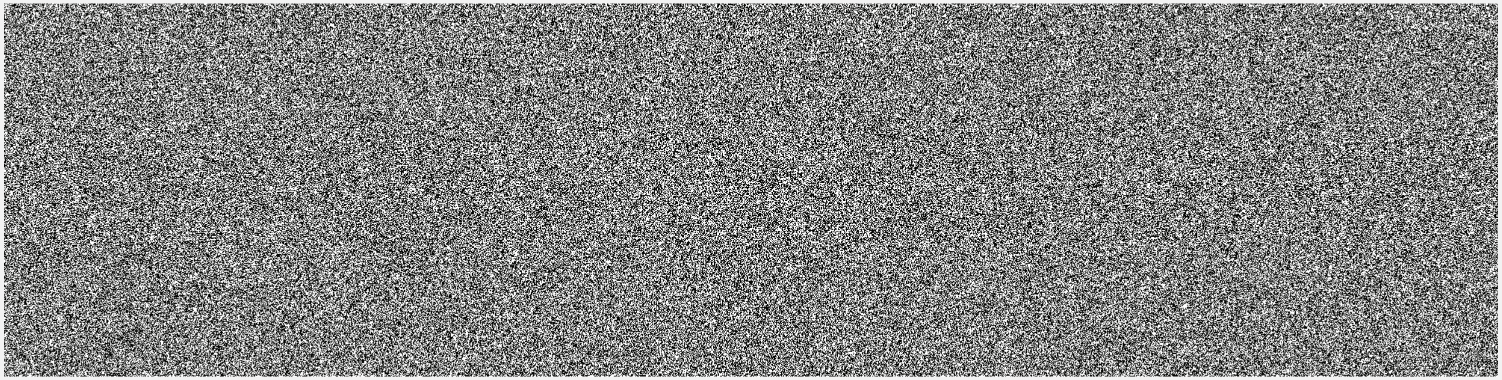


Gravity engine by Bob Schadewald

Reference: Museum of Unworkable Devices by Donald E. Simanek
http://www.lhup.edu/~dsimanek/museum/unwork.htm

Undecidability

```
% java RandomBits | java PictureDump 2000 500
```



```
1000000 bits
```

A difficult file to compress: one million (pseudo-) random bits

```
public class RandomBits
{
   public static void main(String[] args)
   {
      int x = 11111;
      for (int i = 0; i < 1000000; i++)
      {
         x = x * 314159 + 218281;
         BinaryStdOut.write(x > 0);
      }
      BinaryStdOut.close();
   }
}
```

Rdenudcany in Enlgsih Inagugae

Q. How much redundancy is in the English language?

> *“ ... randomising letters in the middle of words [has] little or no effect on the ability of skilled readers to understand the text. This is easy to denmtrasote. In a pubiltacion of New Scnieitst you could ramdinose all the letetrs, keipeng the first two and last two the same, and reibadailty would hadrly be aftcfeed. My ansaylis did not come to much beucase the thoery at the time was for shape and senqeuce retigcionon. Saberi's work sugsegts we may have some pofrweul palrlael prsooscers at work. The resaon for this is suerly that idnetiyfing coentnt by paarllel prseocsing speeds up regnicoiton. We only need the first and last two letetrs to spot chganes in meniang. ”* *— Graham Rawlinson*

A. Quite a bit.

- **genomic encoding**
- run-length encoding
- Huffman compression
- LZW compression

Genomic code

Genome. String over the alphabet { A, C, T, G }.

Goal. Encode an N-character genome: **ATAGATGCATAG...**

Standard ASCII encoding.

- 8 bits per char.
- 8N bits.

char	hex	binary
A	41	01000001
C	43	01000011
T	54	01010100
G	47	01000111

Two-bit encoding encoding.

- 2 bits per char.
- 2N bits.

char	binary
A	00
C	01
T	10
G	11

Amazing but true. Initial genomic databases in 1990s did not use such a code!

Fixed-length code. k-bit code supports alphabet of size 2^k.

Genomic code

```
public class Genome {

   public static void compress() {
      Alphabet DNA = new Alphabet("ACTG");
      String s = BinaryStdIn.readString();
      int N = s.length();
      BinaryStdOut.write(N);
      for (int i = 0; i < N; i++) {
         int d = DNA.toIndex(s.charAt(i));
         BinaryStdOut.write(d, 2);
      }
      BinaryStdOut.close();
   }

   public static void expand() {
      Alphabet DNA = new Alphabet("ACTG");
      int N = BinaryStdIn.readInt();
      for (int i = 0; i < N; i++) {
         char c = BinaryStdIn.readChar(2);
         BinaryStdOut.write(DNA.toChar(c));
      }
      BinaryStdOut.close();
   }
}
```

`Alphabet` data type converts between symbols { A, C, T, G } and integers 0—3.

read genomic string from stdin; write to stdout using 2-bit code

read 2-bit code from stdin; write genomic string to stdout

Genomic code: test client and sample execution

```
public static void main(String[] args)
{
    if (args[0].equals("-")) compress();
    if (args[0].equals("+")) expand();
}
```

Tiny test case (264 bits)

```
% more genomeTiny.txt
ATAGATGCATAGCGCATAGCTAGATGTGCTAGC

java BitsDump 64 < genomeTiny.txt
0100000101010100010000010100011101000001010101000100011101000011
0100000101010100010000010100011101000011010001110100001101000001
0101010001000001010001110100001101010100010000010100011101000001
0101010001000111010101000100011101000011010101000100000101000111
01000011
264 bits

% java Genome - < genomeTiny.txt
?? ←—— cannot see bitstream on standard output

% java Genome - < genomeTiny.txt | java BinaryDump 64
0000000000000000000000000010000100100011001011010010001101110100
1000110110001100101110110110001101000000
104 bits

% java Genome - < genomeTiny.txt | java HexDump 8
00 00 00 21 23 2d 23 74
8d 8c bb 63 40
104 bits

% java Genome - < genomeTiny.txt | java Genome +
ATAGATGCATAGCGCATAGCTAGATGTGCTAGC ←———————— compress-expand cycle
                                               produces original input
```

- genomic encoding
- **run-length encoding**
- Huffman compression
- LZW compression

Run-length encoding

Simple type of redundancy in a bitstream. Long runs of repeated bits.

0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1

Representation. Use 4-bit counts to represent alternating runs of 0s and 1s: 15 0s, then 7 1s, then 7 0s, then 11 1s.

$$\underbrace{1\,1\,1\,1}_{15}\;\underbrace{0\,1\,1\,1}_{7}\;\underbrace{0\,1\,1\,1}_{7}\;\underbrace{1\,0\,1\,1}_{11} \longleftarrow \text{16 bits (instead of 40)}$$

Q. How many bits to store the counts?

A. We'll use 8.

Q. What to do when run length exceeds max count?

A. If longer than 255, intersperse runs of length 0.

Applications. JPEG, ITU-T T4 Group 3 Fax, ...

Run-length encoding: Java implementation

```
public class RunLength
{
   private final static int R = 256;

   public static void compress()
   {  /* see textbook */  }

   public static void expand()
   {
      boolean b = false;
      while (!BinaryStdIn.isEmpty())
      {
         char run = BinaryStdIn.readChar();
         for (int i = 0; i < run; i++)
            BinaryStdOut.write(b);
         b = !b;
      }
      BinaryStdOut.close();
   }

}
```

read 8-bit count from standard input

write 1 bit to standard output

An application: compress a bitmap

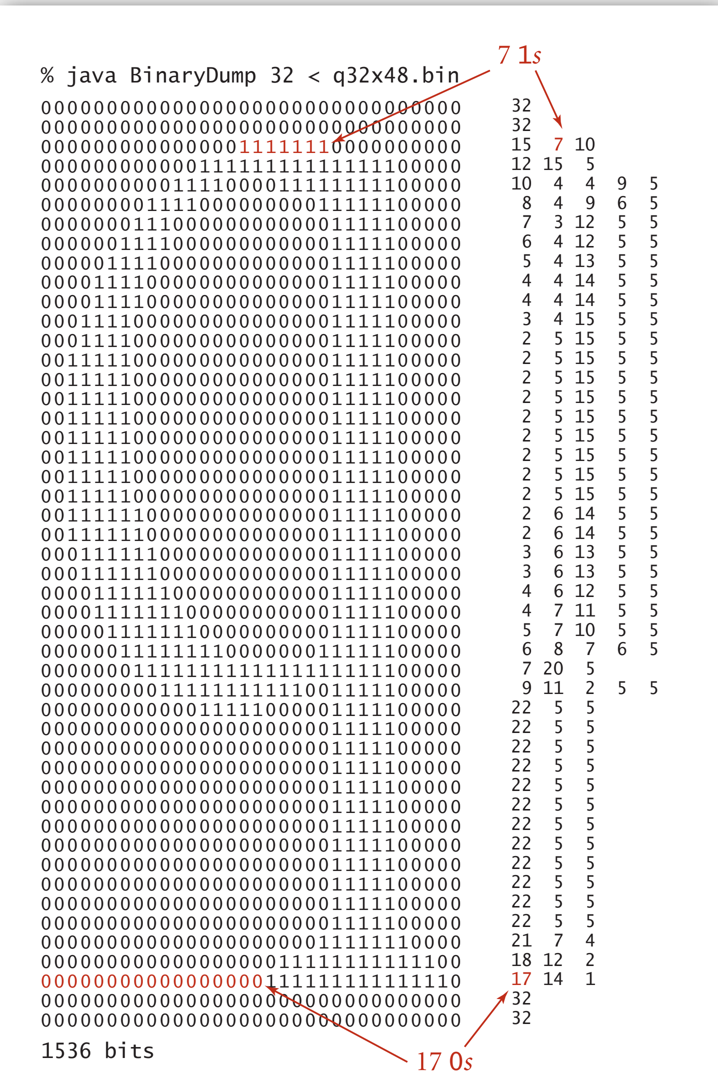
Typical black-and-white-scanned image.

- 300 pixels/inch.
- 8.5-by-11 inches.
- 300 × 8.5 × 300 × 11 = 8.415 million bits.

Observation. Bits are mostly white.

Typical amount of text on a page.

40 lines × 75 chars per line = 3,000 chars.



7 1s

```
% java BinaryDump 32 < q32x48.bin
00000000000000000000000000000000     32
00000000000000000000000000000000     32
00000000000000011111110000000000     15  7 10
00000000000011111111111111100000     12 15  5
00000000001111000011111111100000     10  4  4   9   5
00000000111100000000011111100000      8  4  9   6   5
00000001110000000000001111100000      7  3 12   5   5
00000011110000000000001111100000      6  4 12   5   5
00000111100000000000001111100000      5  4 13   5   5
00001111000000000000001111100000      4  4 14   5   5
00001111000000000000001111100000      4  4 14   5   5
00011110000000000000001111100000      3  4 15   5   5
00011110000000000000001111100000      2  5 15   5   5
00111110000000000000001111100000      2  5 15   5   5
00111110000000000000001111100000      2  5 15   5   5
00111110000000000000001111100000      2  5 15   5   5
00111110000000000000001111100000      2  5 15   5   5
00111110000000000000001111100000      2  5 15   5   5
00111110000000000000001111100000      2  5 15   5   5
00111110000000000000001111100000      2  5 15   5   5
00111110000000000000001111100000      2  5 15   5   5
00111111000000000000001111100000      2  6 14   5   5
00111111000000000000001111100000      2  6 14   5   5
00011111100000000000001111100000      3  6 13   5   5
00011111100000000000001111100000      3  6 13   5   5
00001111110000000000001111100000      4  6 12   5   5
00001111111000000000001111100000      4  7 11   5   5
00000111111100000000001111100000      5  7 10   5   5
00000011111111000000011111100000      6  8  7   6   5
00000001111111111111111111100000      7 20  5
00000000011111111111001111100000      9 11  2   5   5
00000000000011111000001111100000     22  5  5
00000000000000000000001111100000     22  5  5
00000000000000000000001111100000     22  5  5
00000000000000000000001111100000     22  5  5
00000000000000000000001111100000     22  5  5
00000000000000000000001111100000     22  5  5
00000000000000000000001111100000     22  5  5
00000000000000000000001111100000     22  5  5
00000000000000000000001111100000     22  5  5
00000000000000000000001111100000     22  5  5
00000000000000000000001111100000     22  5  5
00000000000000000000001111100000     22  5  5
00000000000000000000011111110000     21  7  4
00000000000000000011111111111100     18 12  2
00000000000000000111111111111110     17 14  1
00000000000000000000000000000000     32
00000000000000000000000000000000     32
1536 bits
```

17 0s

A typical bitmap, with run lengths for each row

- genomic encoding
- run-length encoding
- **Huffman compression**
- LZW compression

Variable-length codes

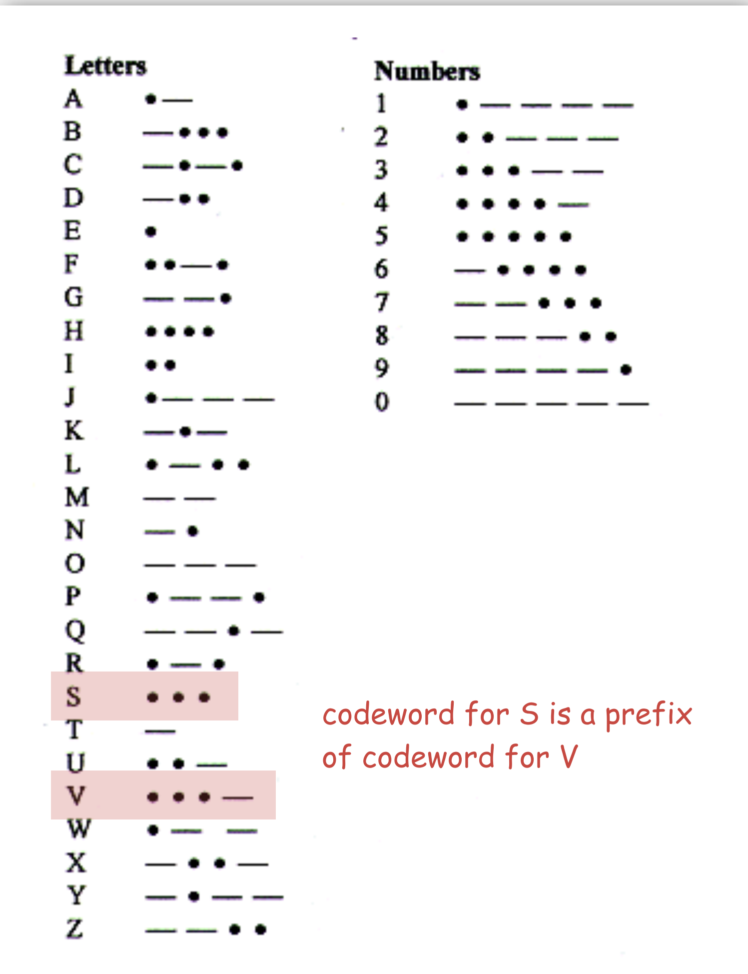
Use different number of bits to encode different chars.

Ex. Morse code: • • • – – – • • •

Issue. Ambiguity.

`SOS ?`
`IAMIE ?`
`EEWNI ?`
`V7 ?`

In practice. Use a medium gap to separate codewords.



Letters		Numbers	
A	•—	1	•————
B	—•••	2	••———
C	—•—•	3	•••——
D	—••	4	••••—
E	•	5	•••••
F	••—•	6	—••••
G	——•	7	——•••
H	••••	8	———••
I	••	9	————•
J	•———	0	—————
K	—•—		
L	•—••		
M	——		
N	—•		
O	———		
P	•——•		
Q	——•—		
R	•—•		
S	•••		
T	—		
U	••—		
V	•••—		
W	•——		
X	—••—		
Y	—•——		
Z	——••		

codeword for S is a prefix of codeword for V

Variable-length codes

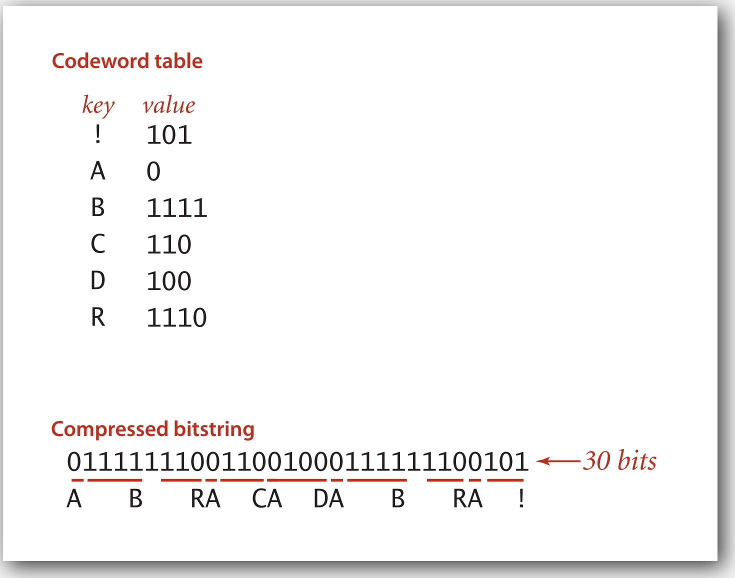
Q. How do we avoid ambiguity?

A. Ensure that no codeword is a prefix of another.

Ex 1. Fixed-length code.

Ex 2. Append special stop char to each codeword.

Ex 3. General prefix-free code.



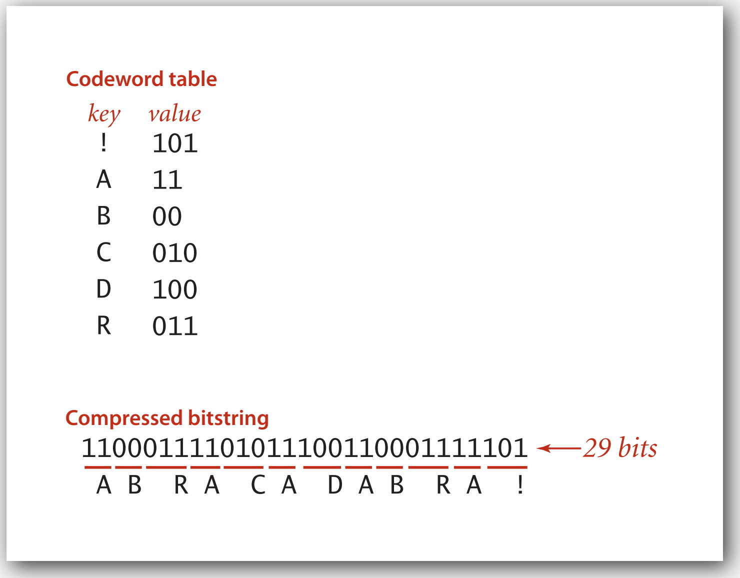
Codeword table

key	value
!	101
A	0
B	1111
C	110
D	100
R	1110

Compressed bitstring

011111110011001000111111100101 ← 30 bits

A B RA CA DA B RA !



Codeword table

key	value
!	101
A	11
B	00
C	010
D	100
R	011

Compressed bitstring

11000111101011100110001111101 ← 29 bits

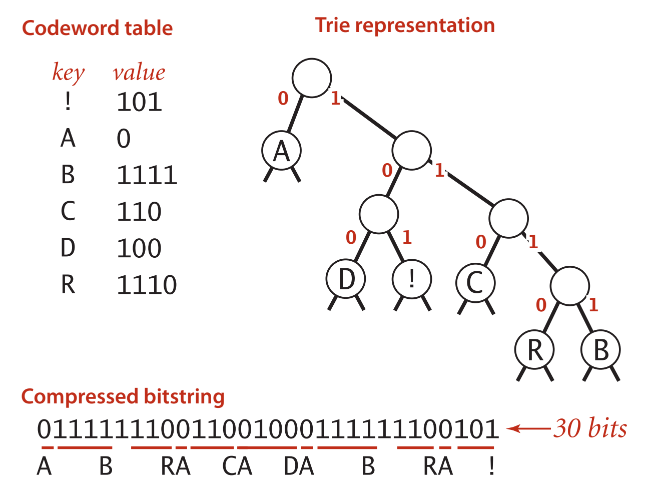
A B R A C A D A B R A !

Prefix-free codes: trie representation

Q. How to represent the prefix-free code?

A. A binary trie!

- Chars in leaves.
- Codeword is path from root to leaf.



Codeword table

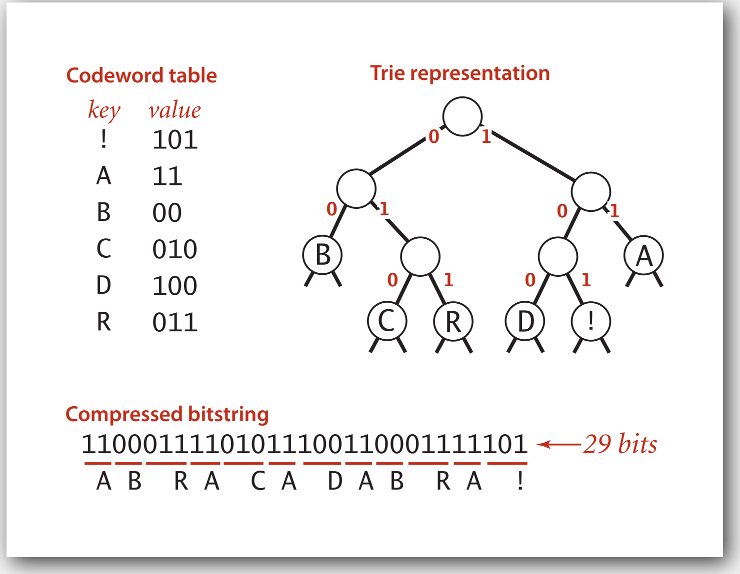
key	*value*
!	101
A	0
B	1111
C	110
D	100
R	1110

Trie representation

Compressed bitstring

011111110011001000111111100101 ← *30 bits*

A B RA CA DA B RA !



Codeword table

key	*value*
!	101
A	11
B	00
C	010
D	100
R	011

Trie representation

Compressed bitstring

11000111101011100110001111101 ← *29 bits*

A B R A C A D A B R A !

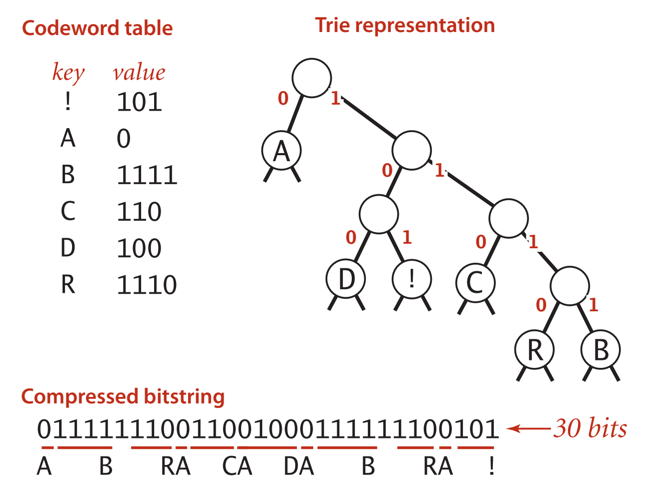
Prefix-free codes: compression and expansion

Compression.

- Method 1: start at leaf; follow path up to the root; print bits in reverse.
- Method 2: create ST of key-value pairs.

Expansion.

- Start at root.
- Go left if bit is 0; go right if 1.
- If leaf node, print char and return to root.



Codeword table

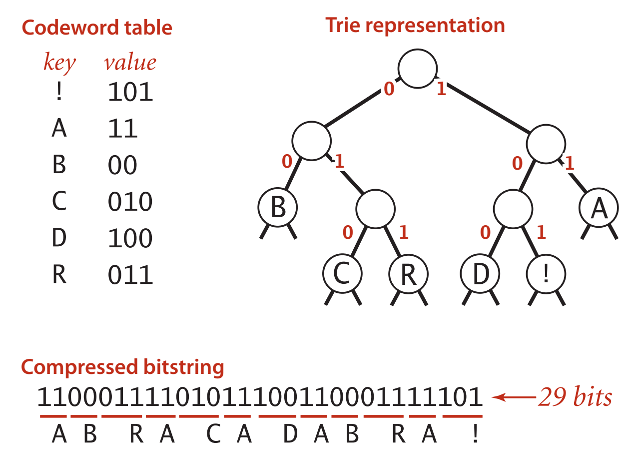
key	*value*
!	101
A	0
B	1111
C	110
D	100
R	1110

Trie representation

Compressed bitstring

011111110011001000111111100101 ← *30 bits*

A B RA CA DA B RA !



Codeword table

key	*value*
!	101
A	11
B	00
C	010
D	100
R	011

Trie representation

Compressed bitstring

11000111101011100110001111101 ← *29 bits*

A B R A C A D A B R A !

Huffman trie node data type

```
private static class Node implements Comparable<Node>
{
   private char ch;   // Unused for internal nodes.
   private int freq;  // Unused for expand.
   private final Node left, right;

   public Node(char ch, int freq, Node left, Node right)
   {
      this.ch    = ch;
      this.freq  = freq;
      this.left  = left;
      this.right = right;
   }

   public boolean isLeaf()
   {  return left == null && right == null; }

   public int compareTo(Node that)
   {  return this.freq - that.freq;  }
}
```

Prefix-free codes: expansion

```
public void expand()
{
   Node root = readTrie();
   int N = BinaryStdIn.readInt();

   for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
   {
      Node x = root;
      while (!x.isLeaf())
      {
         if (BinaryStdIn.readBoolean())
            x = x.left;
         else
            x = x.right;
      }
      BinaryStdOut.write(x.ch);
   }
   BinaryStdOut.close();
}
```

read in encoding trie

read in number of chars

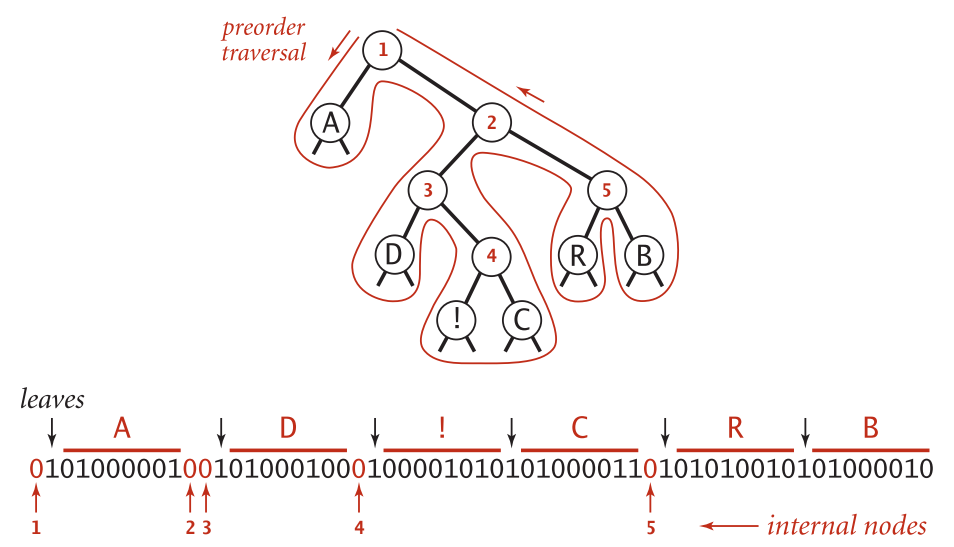
expand codeword for i^{th} char

Running time. Linear in input size (constant amount of work per bit read).

Prefix-free codes: how to transmit

Q. How to write the trie?

A. Write preorder traversal of trie; mark leaf and internal nodes with a bit.



Using preorder traversal to encode a trie as a bitstream

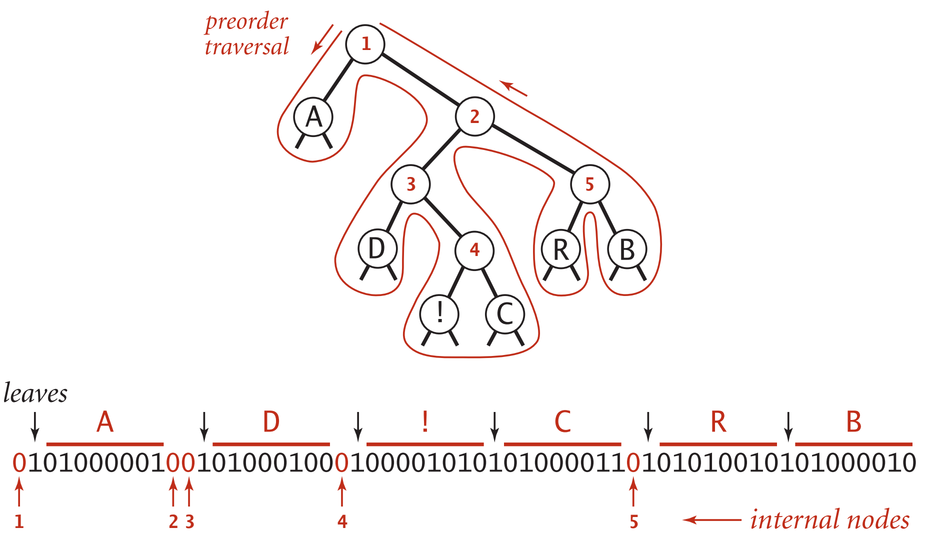
```
private static void writeTrie(Node x)
{
   if (x.isLeaf())
   {
      BinaryStdOut.write(true);
      BinaryStdOut.write(x.ch);
      return;
   }
   BinaryStdOut.write(false);
   writeTrie(x.left);
   writeTrie(x.right);
}
```

Note. If message is long, overhead of transmitting trie is small.

Prefix-free codes: how to transmit

Q. How to read in the trie?

A. Reconstruct from preorder traversal of trie.



Using preorder traversal to encode a trie as a bitstream

```
private static Node readTrie()
{
   if (BinaryStdIn.readBoolean())
   {
      char c = BinaryStdIn.readChar();
      return new Node(c, 0, null, null);
   }
   Node x = readTrie();
   Node y = readTrie();
   return new Node('\0', 0, x, y);
}
```

Huffman codes

Q. How to find best prefix-free code?

A. Huffman algorithm.

David Huffman

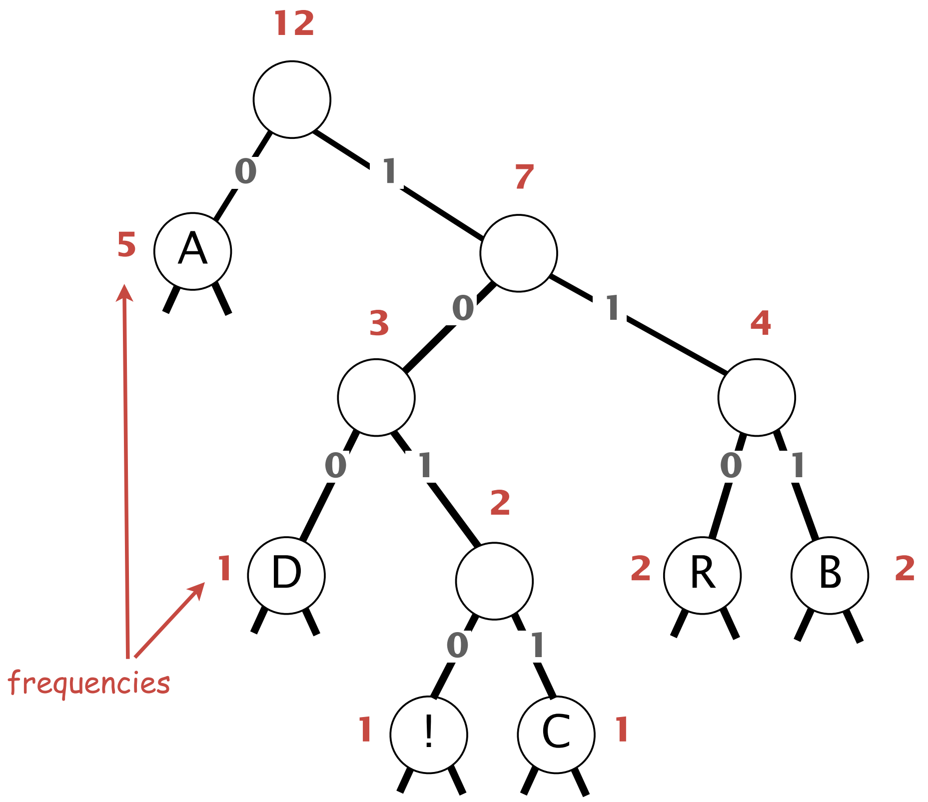
Huffman algorithm (to compute optimal prefix-free code):

- Count frequency `freq[i]` for each char `i` in input.
- Start with one node corresponding to each char `i` (with weight `freq[i]`).
- Repeat until single trie formed:
  - select two tries with min weight `freq[i]` and `freq[j]`
  - merge into single trie with weight `freq[i] + freq[j]`

Applications. JPEG, MP3, MPEG, PKZIP, GZIP, …

Constructing a Huffman encoding trie

char	freq	encoding
A	5	0
B	2	1 1 1
C	1	1 0 1 1
D	1	1 0 0
R	2	1 1 0
!	1	1 0 1 0



Huffman code construction for A B R A C A D A B R A !

Constructing a Huffman encoding trie: Java implementation

```
private static Node buildTrie(int[] freq)
{
    MinPQ<Node> pq = new MinPQ<Node>();
    for (char i = 0; i < R; i++)
       if (freq[i] > 0)
          pq.insert(new Node(i, freq[i], null, null));

    while (pq.size() > 1)
    {
       Node x = pq.delMin();
       Node y = pq.delMin();
       Node parent = new Node('\0', x.freq + y.freq, x, y);
       pq.insert(parent);
    }

    return pq.delMin();
}
```

initialize PQ with singleton tries

merge two smallest tries

not used

total frequency

two subtries

Huffman encoding summary

Proposition. [Huffman 1950s] Huffman algorithm produces an optimal prefix-free code.

no prefix-free code uses fewer bits

Pf. See textbook.

Implementation.

- Pass 1: tabulate char frequencies and build trie.
- Pass 2: encode file by traversing trie or lookup table.

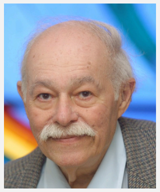
Running time. Using a binary heap ⇒ $O(N + R \log R)$.

input size

alphabet size

Q. Can we do better? [stay tuned]

- genomic encoding
- run-length encoding
- Huffman compression
- **LZW compression**



Abraham Lempel

Jacob Ziv

Statistical methods

Static model. Same model for all texts.

- Fast.
- Not optimal: different texts have different statistical properties.
- Ex: ASCII, Morse code.

Dynamic model. Generate model based on text.

- Preliminary pass needed to generate model.
- Must transmit the model.
- Ex: Huffman code.

Adaptive model. Progressively learn and update model as you read text.

- More accurate modeling produces better compression.
- Decoding must start from beginning.
- Ex: LZW.

Lempel-Ziv-Welch compression example

input	A	B	R	A	C	A	D	A	B	R	A	B	R	A	B	R	A
matches	A	B	R	A	C	A	D	A B		R A		B R		A B R			A
value	41	42	52	41	43	41	44	81		83		82		88			41

LZW compression for ABRACADABRABRABRA

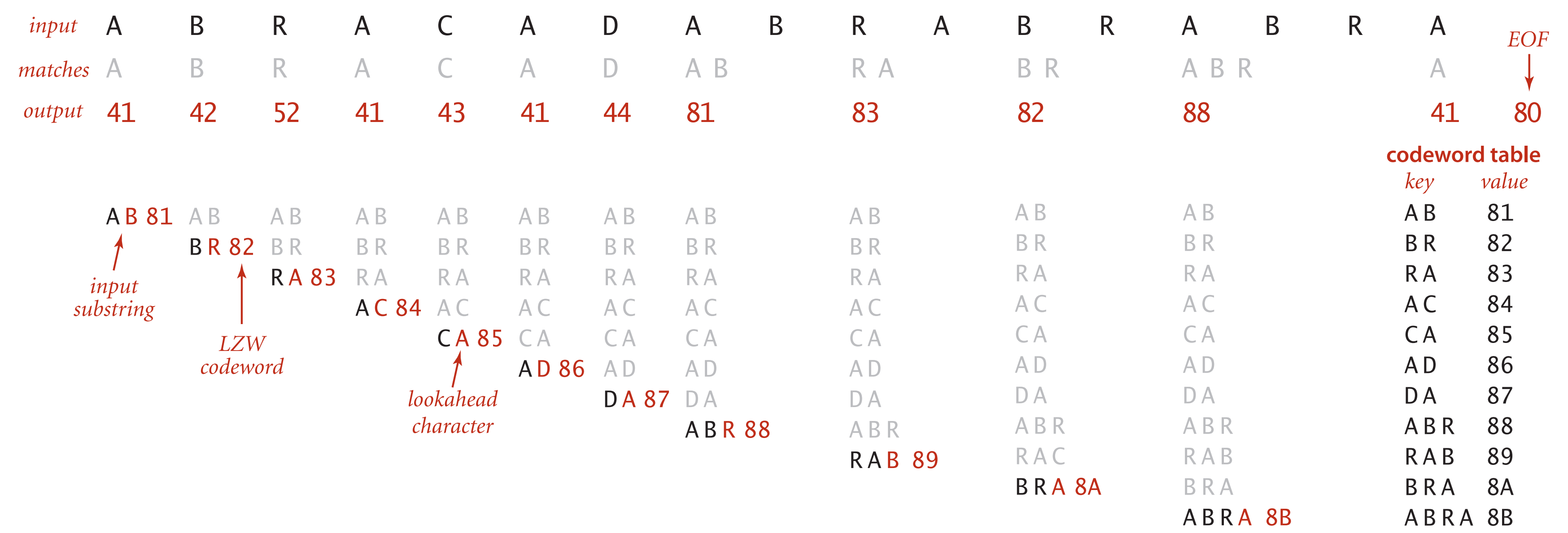
key	value
…	
A	41
B	42
C	43
D	44
…	
AB	81
BR	82
RA	83
AC	84
CA	85
AD	86
DA	87
ABR	88
RAB	89
BRA	8A
ABRA	8B

codeword table

Lempel-Ziv-Welch compression

LZW compression.

- Create ST associating W-bit codewords with string keys.
- Initialize ST with codewords for single-char keys.
- Find longest string s in ST that is a prefix of unscanned part of input.
- Write the W-bit codeword associated with s.
- Add s + c to ST, where c is next char in the input.



input	A	B	R	A	C	A	D	A	B	R	A	B	R	A	B	R	A	EOF
matches	A	B	R	A	C	A	D	A B		R A		B R		A B R			A	
output	41	42	52	41	43	41	44	81		83		82		88			41	80

codeword table

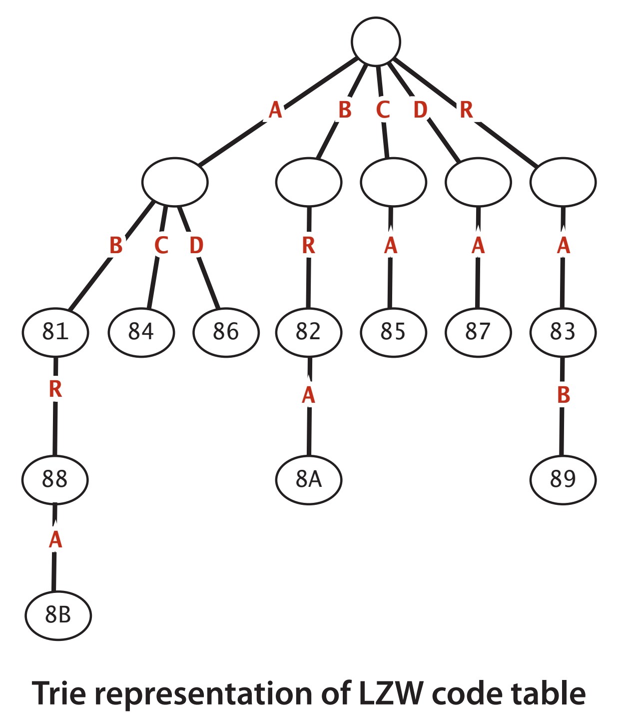
key	*value*
AB	81
BR	82
RA	83
AC	84
CA	85
AD	86
DA	87
ABR	88
RAB	89
BRA	8A
ABRA	8B

LZW compression for ABRACADABRABRABRA

Representation of LZW code table

Q. How to represent LZW code table?

A. A trie: supports efficient longest prefix match.



Trie representation of LZW code table

Remark. Every prefix of a key in encoding table is also in encoding table.

LZW compression: Java implementation

```
public static void compress()
{
  String input = BinaryStdIn.readString();

   TST<Integer> st = new TST<Integer>();
   for (int i = 0; i < R; i++)
       st.put("" + (char) i, i);
   int code = R+1;

   while (input.length() > 0)
   {
      String s = st.longestPrefixOf(input);
      BinaryStdOut.write(st.get(s), W);
      int t = s.length();
      if (t < input.length() && code < L)
          st.put(input.substring(0, t+1), code++);
      input = input.substring(t);
   }

   BinaryStdOut.write(R, W);
   BinaryStdOut.close();
}
```

read in input as a string

codewords for single-char, radix R keys

find longest prefix match s

write W-bit codeword for s

add new codeword

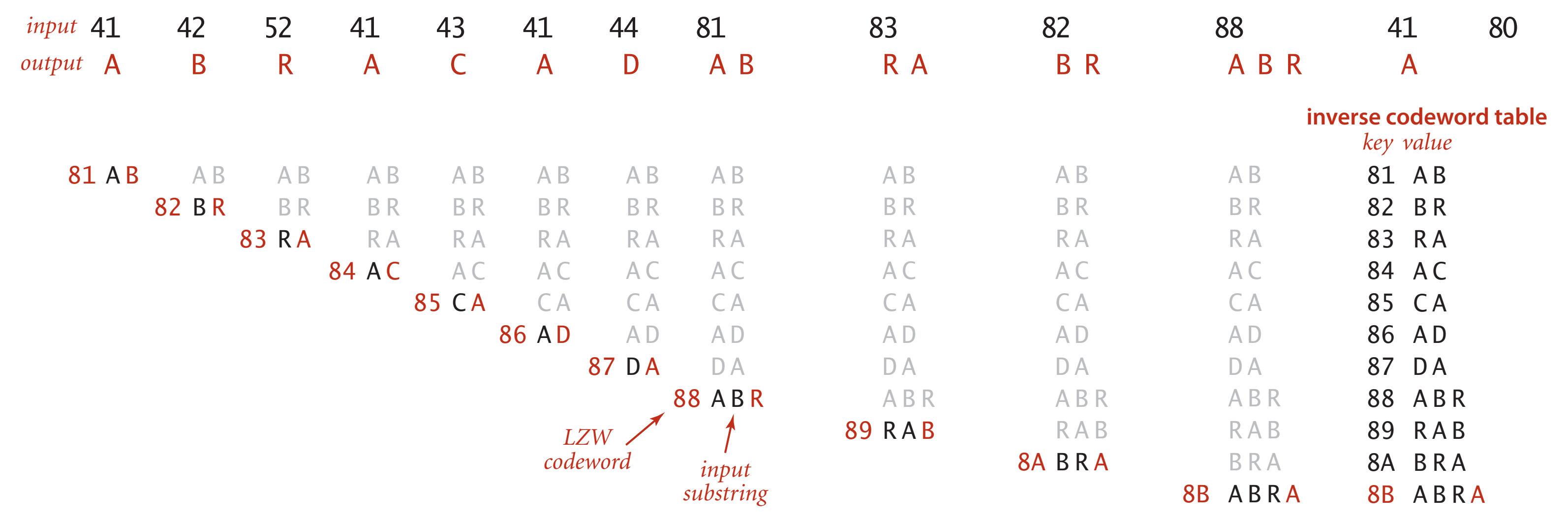
scan past s in input

write last codeword and close input stream

LZW expansion

LZW expansion.

- Create ST associating string values with W-bit keys.
- Initialize ST to contain with single-char values.
- Read a W-bit key.
- Find associated string value in ST and write it out.
- Update ST.



input	41	42	52	41	43	41	44	81	83	82	88	41	80
output	A	B	R	A	C	A	D	A B	R A	B R	A B R	A	

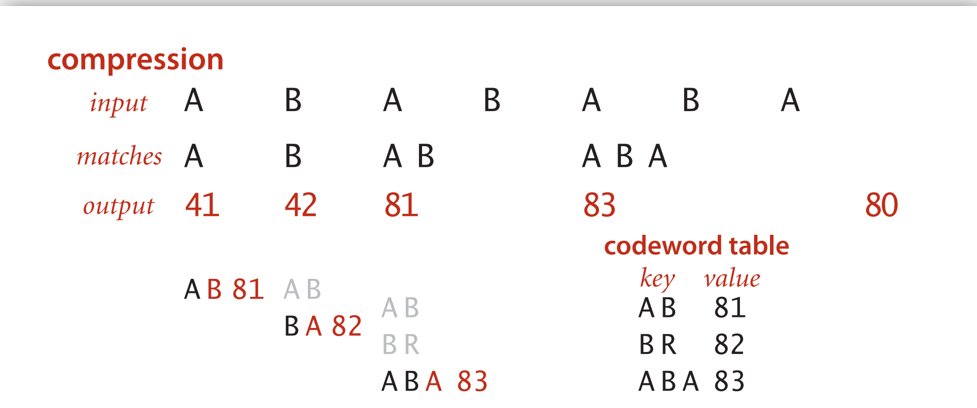
inverse codeword table

key	*value*
81	A B
82	B R
83	R A
84	A C
85	C A
86	A D
87	D A
88	A B R
89	R A B
8A	B R A
8B	A B R A

LZW expansion for 41 42 52 41 43 41 44 81 83 82 88 41 80

LZW expansion: tricky situation

Q. What to do when next codeword is not yet in ST when needed?



compression

input	A	B	A	B	A	B	A	
matches	A	B	A B		A B A			
output	41	42	81		83			80

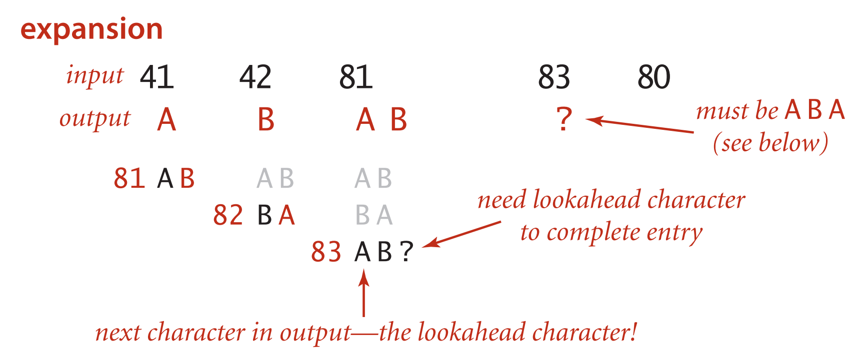
A B 81

A B
B A 82

A B
B R
A B A 83

codeword table

key	*value*
A B	81
B R	82
A B A	83



expansion

input	41	42	81	83	80
output	A	B	A B	?	

must be A B A *(see below)*

81 A B

A B
82 B A

A B
B A
83 A B ?

need lookahead character to complete entry

next character in output—the lookahead character!

LZW implementation details

How big to make ST?

- How long is message?
- Whole message similar model?
- [many variations have been developed]

What to do when ST fills up?

- Throw away and start over. [GIF]
- Throw away when not effective. [Unix compress]
- [many other variations]

Why not put longer substrings in ST?

- [many variations have been developed]

LZW in the real world

Lempel-Ziv and friends.

- LZ77.
- LZ78.
- LZW.
- Deflate = LZ77 variant + Huffman.

LZ77 not patented ⇒ widely used in open source

LZW patent #4,558,302 expired in US on June 20, 2003

some versions copyrighted

PNG: LZ77.

Winzip, gzip, jar: deflate.

Unix compress: LZW.

Pkzip: LZW + Shannon-Fano.

GIF, TIFF, V.42bis modem: LZW.

Google: zlib which is based on deflate.

never expands a file

Lossless data compression benchmarks

year	scheme	bits / char
1967	ASCII	7.00
1950	Huffman	4.70
1977	LZ77	3.94
1984	LZMW	3.32
1987	LZH	3.30
1987	move-to-front	3.24
1987	LZB	3.18
1987	gzip	2.71
1988	PPMC	2.48
1994	SAKDC	2.47
1994	PPM	2.34
1995	Burrows-Wheeler	2.29
1997	BOA	1.99
1999	RK	1.89

← next programming assignment

data compression using Calgary corpus

Data compression summary

Lossless compression.

- Represent fixed-length symbols with variable-length codes. [Huffman]
- Represent variable-length symbols with fixed-length codes. [LZW]

Lossy compression. [not covered in this course]

- JPEG, MPEG, MP3, …
- FFT, wavelets, fractals, …

Theoretical limits on compression. Shannon entropy.

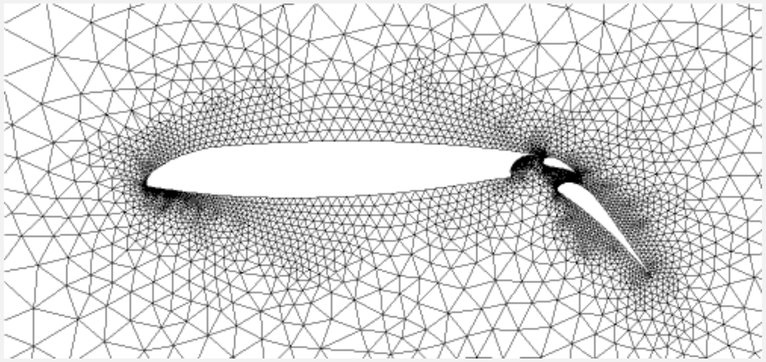
Practical compression. Use extra knowledge whenever possible.

6.1 Geometric Primitives

- primitive operations
- convex hull
- closest pair
- voronoi diagram

Geometric algorithms

Applications.



airflow around an aircraft wing

- Data mining.
- VLSI design.
- Computer vision.
- Mathematical models.
- Astronomical simulation.
- Geographic information systems.
- Computer graphics (movies, games, virtual reality).
- Models of physical world (maps, architecture, medical imaging).

`http://www.ics.uci.edu/~eppstein/geom.html`

History.

- Ancient mathematical foundations.
- Most geometric algorithms less than 25 years old.

- primitive operations
- convex hull
- closest pair
- voronoi diagram

Geometric primitives

Point: two numbers (x, y).

Line: two numbers a and b. [$ax + by = 1$] ← any line not through origin

Line segment: two points.

Polygon: sequence of points.

Primitive operations.

- Is a polygon simple?
- Is a point inside a polygon?
- Do two line segments intersect?
- What is Euclidean distance between two points?
- Given three points p_1, p_2, p_3, is $p_1 \to p_2 \to p_3$ a counterclockwise turn?

Other geometric shapes.

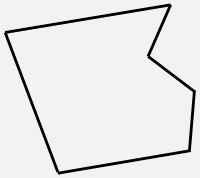
- Triangle, rectangle, circle, sphere, cone, …
- 3D and higher dimensions sometimes more complicated.

Geometric intuition

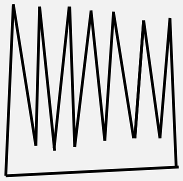
Warning: intuition may be misleading.

- Humans have spatial intuition in 2D and 3D.
- Computers do not.
- Neither has good intuition in higher dimensions!

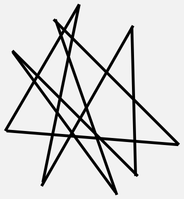
Q. Is a given polygon simple? ← no crossings



x	1	6	5	8	7	2
y	7	8	6	4	2	1



x	1	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2
y	1	2	18	4	18	4	19	4	19	4	20	3	20	2	20



x	1	10	3	7	2	8	8	3	4
y	6	5	15	1	11	3	14	2	16

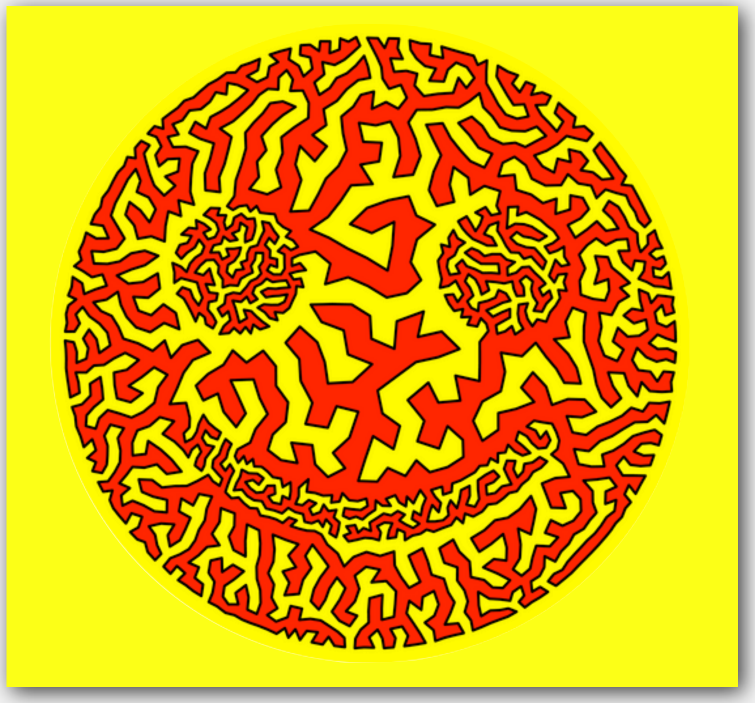
we think of this

algorithm sees this

Polygon inside, outside

Jordan curve theorem. [Jordan 1887, Veblen 1905] Any continuous simple closed curve cuts the plane in exactly two pieces: the inside and the outside.

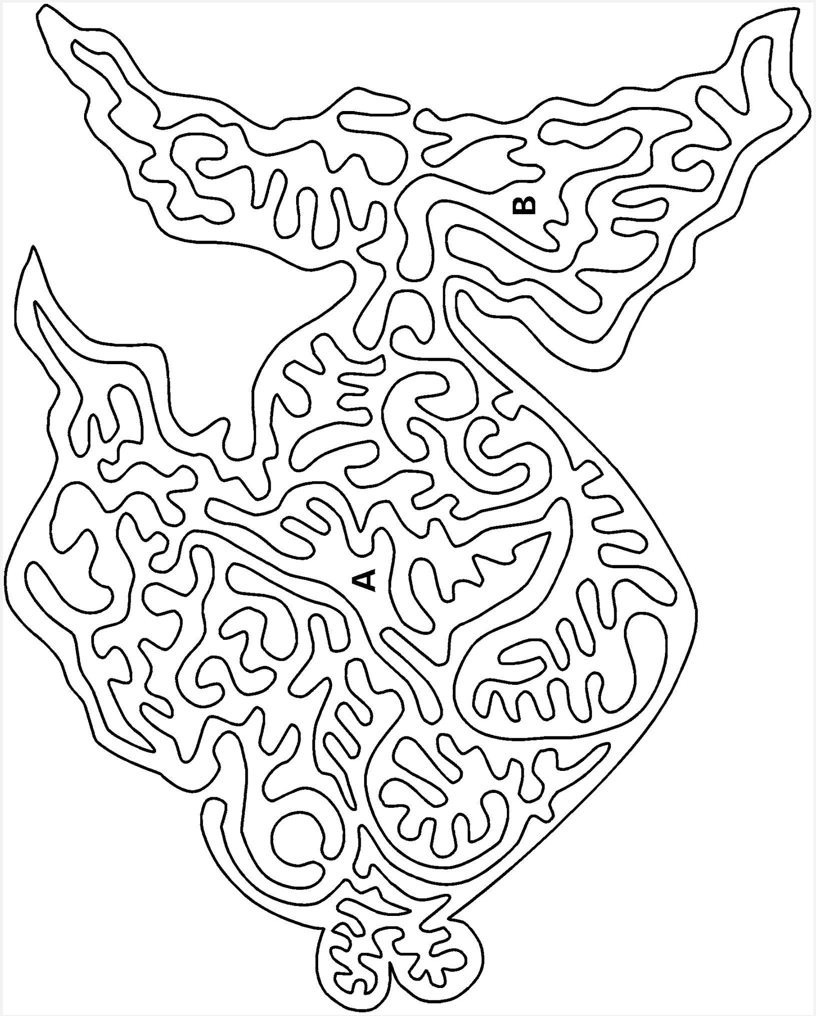
Q. Is a point inside a simple polygon?



Application. Draw a filled polygon on the screen.

Fishy maze

Puzzle. Are A and B inside or outside the maze?

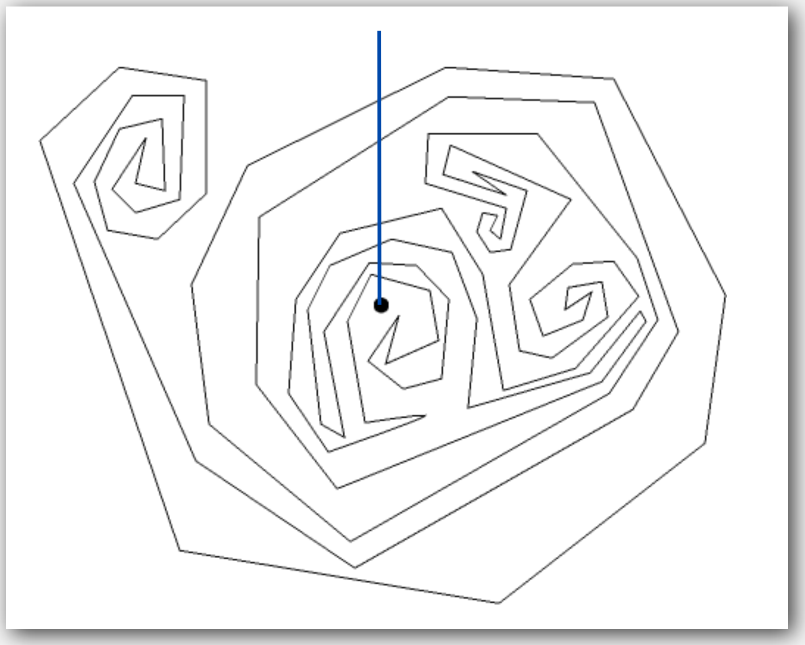


http://britton.disted.camosun.bc.ca/fishmaze.pdf

Polygon inside, outside

Jordan curve theorem. [Jordan 1887, Veblen 1905] Any continuous simple closed curve cuts the plane in exactly two pieces: the inside and the outside.

Q. Is a point inside a simple polygon?



http://www.ics.uci.edu/~eppstein/geom.html

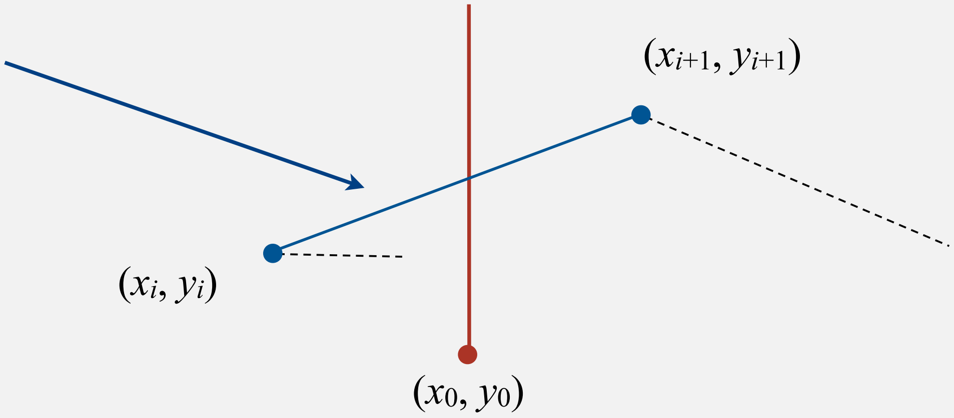
Application. Draw a filled polygon on the screen.

Polygon inside, outside: crossing number

Q. Does line segment intersect ray?

$$y_0 = \frac{y_{i+1} - y_i}{x_{i+1} - x_i} (x_0 - x_i) + y_i$$

$$x_i \le x_0 \le x_{i+1}$$

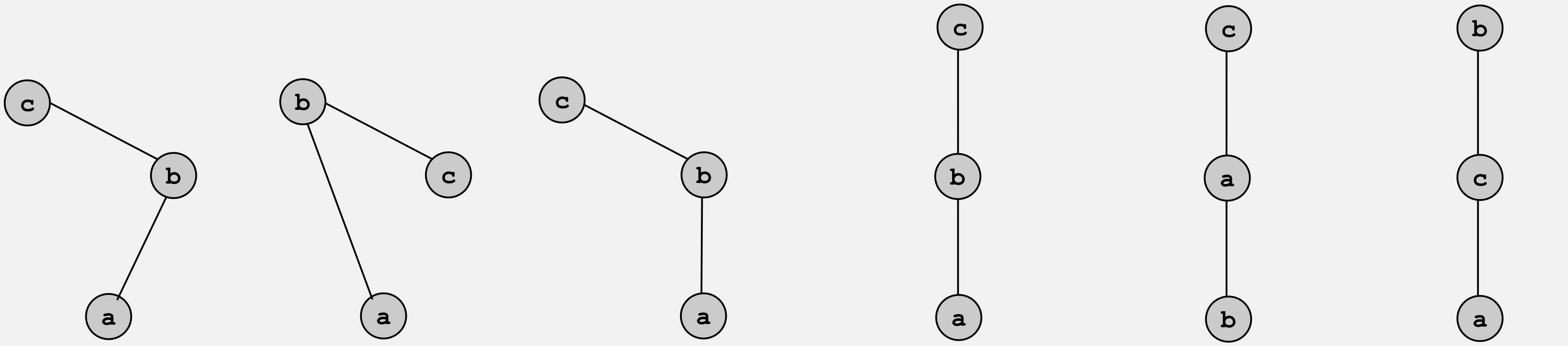


```
public boolean contains(double x0, double y0)
{
    int crossings = 0;
    for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
    {
       double  slope = (y[i+1] - y[i]) / (x[i+1] - x[i]);
       boolean cond1 = (x[i] <= x0) && (x0 < x[i+1]);
       boolean cond2 = (x[i+1] <= x0) && (x0 < x[i]);
       boolean above = (y0 < slope * (x0 - x[i]) + y[i]);
       if ((cond1 || cond2)  && above) crossings++;
    }
    return crossings % 2 != 0;
 }
```

Implementing ccw

CCW. Given three point a, b, and c, is a-b-c a counterclockwise turn?

- Analog of compares in sorting.
- Idea: compare slopes.



yes

no

Yes (∞-slope)

??? (collinear)

??? (collinear)

??? (collinear)

Lesson. Geometric primitives are tricky to implement.

- Dealing with degenerate cases.
- Coping with floating-point precision.

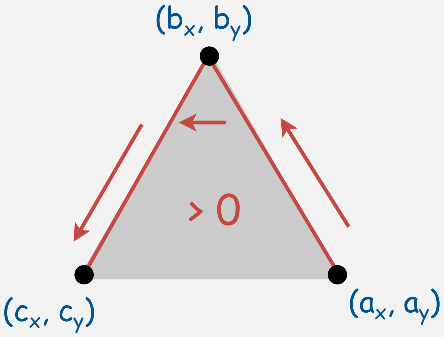
Implementing ccw

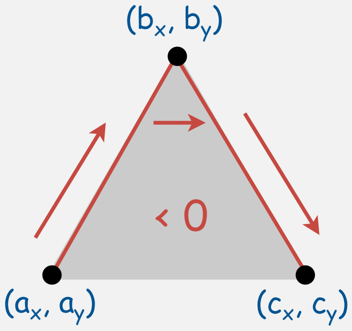
CCW. Given three point a, b, and c, is a→b→c a counterclockwise turn?

- Determinant gives twice signed area of triangle.

$$2 \times Area(a,b,c) = \begin{vmatrix} a_x & a_y & 1 \\ b_x & b_y & 1 \\ c_x & c_y & 1 \end{vmatrix} = (b_x - a_x)(c_y - a_y) - (b_y - a_y)(c_x - a_x)$$

- If area > 0 then a→b→c is counterclockwise.
- If area < 0, then a→b→c is clockwise.
- If area = 0, then a→b→c are collinear.





Immutable point data type

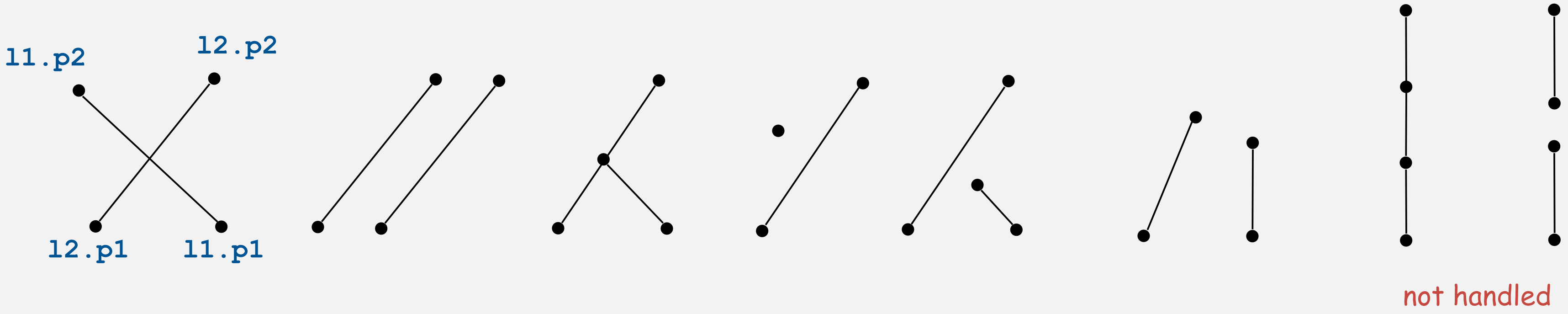
```
public class Point
{
   private final int x;
   private final int y;

   public Point(int x, int y)
   {  this.x = x; this.y = y;   }

   public double distanceTo(Point that)
   {
      double dx = this.x - that.x;
      double dy = this.y - that.y;
      return Math.sqrt(dx*dx + dy*dy);
   }

   public static int ccw(Point a, Point b, Point c)
   {
      int area2 = (b.x-a.x)*(c.y-a.y) - (b.y-a.y)*(c.x-a.x);
      if      (area2 < 0) return -1;
      else if (area2 > 0) return +1;
      else                return  0;
   }

   public static boolean collinear(Point a, Point b, Point c)
   {  return ccw(a, b, c) == 0;   }
}
```

cast to `long` to avoid overflowing an `int`

Sample ccw client: line intersection

Intersect. Given two line segments, do they intersect?

- Idea 1: find intersection point using algebra and check.
- Idea 2: check if the endpoints of one line segment are on different "sides" of the other line segment (4 calls to ccw).



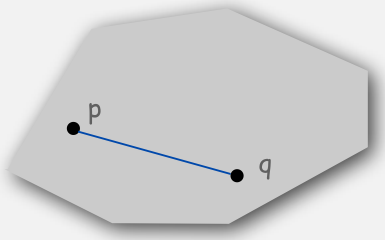
```
public static boolean intersect(LineSegment l1, LineSegment l2)
{
   int test1 = Point.ccw(l1.p1, l1.p2, l2.p1) * Point.ccw(l1.p1, l1.p2, l2.p2);
   int test2 = Point.ccw(l2.p1, l2.p2, l1.p1) * Point.ccw(l2.p1, l2.p2, l1.p2);
   return (test1 <= 0) && (test2 <= 0);
}
```

- primitive operations
- **convex hull**
- closest pair
- voronoi diagram

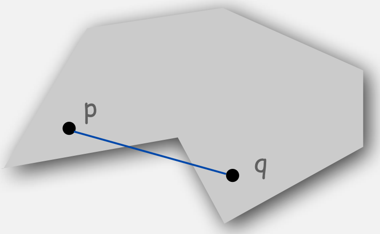
Convex hull

A set of points is convex if for any two points p and q in the set, the line segment $\overline{pq}$ is completely in the set.

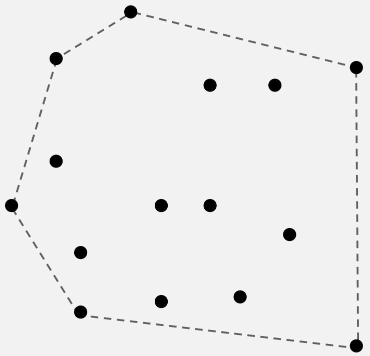
Convex hull. Smallest convex set containing all the points.



convex



not convex



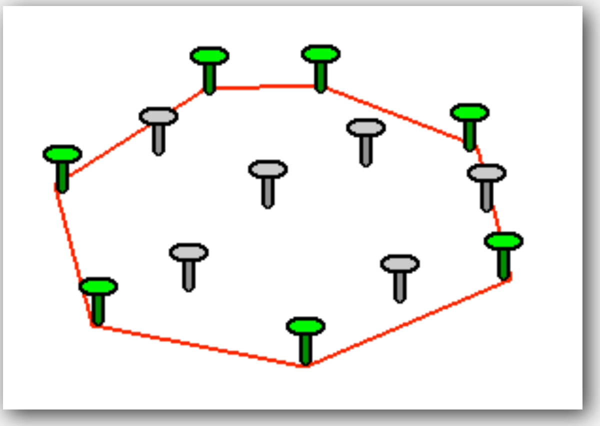
convex hull

Properties.

- "Simplest" shape that approximates set of points.
- Shortest perimeter fence surrounding the points.
- Smallest area convex polygon enclosing the points.

Mechanical solution

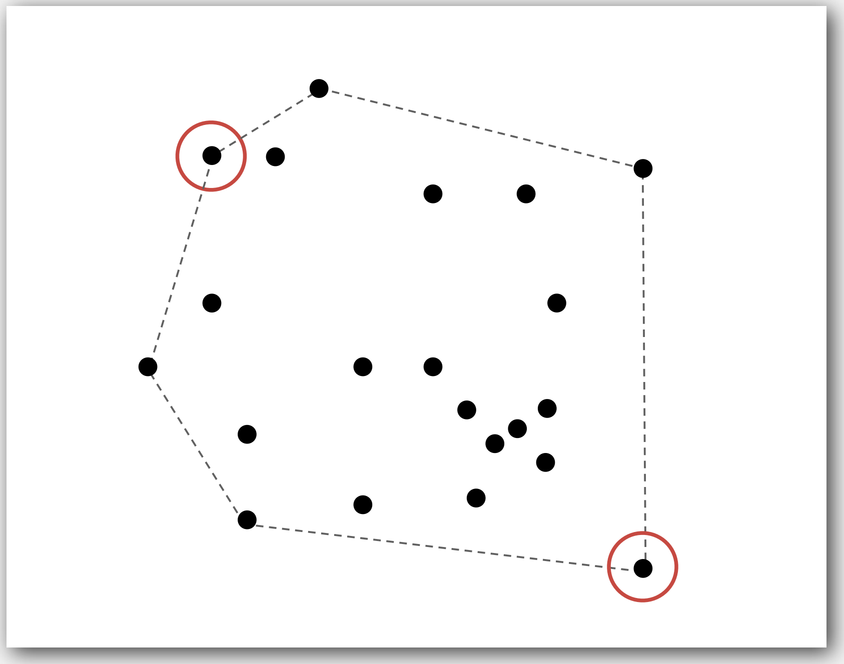
Mechanical convex hull algorithm. Hammer nails perpendicular to plane; stretch elastic rubber band around points.



http://www.dfanning.com/math_tips/convexhull_1.gif

An application: farthest pair

Farthest pair problem. Given N points in the plane, find a pair of points with the largest Euclidean distance between them.



Fact. Farthest pair of points are on convex hull.

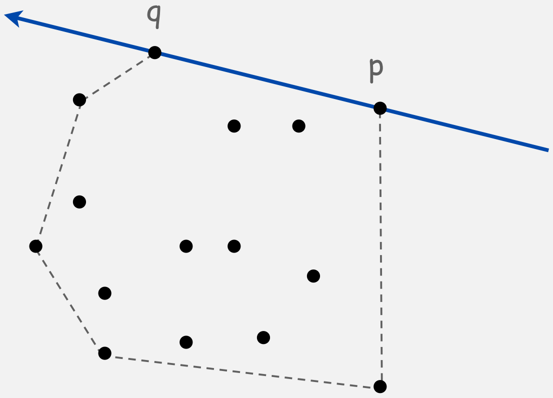
Brute-force algorithm

Observation 1.

Edges of convex hull of P connect pairs of points in P.

Observation 2.

p-q is on convex hull if all other points are counterclockwise of $\overrightarrow{pq}$.



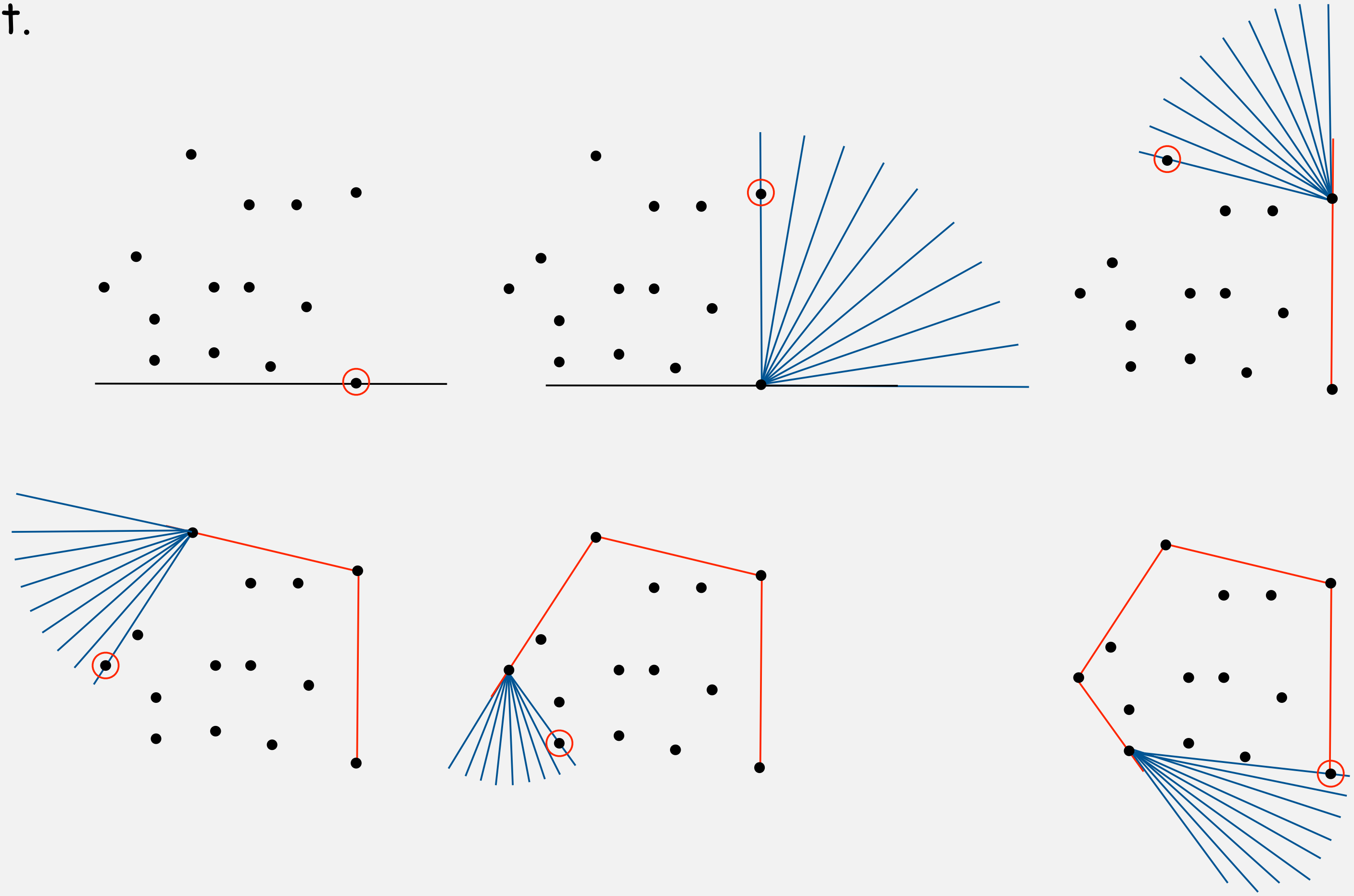
O(N^3) algorithm. For all pairs of points p and q:

- Compute `ccw(p, q, x)` for all other points `x`.
- p-q is on hull if all values are positive.

Package wrap (Jarvis march)

Package wrap.

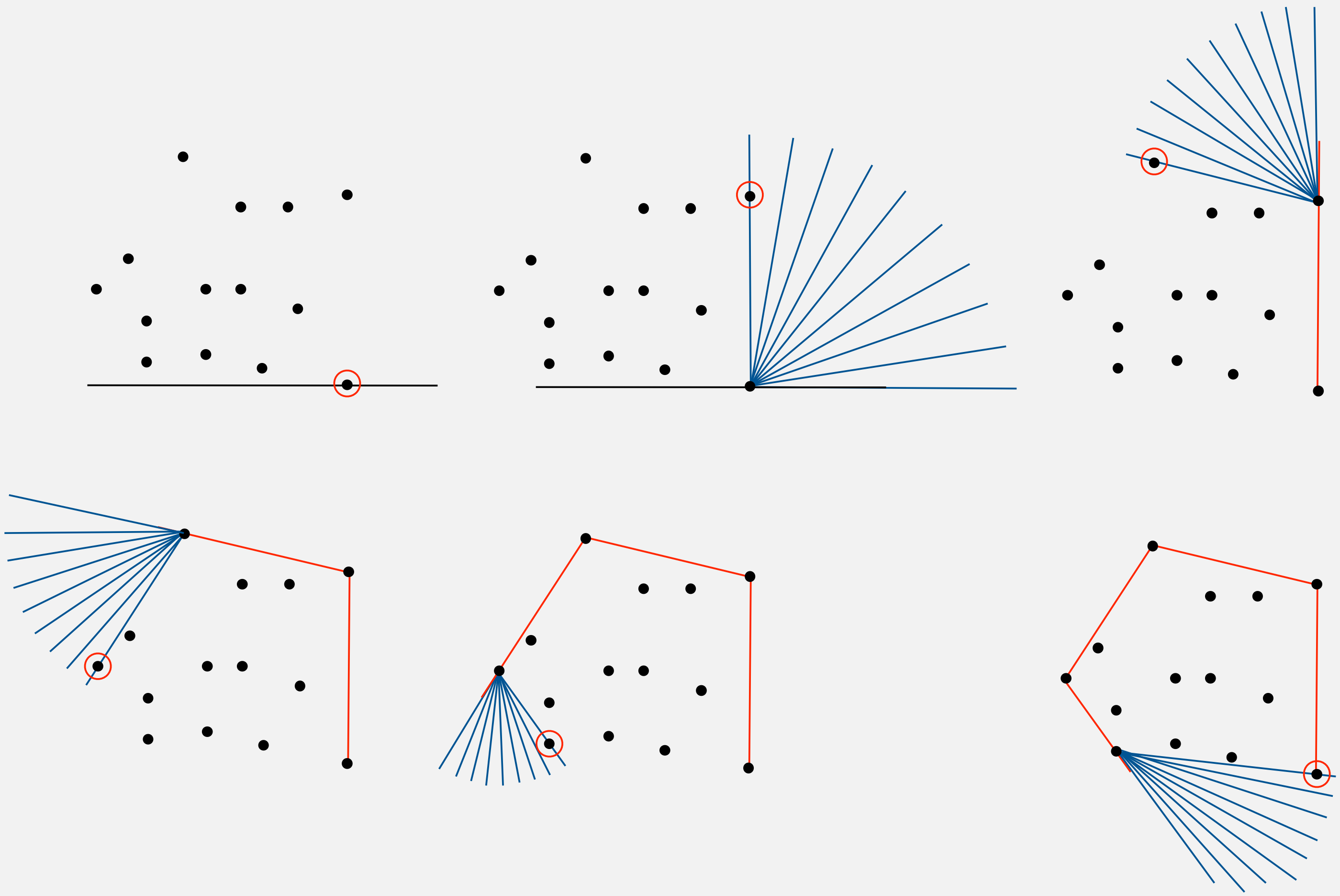
- Start with point with smallest (or largest) y-coordinate.
- Rotate sweep line around current point in ccw direction.
- First point hit is on the hull.
- Repeat.



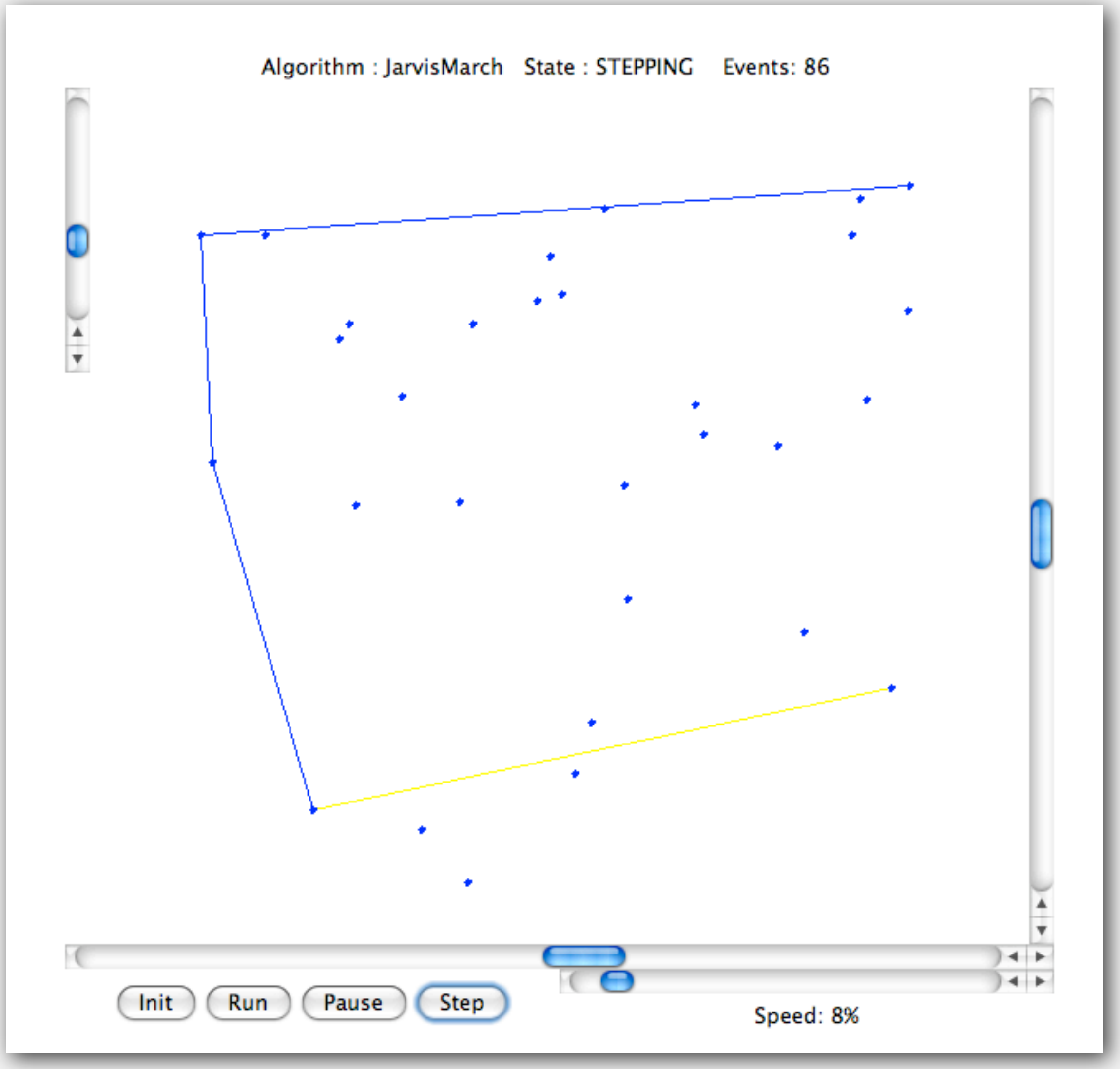
Package wrap (Jarvis march)

Implementation.

- Compute angle between current point and all remaining points.
- Pick smallest angle larger than current angle.
- Θ(N) per iteration.

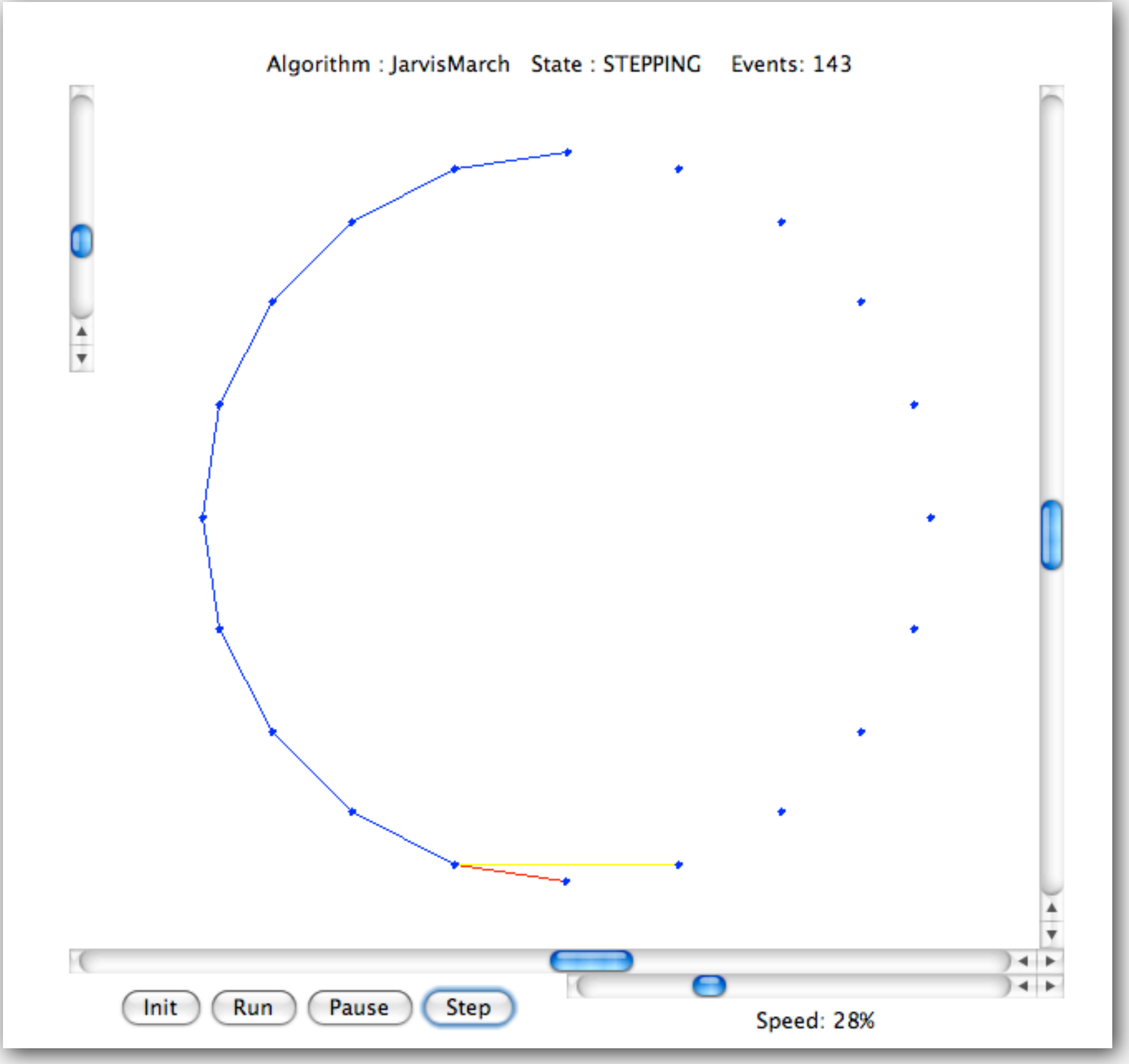


Jarvis march: demo



http://www.cs.princeton.edu/courses/archive/fall08/cos226/demo/ah/JarvisMarch.html

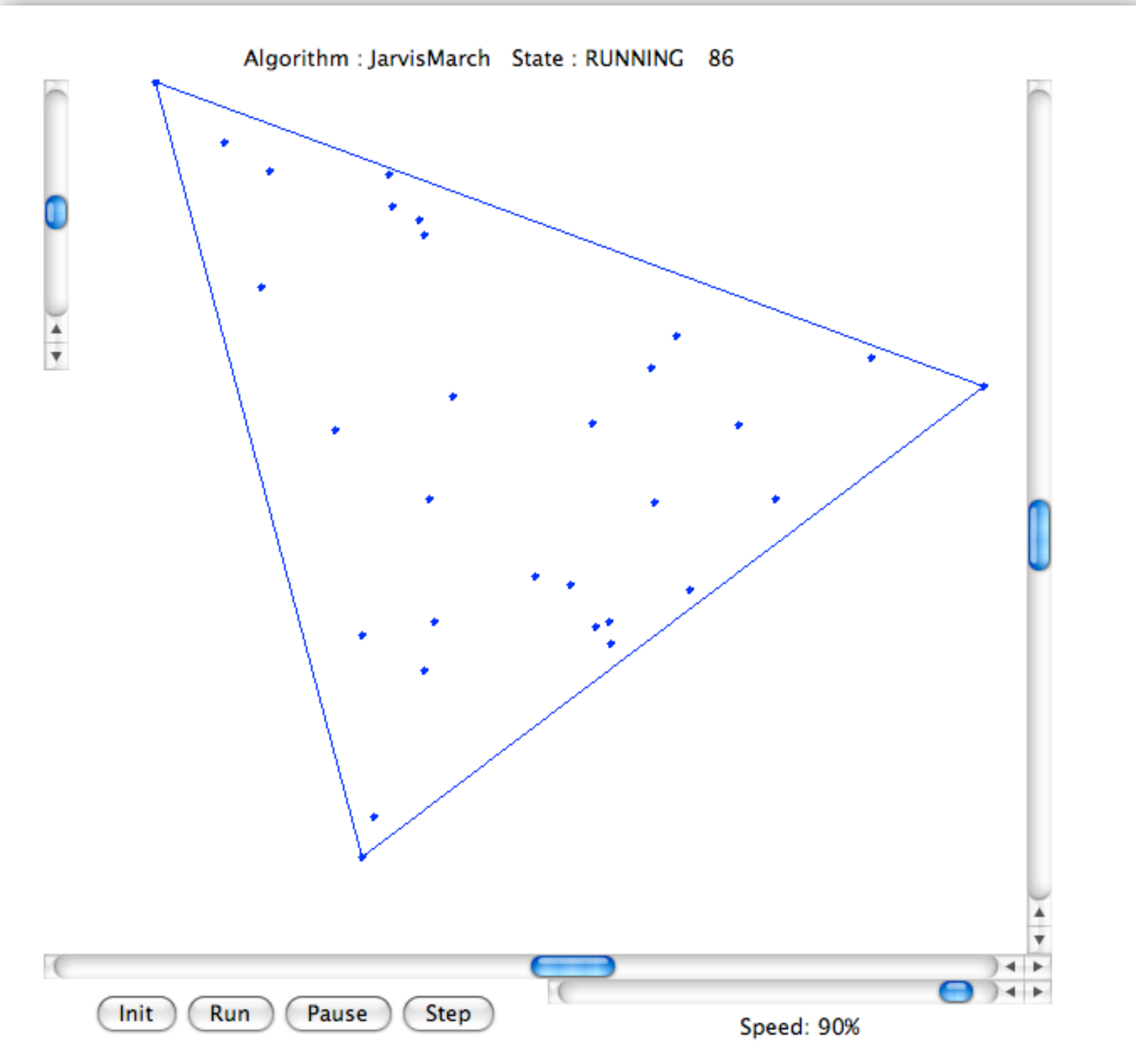
Jarvis march: demo



Algorithm : JarvisMarch State : STEPPING Events: 143

http://www.cs.princeton.edu/courses/archive/fall08/cos226/demo/ah/JarvisMarch.html

Jarvis march: demo



Algorithm : JarvisMarch State : RUNNING 86

Speed: 90%

http://www.cs.princeton.edu/courses/archive/fall08/cos226/demo/ah/JarvisMarch.html

How many points on the hull?

Parameters.

- N = number of points.
- h = number of points on the hull.

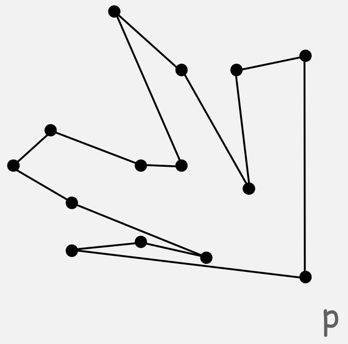
Package wrap running time. $\Theta(N\,h)$.

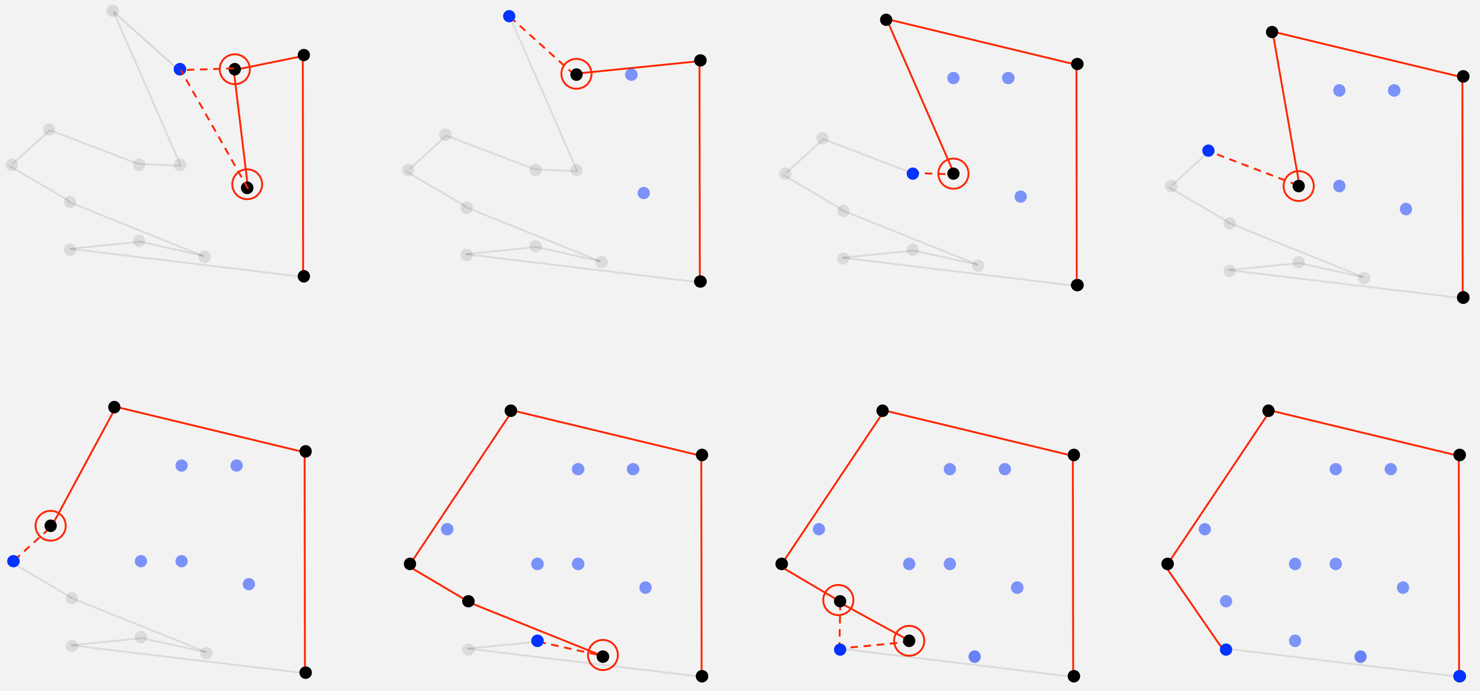
How many points on hull?

- Worst case: h = N.
- Average case: difficult problems in stochastic geometry.
  - uniformly at random in a disc: $h = N^{1/3}$
  - uniformly at random in a convex polygon with O(1) edges: h = log N

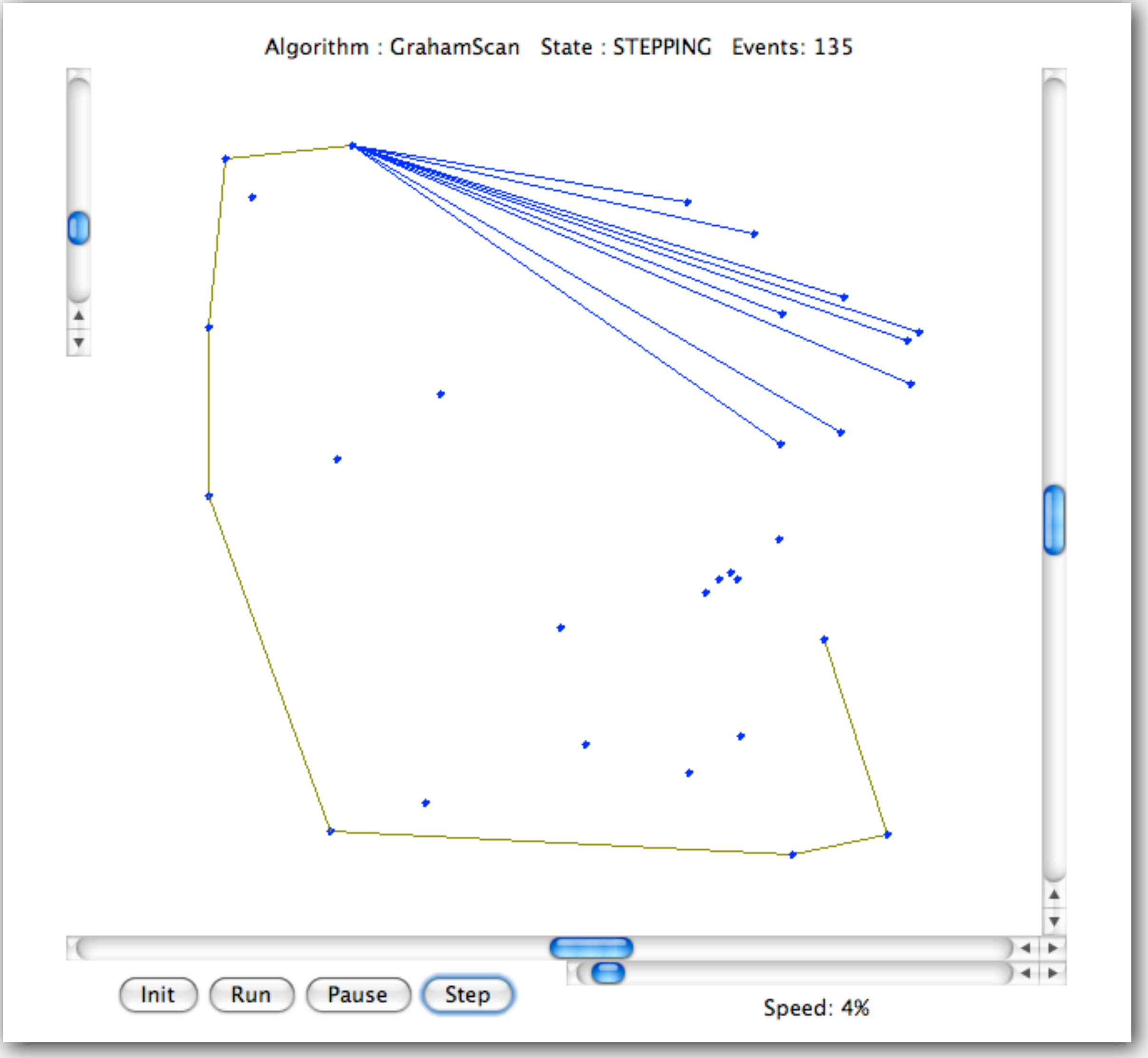
Graham scan.

- Choose point p with smallest (or largest) y-coordinate.
- Sort points by polar angle with p to get simple polygon.
- Consider points in order, and discard those that would create a clockwise turn.





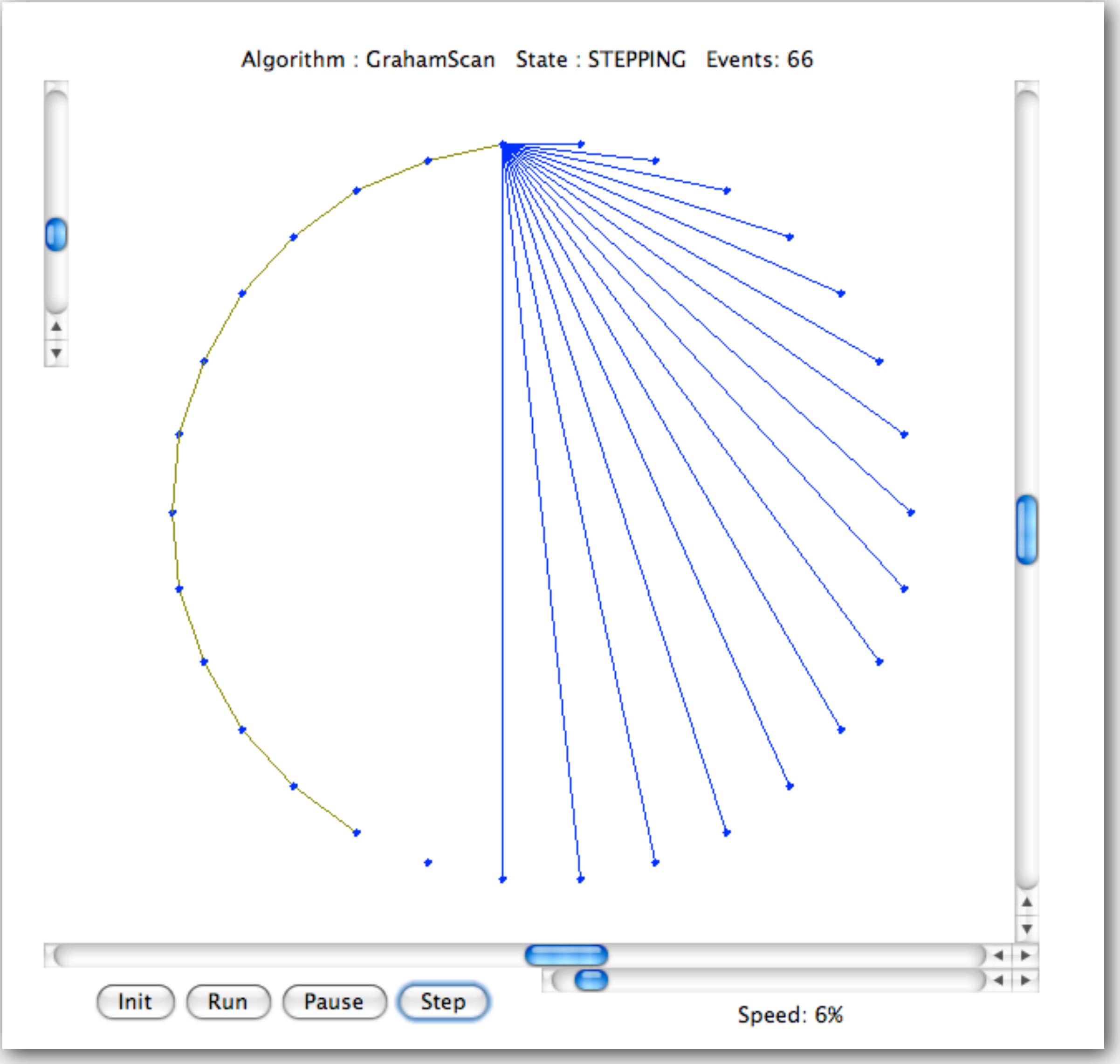
Graham scan: demo



Algorithm : GrahamScan State : STEPPING Events: 135

http://www.cs.princeton.edu/courses/archive/fall08/cos226/demo/ah/GrahamScan.html

Graham scan: demo


Algorithm : GrahamScan State : STEPPING Events: 66

http://www.cs.princeton.edu/courses/archive/fall08/cos226/demo/ah/GrahamScan.html

Graham scan: implementation

Implementation.

- Input: `p[1]`, `p[2]`, …, `p[N]` are distinct points.
- Output: `M` and rearrangement so that `p[1]`, `p[2]`, …, `p[M]` is convex hull.

```
// preprocess so that p[1] has smallest y-coordinate
// sort by polar angle with respect to p[1]

p[0] = p[N];  // sentinel
int M = 2;
for (int i = 3; i <= N; i++)
{
   while (Point.ccw(p[M-1], p[M], p[i]) <= 0)
      M--;
   M++;
   swap(p, M, i);
}
```

add i to putative hull

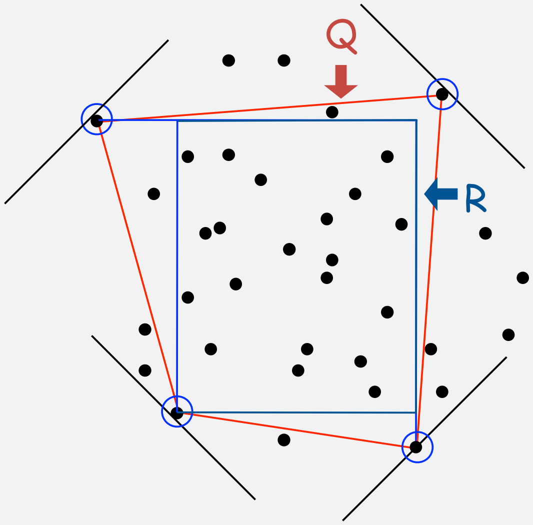
discard points that would create clockwise turn

Running time. O(N log N) for sort and $\overbrace{\text{O(N) for rest}}^{\text{why?}}$.

Quick elimination

Quick elimination.

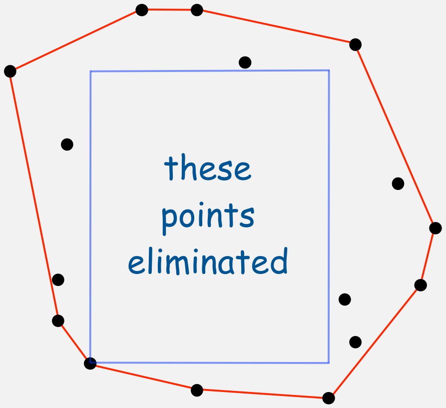
- Choose a quadrilateral Q or rectangle R with 4 points as corners.
- Any point inside cannot be on hull.
  - 4 ccw tests for quadrilateral
  - 4 compares for rectangle



Three-phase algorithm.

- Pass through all points to compute R.
- Eliminate points inside R.
- Find convex hull of remaining points.

In practice. Eliminates almost all points in linear time.



Convex hull algorithms costs summary

Asymptotic cost to find h-point hull in N-point set.

algorithm	running time
package wrap	N h
Graham scan	N log N
quickhull	N log N
mergehull	N log N
sweep line	N log N
quick elimination	N †
marriage-before-conquest	N log h

← output sensitive (package wrap)

← output sensitive (marriage-before-conquest)

† assumes "reasonable" point distribution

Convex hull: lower bound

Models of computation.

- Compare-based: compare coordinates.
  (impossible to compute convex hull in this model of computation)

```
(a.x < b.x) || ((a.x == b.x) && (a.y < b.y)))
```

- Quadratic decision tree model: compute any quadratic function of the coordinates and compare against 0.

```
(a.x*b.y - a.y*b.x + a.y*c.x - a.x*c.y + b.x*c.y - c.x*b.y) < 0
```

higher constant-degree polynomial tests
don't help either [Ben-Or, 1983]

Proposition. [Andy Yao, 1981] In quadratic decision tree model, any convex hull algorithm requires Ω(N log N) ops.

even if hull points are not required to be
output in counterclockwise order

- primitive operations
- convex hull
- **closest pair**
- voronoi diagram

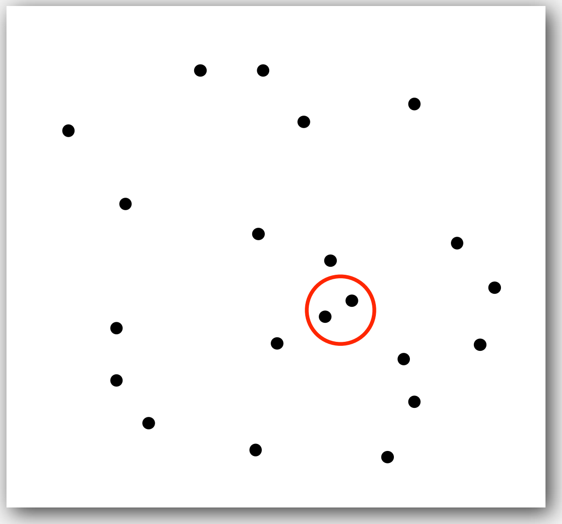
Closest pair

Closest pair problem. Given N points in the plane, find a pair of points with the smallest Euclidean distance between them.

Fundamental geometric primitive.

- Graphics, computer vision, geographic information systems, molecular modeling, air traffic control.
- Special case of nearest neighbor, Euclidean MST, Voronoi.

fast closest pair inspired fast algorithms for these problems



Closest pair

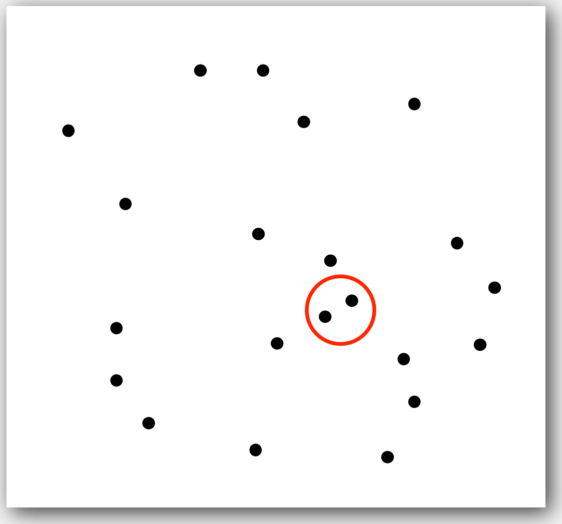
Closest pair problem. Given N points in the plane, find a pair of points with the smallest Euclidean distance between them.

Brute force. Check all pairs with N^2 distance calculations.

1-D version. Easy N log N algorithm if points are on a line.

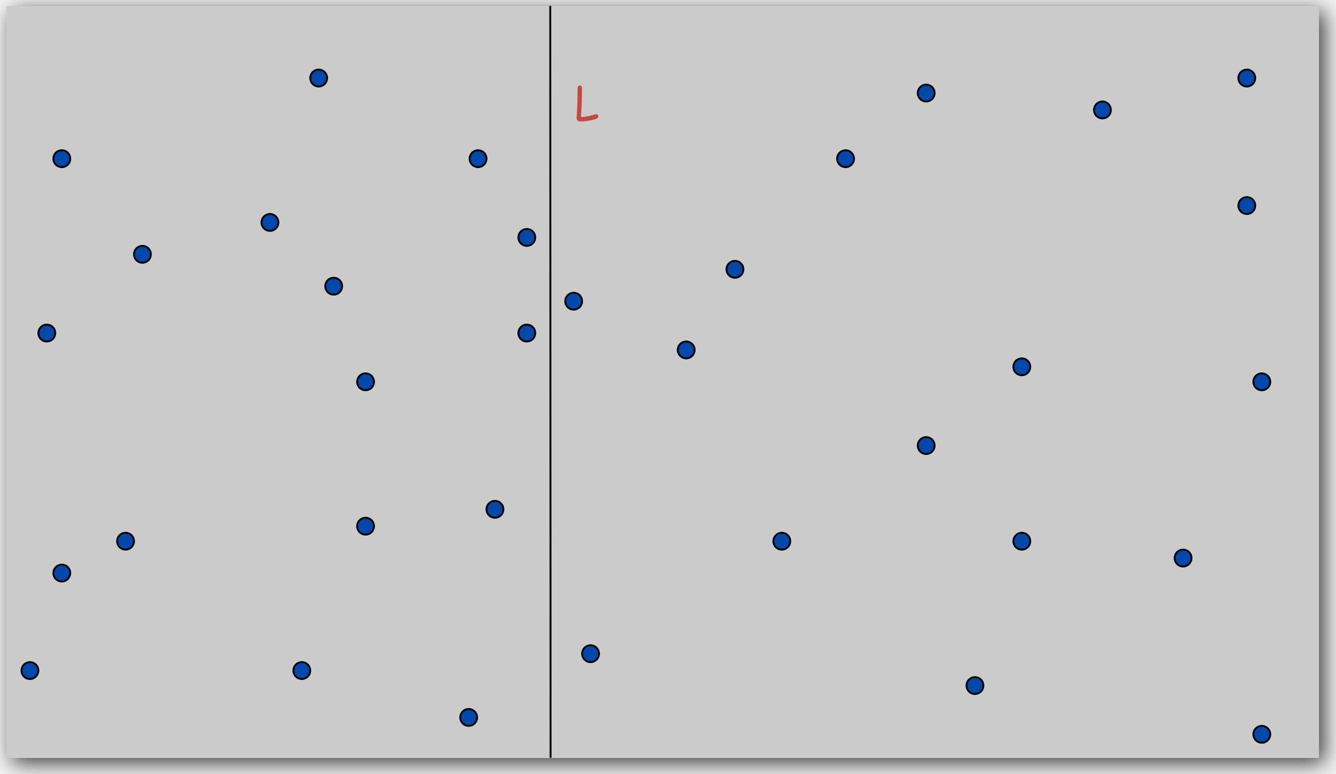
Degeneracies complicate solutions.

[assumption for lecture: no two points have same x-coordinate]



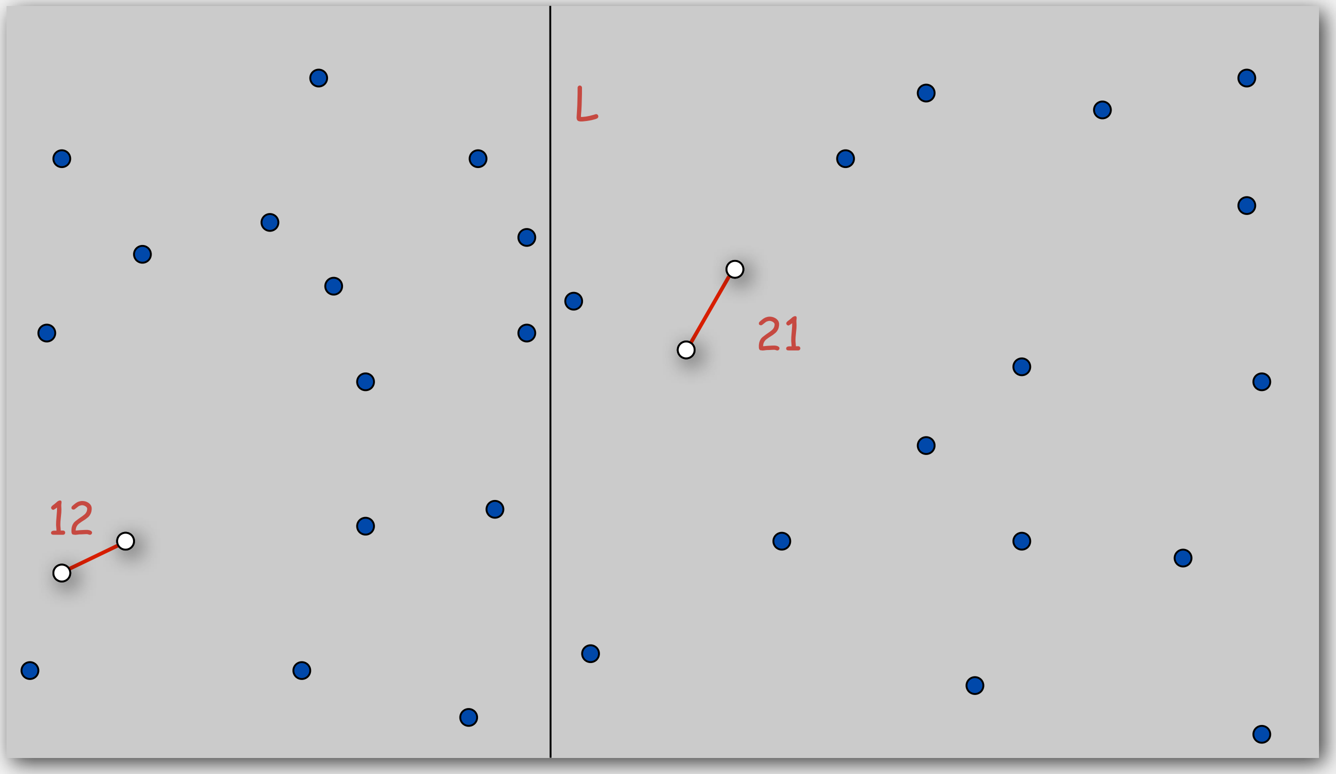
Divide-and-conquer algorithm

- **Divide**: draw vertical line L so that ~ ½N points on each side.



Divide-and-conquer algorithm

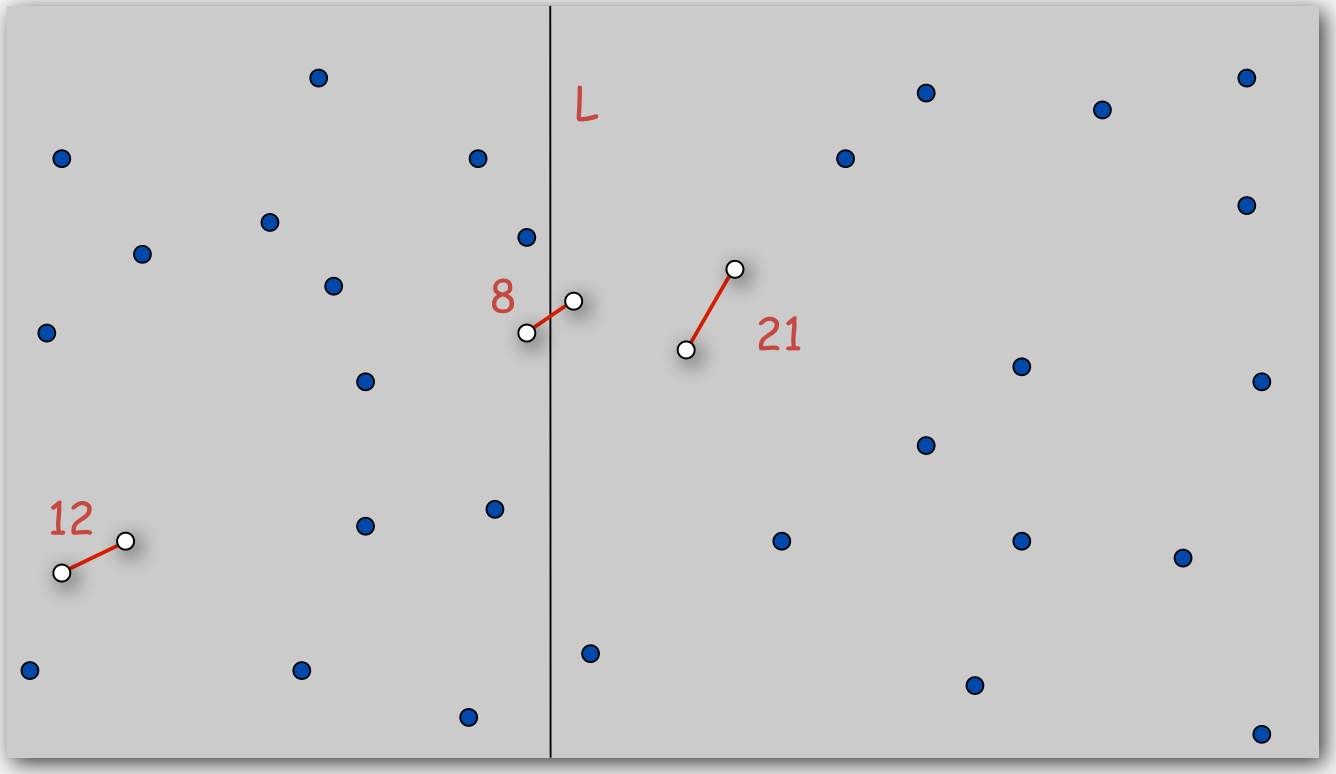
- Divide: draw vertical line L so that ~ $\frac{1}{2}$N points on each side.
- Conquer: find closest pair in each side recursively.



Divide-and-conquer algorithm

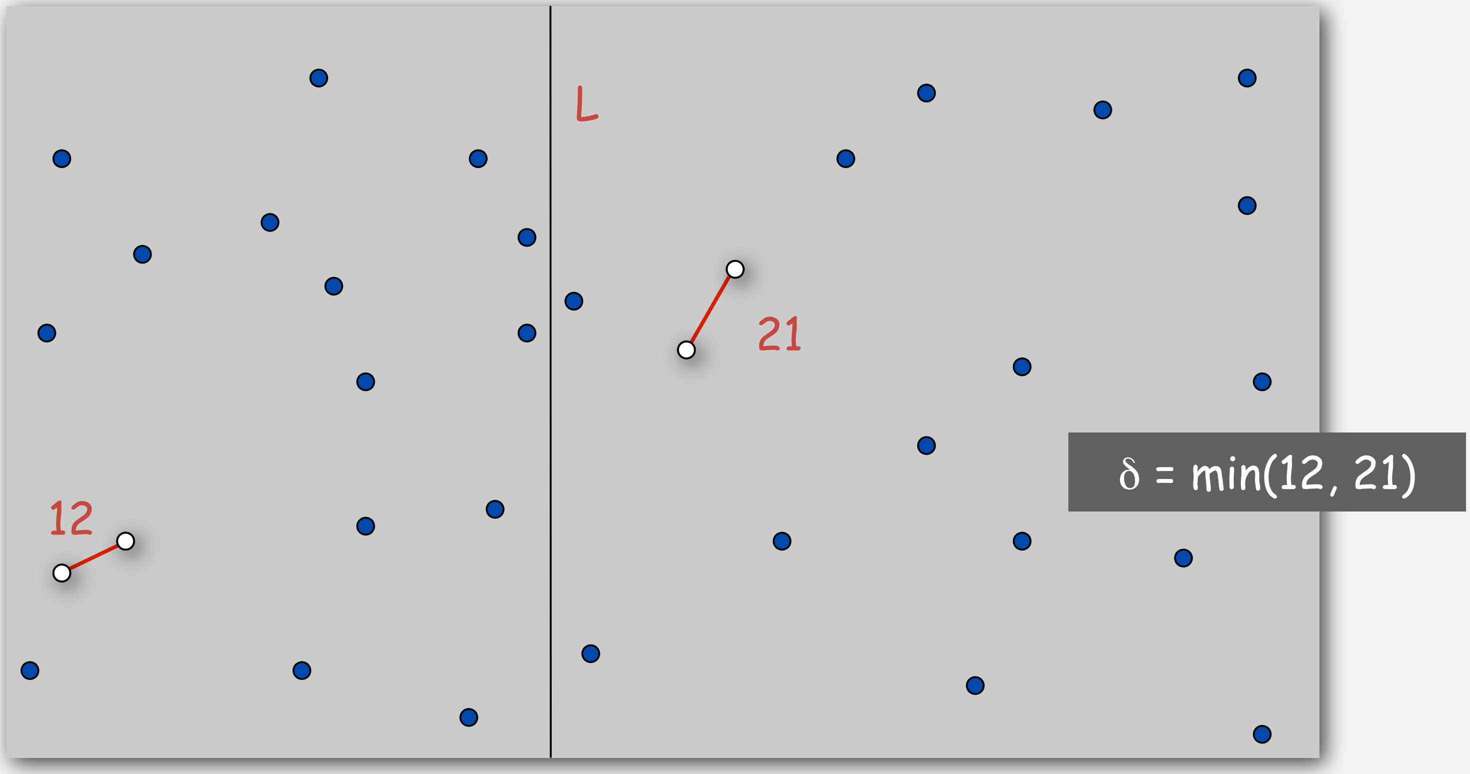
- Divide: draw vertical line L so that ~ $\frac{1}{2}$N points on each side.
- Conquer: find closest pair in each side recursively.
- Combine: find closest pair with one point in each side.
- Return best of 3 solutions.

seems like $\Theta(N^2)$



How to find closest pair with one point in each side?

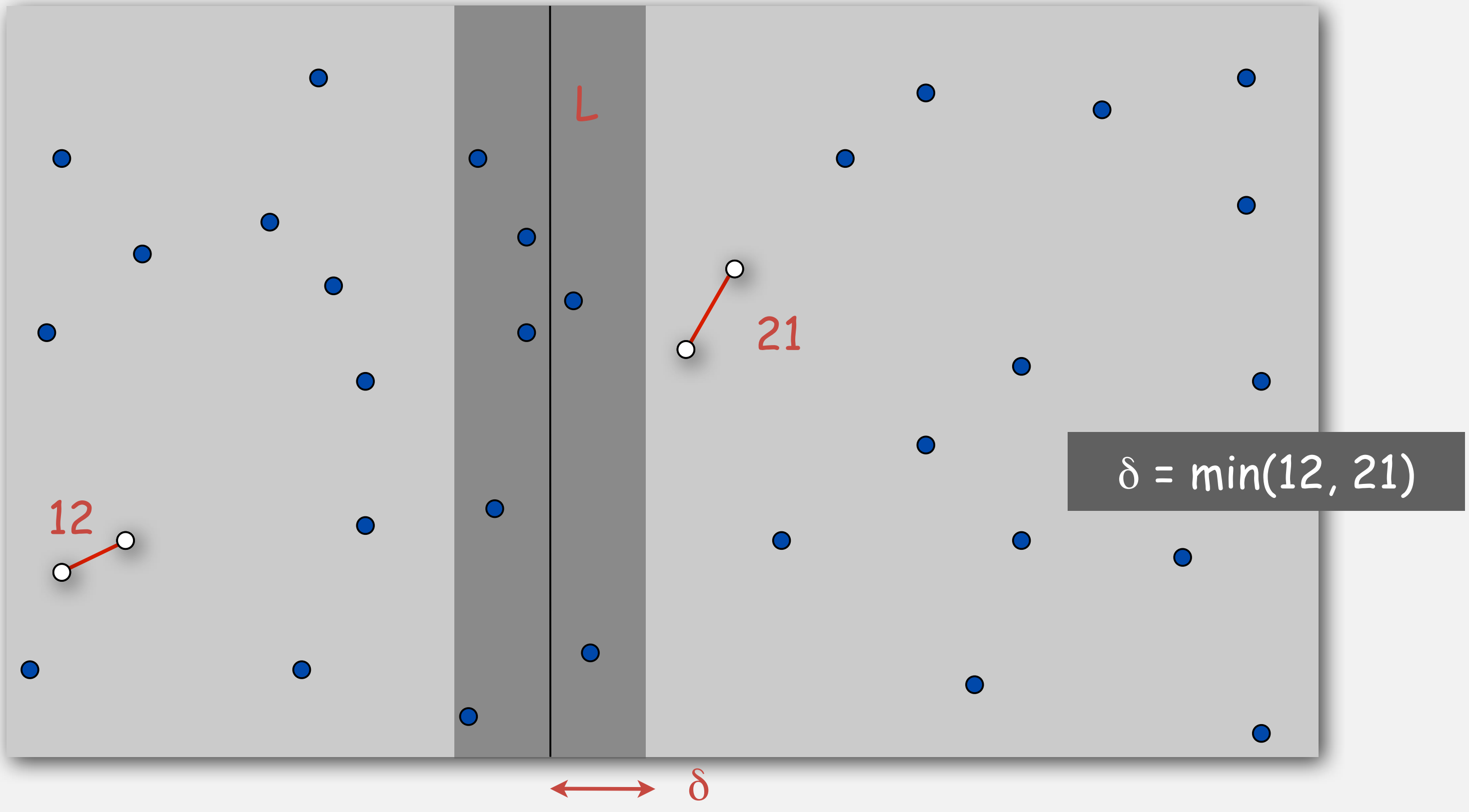
Find closest pair with one point in each side, assuming that distance < δ.



How to find closest pair with one point in each side?

Find closest pair with one point in each side, assuming that distance < δ.

- Observation: only need to consider points within δ of line L.

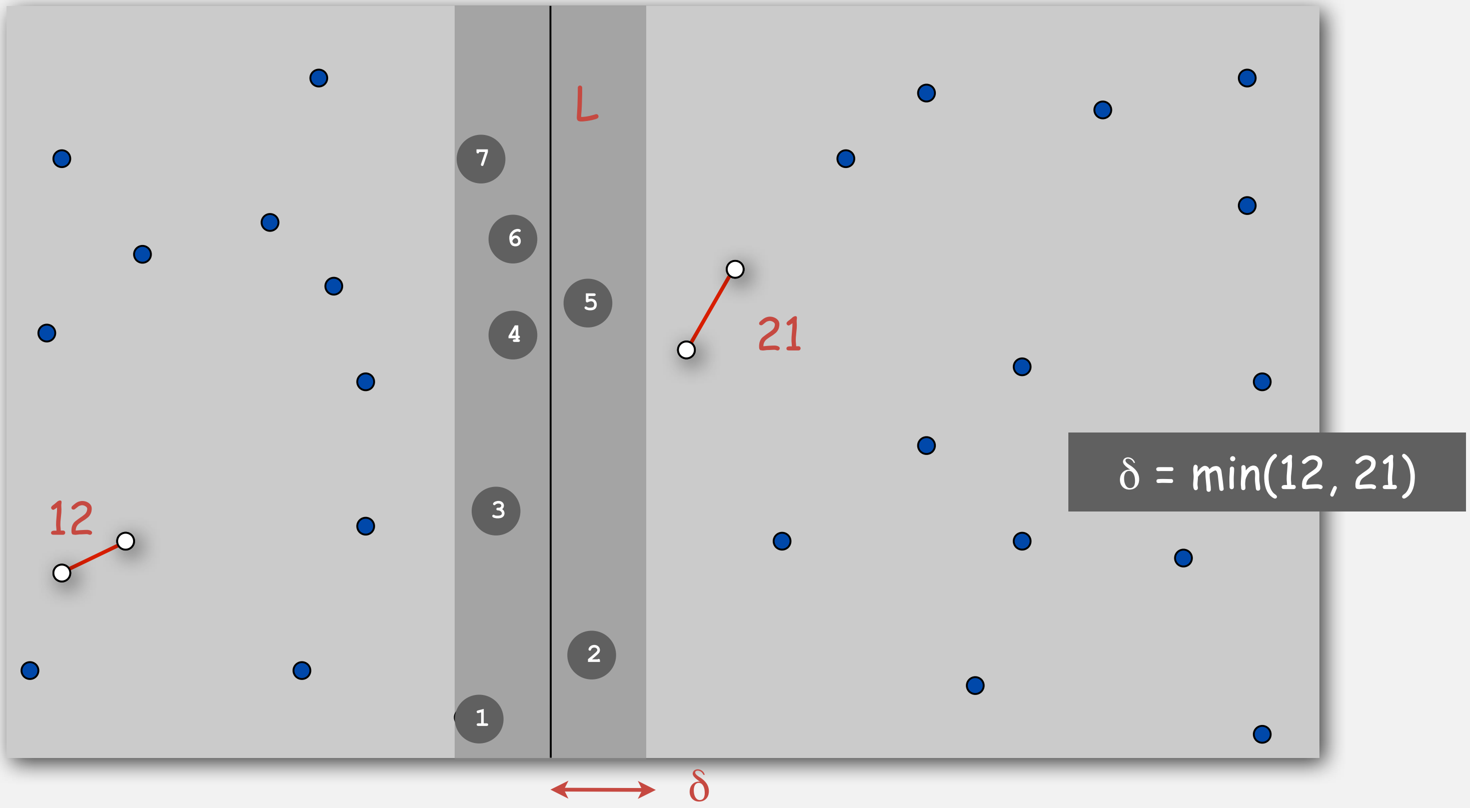


δ = min(12, 21)

How to find closest pair with one point in each side?

Find closest pair with one point in each side, assuming that distance < δ.

- Observation: only need to consider points within δ of line L.
- Sort points in 2δ-strip by their y coordinate.

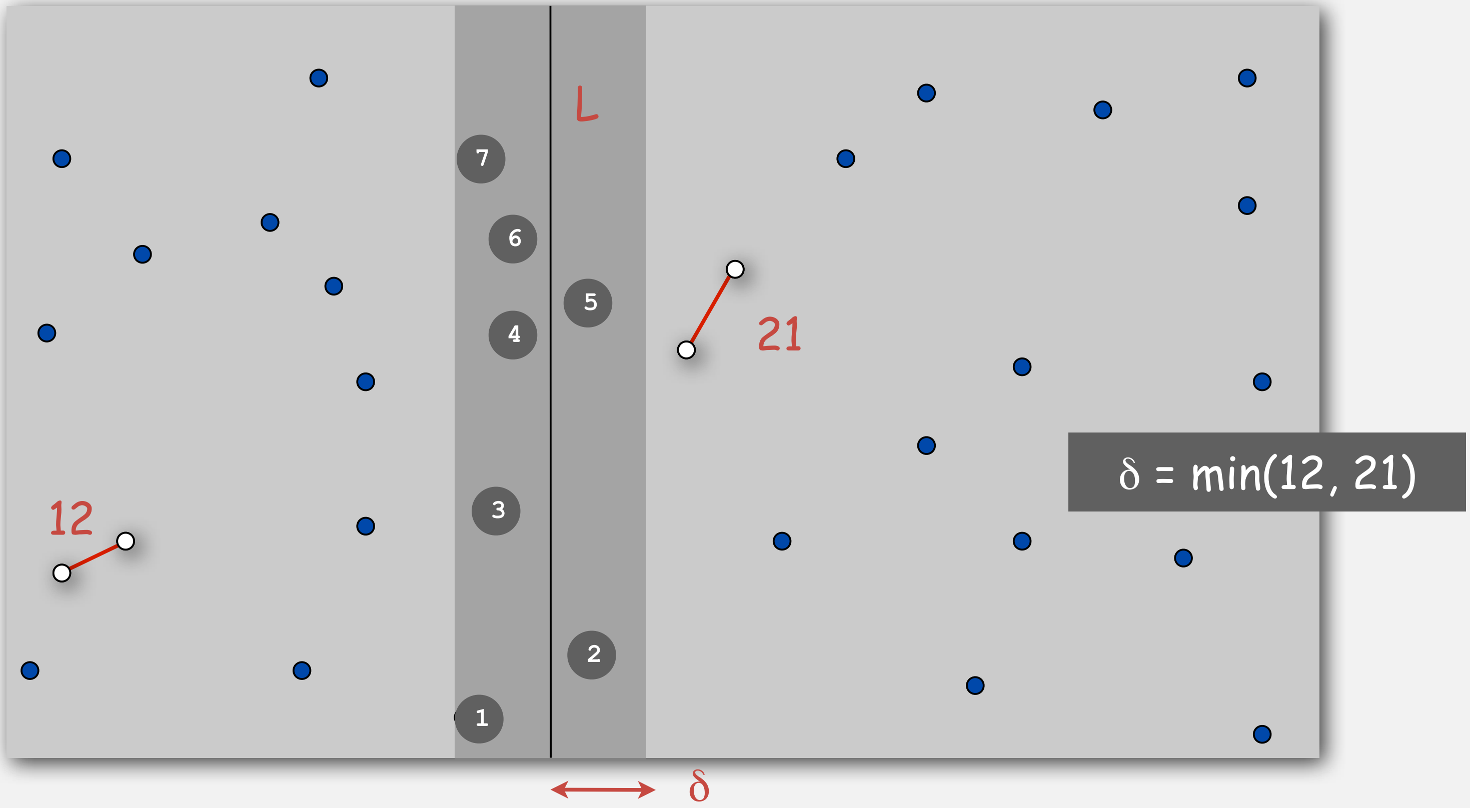


How to find closest pair with one point in each side?

Find closest pair with one point in each side, assuming that distance < δ.

- Observation: only need to consider points within δ of line L.
- Sort points in 2δ-strip by their y coordinate.
- Only check distances of those within 11 positions in sorted list!

why 11?



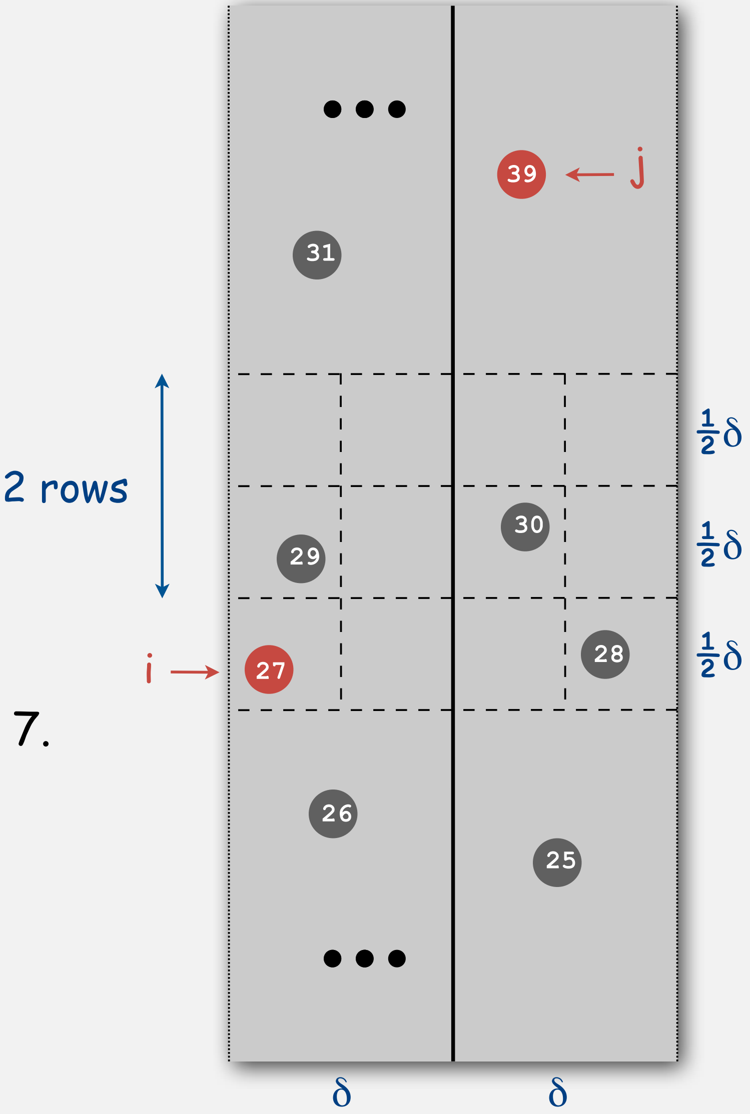
How to find closest pair with one point in each side?

Def. Let s_i be the point in the 2δ-strip, with the i^{th} smallest y-coordinate.

Claim. If $|i - j| \geq 12$, then the distance between s_i and s_j is at least δ.

Pf.

- No two points lie in same $\frac{1}{2}\delta$-by-$\frac{1}{2}\delta$ box.
- Two points at least 2 rows apart have distance $\geq 2(\frac{1}{2}\delta)$. ▪



Fact. Claim remains true if we replace 12 with 7.

Divide-and-conquer algorithm

```
Closest-Pair($p_1$, …, $p_n$)
{
   Compute separation line L such that half the points
   are on one side and half on the other side.              ← O(N log N)

   $\delta_1$ = Closest-Pair(left half)
   $\delta_2$ = Closest-Pair(right half)                    ← 2T(N / 2)
   $\delta$  = min($\delta_1$, $\delta_2$)

   Delete all points further than $\delta$ from separation line L   ← O(N)

   Sort remaining points by y-coordinate.                   ← O(N log N)

   Scan points in y-order and compare distance between
   each point and next 11 neighbors. If any of these        ← O(N)
   distances is less than $\delta$, update $\delta$.

   return $\delta$.
}
```

Divide-and-conquer algorithm: analysis

Running time recurrence. $T(N) \le 2T(N/2) + O(N \log N)$.

Solution. $T(N) = O(N (\log N)^2)$.

Remark. Can be improved to $O(N \log N)$.

sort by x- and y-coordinates once
(reuse later to avoid re-sorting)

$(x_1 - x_2)^2 + (y_1 - y_2)^2$

Lower bound. In quadratic decision tree model, any algorithm for closest pair requires $\Omega(N \log N)$ steps.

- primitive operations
- convex hull
- closest pair
- **voronoi diagram**

1854 cholera outbreak, Golden Square, London

Life-or-death question.

Given a new cholera patient p, which water pump is closest to p's home?

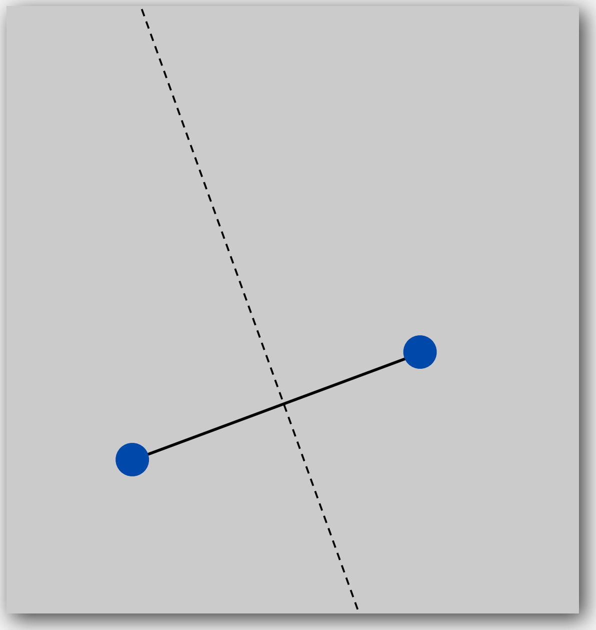
http://content.answers.com/main/content/wp/en/c/c7/Snow-cholera-map.jpg

Voronoi diagram

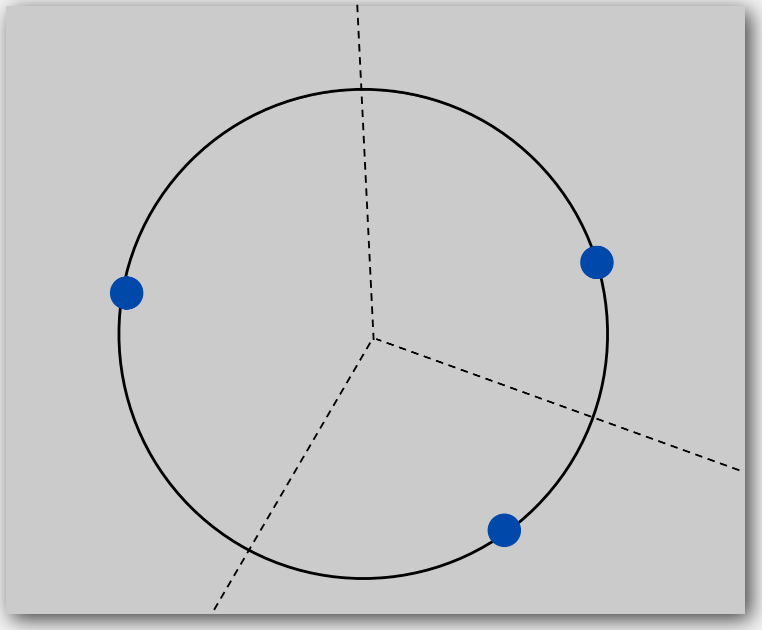
Voronoi region. Set of all points closest to a given point.

Voronoi diagram. Planar subdivision delineating Voronoi regions.

Fact. Voronoi edges are perpendicular bisector segments.



Voronoi of 2 points
(perpendicular bisector)

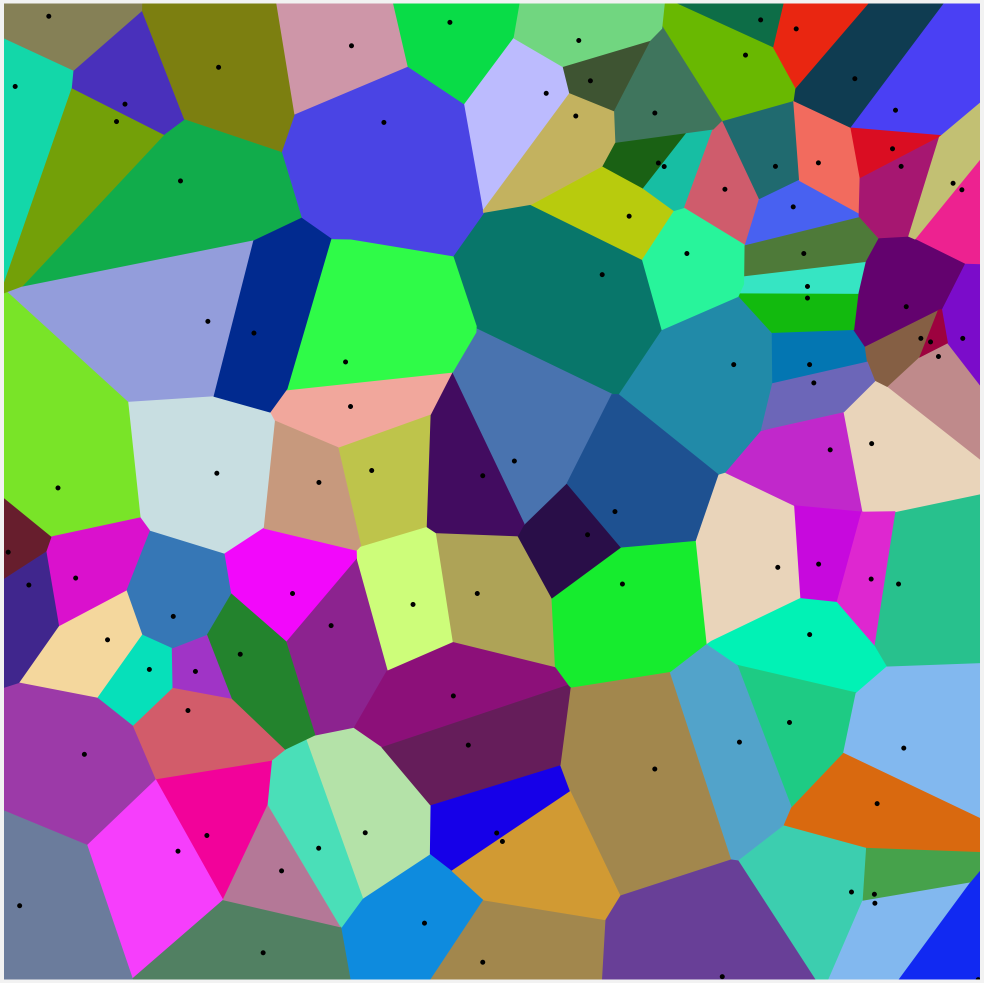


Voronoi of 3 points
(passes through circumcenter)

Voronoi diagram

Voronoi region. Set of all points closest to a given point.

Voronoi diagram. Planar subdivision delineating Voronoi regions.



Voronoi diagram: more applications

Anthropology. Identify influence of clans and chiefdoms on geographic regions.

Astronomy. Identify clusters of stars and clusters of galaxies.

Biology, Ecology, Forestry. Model and analyze plant competition.

Cartography. Piece together satellite photographs into large "mosaic" maps.

Crystallography. Study Wigner-Setiz regions of metallic sodium.

Data visualization. Nearest neighbor interpolation of 2D data.

Finite elements. Generating finite element meshes which avoid small angles.

Fluid dynamics. Vortex methods for inviscid incompressible 2D fluid flow.

Geology. Estimation of ore reserves in a deposit using info from bore holes.

Geo-scientific modeling. Reconstruct 3D geometric figures from points.

Marketing. Model market of US metro area at individual retail store level.

Metallurgy. Modeling "grain growth" in metal films.

Physiology. Analysis of capillary distribution in cross-sections of muscle tissue.

Robotics. Path planning for robot to minimize risk of collision.

Typography. Character recognition, beveled and carved lettering.

Zoology. Model and analyze the territories of animals.

`http://voronoi.com`   `http://www.ics.uci.edu/~eppstein/geom.html`

Scientific rediscoveries

year	discoverer	discipline	name
1644	Descartes	astronomy	"Heavens"
1850	Dirichlet	math	Dirichlet tesselation
1908	Voronoi	math	Voronoi diagram
1909	Boldyrev	geology	area of influence polygons
1911	Thiessen	meteorology	Thiessen polygons
1927	Niggli	crystallography	domains of action
1933	Wigner-Seitz	physics	Wigner-Seitz regions
1958	Frank-Casper	physics	atom domains
1965	Brown	ecology	area of potentially available
1966	Mead	ecology	plant polygons
1985	Hoofd et al.	anatomy	capillary domains

Reference: Kenneth E. Hoff III

Fortune's algorithm

Industrial-strength Voronoi implementation.

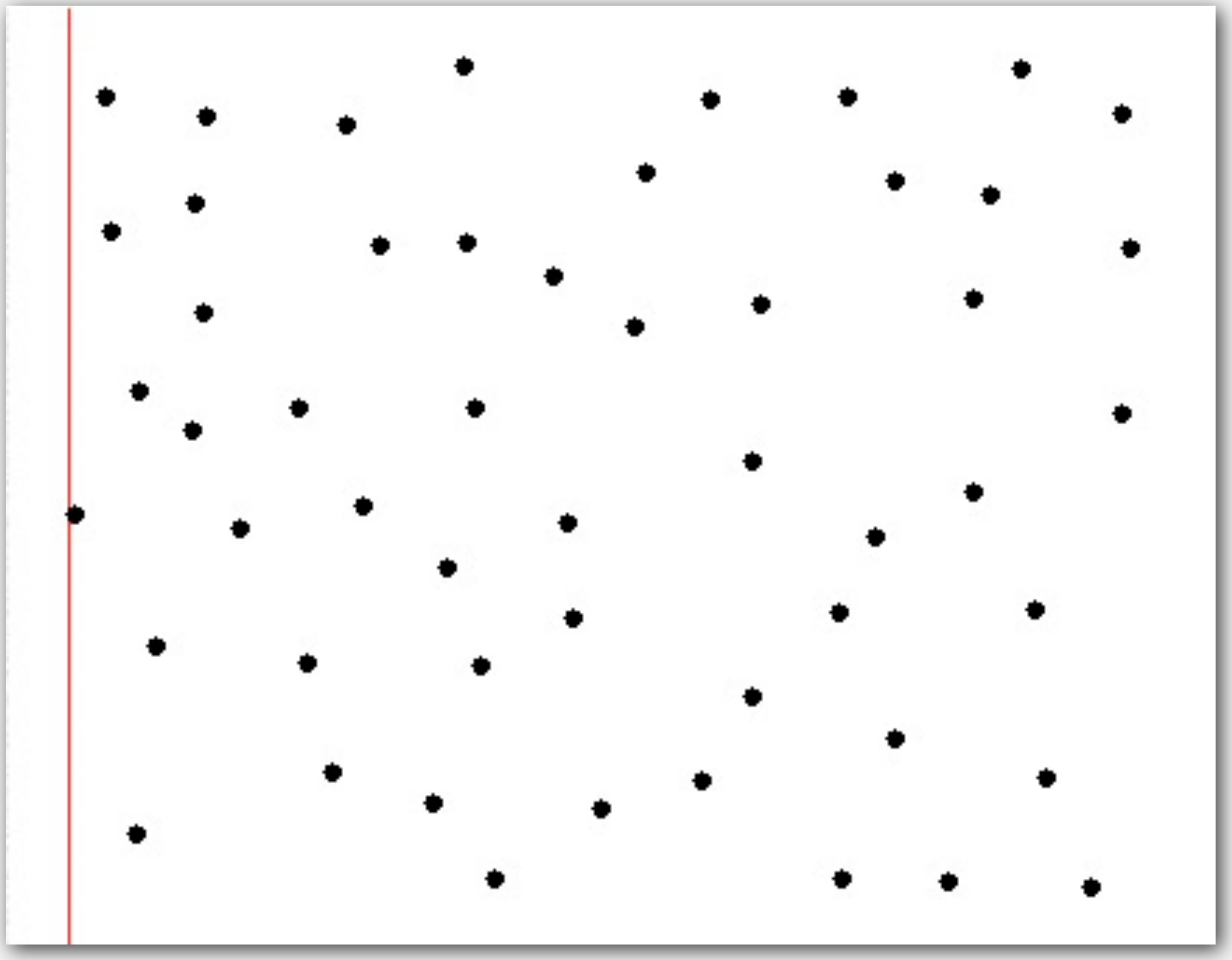
- Sweep-line algorithm.
- O(N log N) time.
- Properly handles degeneracies.
- Properly handles floating-point computations.

algorithm	preprocess	query
brute	1	N
Fortune	N log N	log N

Try it yourself! `http://www.diku.dk/hjemmesider/studerende/duff/Fortune/`

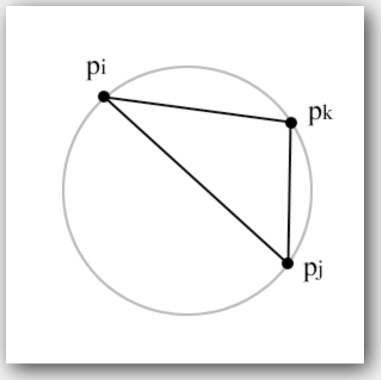
Remark. Beyond scope of this course.

Fortune's algorithm in practice

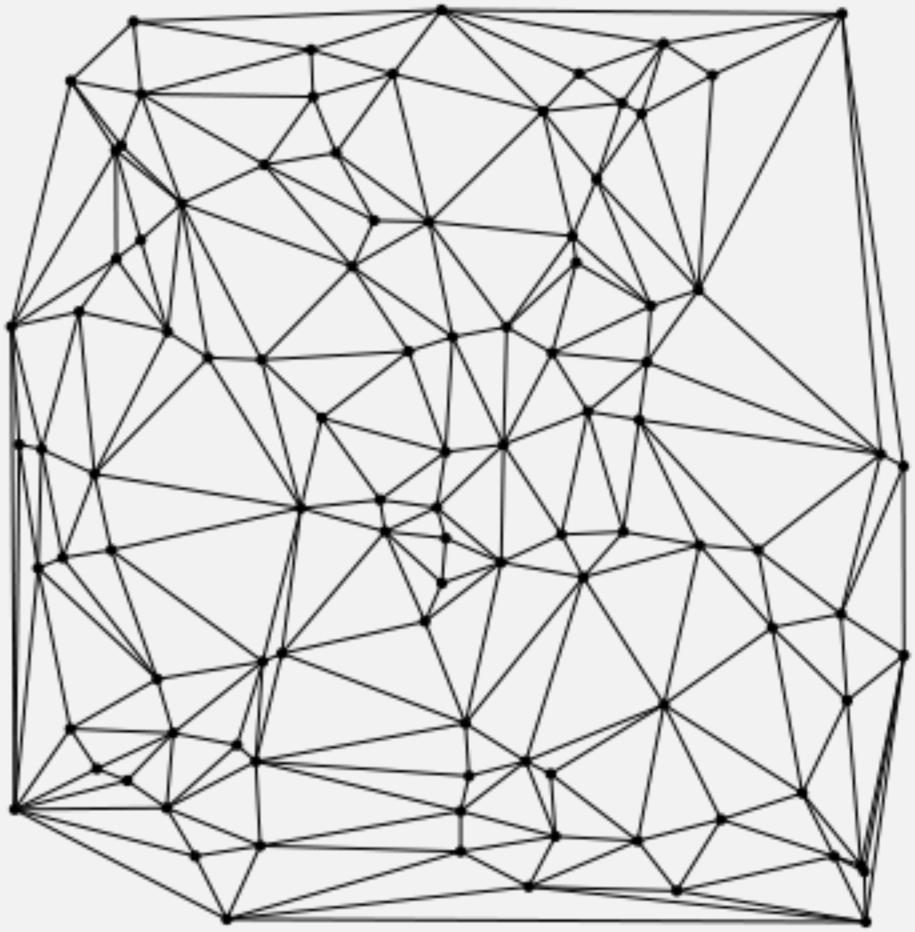


Delaunay triangulation

Def. Triangulation of N points such that no point is inside circumcircle of any other triangle.



circumcircle of 3 points



Delaunay triangulation properties

Proposition 1. It exists and is unique (assuming no degeneracy).

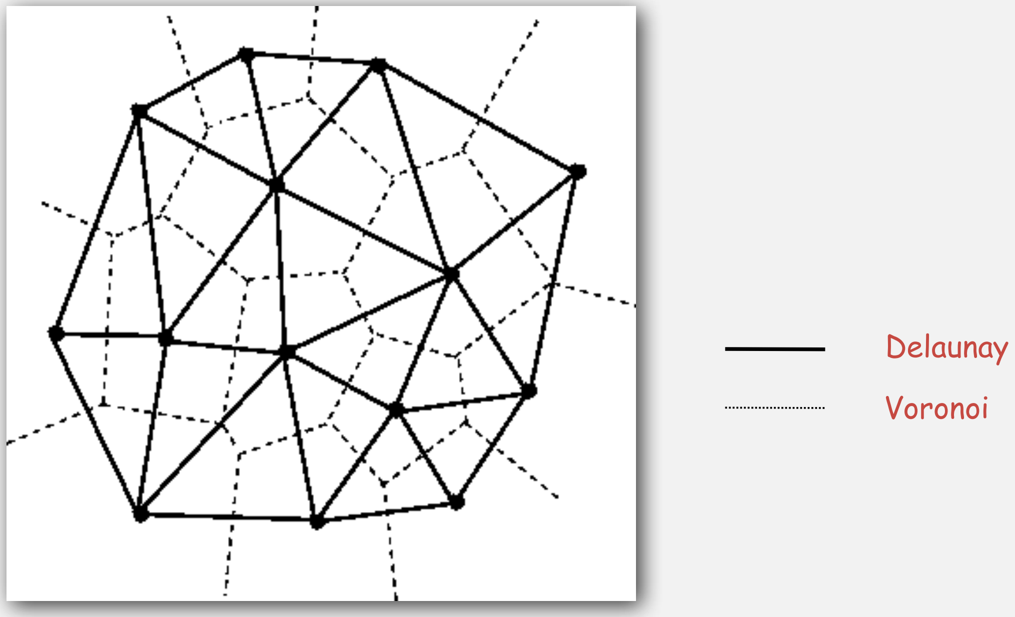
Proposition 2. Dual of Voronoi (connect adjacent points in Voronoi diagram).

Proposition 3. No edges cross ⇒ O(N) edges.

Proposition 4. Maximizes the minimum angle for all triangular elements.

Proposition 5. Boundary of Delaunay triangulation is convex hull.

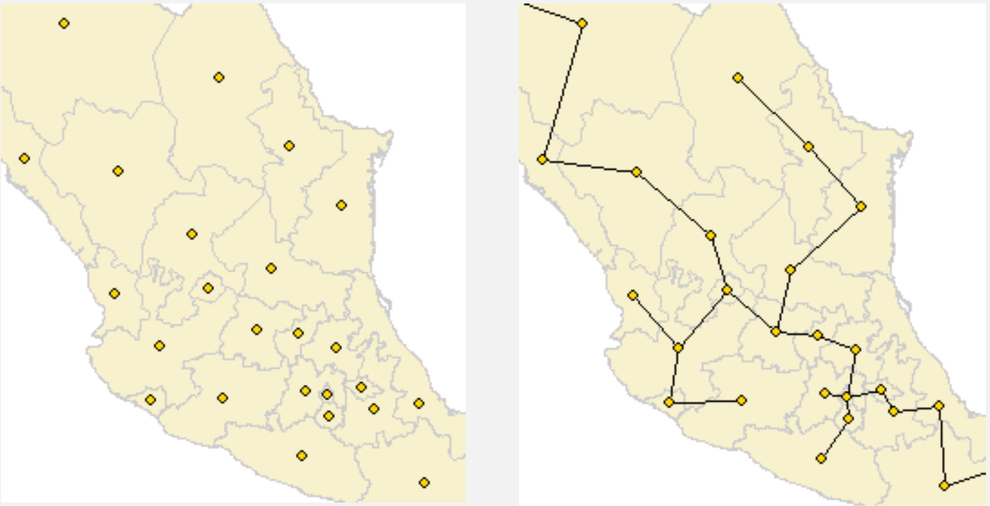
Proposition 6. Shortest Delaunay edge connects closest pair of points.



Delaunay triangulation application: Euclidean MST

Euclidean MST. Given N points in the plane, find MST connecting them.

[distances between point pairs are Euclidean distances]



Brute force. Compute $N^2 / 2$ distances and run Prim's algorithm.

Ingenuity.

- MST is subgraph of Delaunay triangulation.
- Delaunay has O(N) edges.
- Compute Delaunay, then use Prim (or Kruskal) to get MST in O(N log N) !

Geometric algorithms summary

Ingenious algorithms enable solution of large instances for numerous fundamental geometric problems.

problem	brute	clever
convex hull	N^2	N log N
farthest pair	N^2	N log N
closest pair	N^2	N log N
Delaunay/Voronoi	N^4	N log N
Euclidean MST	N^2	N log N

asymptotic time to solve a 2D problem with N points

Note. 3D and higher dimensions test limits of our ingenuity.

6.3 Geometric Search

- range search
- space partitioning trees
- intersection search

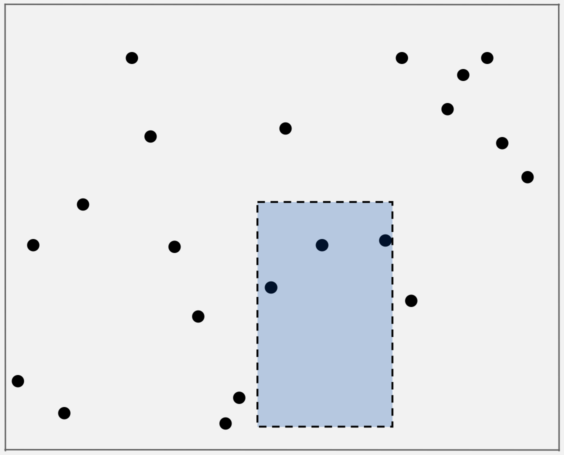
Overview

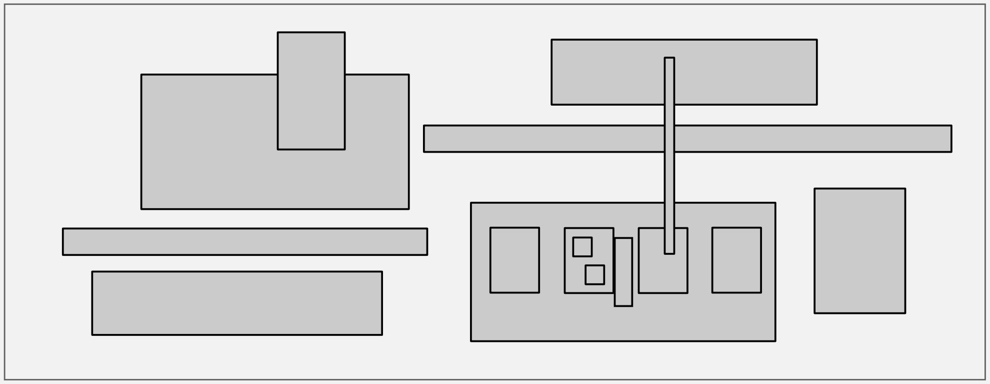
Geometric objects. Points, lines, intervals, circles, rectangles, polygons, ...

This lecture. Intersection among N objects.

Example problems.

- 1D range search.
- 2D range search.
- Find all intersections among h-v line segments.
- Find all intersections among h-v rectangles.





- range search
- space partitioning trees
- intersection search

1d range search

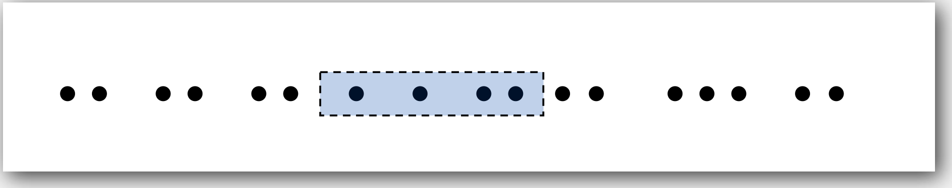
Extension of ordered symbol table.

- Insert key-value pair.
- Search for key k.
- Rank: how many keys less than k?
- Range search: find all keys between k_1 and k_2.

Application. Database queries.

Geometric interpretation.

- Keys are point on a line.
- How many points in a given interval?



`insert B`	`B`
`insert D`	`B D`
`insert A`	`A B D`
`insert I`	`A B D I`
`insert H`	`A B D H I`
`insert F`	`A B D F H I`
`insert P`	`A B D F H I P`
`count G to K`	`2`
`search G to K`	`H I`

1d range search: implementations

Ordered array. Slow insert, binary search for `lo` and `hi` to find range.

Hash table. No reasonable algorithm (key order lost in hash).

data structure	insert	rank	range count	range search
ordered array	N	log N	log N	R + log N
hash table	1	N	N	N
BST	log N	log N	log N	R + log N

N = # keys
R = # keys that match

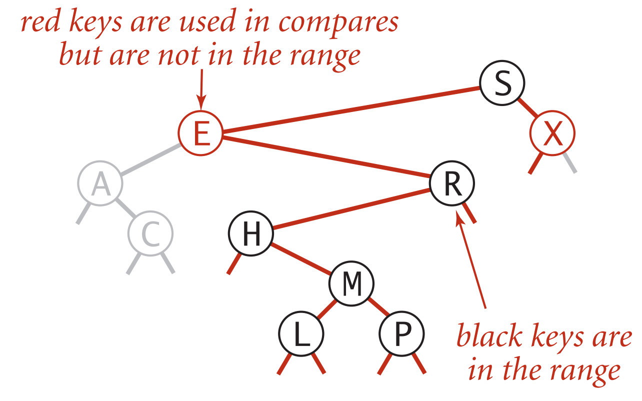
BST. All operations fast.

1d range search: BST implementation

Range search. Find all keys between `lo` and `hi`?

- Recursively find all keys in left subtree (if any could fall in range).
- Check key in current node.
- Recursively find all keys in right subtree (if any could fall in range).

searching in the range `[F..T]`



Range search in a BST

Worst-case running time. R + log N (assuming BST is balanced).

2d orthogonal range search

Extension of ordered symbol-table to 2d keys.

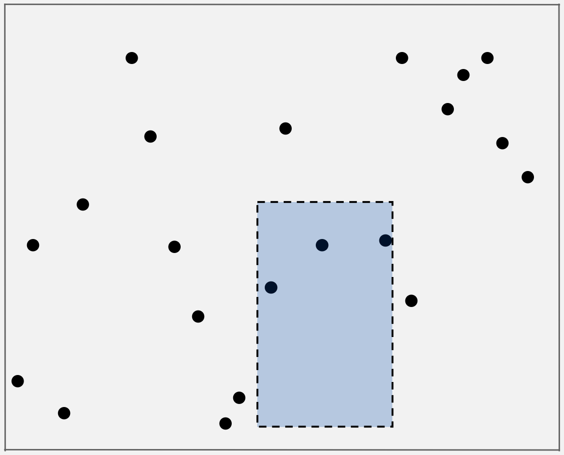
- Insert a 2d key.
- Search for a 2d key.
- Range search: find all keys that lie in a 2d range?

Applications. Networking, circuit design, databases.

Geometric interpretation.

- Keys are point in the plane.
- How many points in a given h-v rectangle.

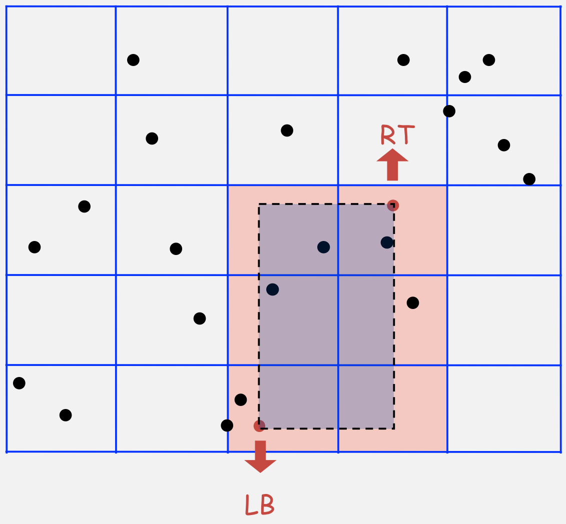
rectangle is axis-aligned



2d orthogonal range search: grid implementation

Grid implementation.

- Divide space into M-by-M grid of squares.
- Create list of points contained in each square.
- Use 2d array to directly index relevant square.
- Insert: add (x, y) to list for corresponding square.
- Range search: examine only those squares that intersect 2d range query.



2d orthogonal range search: grid implementation costs

Space-time tradeoff.

- Space: $M^2 + N$.
- Time: $1 + N / M^2$ per square examined, on average.

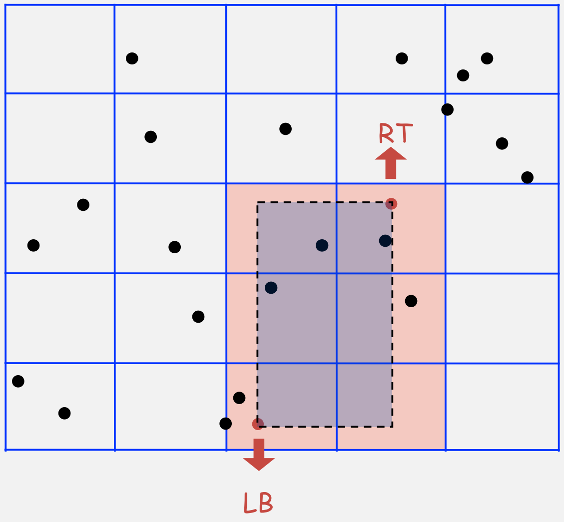
Choose grid square size to tune performance.

- Too small: wastes space.
- Too large: too many points per square.
- Rule of thumb: $\sqrt{N}$-by-$\sqrt{N}$ grid.

Running time. [if points are evenly distributed]

- Initialize: $O(N)$.
- Insert: $O(1)$.
- Range: $O(1)$ per point in range.

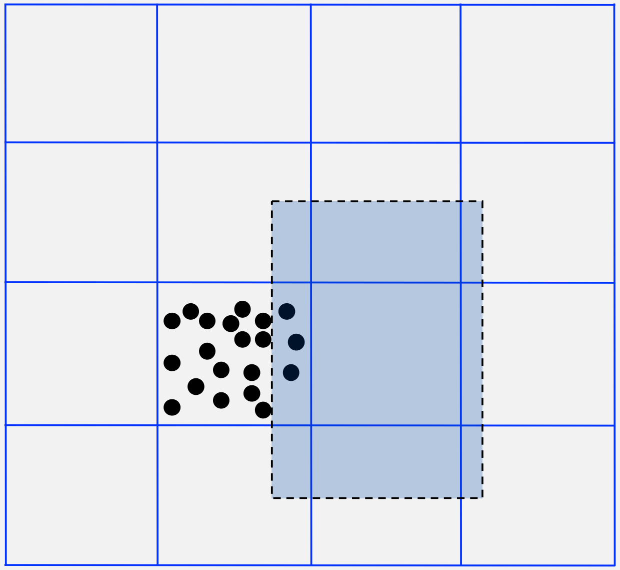
$M \sim \sqrt{N}$



Clustering

Grid implementation. Fast, simple solution for well-distributed points.

Problem. Clustering a well-known phenomenon in geometric data.



Lists are too long, even though average length is short.

Need data structure that gracefully adapts to data.

Clustering

Grid implementation. Fast, simple solution for well-distributed points.

Problem. Clustering a well-known phenomenon in geometric data.

Ex. USA map data.

13,000 points, 1000 grid squares

half the squares are empty

half the points are in 10% of the squares

- range search
- **space partitioning trees**
- intersection search

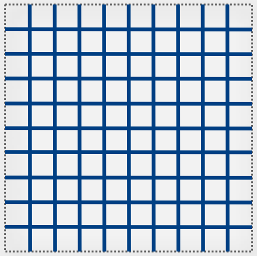
Space-partitioning trees

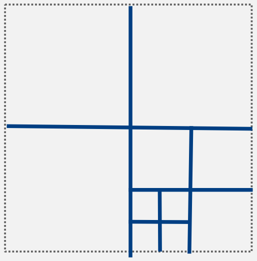
Use a tree to represent a recursive subdivision of 2D space.

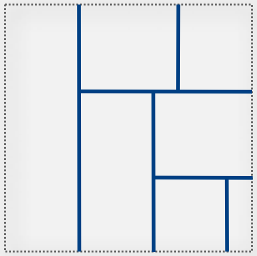
Quadtree. Recursively divide space into four quadrants.

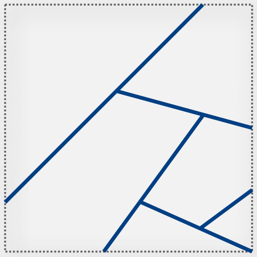
2d tree. Recursively divide space into two halfplanes.

BSP tree. Recursively divide space into two regions.


Grid


Quadtree

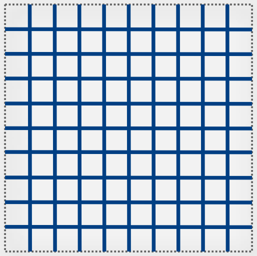

2D tree

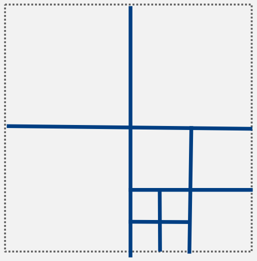

BSP tree

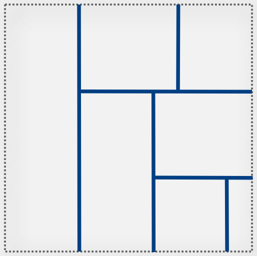
Space-partitioning trees: applications

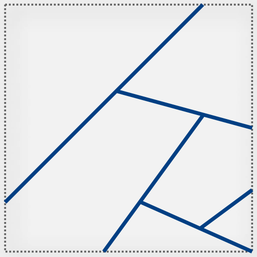
Applications.

- Ray tracing.
- 2d range search.
- Flight simulators.
- N-body simulation.
- Collision detection.
- Astronomical databases.
- Nearest neighbor search.
- Adaptive mesh generation.
- Accelerate rendering in Doom.
- Hidden surface removal and shadow casting.


Grid


Quadtree

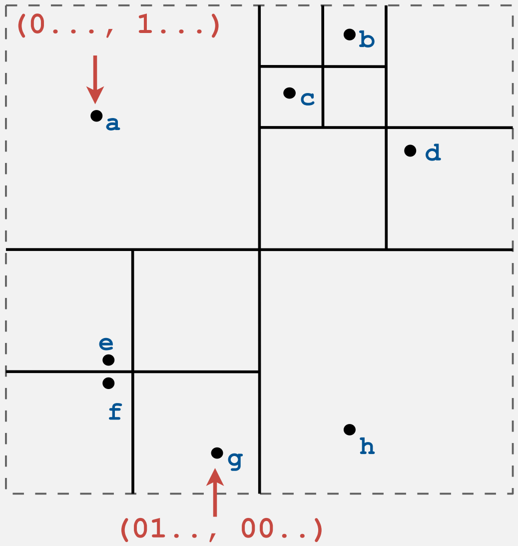

2D tree

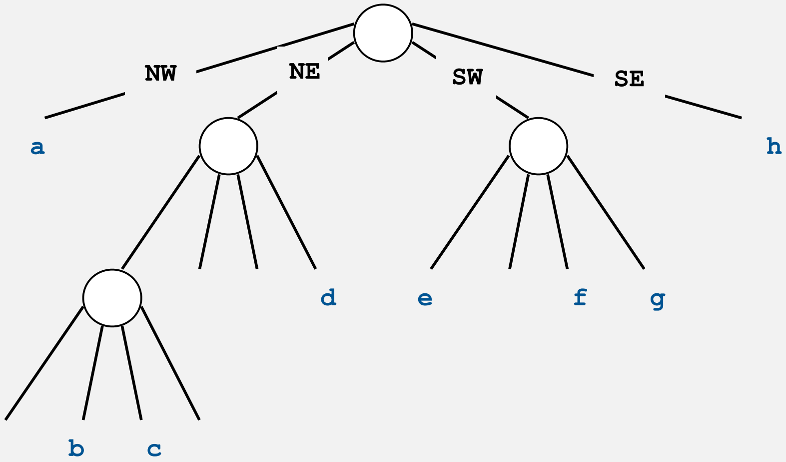

BSP tree

Quadtree

Idea. Recursively divide space into 4 quadrants.

Implementation. 4-way tree (actually a trie).



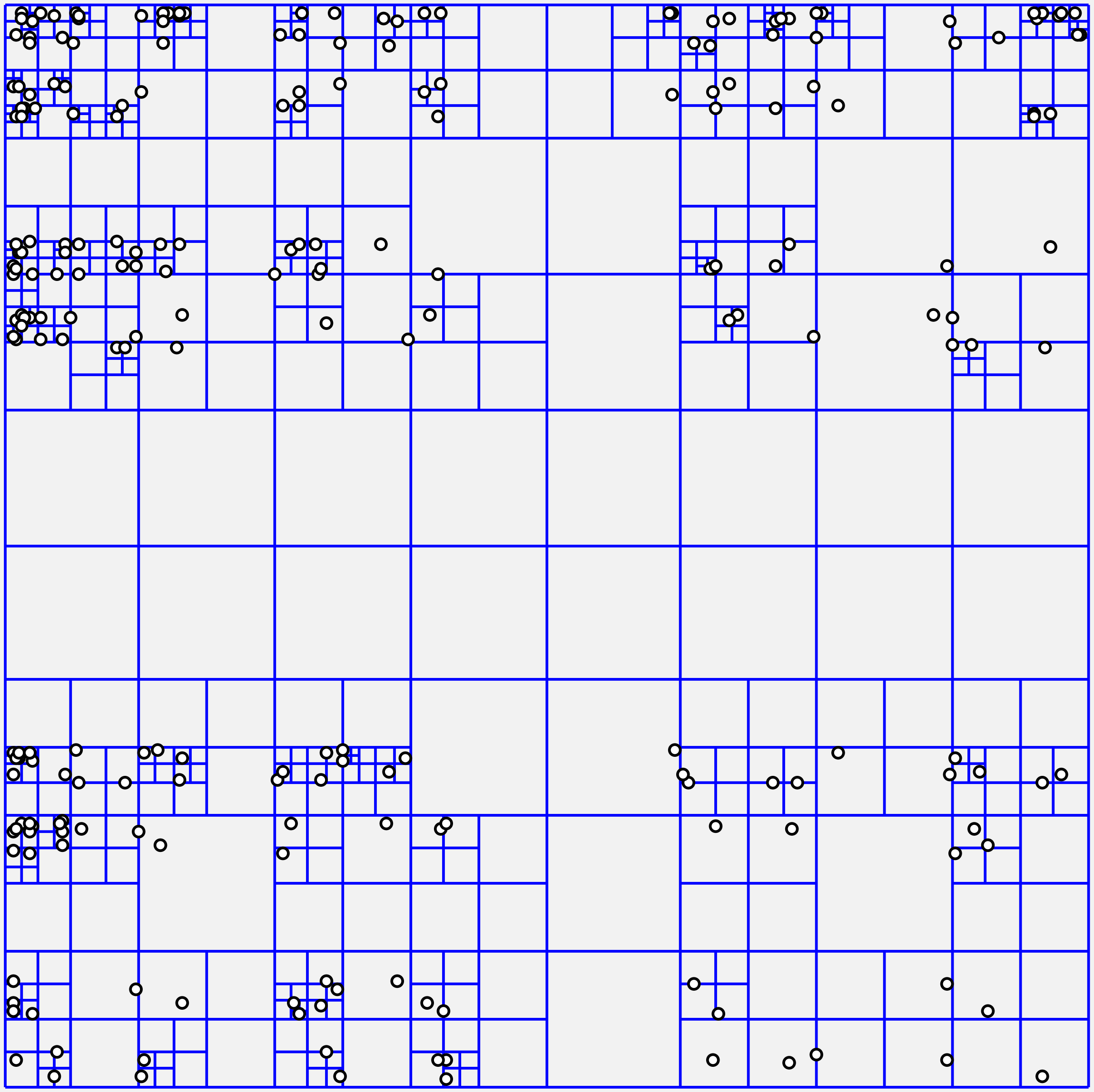


```
public class QuadTree
{
   private Quad quad;
   private Value val;
   private QuadTree NW, NE, SW, SE;
}
```

Benefit. Good performance in the presence of clustering.

Drawback. Arbitrary depth!

Quadtree: larger example

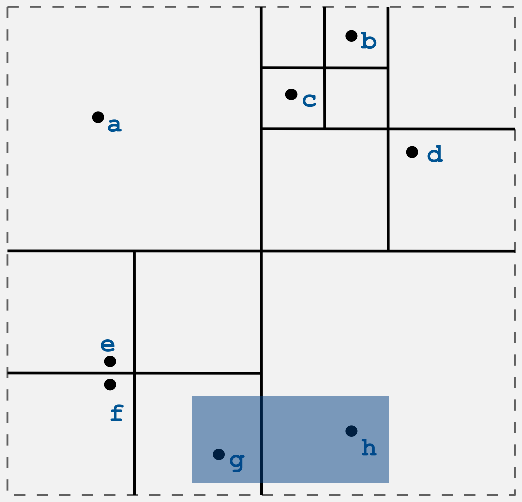


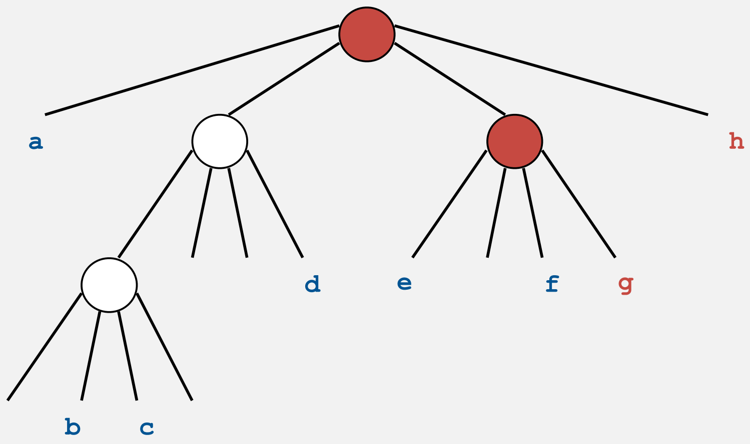
http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Image:Point_quadtree.svg

Quadtree: 2d range search

Range search. Find all keys in a given 2D range.

- Recursively find all keys in NE quad (if any could fall in range).
- Recursively find all keys in NW quad (if any could fall in range).
- Recursively find all keys in SE quad (if any could fall in range).
- Recursively find all keys in SW quad (if any could fall in range).

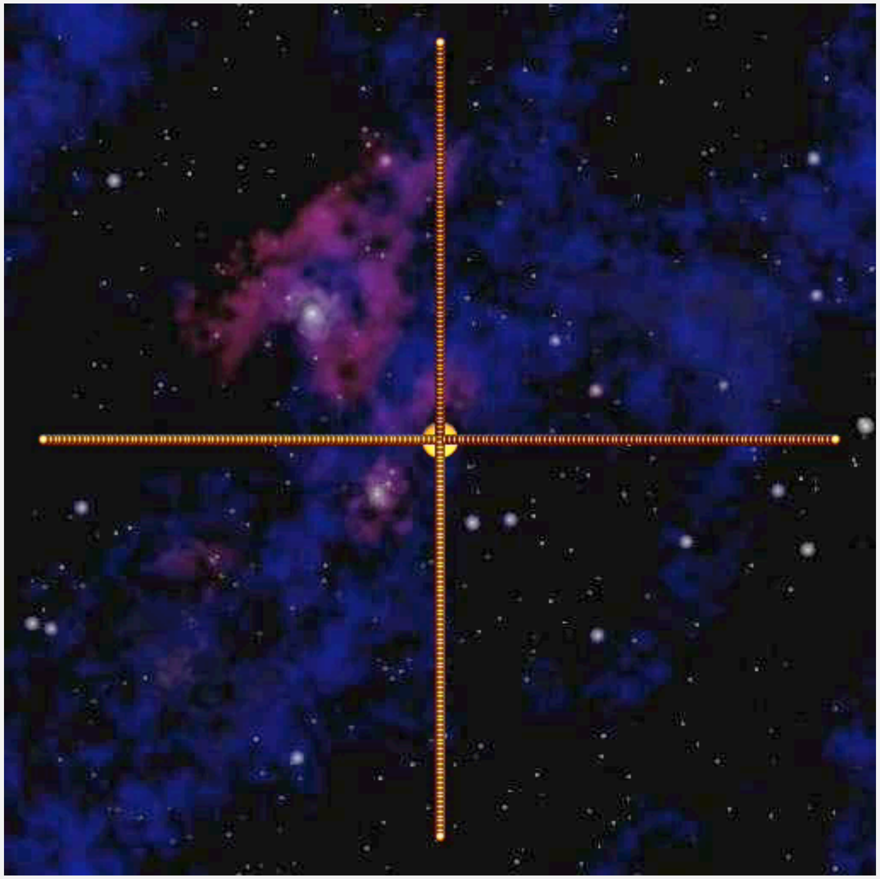




Typical running time. R + log N.

N-body simulation

Goal. Simulate the motion of N particles, mutually affected by gravity.



Brute force. For each pair of particles, compute force.

$$F = \frac{G\, m_1\, m_2}{r^2}$$

Subquadratic N-body simulation

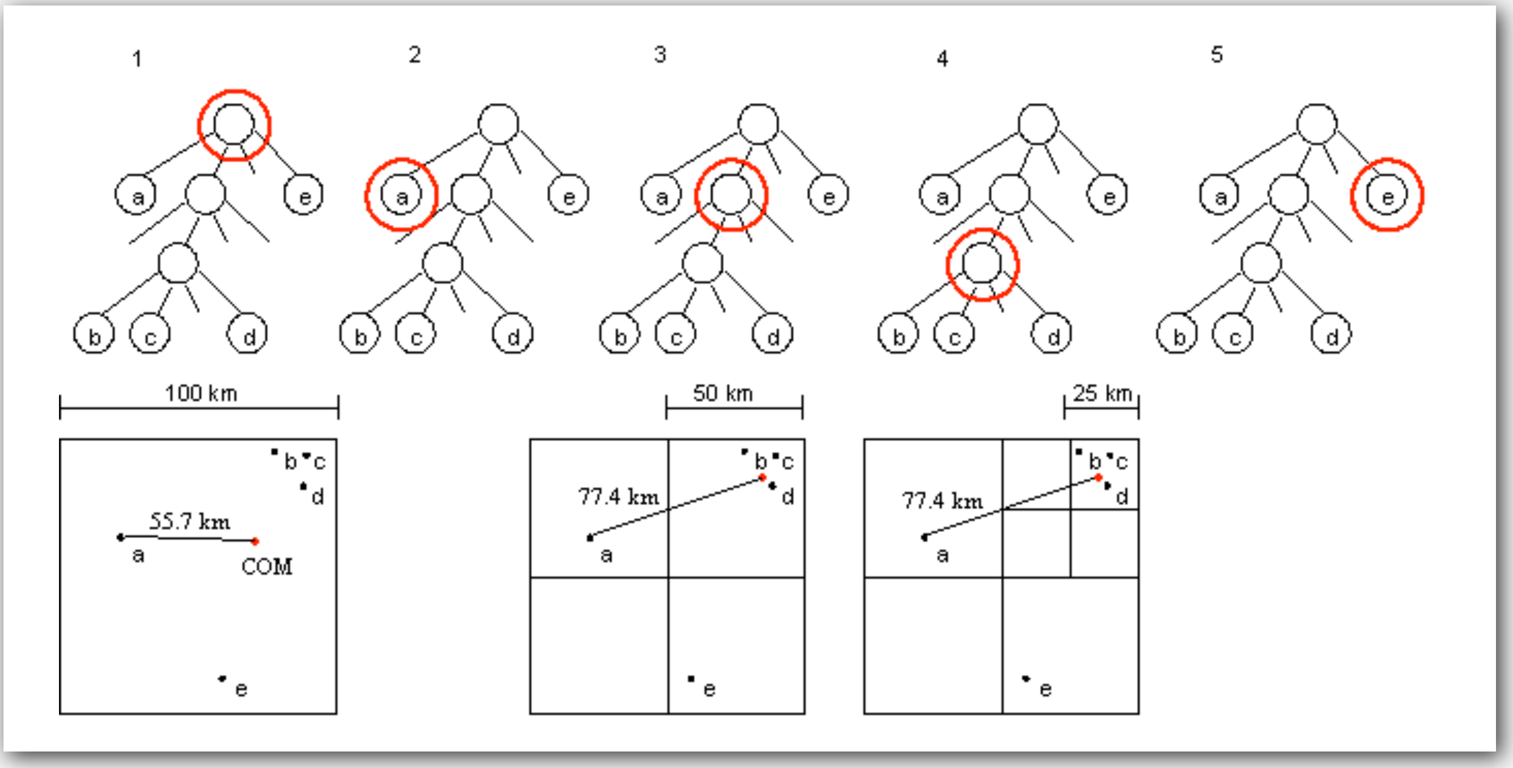
Key idea. Suppose particle is far, far away from cluster of particles.

- Treat cluster of particles as a single aggregate particle.
- Compute force between particle and center of mass of aggregate particle.

Barnes-Hut algorithm for N-body simulation.

Barnes-Hut.

- Build quadtree with N particles as external nodes.
- Store center-of-mass of subtree in each internal node.
- To compute total force acting on a particle, traverse tree, but stop as soon as distance from particle to quad is sufficiently large.



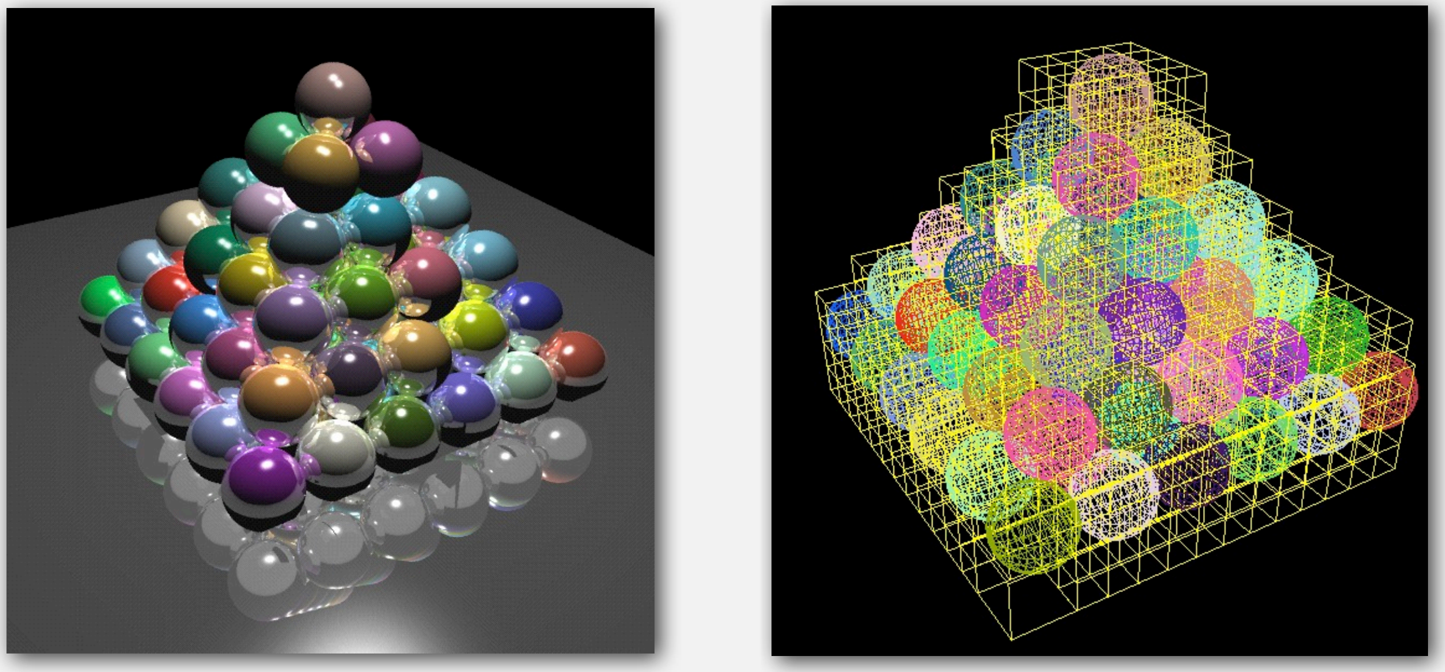
Curse of dimensionality

Range search / nearest neighbor in k dimensions?

Main application. Multi-dimensional databases.

3d space. Octrees: recursively divide 3d space into 8 octants.

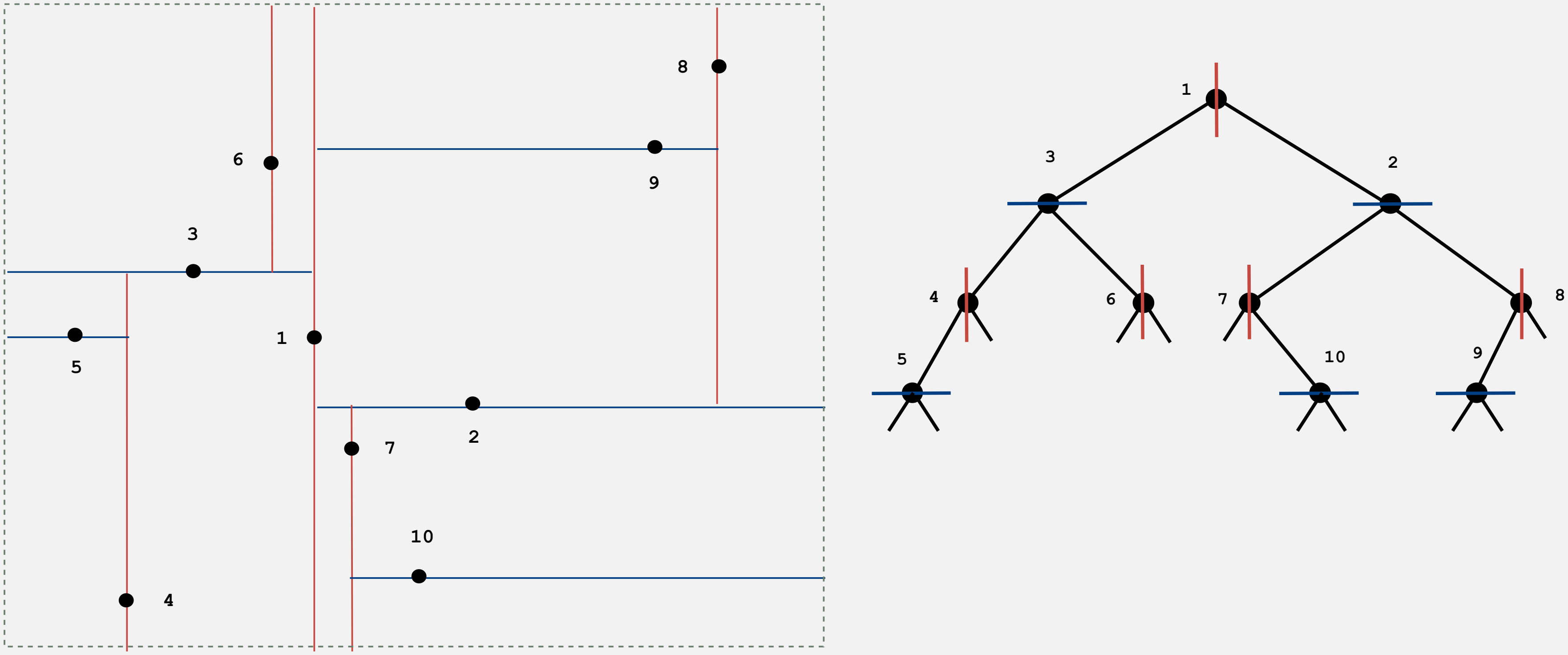
100d space. Centrees: recursively divide 100d space into 2^{100} centrants???



Raytracing with octrees
http://graphics.cs.ucdavis.edu/~gregorsk/graphics/275.html

2d tree

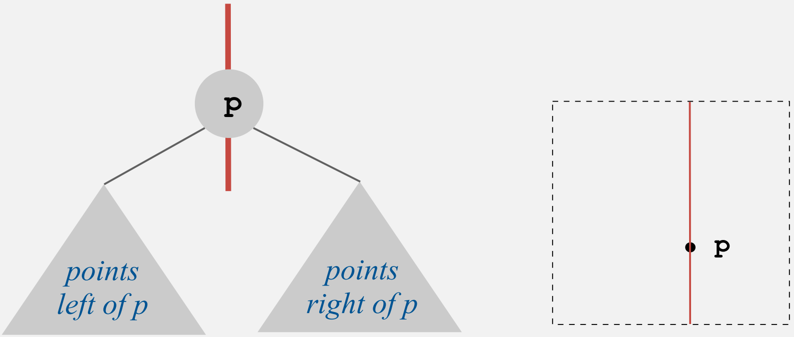
Recursively partition plane into two halfplanes.



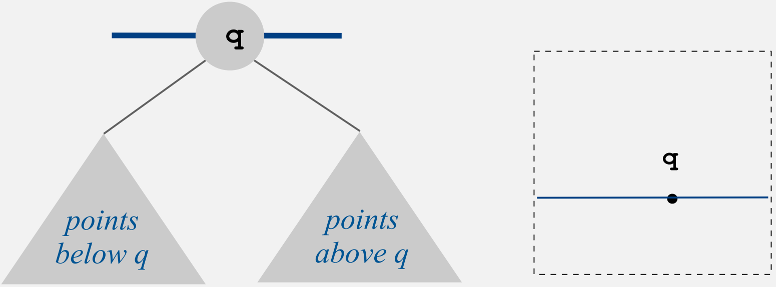
2d tree

Implementation. BST, but alternate using x- and y-coordinates as key.

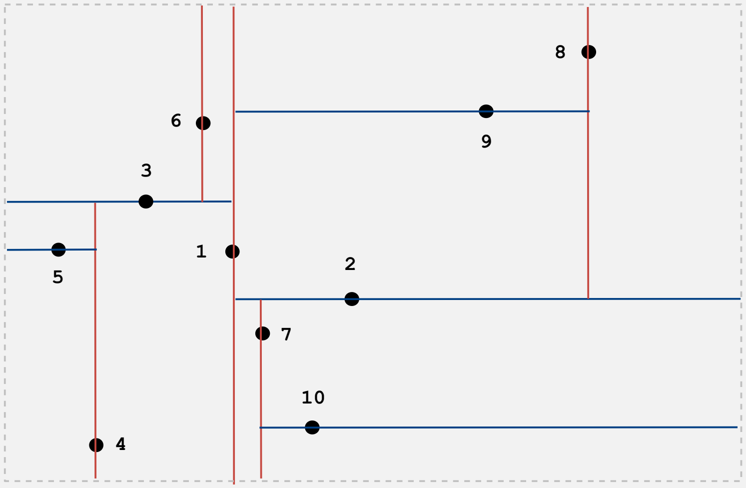
- Search gives rectangle containing point.
- Insert further subdivides the plane.

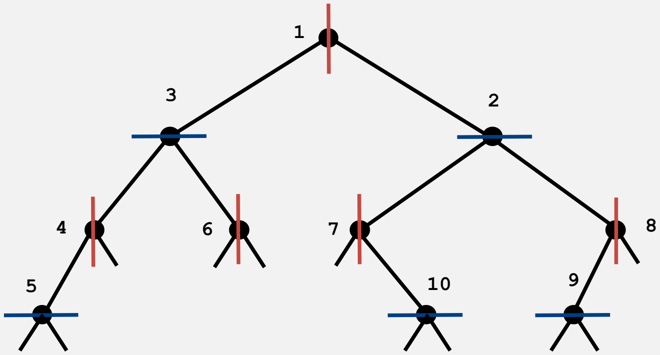


even levels



odd levels





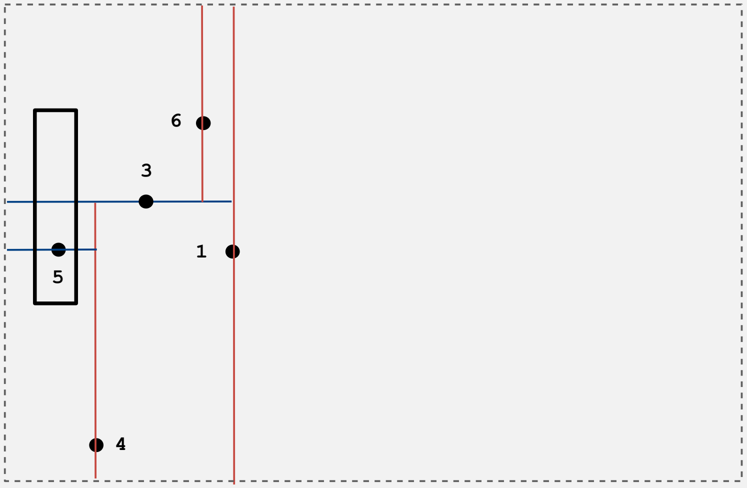
2d tree: 2d range search

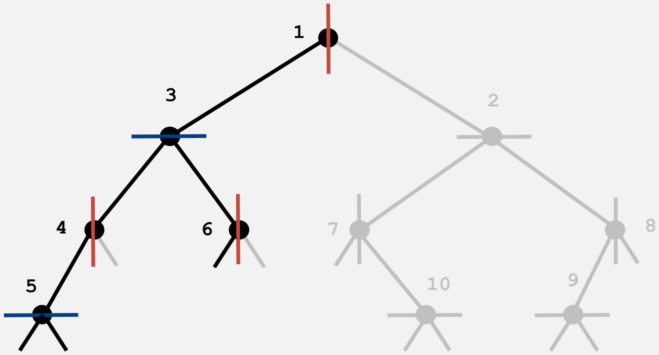
Range search. Find all points in a query axis-aligned rectangle.

- Check if point in node lies in given rectangle.
- Recursively search left/top subdivision (if any could fall in rectangle).
- Recursively search right/bottom subdivision (if any could fall in rectangle).

Typical case. R + log N

Worst case (assuming tree is balanced). R + √N.





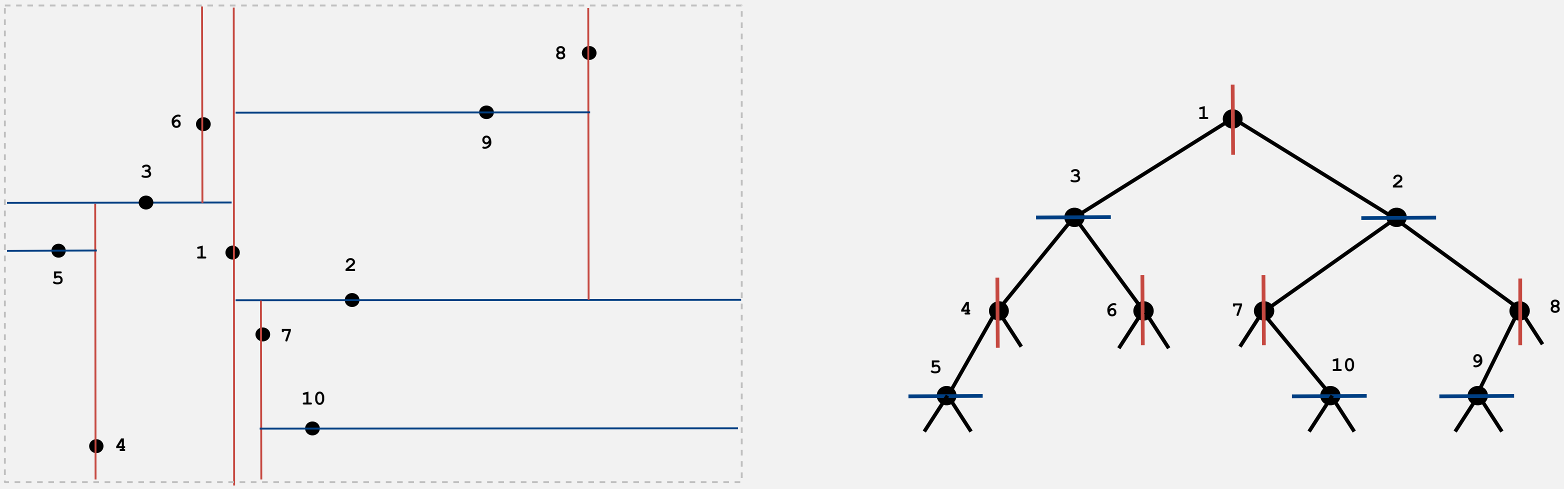
2d tree: nearest neighbor search

Nearest neighbor search. Given a query point, find the closest point.

- Check distance from point in node to query point.
- Recursively search left/top subdivision (if it could contain a closer point).
- Recursively search right/bottom subdivision (if it could contain a closer point).
- Organize recursive method so that it begins by searching for query point.

Typical case. log N

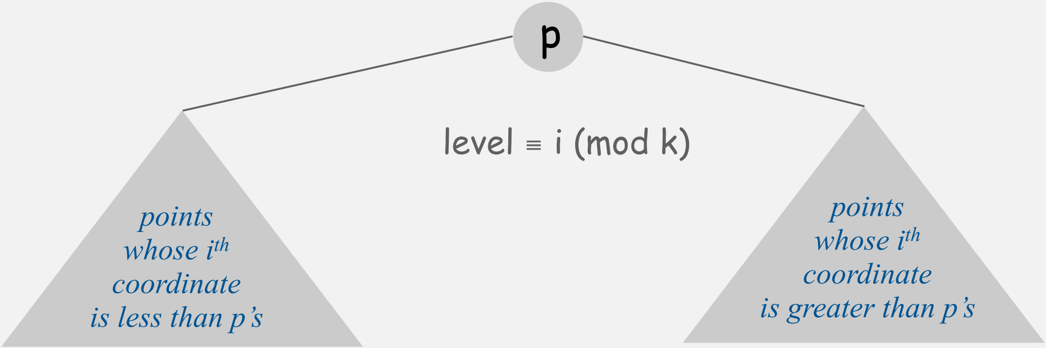
Worst case (even if tree is balanced). N



Kd tree

Kd tree. Recursively partition k-dimensional space into 2 halfspaces.

Implementation. BST, but cycle through dimensions ala 2d trees.

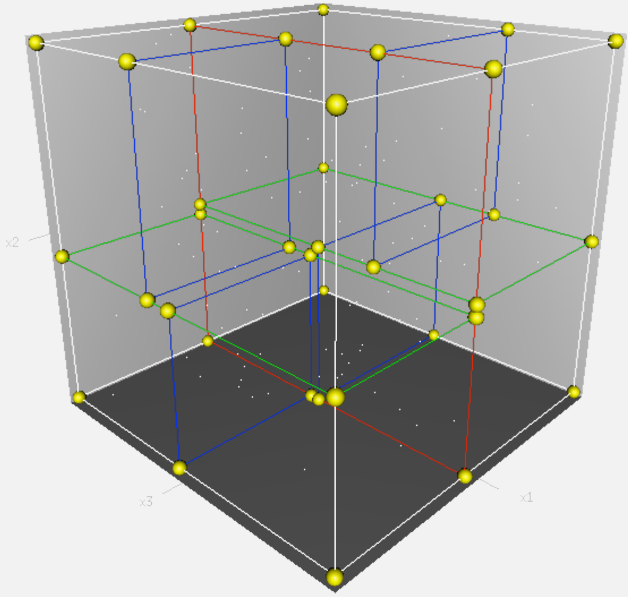


p

level ≡ i (mod k)

points whose i^{th} coordinate is less than p's

points whose i^{th} coordinate is greater than p's



Efficient, simple data structure for processing k-dimensional data.

- Widely used.
- Discovered by an undergrad in an algorithms class!
- Adapts well to high-dimensional and clustered data.

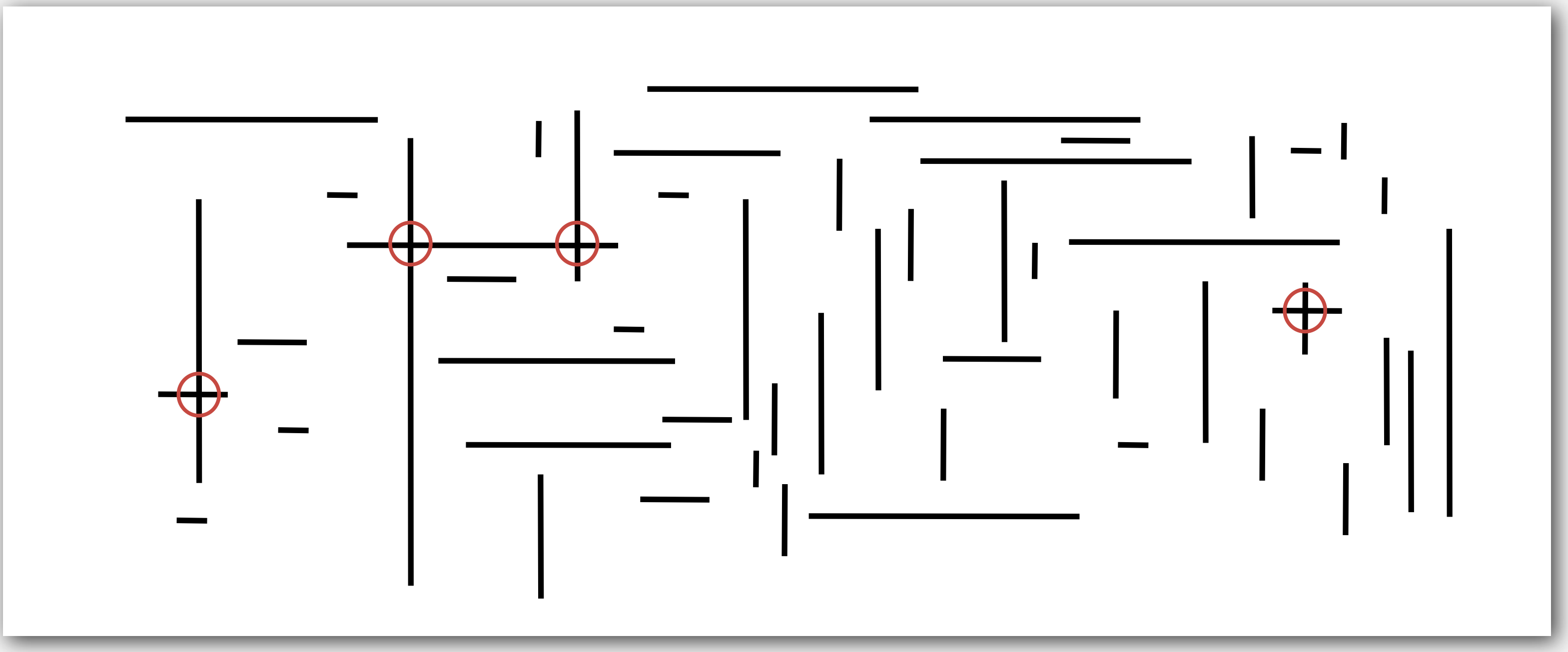
- range search
- space partitioning trees
- **intersection search**

Search for intersections

Problem. Find all intersecting pairs among N geometric objects.

Applications. CAD, games, movies, virtual reality.

Simple version. 2D, all objects are horizontal or vertical line segments.

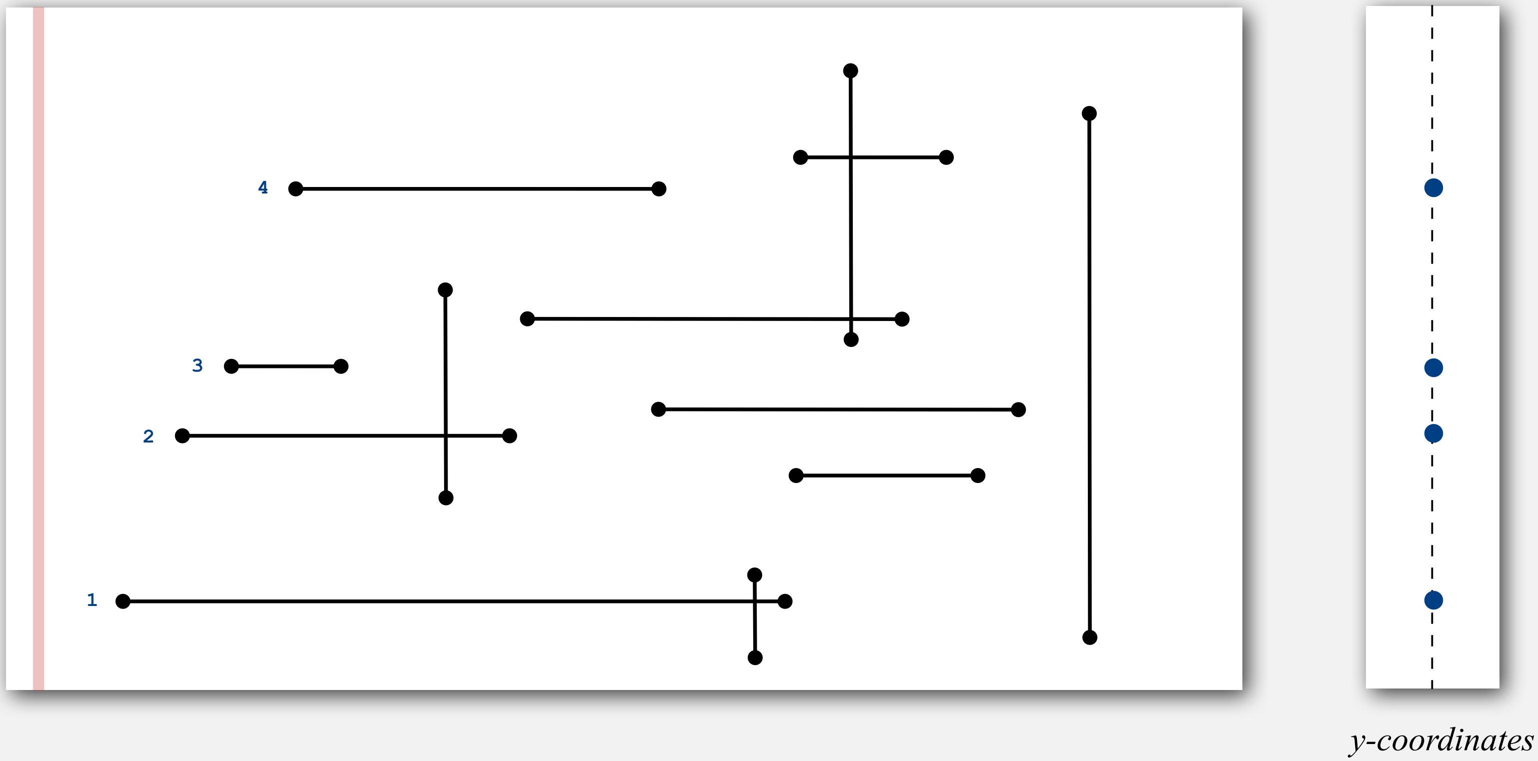


Brute force. Test all $\Theta(N^2)$ pairs of line segments for intersection.

Orthogonal segment intersection search: sweep-line algorithm

Sweep vertical line from left to right.

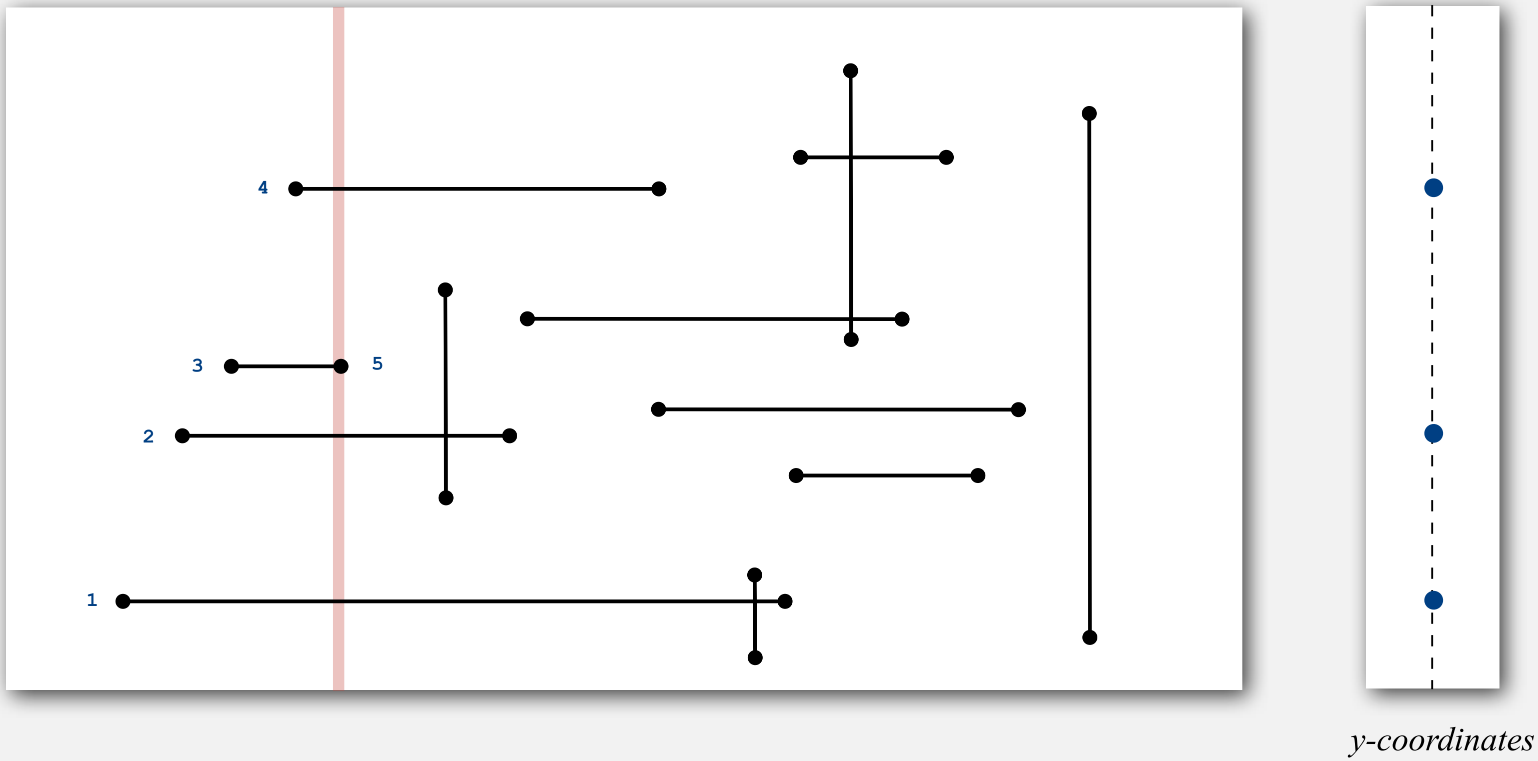
- x-coordinates define events.
- Left endpoint of h-segment: insert y-coordinate into ST.



Orthogonal segment intersection search: sweep-line algorithm

Sweep vertical line from left to right.

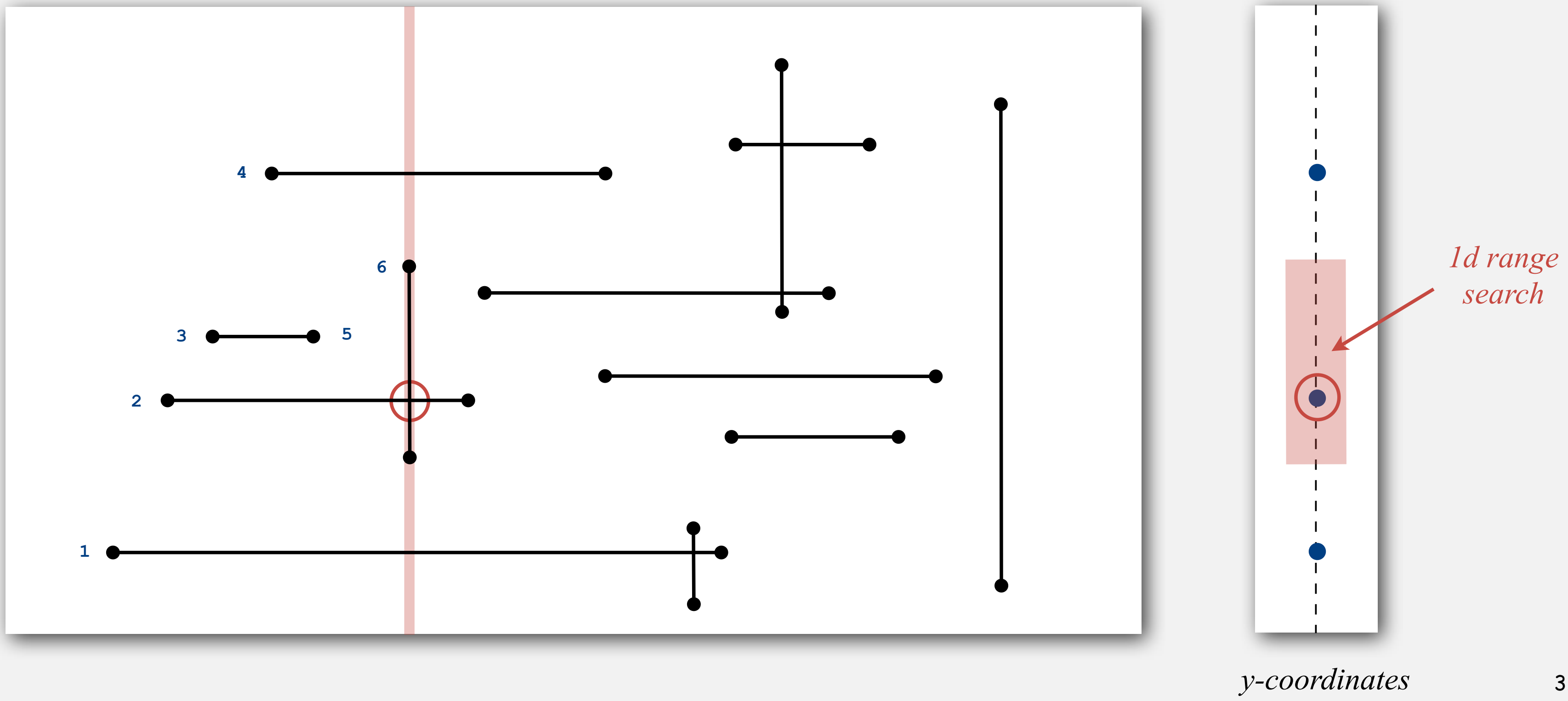
- x-coordinates define events.
- Left endpoint of h-segment: insert y-coordinate into ST.
- Right endpoint of h-segment: remove y-coordinate from ST.



Orthogonal segment intersection search: sweep-line algorithm

Sweep vertical line from left to right.

- x-coordinates define events.
- Left endpoint of h-segment: insert y-coordinate into ST.
- Right endpoint of h-segment: remove y-coordinate from ST.
- v-segment: range search for interval of y endpoints.



Orthogonal segment intersection search: sweep-line algorithm

Reduces 2D orthogonal segment intersection search to 1D range search!

Running time of sweep line algorithm.

• Put x-coordinates on a PQ (or sort).	O(N log N)
• Insert y-coordinate into ST.	O(N log N)
• Delete y-coordinate from ST.	O(N log N)
• Range search.	O(R + N log N)

N = # line segments
R = # intersections

Efficiency relies on judicious use of data structures.

Remark. Sweep-line solution extends to 3D and more general shapes.

Immutable h-v segment data type

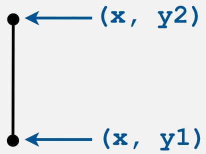
```
public final class SegmentHV implements Comparable<SegmentHV>
{
   public final int x1, y1;
   public final int x2, y2;

   public SegmentHV(int x1, int y1, int x2, int y2)
   {  ...  }

   public boolean isHorizontal()
   {  ...  }
   public boolean isVertical()
   {  ...  }

   public int compareTo(SegmentHV that)
   {  ...  }
}
```

constructor

is segment horizontal?
is segment vertical?

compare by x-coordinate;
break ties by y-coordinate

horizontal segment



vertical segment

Sweep-line event subclass

```
private class Event implements Comparable<Event>
{
   private int time;
   private SegmentHV segment;

   public Event(int time, SegmentHV segment)
   {
      this.time    = time;
      this.segment = segment;
   }

   public int compareTo(Event that)
   {  return this.time - that.time;   }
}
```

Sweep-line algorithm: initialize events

```
MinPQ<Event> pq = new MinPQ<Event>();

for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
{
   if (segments[i].isVertical())
   {
      Event e = new Event(segments[i].x1, segments[i]);
      pq.insert(e);
   }

   else if (segments[i].isHorizontal())
   {
      Event e1 = new Event(segments[i].x1, segments[i]);
      Event e2 = new Event(segments[i].x2, segments[i]);
      pq.insert(e1);
      pq.insert(e2);
   }
}
```

initialize PQ

vertical segment

horizontal segment

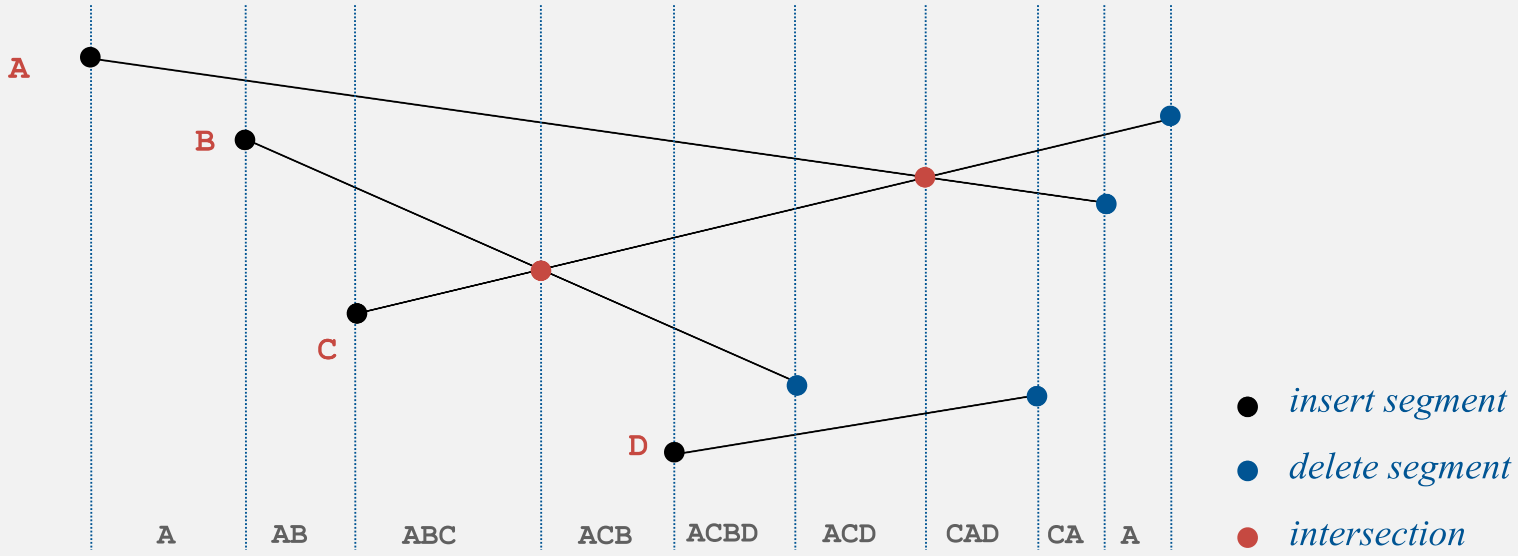
Sweep-line algorithm: simulate the sweep line

```
int INF = Integer.MAX_VALUE;

SET<SegmentHV> set = new SET<SegmentHV>();

while (!pq.isEmpty())
{
   Event event = pq.delMin();
   int sweep = event.time;
   SegmentHV segment = event.segment;

   if (segment.isVertical())
   {
      SegmentHV seg1, seg2;
      seg1 = new SegmentHV(-INF, segment.y1, -INF, segment.y1);
      seg2 = new SegmentHV(+INF, segment.y2, +INF, segment.y2);
      for (SegmentHV seg : set.range(seg1, seg2))
          StdOut.println(segment + " intersects " + seg);
   }

   else if (sweep == segment.x1) set.add(segment);
   else if (sweep == segment.x2) set.remove(segment);
}
```

General line segment intersection search

Extend sweep-line algorithm

- Maintain segments that intersect sweep line ordered by y-coordinate.
- Intersections can only occur between adjacent segments.
- Add/delete line segment ⇒ one new pair of adjacent segments.
- Intersection ⇒ swap adjacent segments.



order of segments that intersect sweep line

Line segment intersection: implementation

Efficient implementation of sweep line algorithm.

- Maintain PQ of important x-coordinates: endpoints and intersections.
- Maintain set of segments intersecting sweep line, sorted by y.
- O(R log N + N log N).

↑

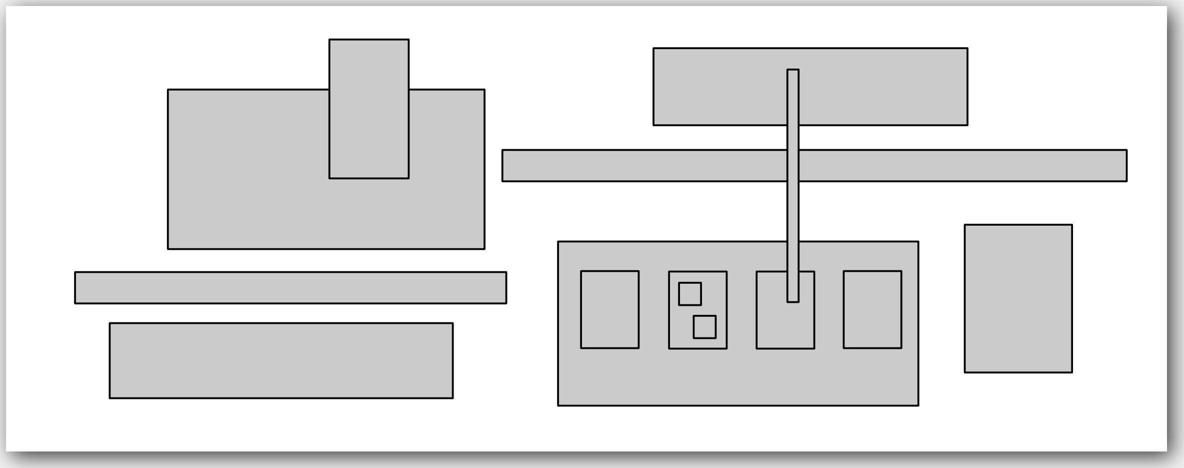
to support "next largest"
and "next smallest" queries

Implementation issues.

- Degeneracy.
- Floating point precision.
- Use PQ, not presort (intersection events are unknown ahead of time).

Rectangle intersection search

Goal. Find all intersections among h-v rectangles.



Application. Design-rule checking in VLSI circuits.

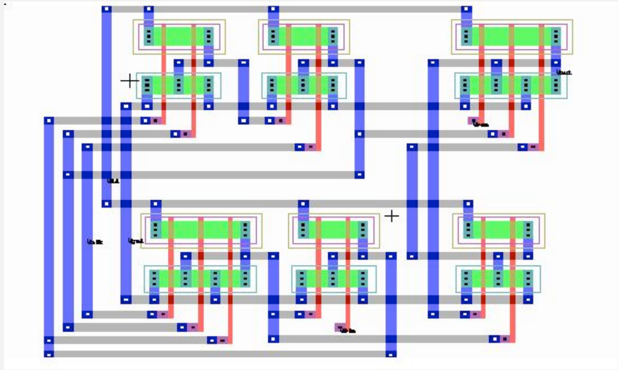
Microprocessors and geometry

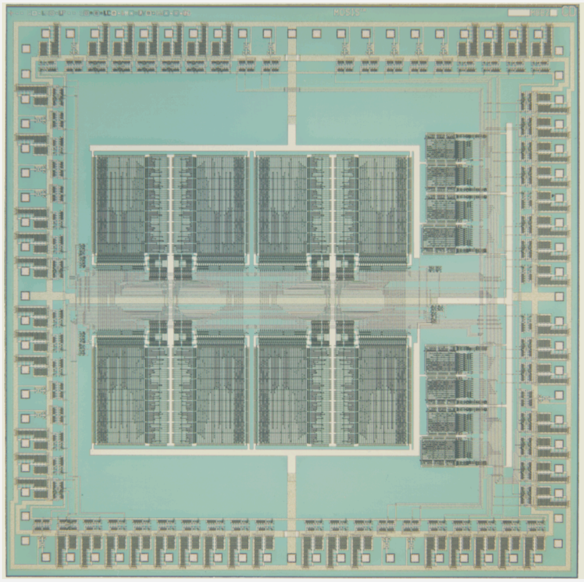
Early 1970s. microprocessor design became a geometric problem.

- Very Large Scale Integration (VLSI).
- Computer-Aided Design (CAD).

Design-rule checking.

- Certain wires cannot intersect.
- Certain spacing needed between different types of wires.
- Debugging = rectangle intersection search.





Algorithms and Moore's law

"Moore's law." Processing power doubles every 18 months.

- 197x: need to check N rectangles.
- 197(x+1.5): need to check 2N rectangles on a 2x-faster computer.

Bootstrapping. We get to use the faster computer for bigger circuits.

But bootstrapping is not enough if using a quadratic algorithm:

- 197x: takes M days.
- 197(x+1.5): takes (4M)/2 = 2M days. (!)

quadratic algorithm

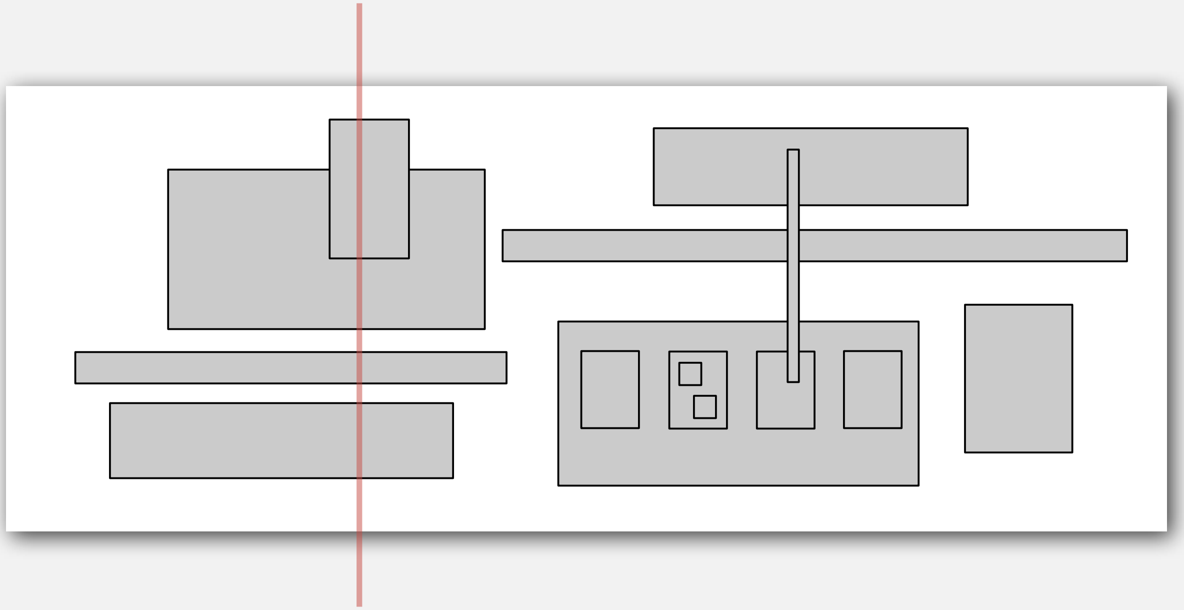
2x-faster computer

Bottom line. Linearithmic CAD algorithm is necessary to sustain Moore's Law.

Rectangle intersection search

Sweep vertical line from left to right.

- x-coordinates of rectangles define events.
- Maintain set of y-intervals intersecting sweep line.
- Left endpoint: search set for y-interval; insert y-interval.
- Right endpoint: delete y-interval.



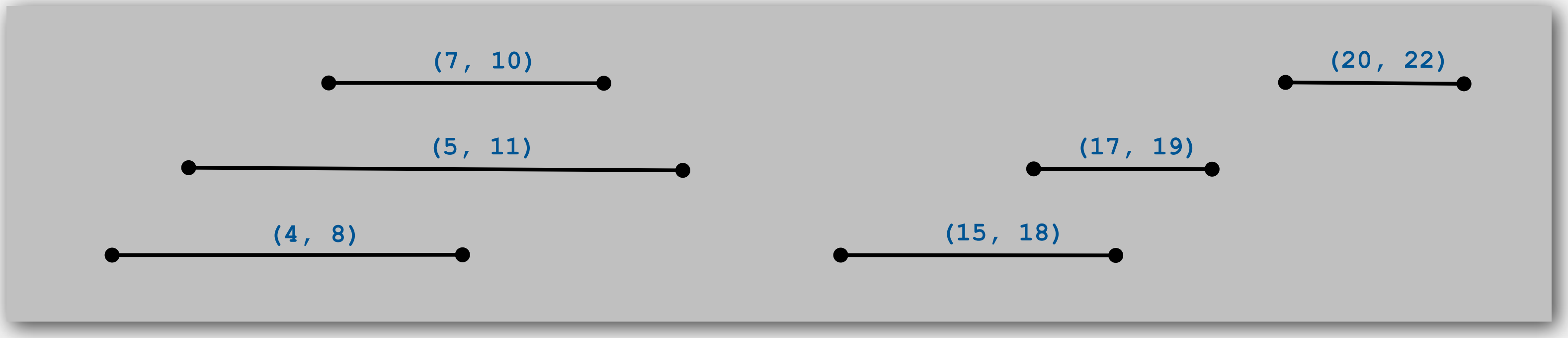
Interval search trees

operation	brute	interval search tree	best in theory
insert interval	1	log N	log N
delete interval	N	log N	log N
find an interval that intersects (lo, hi)	N	log N	log N
find all intervals that intersects (lo, hi)	N	R log N	R + log N

augmented red-black tree

N = # intervals

R = # intersections



Rectangle intersection search: costs summary

Reduces 2D orthogonal rectangle intersection search to 1D interval search!

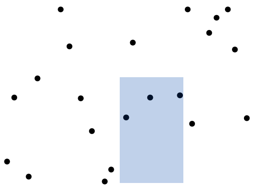
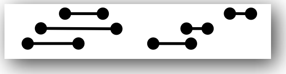
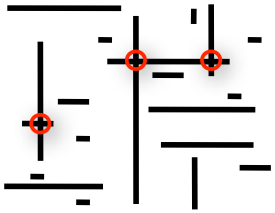
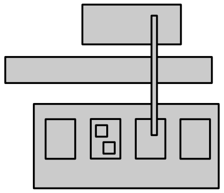
Running time of sweep line algorithm.

• Put x-coordinates on a PQ (or sort).	O(N log N)
• Insert y-interval into ST.	O(N log N)
• Delete y-interval from ST.	O(N log N)
• Interval search.	O(R + N log N)

N = # rectangles
R = # intersections

Efficiency relies on judicious use of data structures.

Geometric search summary: algorithms of the day

1D range search		BST
kD range search		kD tree
1D interval intersection search		interval search tree
2D orthogonal line intersection search		sweep line reduces to 1D range search
2D orthogonal rectangle intersection search		sweep line reduces to 1D interval intersection search

7.5 Reductions

- designing algorithms
- establishing lower bounds
- intractability

Bird's-eye view

Desiderata. Classify problems according to computational requirements.

complexity	order of growth	examples
linear	N	min, max, median, Burrows-Wheeler transform, …
linearithmic	$N \log N$	sorting, convex hull, closest pair, farthest pair, …
quadratic	N^2	???
	…	
exponential	c^N	???

Frustrating news. Huge number of problems have defied classification.

Bird's-eye view

Desiderata. Classify problems according to computational requirements.

Desiderata'.

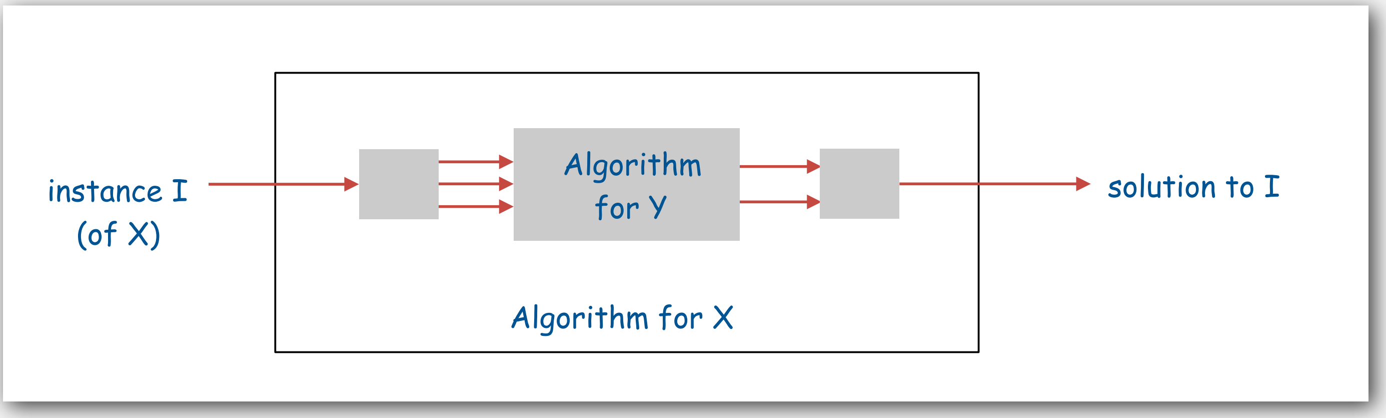
Suppose we could (couldn't) solve problem X efficiently.

What else could (couldn't) we solve efficiently?

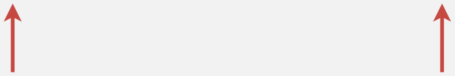
> *" Give me a lever long enough and a fulcrum on which to place it, and I shall move the world. "* — *Archimedes*

Reduction

Def. Problem X reduces to problem Y if you can use an algorithm that solves Y to help solve X.



Cost of solving X = total cost of solving Y + cost of reduction.

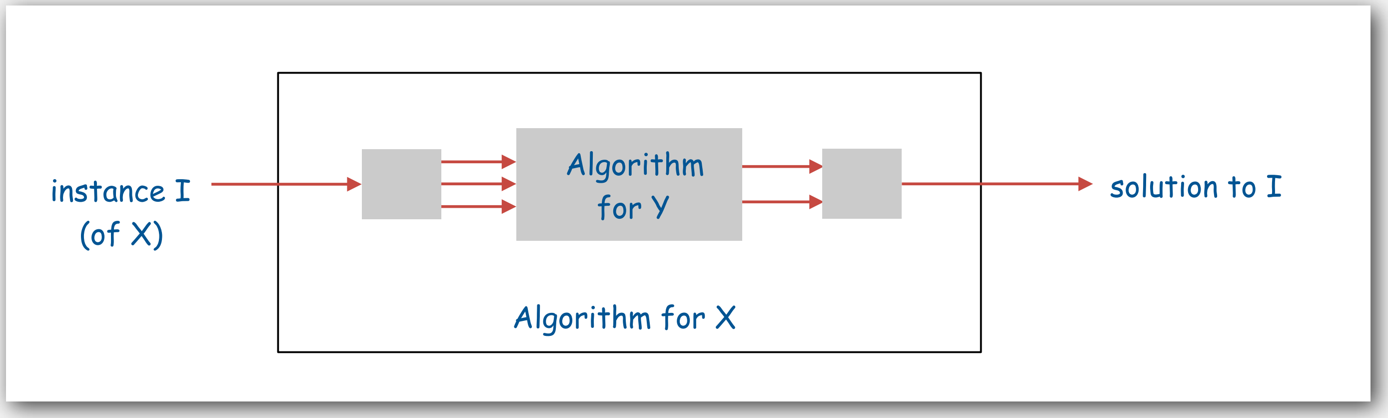


perhaps many calls to Y
on problems of different sizes

preprocessing and postprocessing

Reduction

Def. Problem X reduces to problem Y if you can use an algorithm that solves Y to help solve X.



Ex 1. [element distinctness reduces to sorting]

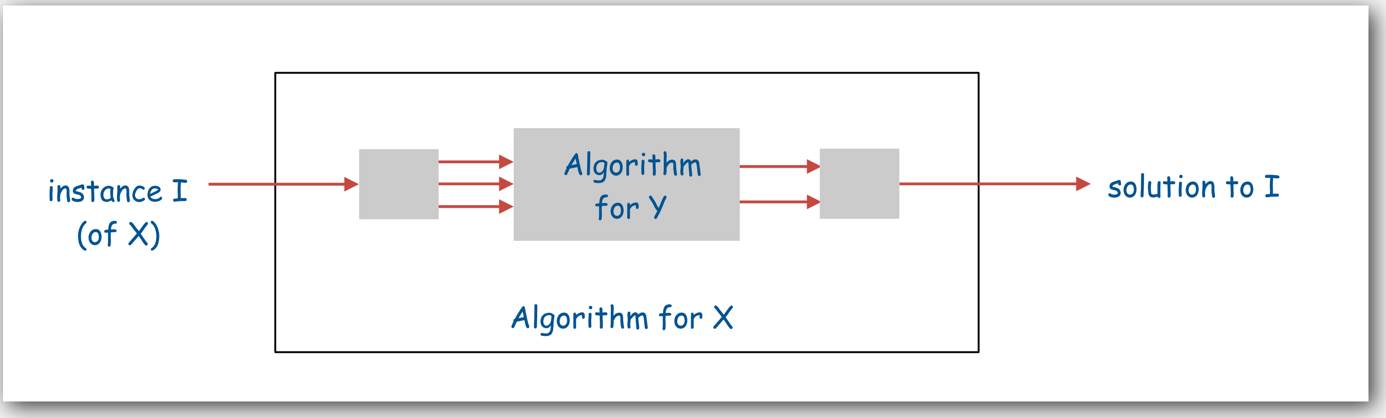
To solve element distinctness on N integers:

- Sort N integers.
- Check adjacent pairs for equality.

Cost of solving element distinctness. $\overset{\text{cost of sorting}}{N \log N} + \overset{\text{cost of reduction}}{N}$

Reduction

Def. Problem X reduces to problem Y if you can use an algorithm that solves Y to help solve X.



Ex 2. [3-collinear reduces to sorting]

To solve 3-collinear instance on N points in the plane:

- For each point, sort other points by polar angle.
  - check adjacent triples for collinearity

Cost of solving 3-collinear. $\underbrace{N^2 \log N}_{\text{cost of sorting}} + \underbrace{N^2}_{\text{cost of reduction}}$.

- designing algorithms
- establishing lower bounds
- intractability

Reduction: design algorithms

Def. Problem X reduces to problem Y if you can use an algorithm that solves Y to help solve X.

Design algorithm. Given algorithm for Y, can also solve X.

Ex.

- Element distinctness reduces to sorting.
- 3-collinear reduces to sorting.
- PERT reduces to topological sort. [see digraph lecture]
- h-v line intersection reduces to 1D range searching. [see geometry lecture]
- Burrows-Wheeler transform reduces to suffix sort. [see assignment 8]

Mentality. Since I know how to solve Y, can I use that algorithm to solve X?

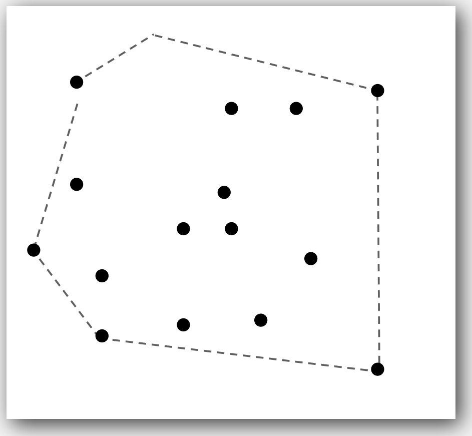
↑

programmer's version: I have code for Y. Can I use it for X?

Convex hull reduces to sorting

Sorting. Given N distinct integers, rearrange them in ascending order.

Convex hull. Given N points in the plane, identify the extreme points of the convex hull (in counter-clockwise order).



convex hull

```
1251432
2861534
3988818
4190745
13546464
89885444
43434213
34435312
```

sorting

Proposition. Convex hull reduces to sorting.

Pf. Graham scan algorithm.

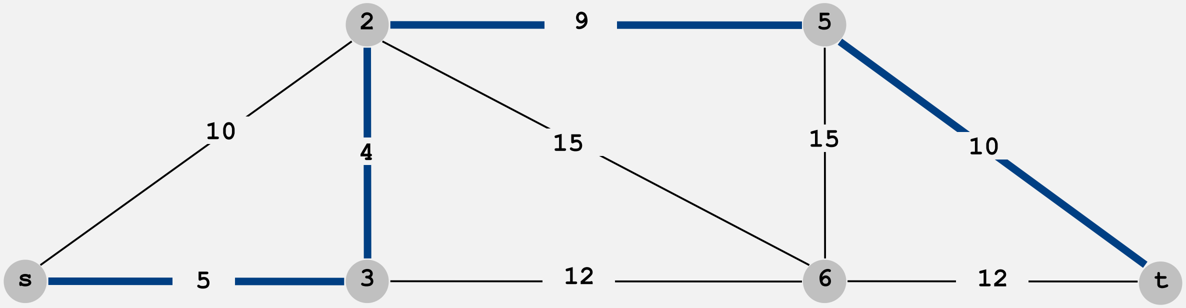
cost of sorting

cost of reduction

Cost of convex hull. $N \log N + N$.

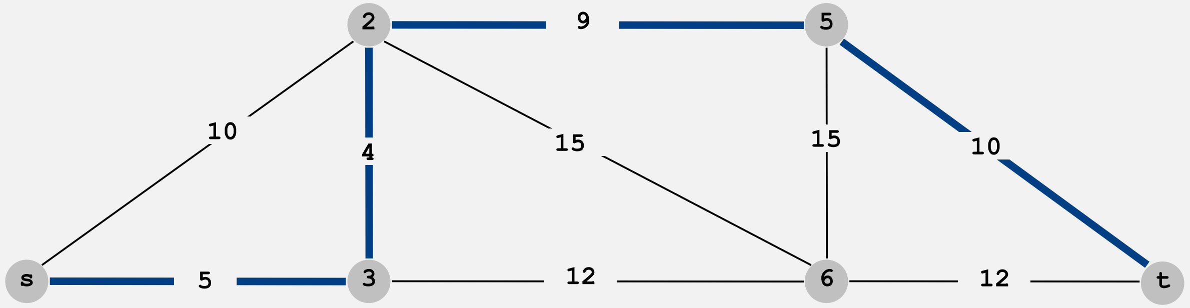
Shortest path on graphs and digraphs

Proposition. Undirected shortest path (with nonnegative weights) reduces to directed shortest path.

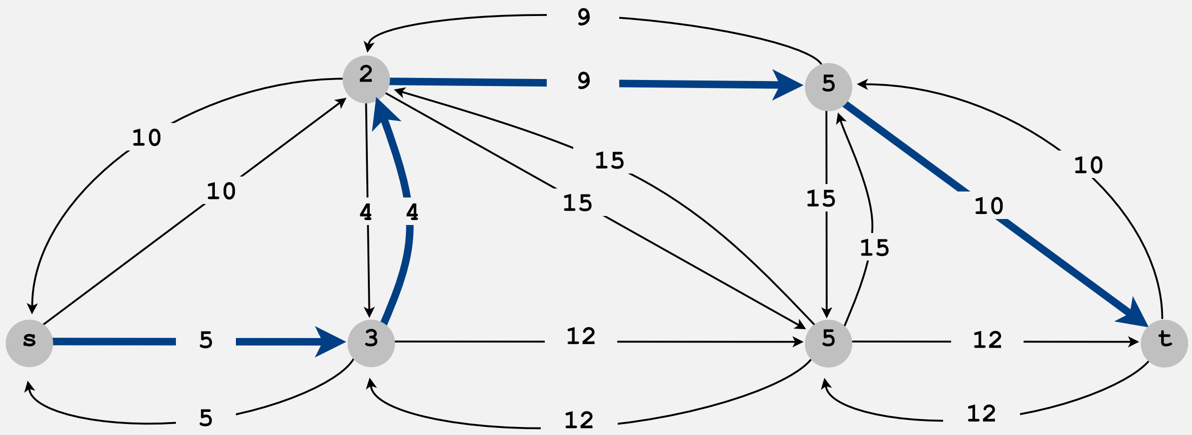


Shortest path on graphs and digraphs

Proposition. Undirected shortest path (with nonnegative weights) reduces to directed shortest path.

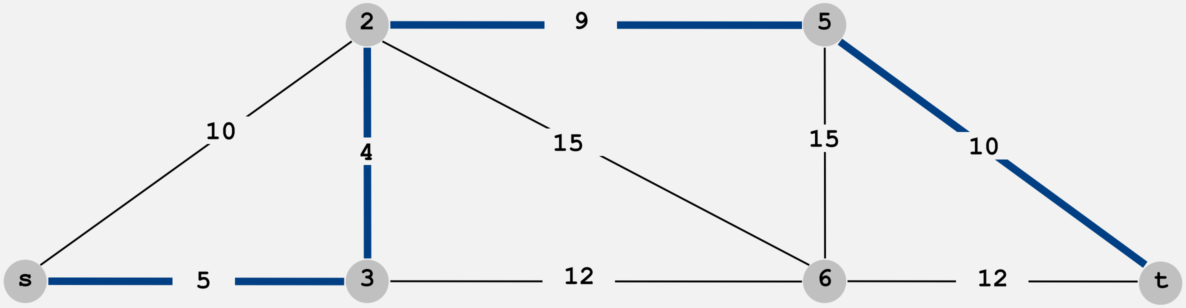


Pf. Replace each undirected edge by two directed edges.



Shortest path on graphs and digraphs

Proposition. Undirected shortest path (with nonnegative weights) reduces to directed shortest path.



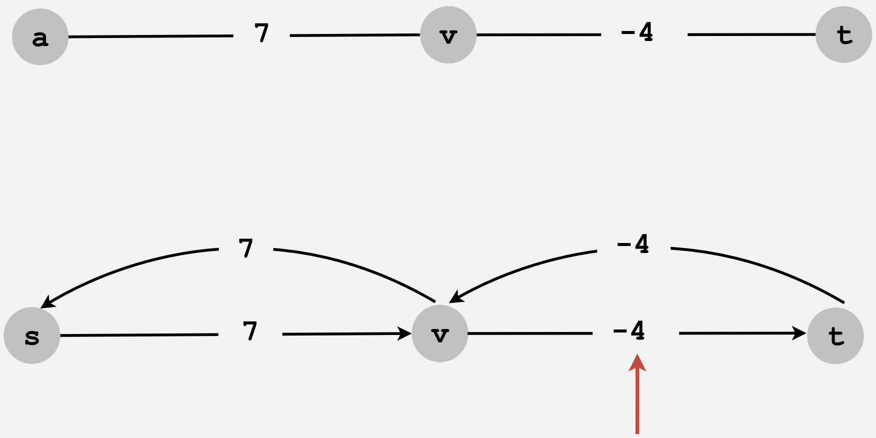
Cost of undirected shortest path. E log E + E.

cost of shortest path in digraph

cost of reduction

Shortest path with negative weights

Caveat. Reduction is invalid in networks with negative weights (even if no negative cycles).

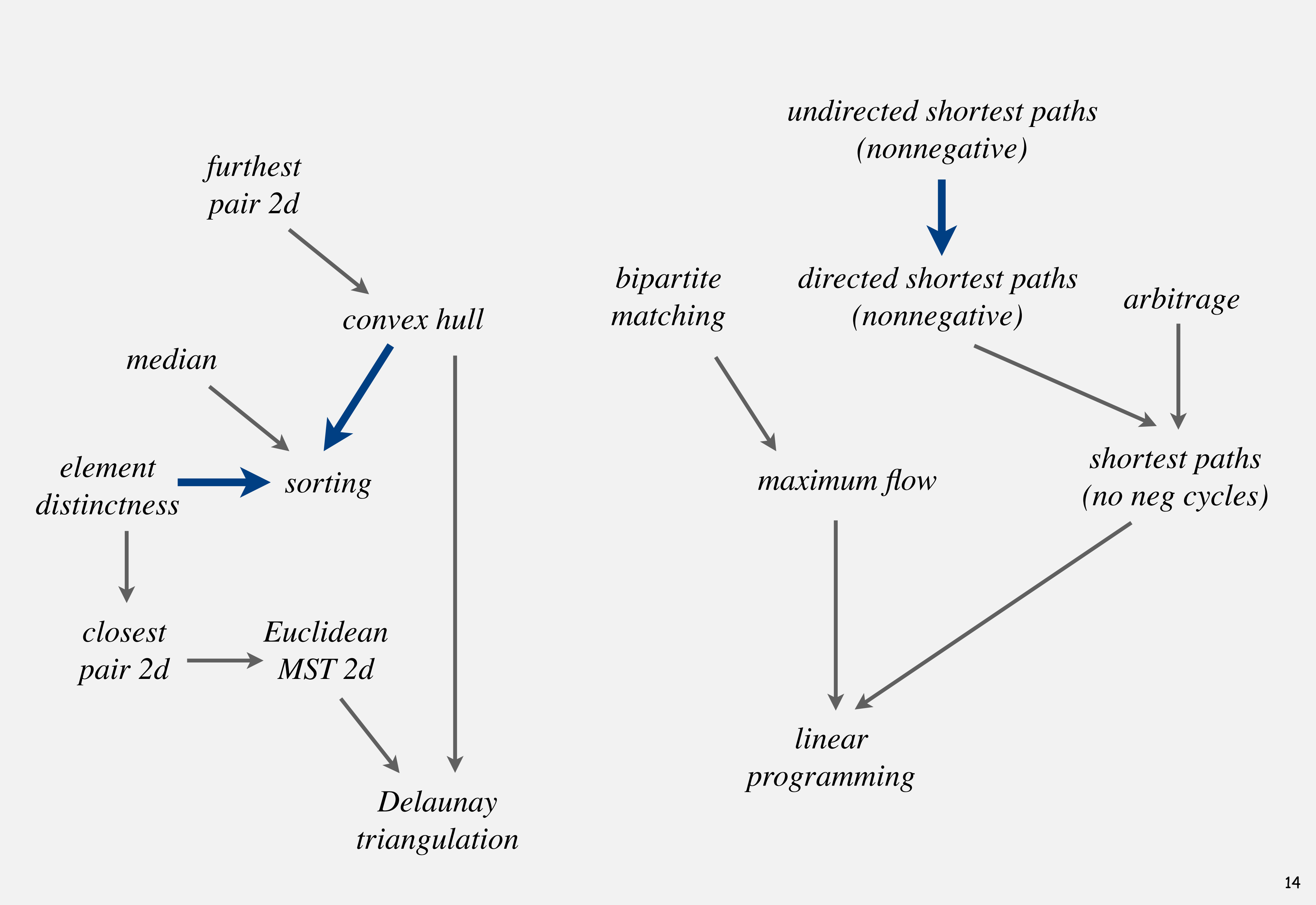


reduction creates
negative cycles

Remark. Can still solve shortest path problem in undirected graphs (if no negative cycles), but need more sophisticated techniques.

reduces to weighted
non-bipartite matching (!)

Some reductions involving familiar problems



- designing algorithms
- **linear programming**
- establishing lower bounds
- establishing intractability
- classifying problems

Linear Programming

What is it? [see ORF 307]

- Quintessential tool for optimal allocation of scarce resources
- Powerful and general problem-solving method

Why is it significant?

- Widely applicable.
- Dominates world of industry.
- Fast commercial solvers available: CPLEX, OSL.
- Powerful modeling languages available: AMPL, GAMS.
- Ranked among most important scientific advances of 20th century.

Ex: Delta claims that LP saves $100 million per year.

Present context. Many important problems reduce to LP.

Applications

Agriculture. Diet problem.

Computer science. Compiler register allocation, data mining.

Electrical engineering. VLSI design, optimal clocking.

Energy. Blending petroleum products.

Economics. Equilibrium theory, two-person zero-sum games.

Environment. Water quality management.

Finance. Portfolio optimization.

Logistics. Supply-chain management.

Management. Hotel yield management.

Marketing. Direct mail advertising.

Manufacturing. Production line balancing, cutting stock.

Medicine. Radioactive seed placement in cancer treatment.

Operations research. Airline crew assignment, vehicle routing.

Physics. Ground states of 3-D Ising spin glasses.

Plasma physics. Optimal stellarator design.

Telecommunication. Network design, Internet routing.

Sports. Scheduling ACC basketball, handicapping horse races.

Linear programming

Model problem as maximizing an objective function subject to constraints.

Input: real numbers a_{ij}, c_j, and b_i.

Output: real numbers x_j.

n variables

maximize $c_1 x_1 + c_2 x_2 + \ldots + c_n x_n$

subject to the constraints

m equations

$$
\begin{aligned}
a_{11} x_1 + a_{12} x_2 + \ldots + a_{1n} x_n &\le b_1 \\
a_{21} x_1 + a_{22} x_2 + \ldots + a_{2n} x_n &\le b_2 \\
&\ldots \\
a_{m1} x_1 + a_{m2} x_2 + \ldots + a_{mn} x_n &\le b_m \\
x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n &\ge 0
\end{aligned}
$$

matrix version

maximize $c^T x$

subject to the constraints

$$
\begin{aligned}
A x &\le b \\
x &\ge 0
\end{aligned}
$$

Solutions. [see ORF 307]

- Simplex algorithm has been used for decades to solve practical LP instances.
- Newer algorithms guarantee fast solution.

Linear programming

"Linear programming"

- Process of formulating an LP model for a problem.
- Solution to LP for a specific problem gives solution to the problem.
- Equivalent to "reducing the problem to LP."

1. Identify variables.
2. Define constraints (inequalities and equations).
3. Define objective function.

Examples:

- Shortest paths
- Maximum flow.
- Bipartite matching.

  . . .

- [a very long list]

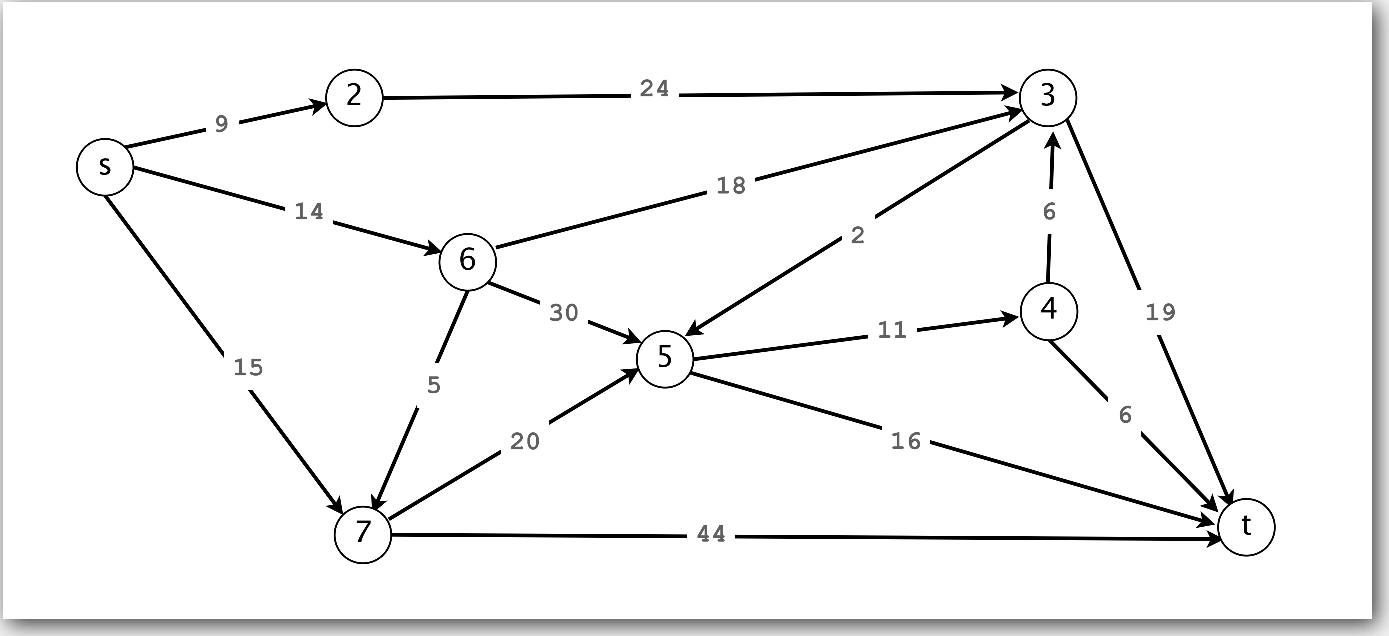
stay tuned (next)

Single-source shortest-paths problem (revisited)

Given. Weighted digraph, single source s.

Distance from s to v. Length of the shortest path from s to v .

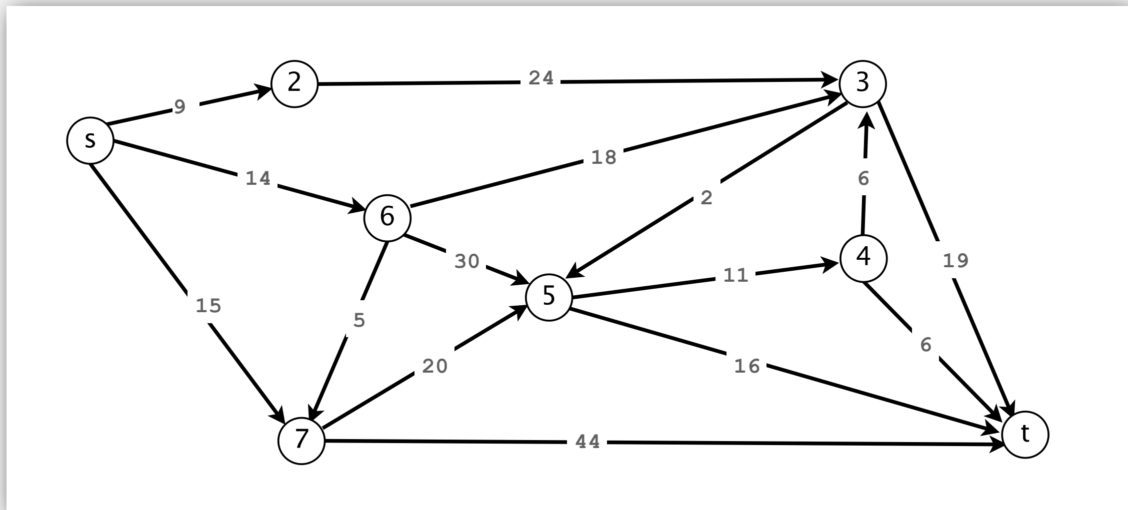
Goal. Find distance (and shortest path) from s to every other vertex.



Single-source shortest-paths problem reduces to LP

LP formulation.

- One variable per vertex, one inequality per edge.
- Interpretation: x_i = length of shortest path from s to i.



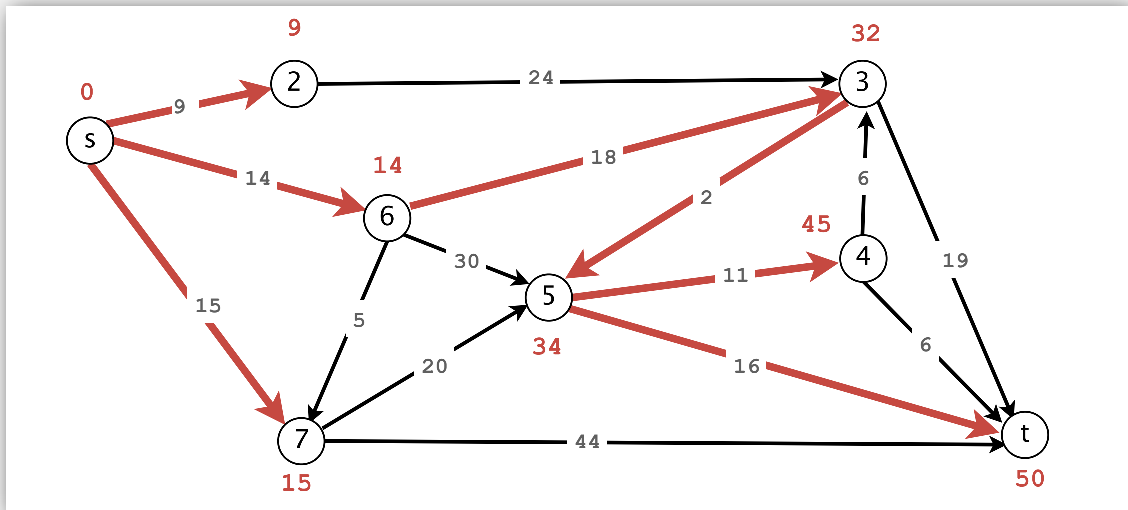
maximize	x_t
subject to the constraints	$x_s + 9 \geq x_2$
	$x_s + 14 \geq x_6$
	$x_s + 15 \geq x_7$
	$x_2 + 24 \geq x_3$
	$x_3 + 2 \geq x_5$
	$x_3 + 19 \geq x_t$
	$x_4 + 6 \geq x_3$
	$x_4 + 6 \geq x_t$
	$x_5 + 11 \geq x_4$
	$x_5 + 16 \geq x_t$
	$x_6 + 18 \geq x_3$
	$x_6 + 30 \geq x_5$
	$x_6 + 5 \geq x_7$
	$x_7 + 20 \geq x_5$
	$x_7 + 44 \geq x_t$
	$x_s = 0$

Single-source shortest-paths problem reduces to LP

LP formulation.

- One variable per vertex, one inequality per edge.
- Interpretation: x_i = length of shortest path from s to i.

maximize	x_t
subject to the constraints	$x_s + 9 \geq x_2$
	$x_s + 14 \geq x_6$
	$x_s + 15 \geq x_7$
	$x_2 + 24 \geq x_3$
	$x_3 + 2 \geq x_5$
	$x_3 + 19 \geq x_t$
	$x_4 + 6 \geq x_3$
	$x_4 + 6 \geq x_t$
	$x_5 + 11 \geq x_4$
	$x_5 + 16 \geq x_t$
	$x_6 + 18 \geq x_3$
	$x_6 + 30 \geq x_5$
	$x_6 + 5 \geq x_7$
	$x_7 + 20 \geq x_5$
	$x_7 + 44 \geq x_t$
	$x_s = 0$



$x_s = 0$

$x_2 = 9$

$x_3 = 32$

$x_4 = 45$

$x_5 = 34$

$x_6 = 14$

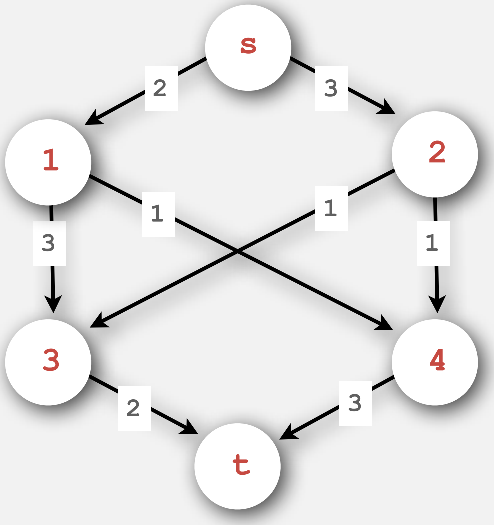
$x_7 = 15$

$x_t = 50$

solution

Maxflow problem

Given: Weighted digraph, source s, destination t.



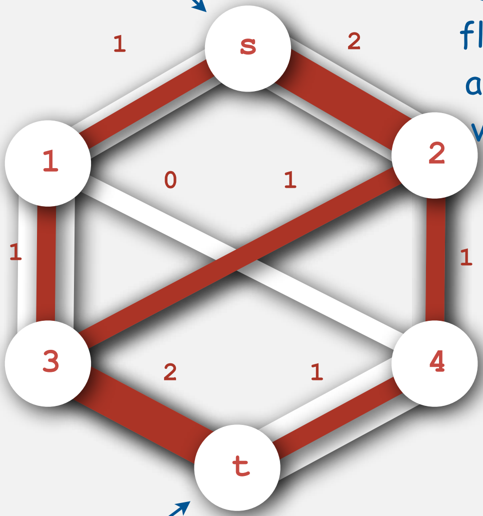
Interpret edge weights as capacities

- Models material flowing through network
- Ex: oil flowing through pipes
- Ex: goods in trucks on roads
- [many other examples]

Flow: A different set of edge weights

- flow does not exceed capacity in any edge
- flow at every vertex satisfies equilibrium

  [flow in equals flow out]



flow out of s is 3

flow in equals flow out at each vertex

flow ≤ capacity in every edge

flow in to t is 3

Goal: Find maximum flow from s to t.

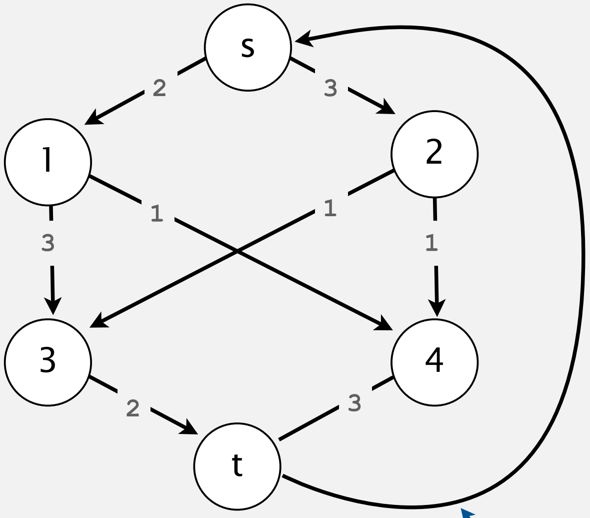
Maximum flow reduces to LP

One variable per edge.
One inequality per edge, one equality per vertex.

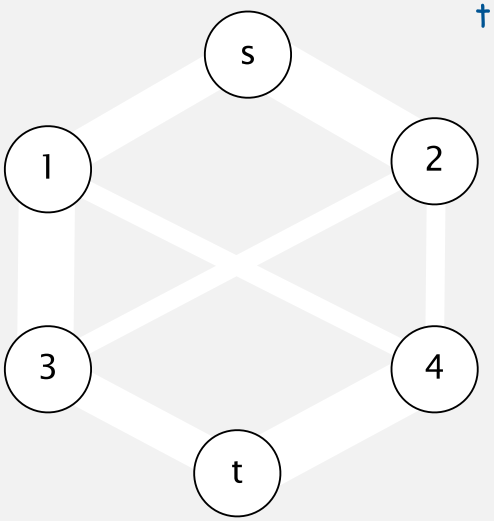
maximize	$x_{3t} + x_{4t}$
subject to the constraints	$x_{s1} \le 2$
	$x_{s2} \le 3$
	$x_{13} \le 3$
	$x_{14} \le 1$
	$x_{23} \le 1$
	$x_{24} \le 1$
	$x_{3t} \le 2$
	$x_{4t} \le 3$
equilibrium constraints	$x_{s1} = x_{13} + x_{14}$
	$x_{s2} = x_{23} + x_{24}$
	$x_{13} + x_{23} = x_{3t}$
	$x_{14} + x_{24} = x_{4t}$
	all $x_{ij} \ge 0$

capacity constraints

interpretation:
x_{ij} = flow in edge i-j



add dummy edge from t to s



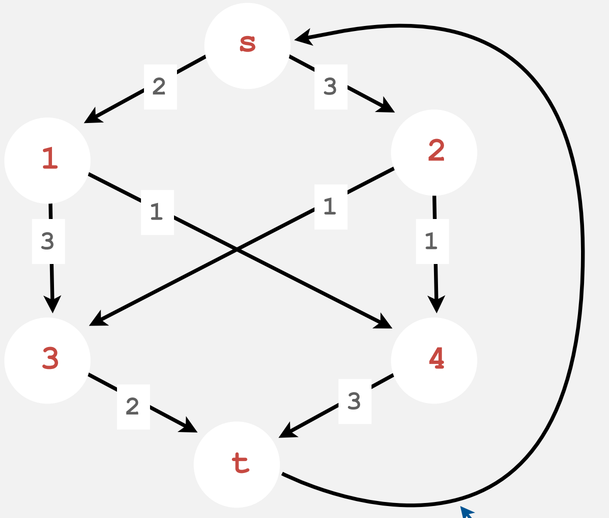
Maxflow problem reduces to LP

One variable per edge.
One inequality per edge, one equality per vertex.

maximize	$x_{3t} + x_{4t}$
subject to the constraints	$x_{s1} \le 2$
	$x_{s2} \le 3$
	$x_{13} \le 3$
	$x_{14} \le 1$
	$x_{23} \le 1$
	$x_{24} \le 1$
	$x_{3t} \le 2$
	$x_{4t} \le 3$
equilibrium constraints	$x_{s1} = x_{13} + x_{14}$
	$x_{s2} = x_{23} + x_{24}$
	$x_{13} + x_{23} = x_{3t}$
	$x_{14} + x_{24} = x_{4t}$
	all $x_{ij} \ge 0$

capacity constraints

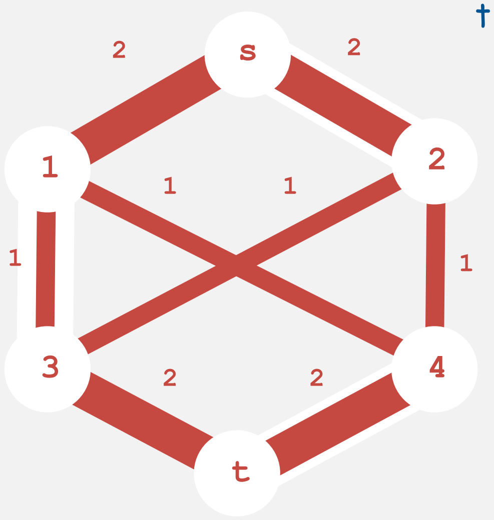
interpretation:
x_{ij} = flow in edge i-j



add dummy edge from t to s

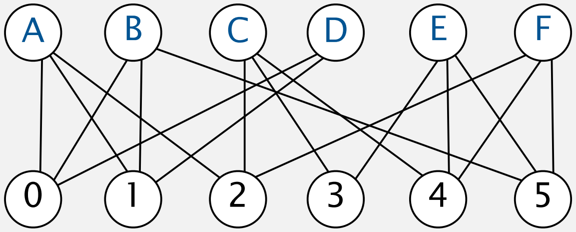
solution

$x_{s1} = 2$
$x_{s2} = 2$
$x_{13} = 1$
$x_{14} = 1$
$x_{23} = 1$
$x_{24} = 1$
$x_{3t} = 2$
$x_{4t} = 2$



Maximum cardinality bipartite matching problem

Bipartite graph. Two sets of vertices; edges connect vertices in one set to the other.



Matching. Set of edges with no vertex appearing twice.

Goal. Find a maximum cardinality matching.

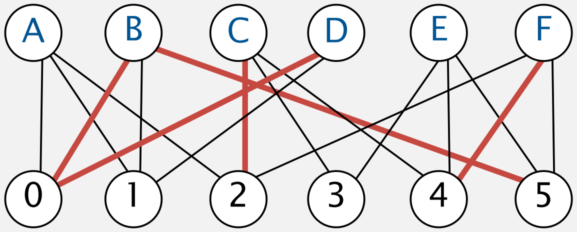
Alice
  Adobe, Apple, Google
Bob
  Adobe, Apple, Yahoo
Carol
  Google, IBM, Sun
Dave
  Adobe, Apple
Eliza
  IBM, Sun, Yahoo
Frank
  Google, Sun, Yahoo

Adobe
  Alice, Bob, Dave
Apple
  Alice, Bob, Dave
Google
  Alice, Carol, Frank
IBM
  Carol, Eliza
Sun
  Carol, Eliza, Frank
Yahoo
  Bob, Eliza, Frank

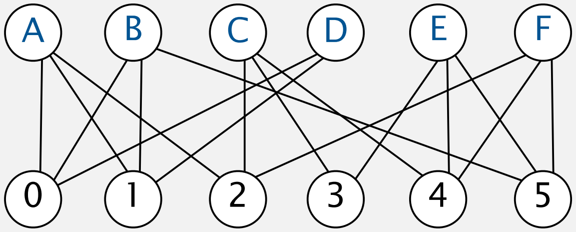
job offers

Interpretation. Mutual preference constraints.

- Ex: people to jobs.
- Ex: Medical students to residence positions.
- Ex: students to writing seminars.
- [many other examples]



Maximum cardinality bipartite matching reduces to LP



LP formulation.

- One variable per edge, one equality per vertex.
- Interpretation: an edge is in matching iff $x_i = 1$.

maximize	$x_{A0} + x_{A1} + x_{A2} + x_{B0} + x_{B1} + x_{B5} + x_{C2} + x_{C3} + x_{C4}$ $+ x_{D0} + x_{D1} + x_{E3} + x_{E4} + x_{E5} + x_{F2} + x_{F4} + x_{F5}$	
subject to the constraints	$x_{A0} + x_{A1} + x_{A2} = 1$	$x_{A0} + x_{B0} + x_{D0} = 1$
	$x_{B0} + x_{B1} + x_{B5} = 1$	$x_{A1} + x_{B1} + x_{D1} = 1$
	$x_{C2} + x_{C3} + x_{C4} = 1$	$x_{A2} + x_{C2} + x_{F2} = 1$
	$x_{D0} + x_{D1} = 1$	$x_{C3} + x_{E3} = 1$
	$x_{E3} + x_{E4} + x_{E5} = 1$	$x_{C4} + x_{E4} + x_{F4} = 1$
	$x_{F2} + x_{F4} + x_{F5} = 1$	$x_{B5} + x_{E5} + x_{F5} = 1$
	all $x_{ij} \ge 0$	

constraints on top vertices (left)
and bottom vertices (right)

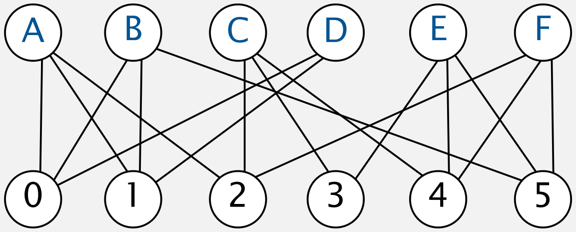
Theorem. [Birkhoff 1946, von Neumann 1953]

crucial point: not always so lucky!

All extreme points of the above polyhedron have integer (0 or 1) coordinates.

Corollary. Can solve bipartite matching problem by solving LP.

Maximum cardinality bipartite matching reduces to LP



LP formulation.

- One variable per edge, one equality per vertex.
- Interpretation: an edge is in matching iff $x_i = 1$.

maximize	$x_{A0} + x_{A1} + x_{A2} + x_{B0} + x_{B1} + x_{B5} + x_{C2} + x_{C3} + x_{C4}$ $+ x_{D0} + x_{D1} + x_{E3} + x_{E4} + x_{E5} + x_{F2} + x_{F4} + x_{F5}$	
subject to the constraints	$x_{A0} + x_{A1} + x_{A2} = 1$	$x_{A0} + x_{B0} + x_{D0} = 1$
	$x_{B0} + x_{B1} + x_{B5} = 1$	$x_{A1} + x_{B1} + x_{D1} = 1$
	$x_{C2} + x_{C3} + x_{C4} = 1$	$x_{A2} + x_{C2} + x_{F2} = 1$
	$x_{D0} + x_{D1} = 1$	$x_{C3} + x_{E3} = 1$
	$x_{E3} + x_{E4} + x_{E5} = 1$	$x_{C4} + x_{E4} + x_{F4} = 1$
	$x_{F2} + x_{F4} + x_{F5} = 1$	$x_{B5} + x_{E5} + x_{F5} = 1$
	all $x_{ij} \geq 0$	

solution

$x_{A1} = 1$

$x_{B5} = 1$

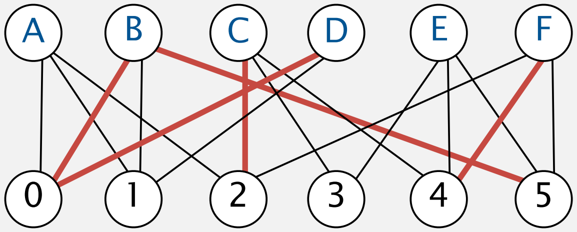
$x_{C2} = 1$

$x_{D0} = 1$

$x_{E3} = 1$

$x_{F4} = 1$

all other $x_{ij} = 0$



Linear programming perspective

Got an optimization problem?

Ex. Shortest paths, maximum flow, matching, ….

Approach 1. Use a specialized algorithm to solve it.

- Algorithms in Java.
- Vast literature on complexity.
- Performance on real problems not always well-understood.

Approach 2. Reduce to a LP model; use a commercial solver.

- A direct mathematical representation of the problem often works.
- Immediate solution to the problem at hand is often available.
- Might miss faster specialized solution, but might not care.

Got an LP solver? Learn to use it!

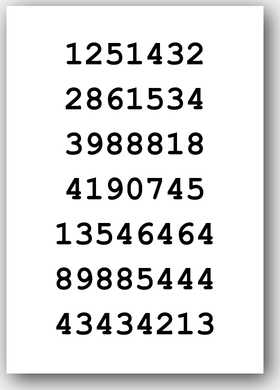
```
% ampl
AMPL Version 20010215 (SunOS 5.7)
ampl: model maxflow.mod;
ampl: data maxflow.dat;
ampl: solve;
CPLEX 7.1.0: optimal solution;
objective 4;
```

- designing algorithms
- establishing lower bounds
- intractability

Bird's-eye view

Goal. Prove that a problem requires a certain number of steps.

Ex. Ω(N log N) lower bound for sorting.



1251432
2861534
3988818
4190745
13546464
89885444
43434213

argument must apply to all
conceivable algorithms

Bad news. Very difficult to establish lower bounds from scratch.

Good news. Can spread Ω(N log N) lower bound to Y by reducing sorting to Y.

assuming cost of reduction
is not too high

Linear-time reductions

Def. Problem X linear-time reduces to problem Y if X can be solved with:

- Linear number of standard computational steps.
- Constant number of calls to Y.

Ex. Almost all of the reductions we've seen so far. [Which one wasn't?]

Establish lower bound:

- If X takes Ω(N log N) steps, then so does Y.
- If X takes $\Omega(N^2)$ steps, then so does Y.

Mentality.

- If I could easily solve Y, then I could easily solve X.
- I can't easily solve X.
- Therefore, I can't easily solve Y.

Lower bound for convex hull

Proposition. In quadratic decision tree model, any algorithm for sorting N integers requires Ω(N log N) steps.

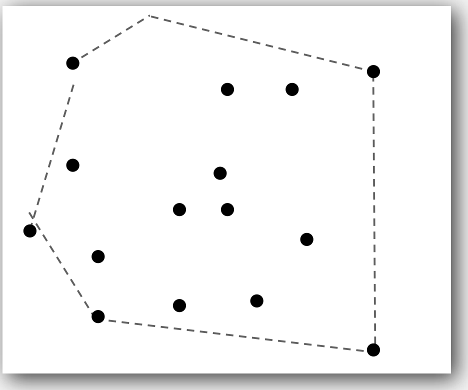
allows quadratic tests of the form:
$x_i < x_j$ or $(x_j - x_i)\ (x_k - x_i) - (x_j\ )\ (x_j - x_i) < 0$

Proposition. Sorting linear-time reduces to convex hull.

Pf. [see next slide]

```
1251432
2861534
3988818
4190745
13546464
89885444
43434213
```

sorting



convex hull

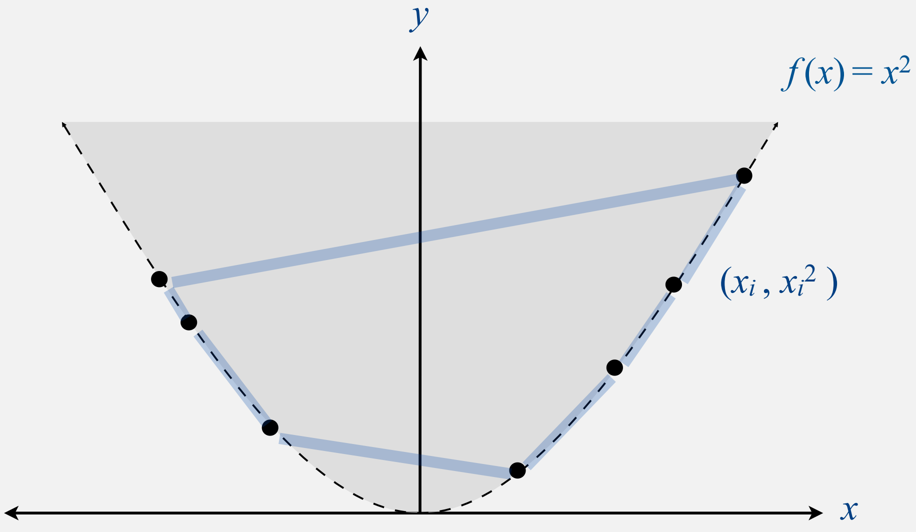
a quadratic test

Implication. Any ccw-based convex hull algorithm requires Ω(N log N) ccw's.

Sorting linear-time reduces to convex hull

Proposition. Sorting linear-time reduces to convex hull.

- Sorting instance: $x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_N$.
- Convex hull instance: $(x_1, x_1^2), (x_2, x_2^2), \ldots, (x_N, x_N^2)$.



Pf.

- Region $\{x : x^2 \geq x\}$ is convex $\Rightarrow$ all points are on hull.
- Starting at point with most negative x, counter-clockwise order of hull points yields integers in ascending order.

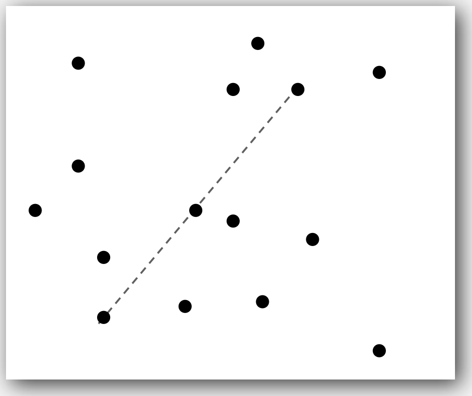
Lower bound for 3-COLLINEAR

3-SUM. Given N distinct integers, are there three that sum to 0?

3-COLLINEAR. Given N distinct points in the plane, are there 3 that all lie on the same line? ← recall Assignment 3

1251432
-2861534
3988818
-4190745
13546464
89885444
-43434213

3-sum



3-collinear

Lower bound for 3-COLLINEAR

3-SUM. Given N distinct integers, are there three that sum to 0?

3-COLLINEAR. Given N distinct points in the plane, are there 3 that all lie on the same line?

Proposition. 3-SUM linear-time reduces to 3-COLLINEAR.

Pf. [see next 2 slide]

Conjecture. Any algorithm for 3-SUM requires $\Omega(N^2)$ steps.

Implication. No sub-quadratic algorithm for 3-COLLINEAR likely.

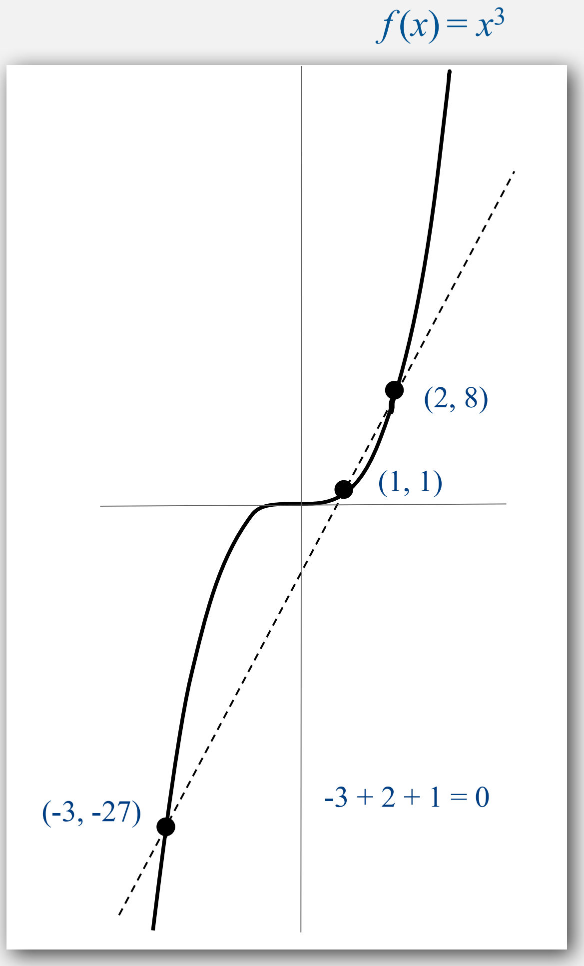
your N^2 log N algorithm was pretty good

3-SUM linear-time reduces to 3-COLLINEAR

Proposition. 3-SUM linear-time reduces to 3-COLLINEAR.

- 3-SUM instance: $x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_N$.
- 3-COLLINEAR instance: $(x_1, x_1^3), (x_2, x_2^3), \ldots, (x_N, x_N^3)$.

Lemma. If $a, b,$ and c are distinct, then $a + b + c = 0$ if and only if $(a, a^3), (b, b^3),$ and (c, c^3) are collinear.



3-SUM linear-time reduces to 3-COLLINEAR

Proposition. 3-SUM linear-time reduces to 3-COLLINEAR.

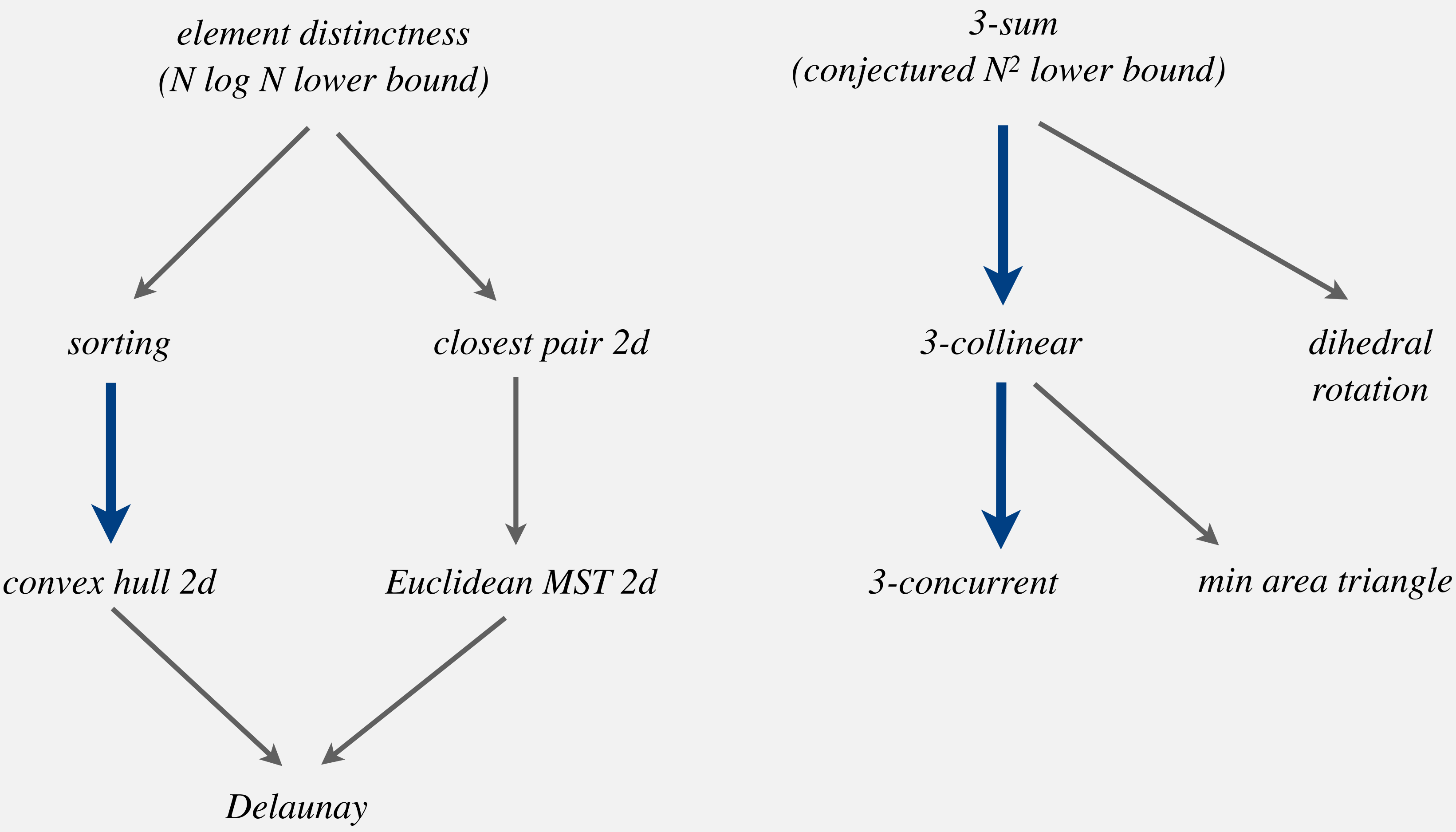
- 3-SUM instance: $x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_N$.
- 3-COLLINEAR instance: $(x_1, x_1^3), (x_2, x_2^3), \ldots, (x_N, x_N^3)$.

Lemma. If a, b, and c are distinct, then $a + b + c = 0$ if and only if (a, a^3), (b, b^3), and (c, c^3) are collinear.

Pf. Three distinct points (a, a^3), (b, b^3), and (c, c^3) are collinear iff:

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= \begin{vmatrix} a & a^3 & 1 \\ b & b^3 & 1 \\ c & c^3 & 1 \end{vmatrix} \\ &= a(b^3 - c^3) - b(a^3 - c^3) + c(a^3 - b^3) \\ &= (a - b)(b - c)(c - a)(a + b + c) \end{aligned}$$

More linear-time reductions and lower bounds



element distinctness
($N \log N$ lower bound)

sorting

closest pair 2d

convex hull 2d

Euclidean MST 2d

Delaunay

3-sum
(conjectured N^2 lower bound)

3-collinear

dihedral rotation

3-concurrent

min area triangle

Establishing lower bounds: summary

Establishing lower bounds through reduction is an important tool in guiding algorithm design efforts.

Q. How to convince yourself no linear-time convex hull algorithm exists?
A1. [hard way] Long futile search for a linear-time algorithm.
A2. [easy way] Linear-time reduction from sorting.

Q. How to convince yourself no sub-quadratic 3-COLLINEAR algorithm exists.
A1. [hard way] Long futile search for a sub-quadratic algorithm.
A2. [easy way] Linear-time reduction from 3-SUM.

- designing algorithms
- establishing lower bounds
- **intractability**

Bird's-eye view

Def. A problem is intractable if it can't be solved in polynomial time.

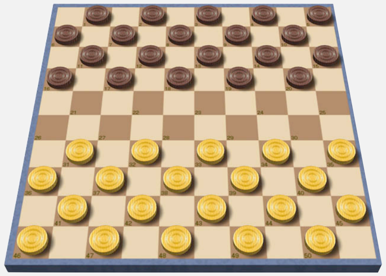
Desiderata. Prove that a problem is intractable.

Two problems that require exponential time.

input size = c + lg K

- Given a constant-size program, does it halt in at most K steps?
- Given N-by-N checkers board position, can the first player force a win?

using forced capture rule



Frustrating news. Few successes.

3-satisfiability

Literal. A boolean variable or its negation. x_i or $\neg x_i$

Clause. An *or* of 3 distinct literals. $C_1 = (\neg x_1 \vee x_2 \vee x_3)$

Conjunctive normal form. An *and* of clauses. $\Phi = (C_1 \wedge C_2 \wedge C_3 \wedge C_4 \wedge C_5)$

3-SAT. Given a CNF formula Φ consisting of k clauses over n literals, does it have a satisfying truth assignment?

$$\Phi \;=\; (\neg x_1 \vee x_2 \vee x_3) \wedge (x_1 \vee \neg x_2 \vee x_3) \wedge (\neg x_1 \vee \neg x_2 \vee \neg x_3) \wedge (\neg x_1 \vee \neg x_2 \vee x_4) \wedge (\neg x_2 \vee x_3 \vee x_4)$$

yes instance

x_1	x_2	x_3	x_4
T	T	F	T

$$(\neg T \vee T \vee F) \wedge (T \vee \neg T \vee F) \wedge (\neg T \vee \neg T \vee \neg F) \wedge (\neg T \vee \neg T \vee T) \wedge (\neg T \vee F \vee T)$$

Applications. Circuit design, program correctness, ...

3-satisfiability is believed intractable

Q. How to solve an instance of 3-SAT with n variables?

A. Exhaustive search: try all 2^n truth assignments.

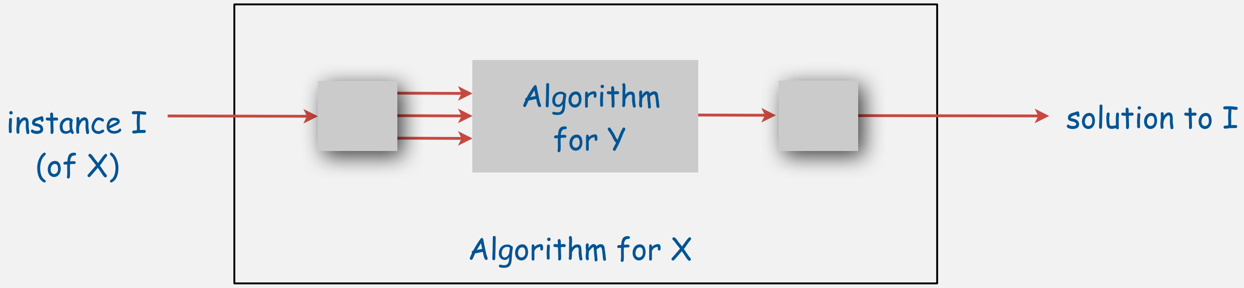
Q. Can we do anything substantially more clever?

Conjecture (P ≠ NP). 3-SAT is intractable (no poly-time algorithm).

Polynomial-time reductions

Def. Problem X poly-time (Cook) reduces to problem Y if X can be solved with:

- Polynomial number of standard computational steps.
- Polynomial number of calls to Y.



Establish intractability. If 3-SAT poly-time reduces to Y, then Y is intractable. (assuming 3-SAT is intractable)

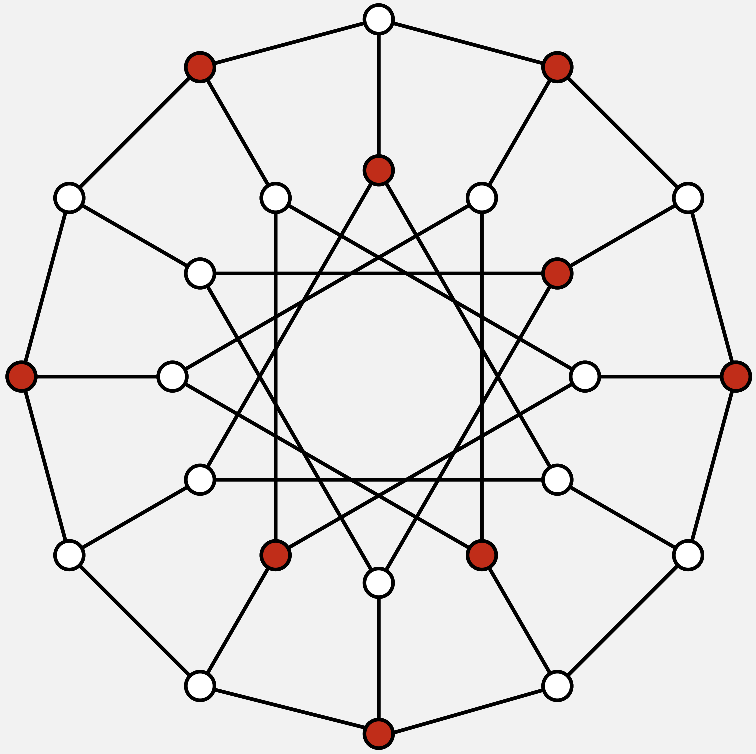
Mentality.

- If I could solve Y in poly-time, then I could also solve 3-SAT in poly-time.
- 3-SAT is believed to be intractable.
- Therefore, so is Y.

Independent set

Def. An independent set is a set of vertices, no two of which are adjacent.

IND-SET. Given a graph G and an integer k, find an independent set of size k.



k = 9

Applications. Scheduling, computer vision, clustering, ...

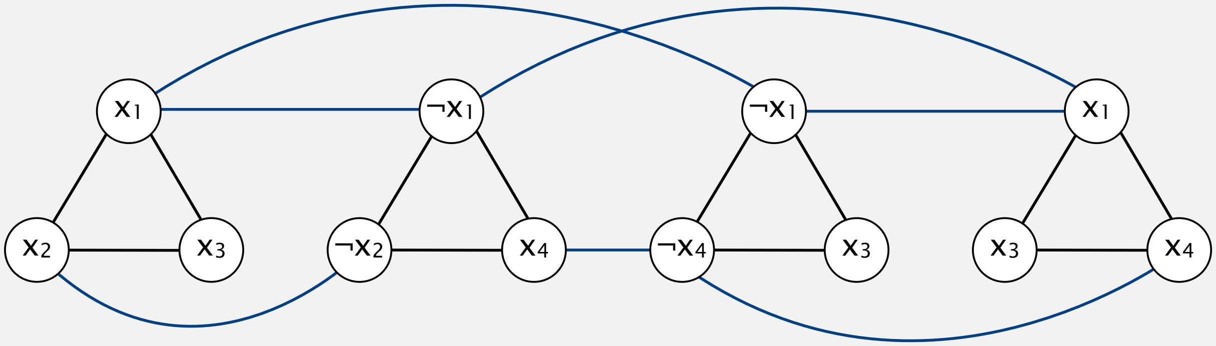
3-satisfiability reduces to independent set

Proposition. 3-SAT poly-time reduces to IND-SET.

Pf. Given an instance Φ of 3-SAT, create an instance G of IND-SET:

- For each clause in Φ, create 3 vertices in a triangle.
- Add an edge between each literal and its negation.

k = 4



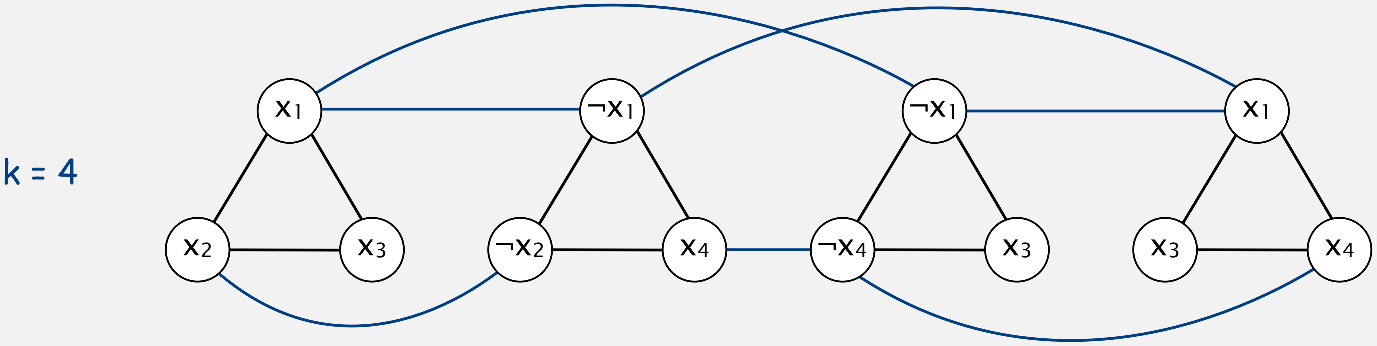
$$\Phi = (x_1 \lor x_2 \lor x_3) \land (\neg x_1 \lor \neg x_2 \lor x_4) \land (\neg x_1 \lor x_3 \lor \neg x_4) \land (x_1 \lor x_3 \lor x_4)$$

3-satisfiability reduces to independent set

Proposition. 3-SAT poly-time reduces to IND-SET.

Pf. Given an instance Φ of 3-SAT, create an instance G of IND-SET:

- For each clause in Φ, create 3 vertices in a triangle.
- Add an edge between each literal and its negation.



$$\Phi = (x_1 \lor x_2 \lor x_3) \land (\neg x_1 \lor \neg x_2 \lor x_4) \land (\neg x_1 \lor x_3 \lor \neg x_4) \land (x_1 \lor x_3 \lor x_4)$$

- G has independent set of size k $\Rightarrow$ Φ satisfiable.

↑

set literals corresponding to vertices in independent to true;
set remaining literals in consistent manner

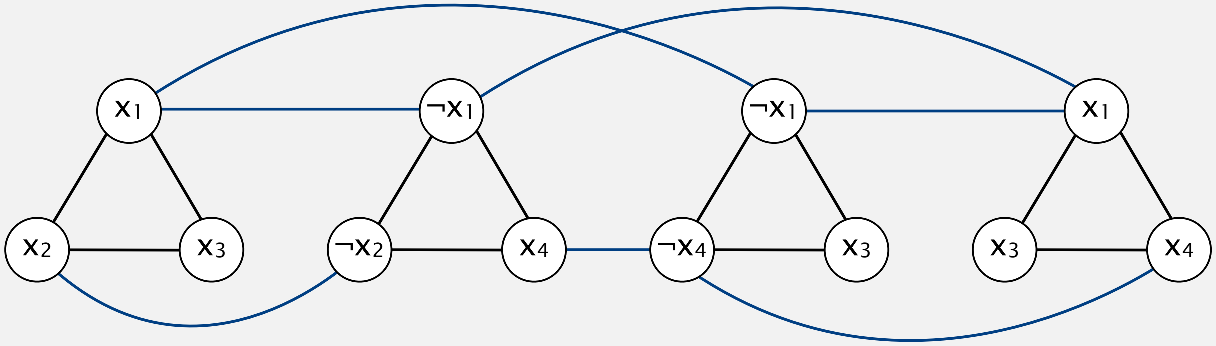
3-satisfiability reduces to independent set

Proposition. 3-SAT poly-time reduces to IND-SET.

Pf. Given an instance Φ of 3-SAT, create an instance G of IND-SET:

- For each clause in Φ, create 3 vertices in a triangle.
- Add an edge between each literal and its negation.

k = 4



$$\Phi \ = \ (x_1 \vee x_2 \vee x_3) \ \wedge \ (\neg x_1 \vee \neg x_2 \vee x_4) \ \wedge \ (\neg x_1 \vee x_3 \vee \neg x_4) \ \wedge \ (x_1 \vee x_3 \vee x_4)$$

- G has independent set of size k $\Rightarrow$ Φ satisfiable.
- Φ satisfiable $\Rightarrow$ G has independent set of size k.

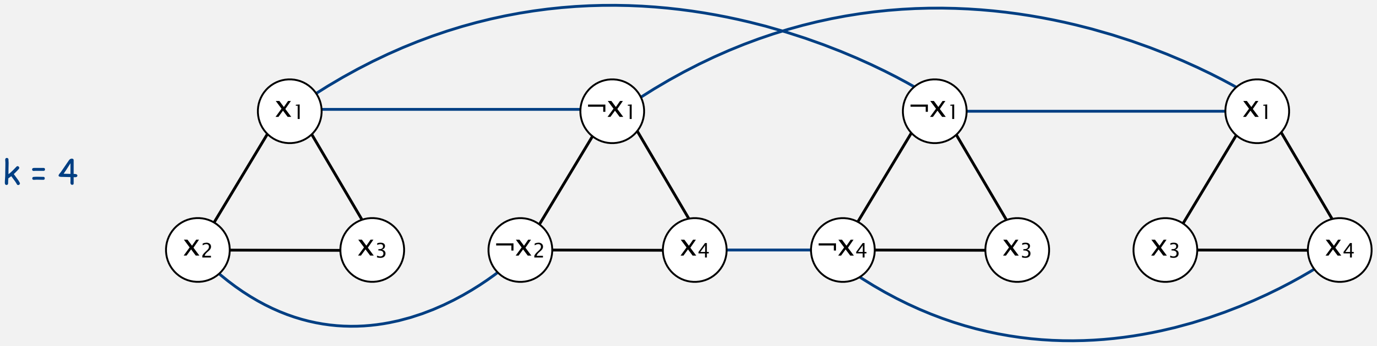
↑

for each clause, take vertex corresponding to one true literal

3-satisfiability reduces to independent set

Proposition. 3-SAT poly-time reduces to IND-SET.

Implication. Assuming 3-SAT is intractable, so is IND-SET.



$$\Phi = (x_1 \vee x_2 \vee x_3) \wedge (\neg x_1 \vee \neg x_2 \vee x_4) \wedge (\neg x_1 \vee x_3 \vee \neg x_4) \wedge (x_1 \vee x_3 \vee x_4)$$

Integer linear programming

ILP. Given a system of linear inequalities, find an integral solution.

$$3x_1 + 5x_2 + 2x_3 + x_4 + 4x_5 \geq 10$$

$$5x_1 + 2x_2 + 4x_4 + 1x_5 \leq 7$$

$$x_1 + x_3 + 2x_4 \leq 2$$

$$3x_1 + 4x_3 + 7x_4 \leq 7$$

$$x_1 + x_4 \leq 1$$

$$x_1 + x_3 + x_5 \leq 1$$

$$\text{all } x_i = \{ 0, 1 \}$$

linear inequalities

integer variables

Context. Cornerstone problem in operations research.

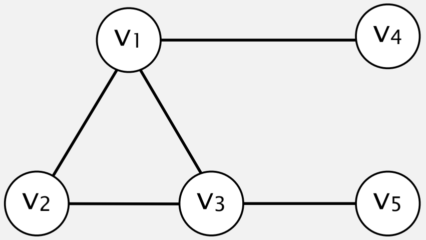
Remark. Finding a real-valued solution is tractable (linear programming).

Independent set reduces to integer linear programming

Proposition. IND-SET poly-time reduces to ILP.

Pf. Given an instance G, k of IND-SET, create an instance of ILP as follows:

Intuition. $x_i = 1$ if and only if vertex v_i is in independent set.



is there an independent set of size 3 ?

$$x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + x_4 + x_5 \;=\; 3$$

number of vertices selected

$$x_1 + x_2 \;\leq\; 1$$

$$x_2 + x_3 \;\leq\; 1$$

$$x_1 + x_3 \;\leq\; 1$$

$$x_1 + x_4 \;\leq\; 1$$

$$x_3 + x_5 \;\leq\; 1$$

at most one vertex selected from each edge

$$\text{all } x_i \;=\; \{\, 0, 1 \,\}$$

binary variables

is there a feasible solution?

3-satisfiability reduces to integer linear programming

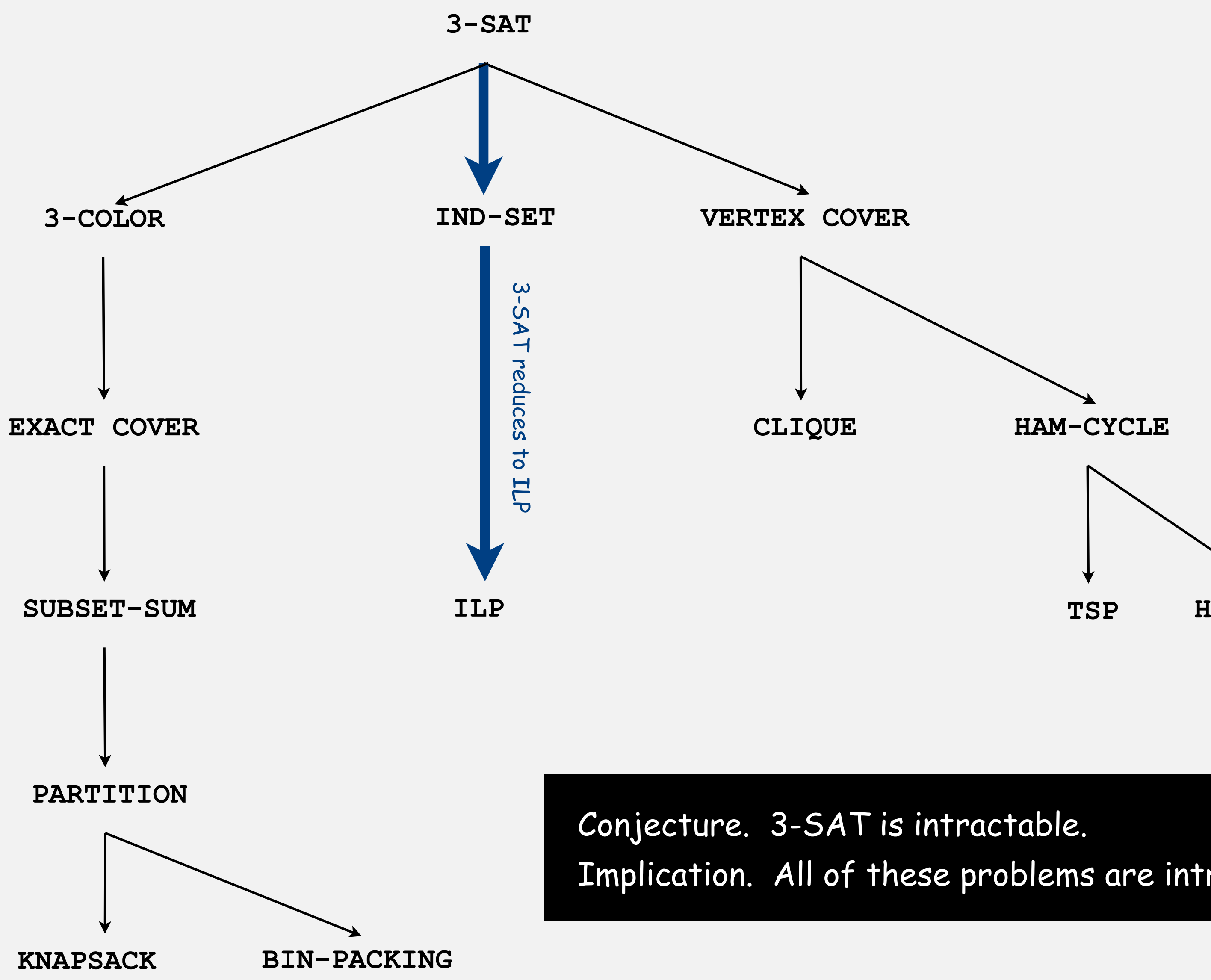
Proposition. 3-SAT poly-time reduces to IND-SET.

Proposition. IND-SET poly-time reduces to ILP.

Transitivity. If X poly-time reduces to Y and Y poly-time reduces to Z, then X-poly-time reduces to Z.

Implication. Assuming 3-SAT is intractable, so is ILP.

More poly-time reductions from 3-satisfiability



Dick Karp
'85 Turing award

Conjecture. 3-SAT is intractable.

Implication. All of these problems are intractable.

Implications of poly-time reductions from 3-satisfiability

Establishing intractability through poly-time reduction is an important tool in guiding algorithm design efforts.

Q. How to convince yourself that a new problem is (probably) intractable?
A1. [hard way] Long futile search for an efficient algorithm (as for 3-SAT).
A2. [easy way] Reduction from 3-SAT.

Caveat. Intricate reductions are common.

Search problems

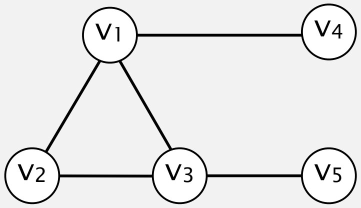
Search problem. Problem where you can check a solution in poly-time.

Ex 1. 3-SAT.

$$\Phi = (x_1 \lor x_2 \lor x_3) \land (\neg x_1 \lor \neg x_2 \lor x_4) \land (\neg x_1 \lor x_3 \lor \neg x_4) \land (x_1 \lor x_3 \lor x_4)$$

$x_1 = true, \; x_2 = true, \; x_3 = true, \; x_4 = true$

Ex 2. IND-SET.



$k = 3$

$\{ v_2 , \; x_4, \; v_5 \}$

P vs. NP

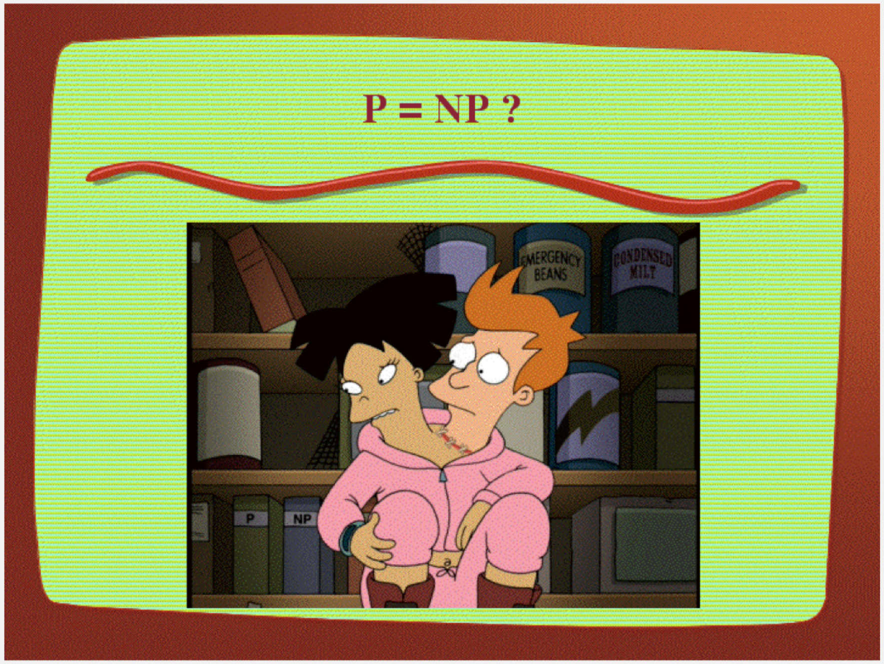
P. Set of search problems solvable in poly-time.

Importance. What scientists and engineers can compute feasibly.

NP. Set of search problems.

Importance. What scientists and engineers aspire to compute feasibly.

Fundamental question.



Consensus opinion. No.

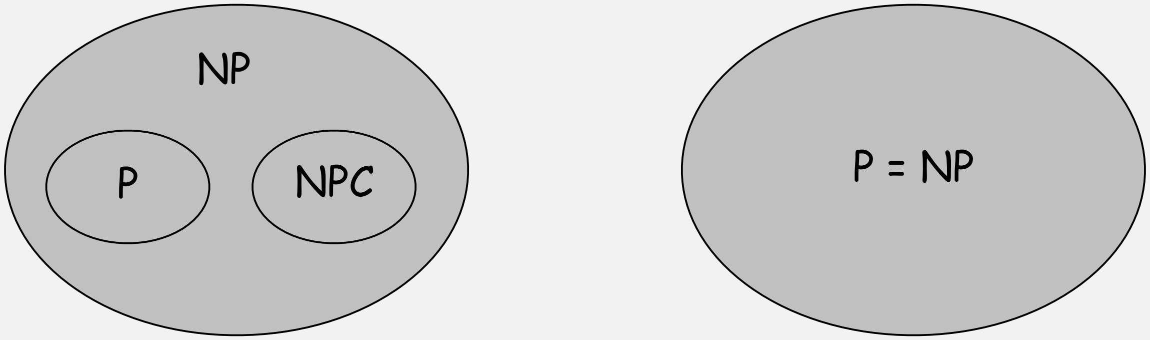
Cook's theorem

Def. An NP is NP-complete if all problems in NP poly-time to reduce to it.

Cook's theorem. 3-SAT is NP-complete.

Corollary. 3-SAT is tractable if and only if P = NP.

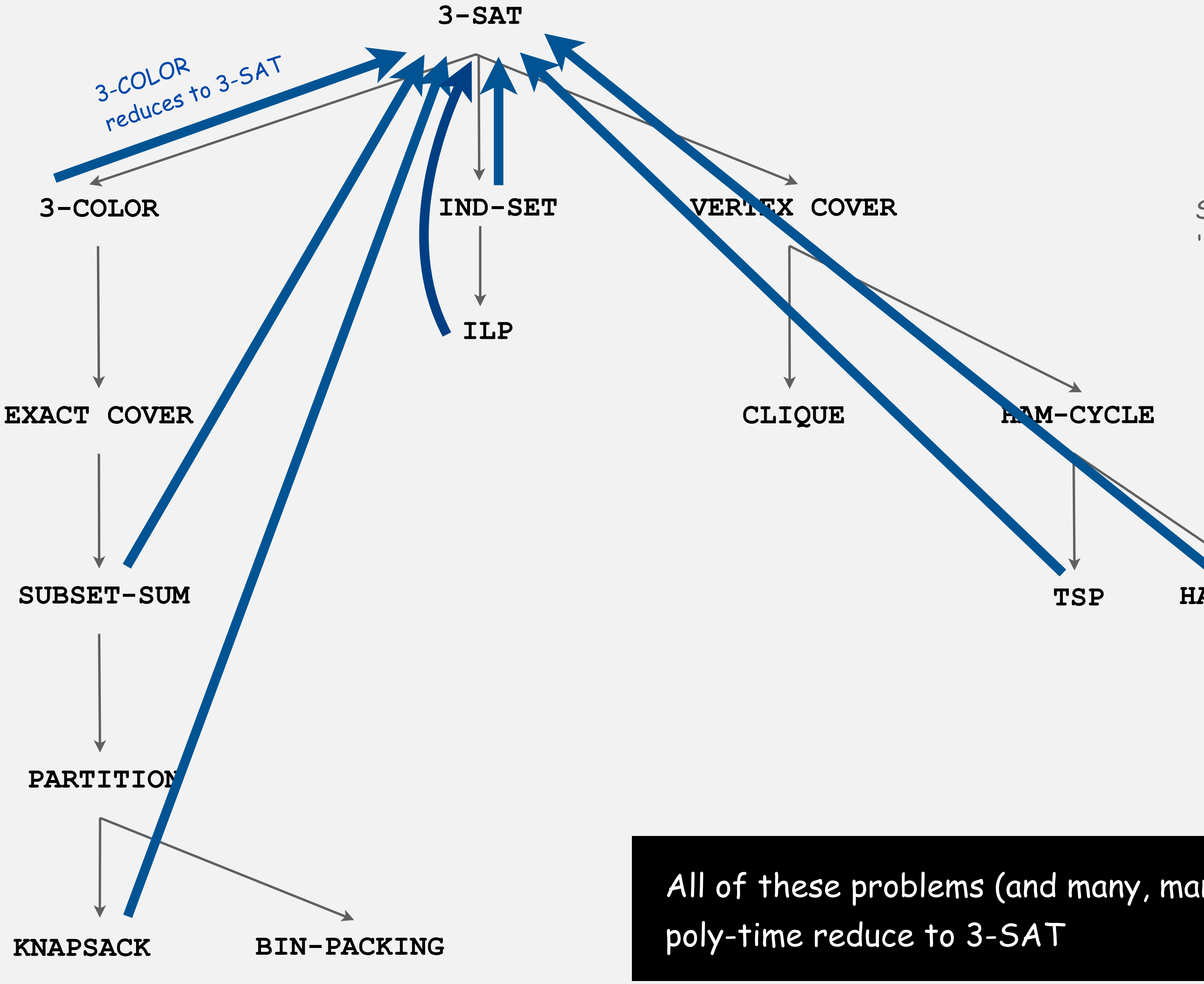
Two worlds.



P ≠ NP

P = NP

Implications of Cook's theorem



3-SAT

3-COLOR reduces to 3-SAT

3-COLOR

IND-SET

VERTEX COVER

ILP

EXACT COVER

CLIQUE

HAM-CYCLE

SUBSET-SUM

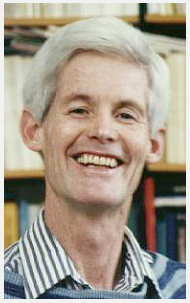
TSP

HAM-PATH

PARTITION

KNAPSACK

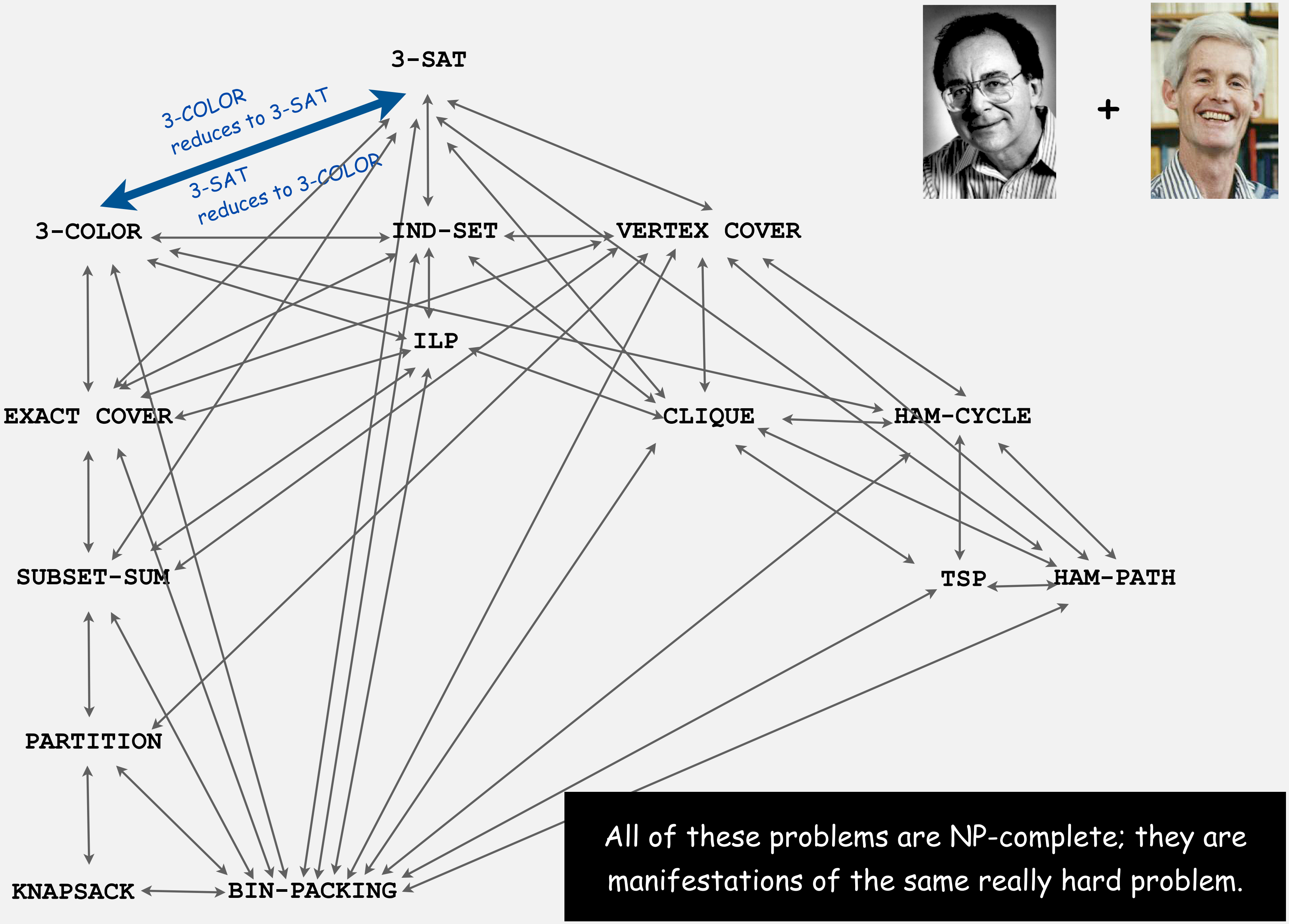
BIN-PACKING



Stephen Cook
'82 Turing award

All of these problems (and many, many more) poly-time reduce to 3-SAT

Implications of Karp + Cook



3-SAT

3-COLOR reduces to 3-SAT

3-SAT reduces to 3-COLOR

3-COLOR

IND-SET

VERTEX COVER

ILP

EXACT COVER

CLIQUE

HAM-CYCLE

SUBSET-SUM

TSP

HAM-PATH

PARTITION

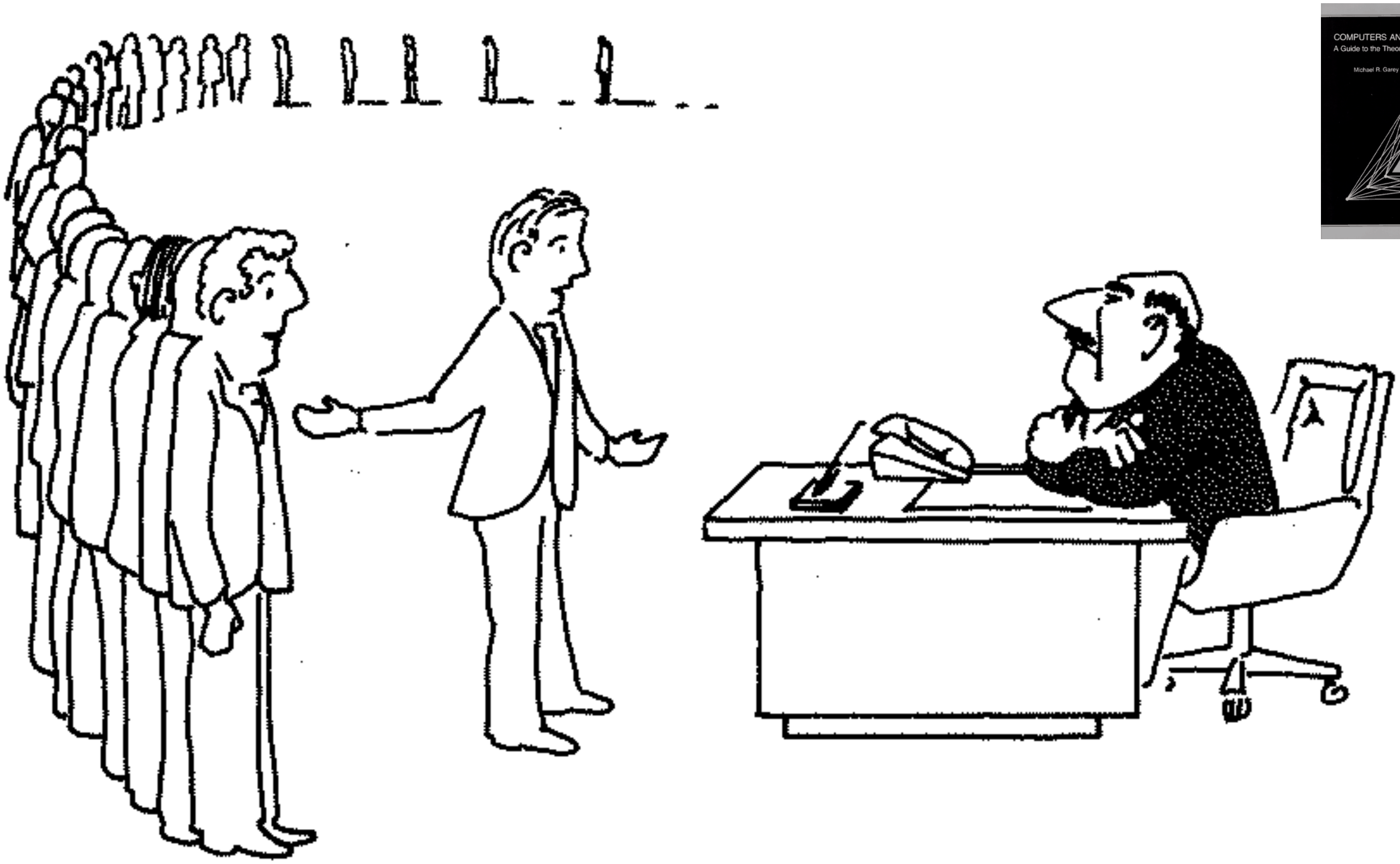
KNAPSACK

BIN-PACKING

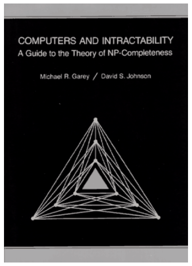
+

All of these problems are NP-complete; they are manifestations of the same really hard problem.

Implications of NP-completeness



"I can't find an efficient algorithm, but neither can all these famous people."



COMPUTERS AND INTRACTABILITY
A Guide to the Theory of NP-Completeness
Michael R. Garey / David S. Johnson

Birds-eye view: review

Desiderata. Classify problems according to computational requirements.

complexity	order of growth	examples
linear	N	min, max, median, Burrows-Wheeler transform, ...
linearithmic	$N \log N$	sorting, convex hull. closest pair, farthest pair, ...
quadratic	N^2	???
	…	
exponential	c^N	???

Frustrating news. Huge number of problems have defied classification.

Birds-eye view: revised

Desiderata. Classify problems according to computational requirements.

complexity	order of growth	examples
linear	N	min, max, median, Burrows-Wheeler transform, ...
linearithmic	N log N	sorting, convex hull. closest pair, farthest pair, ...
3-SUM complete	probably N^2	3-SUM, 3-COLLINEAR, 3-CONCURRENT, ...
	…	
NP-complete	probably c^N	3-SAT, IND-SET, ILP, ...

Good news. Can put problems in equivalence classes.

Summary

Reductions are important in theory to:

- Establish tractability.
- Establish intractability.
- Classify problems according to their computational requirements.

Reductions are important in practice to:

- Design algorithms.
- Design reusable software modules.
  - stack, queue, priority queue, symbol table, set, graph
  - sorting, regular expression, Delaunay triangulation
  - minimum spanning tree, shortest path, maximum flow, linear programming
- Determine difficulty of your problem and choose the right tool.
  - use exact algorithm for tractable problems
  - use heuristics for intractable problems

Combinatorial Search

- permutations
- backtracking
- counting
- subsets
- paths in a graph

Overview

Exhaustive search. Iterate through all elements of a search space.

Applicability. Huge range of problems (include intractable ones).

Caveat. Search space is typically exponential in size ⇒ effectiveness may be limited to relatively small instances.

Backtracking. Systematic method for examining feasible solutions to a problem, by systematically pruning infeasible solutions.

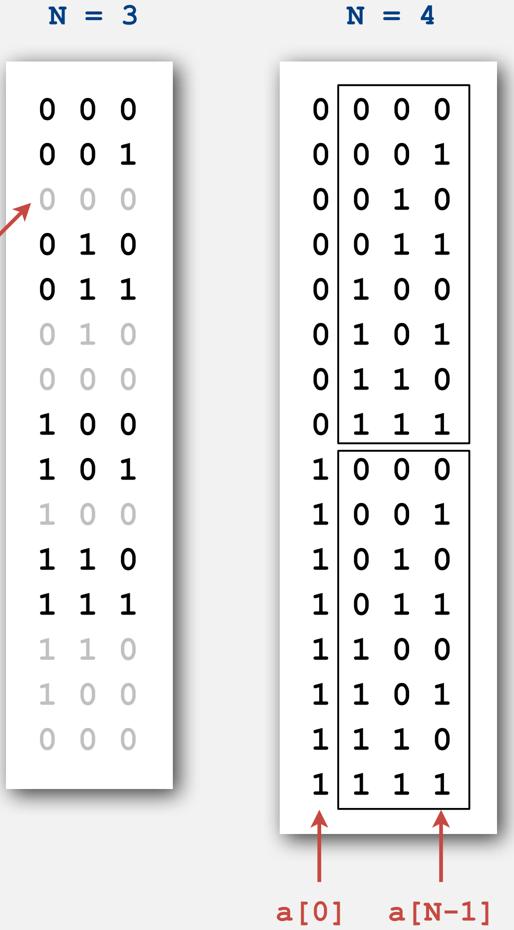
Warmup: enumerate N-bit strings

Goal. Process all 2^N bit strings of length N.

- Maintain `a[i]` where `a[i]` represents bit `i`.
- Simple recursive method does the job.

```
// enumerate bits in a[k] to a[N-1]
private void enumerate(int k)
{
   if (k == N)
   {  process(); return;  }
   enumerate(k+1);
   a[k] = 1;
   enumerate(k+1);
   a[k] = 0;
}
```

clean up



0	0	0
0	0	1
0	0	0
0	1	0
0	1	1
0	1	0
0	0	0
1	0	0
1	0	1
1	0	0
1	1	0
1	1	1
1	1	0
1	0	0
0	0	0

0	0	0	0
0	0	0	1
0	0	1	0
0	0	1	1
0	1	0	0
0	1	0	1
0	1	1	0
0	1	1	1
1	0	0	0
1	0	0	1
1	0	1	0
1	0	1	1
1	1	0	0
1	1	0	1
1	1	1	0
1	1	1	1

Remark. Equivalent to counting in binary from 0 to 2^N - 1.

Warmup: enumerate N-bit strings

```
public class BinaryCounter
{
   private int N;   // number of bits
   private int[] a; // a[i] = ith bit

   public BinaryCounter(int N)
   {
      this.N = N;
      this.a = new int[N];
      enumerate(0);
   }

   private void process()
   {
      for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
         StdOut.print(a[i]) + " ";
      StdOut.println();
   }

   private void enumerate(int k)
   {
     if (k == N)
     {  process(); return;  }
     enumerate(k+1);
     a[k] = 1;
     enumerate(k+1);
     a[k] = 0;
   }
}
```

```
public static void main(String[] args)
{
   int N = Integer.parseInt(args[0]);
   new BinaryCounter(N);
}
```

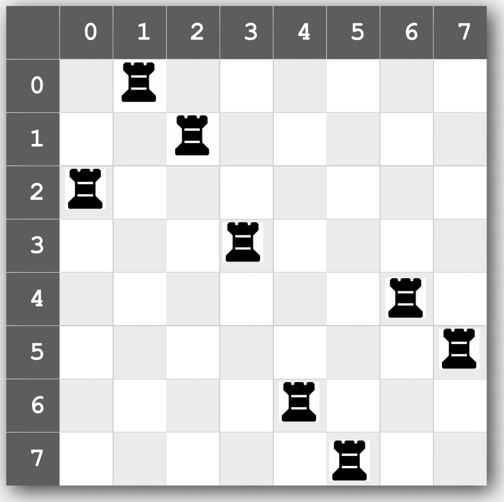
```
% java BinaryCounter 4
0 0 0 0
0 0 0 1
0 0 1 0
0 0 1 1
0 1 0 0
0 1 0 1
0 1 1 0
0 1 1 1
1 0 0 0
1 0 0 1
1 0 1 0
1 0 1 1
1 1 0 0
1 1 0 1
1 1 1 0
1 1 1 1
```

all programs in this lecture are variations on this theme

- permutations
- backtracking
- counting
- subsets
- paths in a graph

N-rooks problem

Q. How many ways are there to place N rooks on an N-by-N board so that no rook can attack any other?



```
int[] a = { 2, 0, 1, 3, 6, 7, 4, 5 };
```

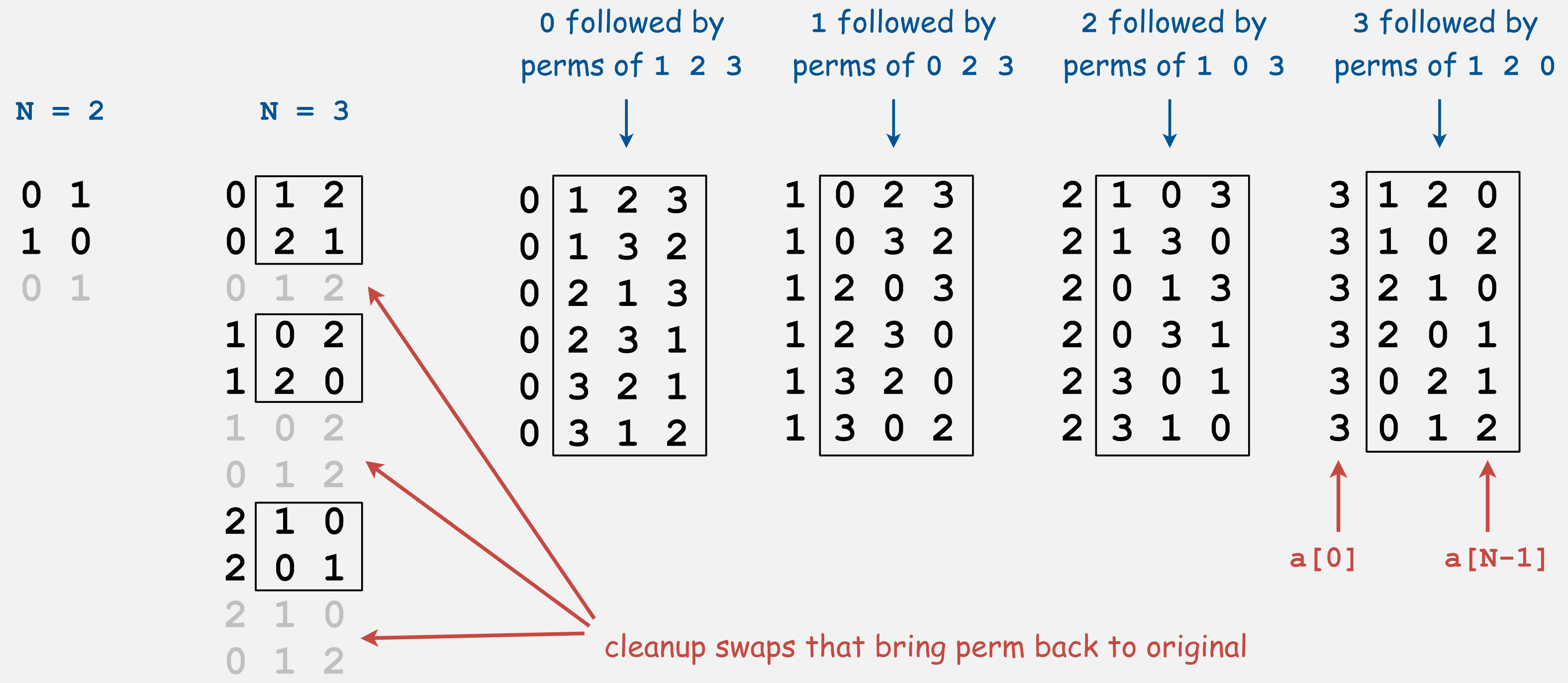
Representation. No two rooks in the same row or column ⇒ permutation.

Challenge. Enumerate all N! permutations of 0 to N-1.

Enumerating permutations

Recursive algorithm to enumerate all N! permutations of size N.

- Start with permutation `a[0]` to `a[N-1]`.
- For each value of `i`:
  - swap `a[i]` into position `0`
  - enumerate all (N-1)! permutations of `a[1]` to `a[N-1]`
  - clean up (swap `a[i]` back to original position)



N = 2

0 1
1 0
0 1

N = 3

0 1 2
0 2 1
0 1 2
1 0 2
1 2 0
1 0 2
0 1 2
2 1 0
2 0 1
2 1 0
0 1 2

0 followed by perms of 1 2 3	1 followed by perms of 0 2 3	2 followed by perms of 1 0 3	3 followed by perms of 1 2 0
0 1 2 3	1 0 2 3	2 1 0 3	3 1 2 0
0 1 3 2	1 0 3 2	2 1 3 0	3 1 0 2
0 2 1 3	1 2 0 3	2 0 1 3	3 2 1 0
0 2 3 1	1 2 3 0	2 0 3 1	3 2 0 1
0 3 2 1	1 3 2 0	2 3 0 1	3 0 2 1
0 3 1 2	1 3 0 2	2 3 1 0	3 0 1 2

cleanup swaps that bring perm back to original

Enumerating permutations

Recursive algorithm to enumerate all N! permutations of size N.

- Start with permutation `a[0]` to `a[N-1]`.
- For each value of `i`:
  - swap `a[i]` into position `0`
  - enumerate all (N-1)! permutations of `a[1]` to `a[N-1]`
  - clean up (swap `a[i]` back to original position)

```
// place N-k rooks in a[k] to a[N-1]
private void enumerate(int k)
{
   if (k == N)
   {  process(); return;  }

   for (int i = k; i < N; i++)
   {
      exch(k, i);
      enumerate(k+1);
      exch(i, k);
   }
}
```

clean up

```
% java Rooks 4
0 1 2 3
0 1 3 2
0 2 1 3
0 2 3 1
0 3 2 1
0 3 1 2
1 0 2 3
1 0 3 2
1 2 0 3
1 2 3 0
1 3 2 0
1 3 0 2
2 1 0 3
2 1 3 0
2 0 1 3
2 0 3 1
2 3 0 1
2 3 1 0
3 1 2 0
3 1 0 2
3 2 1 0
3 2 0 1
3 0 2 1
3 0 1 2
```

0 followed by perms of 1 2 3

1 followed by perms of 0 2 3

2 followed by perms of 1 0 3

3 followed by perms of 1 2 0

`a[0]` `a[N-1]`

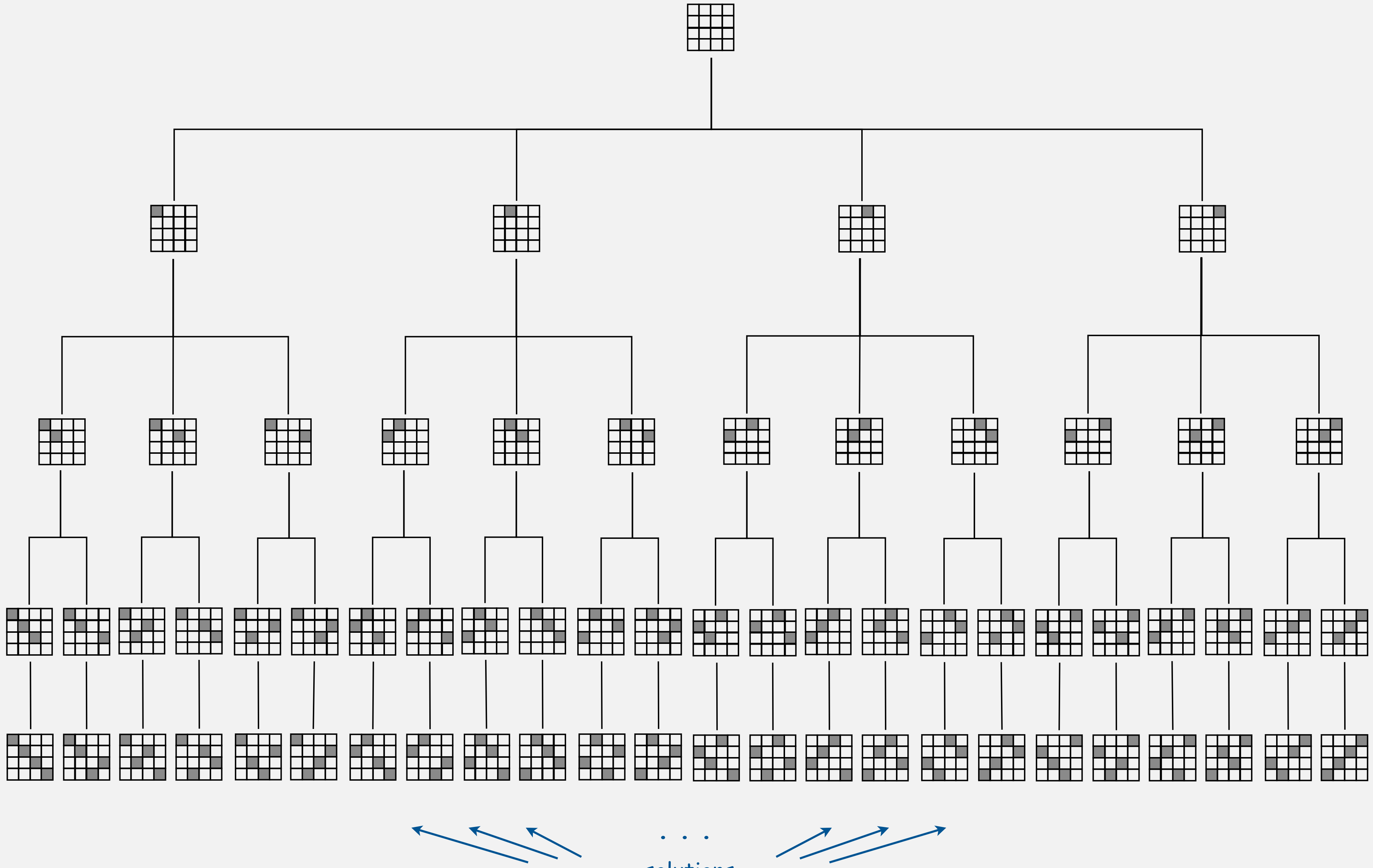
Enumerating permutations

```
public class Rooks
{
   private int N;
   private int[] a; // bits (0 or 1)

   public Rooks(int N)
   {
      this.N = N;
      a = new int[N];
      for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
         a[i] = i;
      enumerate(0);
   }

   private void enumerate(int k)
   { /* see previous slide */  }

   private void exch(int i, int j)
   {  int t = a[i]; a[i] = a[j]; a[j] = t;   }

   public static void main(String[] args)
   {
      int N = Integer.parseInt(args[0]);
      new Rooks(N);
   }
}
```

initial permutation

```
% java Rooks 2
0 1
1 0

% java Rooks 3
0 1 2
0 2 1
1 0 2
1 2 0
2 1 0
2 0 1
```

4-rooks search tree



N-rooks problem: back-of-envelope running time estimate

Slow way to compute N!.

```
% java Rooks 7 | wc -l
5040

% java Rooks 8 | wc -l
40320

% java Rooks 9 | wc -l
362880

% java Rooks 10 | wc -l
3628800

% java Rooks 25 | wc -l
...
```

← instant

← 1.6 seconds

← 15 seconds

← 170 seconds

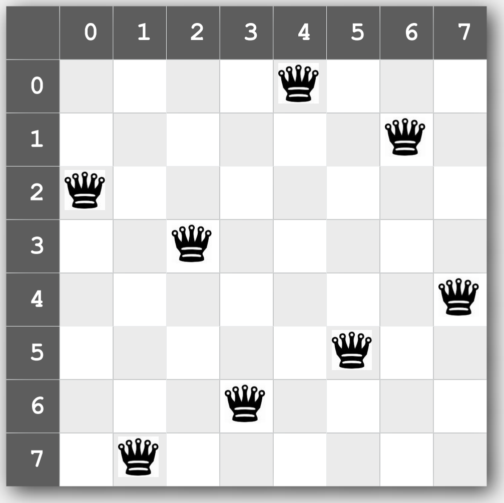
← forever

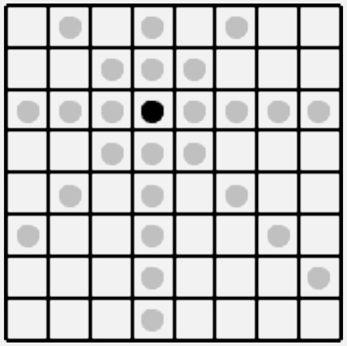
Hypothesis. Running time is about 2(N! / 8!) seconds.

- permutations
- **backtracking**
- counting
- subsets
- paths in a graph

N-queens problem

Q. How many ways are there to place N queens on an N-by-N board so that no queen can attack any other?





`int[] a = { 2, 7, 3, 6, 0, 5, 1, 4 };`

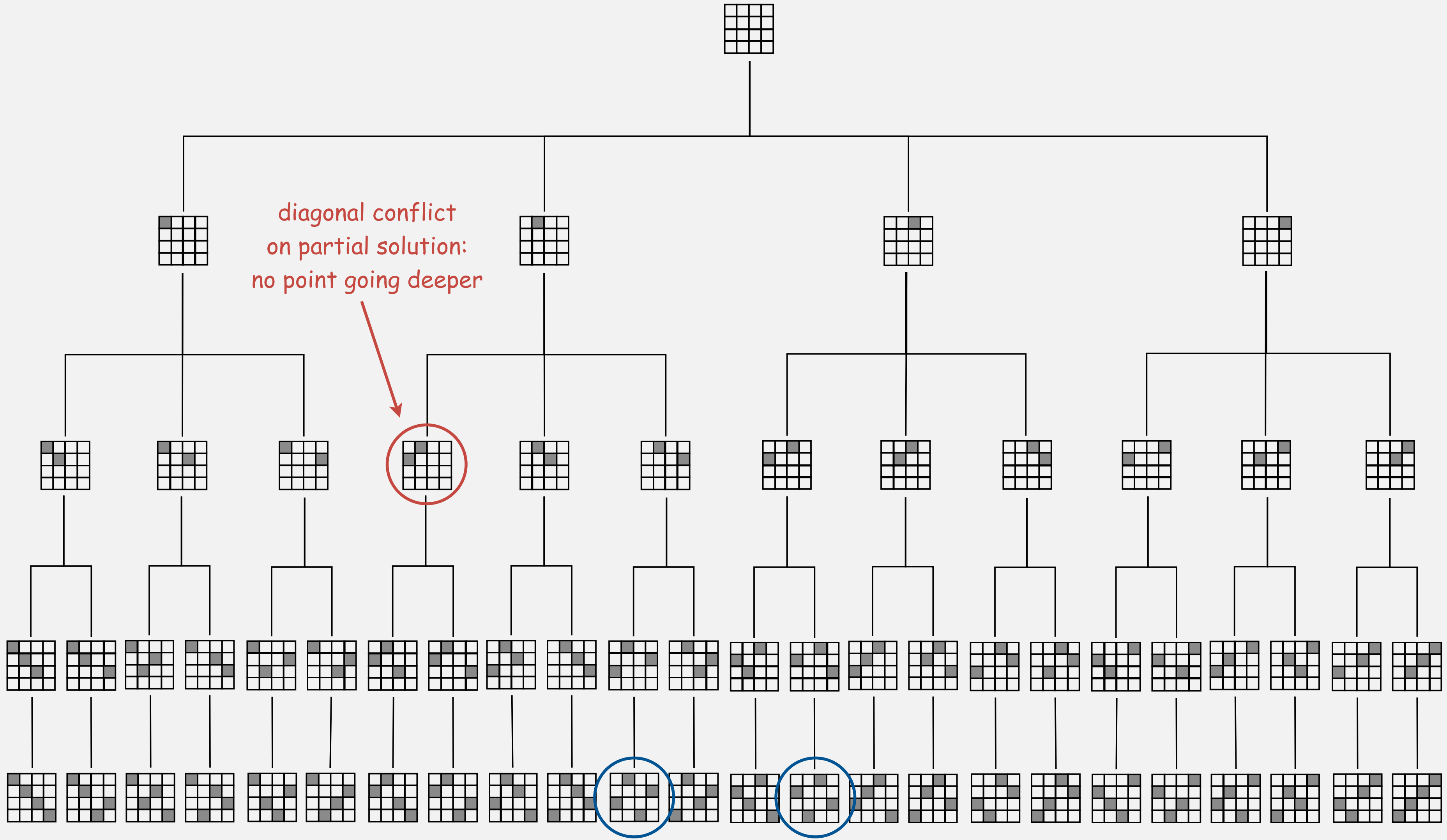
Representation. No two queens in the same row or column ⇒ permutation.

Additional constraint. No diagonal attack is possible.

Challenge. Enumerate (or even count) the solutions. ←

unlike N-rooks problem,
nobody knows answer for N > 30

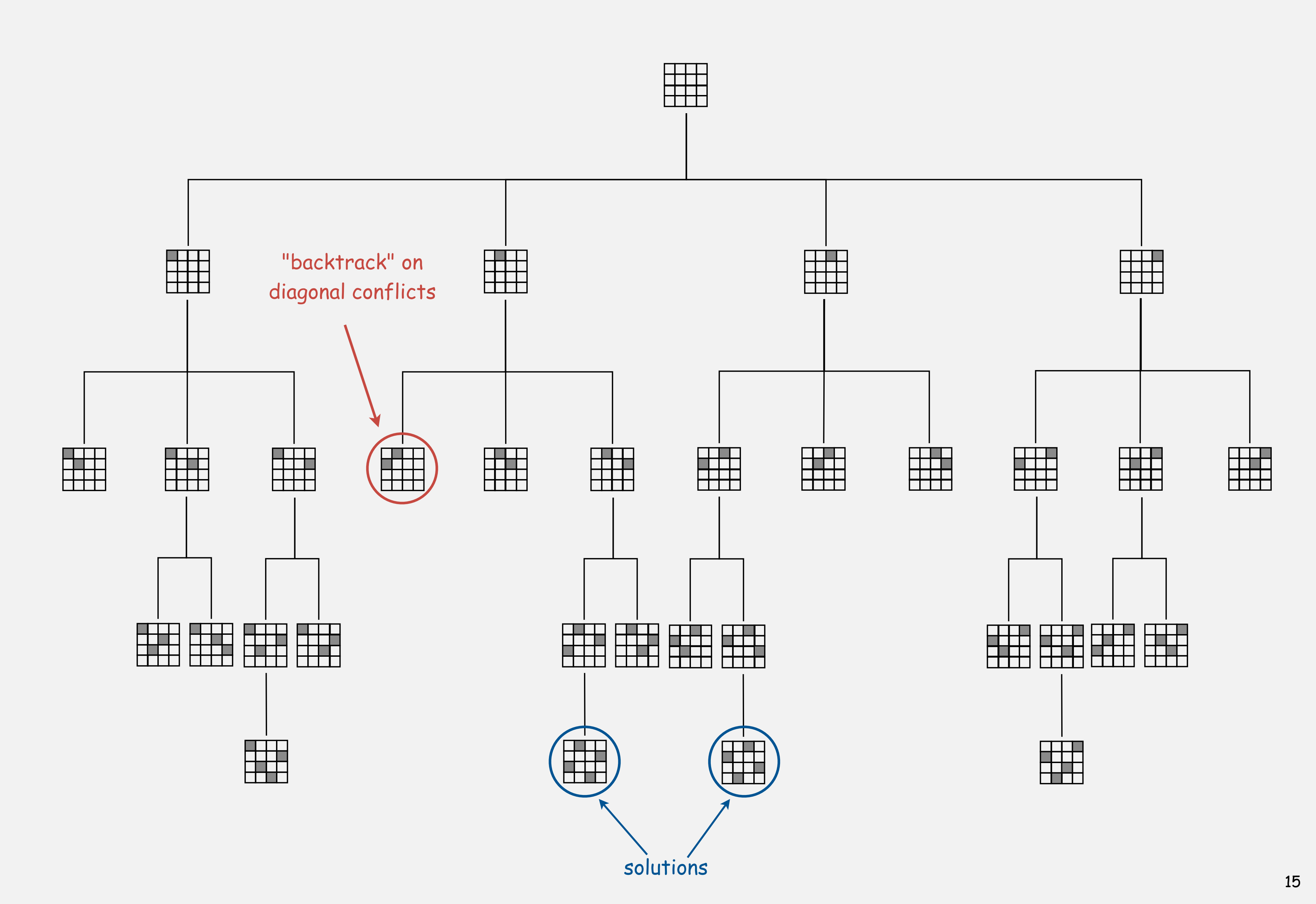
4-queens search tree



diagonal conflict
on partial solution:
no point going deeper

solutions

4-queens search tree (pruned)



"backtrack" on diagonal conflicts

solutions

N-queens problem: backtracking solution

Backtracking paradigm. Iterate through elements of search space.

- When there are several possible choices, make one choice and recur.
- If the choice is a dead end, backtrack to previous choice, and make next available choice.

Benefit. Identifying dead ends allows us to prune the search tree.

Ex. [backtracking for N-queens problem]

- Dead end: a diagonal conflict.
- Pruning: backtrack and try next column when diagonal conflict found.

N-queens problem: backtracking solution

```
private boolean backtrack(int k)
{
   for (int i = 0; i < k; i++)
   {
      if ((a[i] - a[k]) == (k - i)) return true;
      if ((a[k] - a[i]) == (k - i)) return true;
   }
   return false;
}

// place N-k queens in a[k] to a[N-1]
private void enumerate(int k)
{
   if (k == N)
   {  process(); return;  }

   for (int i = k; i < N; i++)
   {
      exch(k, i);
      if (!backtrack(k)) enumerate(k+1);
      exch(i, k);
   }
}
```

stop enumerating if adding queen k leads to a diagonal violation

```
% java Queens 4
1 3 0 2
2 0 3 1

% java Queens 5
0 2 4 1 3
0 3 1 4 2
1 3 0 2 4
1 4 2 0 3
2 0 3 1 4
2 4 1 3 0
3 1 4 2 0
3 0 2 4 1
4 1 3 0 2
4 2 0 3 1

% java Queens 6
1 3 5 0 2 4
2 5 1 4 0 3
3 0 4 1 5 2
4 2 0 5 3 1
```

`a[0]` `a[N-1]`

N-queens problem: effectiveness of backtracking

Pruning the search tree leads to enormous time savings.

N	$Q(N)$	$N!$
2	0	2
3	0	6
4	2	24
5	10	120
6	4	720
7	40	5,040
8	92	40,320
9	352	362,880
10	724	3,628,800
11	2,680	39,916,800
12	14,200	479,001,600
13	73,712	6,227,020,800
14	365,596	87,178,291,200

N-queens problem: How many solutions?

```
% java Queens 13 | wc -l
73712

% java Queens 14 | wc -l
365596

% java Queens 15 | wc -l
2279184

% java Queens 16 | wc -l
14772512

% java Queens 17 | wc -l
...
```

← 1.1 seconds

← 5.4 seconds

← 29 seconds

← 210 seconds

← 1352 seconds

Hypothesis. Running time is about $(N! \,/\, 2.5^N) \,/\, 43{,}000$ seconds.

Conjecture. $Q(N)$ is $\sim N! \,/\, c^N$, where c is about 2.54.

- permutations
- backtracking
- **counting**
- subsets
- paths in a graph

Counting: Java implementation

Goal. Enumerate all N-digit base-R numbers.

Solution. Generalize binary counter in lecture warmup.

```
// enumerate base-R numbers in a[k] to a[N-1]
private static void enumerate(int k)
{
   if (k == N)
   {  process(); return;  }

   for (int r = 0; r < R; r++)
   {
      a[k] = r;
      enumerate(k+1);
   }
   a[k] = 0;
}
```

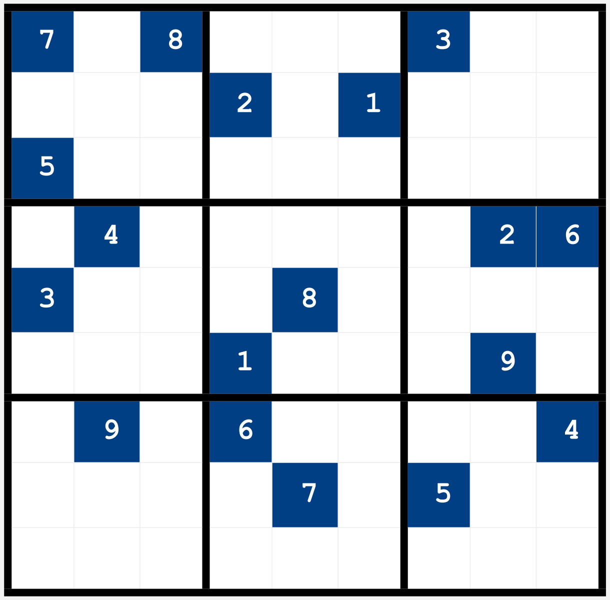
cleanup not needed; why?

```
% java Counter 2 4
0 0
0 1
0 2
0 3
1 0
1 1
1 2
1 3
2 0
2 1
2 2
2 3
3 0
3 1
3 2
3 3

% java Counter 3 2
0 0 0
0 0 1
0 1 0
0 1 1
1 0 0
1 0 1
1 1 0
1 1 1
```

a[0] a[N-1]

Counting application: Sudoku

Goal. Fill 9-by-9 grid so that every row, column, and box contains each of the digits 1 through 9.

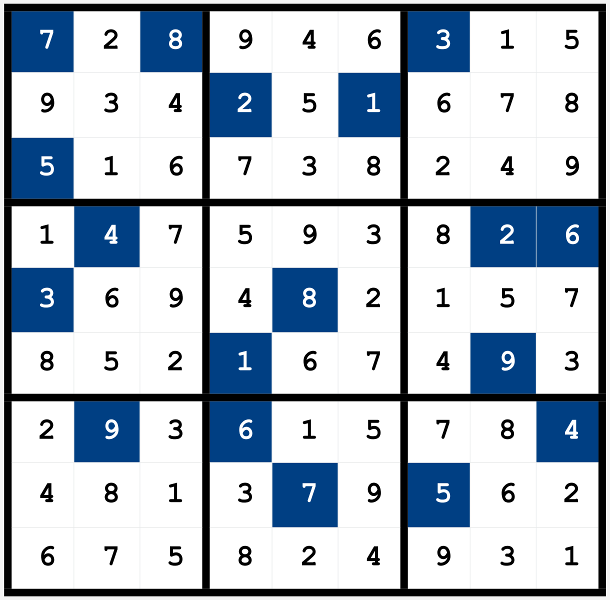


7		8				3		
			2		1			
5								
	4						2	6
3				8				
			1				9	
	9		6					4
				7		5		

Remark. Natural generalization is NP-complete.

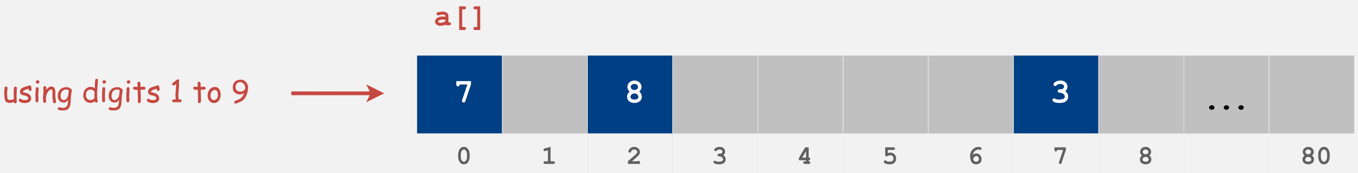
Counting application: Sudoku

Goal. Fill 9-by-9 grid so that every row, column, and box contains each of the digits 1 through 9.



7	2	8	9	4	6	3	1	5
9	3	4	2	5	1	6	7	8
5	1	6	7	3	8	2	4	9
1	4	7	5	9	3	8	2	6
3	6	9	4	8	2	1	5	7
8	5	2	1	6	7	4	9	3
2	9	3	6	1	5	7	8	4
4	8	1	3	7	9	5	6	2
6	7	5	8	2	4	9	3	1

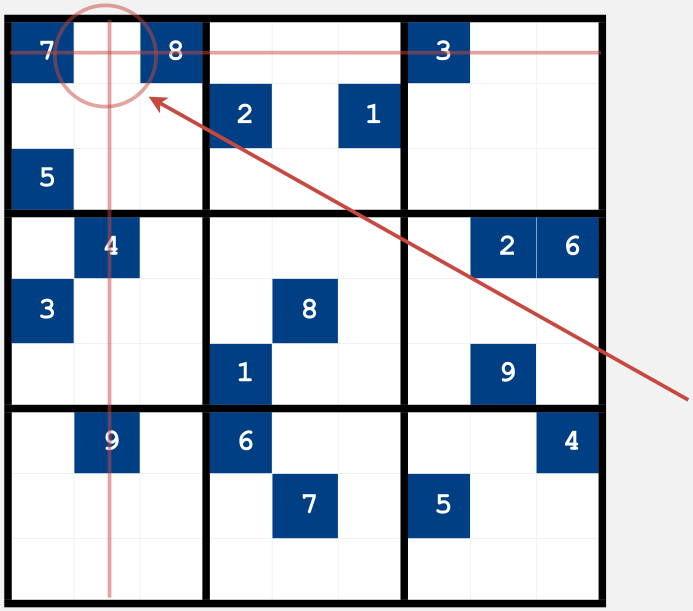
Solution. Enumerate all 81-digit base-9 numbers (with backtracking).



Sudoku: backtracking solution

Iterate through elements of search space.

- For each empty cell, there are 9 possible choices.
- Make one choice and recur.
- If you find a conflict in row, column, or box, then backtrack.



7		8				3		
			2		1			
5								
	4						2	6
3				8				
			1				9	
	9		6					4
				7		5		

backtrack on 3, 4, 5, 7, 8, 9

Sudoku: Java implementation

```
private void enumerate(int k)
{

   if (k == 81)
   {  process(); return;  }

   if (a[k] != 0)
   {  enumerate(k+1); return;  }

   for (int r = 1; r <= 9; r++)
   {
         a[k] = r;
         if (!backtrack(k))
            enumerate(k+1);
   }

   a[k] = 0;
}
```

found a solution

cell k initially filled in;
recur on next cell

try 9 possible digits
for cell k

unless it violates a
Sudoku constraint
(see booksite for code)

clean up

```
% more board.txt
7 0 8 0 0 0 3 0 0
0 0 0 2 0 1 0 0 0
5 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
0 4 0 0 0 0 0 2 6
3 0 0 0 8 0 0 0 0
0 0 0 1 0 0 0 9 0
0 9 0 6 0 0 0 0 4
0 0 0 0 7 0 5 0 0
0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

% java Sudoku < board.txt
7 2 8 9 4 6 3 1 5
9 3 4 2 5 1 6 7 8
5 1 6 7 3 8 2 4 9
1 4 7 5 9 3 8 2 6
3 6 9 4 8 2 1 5 7
8 5 2 1 6 7 4 9 3
2 9 3 6 1 5 7 8 4
4 8 1 3 7 9 5 6 2
6 7 5 8 2 4 9 3 1
```

- permutations
- backtracking
- counting
- **subsets**
- paths in a graph

Enumerating subsets: natural binary encoding

Given N items, enumerate all 2^N subsets.

- Count in binary from 0 to 2^N - 1.
- Bit i represents item i.
- If 0, in subset; if 1, not in subset.

i	*binary*	*subset*	*complement*
0	0 0 0 0	empty	4 3 2 1
1	0 0 0 1	1	4 3 2
2	0 0 1 0	2	4 3 1
3	0 0 1 1	2 1	4 3
4	0 1 0 0	3	4 2 1
5	0 1 0 1	3 1	4 2
6	0 1 1 0	3 2	4 1
7	0 1 1 1	3 2 1	4
8	1 0 0 0	4	3 2 1
9	1 0 0 1	4 1	3 2
10	1 0 1 0	4 2	3 1
11	1 0 1 1	4 2 1	3
12	1 1 0 0	4 3	2 1
13	1 1 0 1	4 3 1	2
14	1 1 1 0	4 3 2	1
15	1 1 1 1	4 3 2 1	empty

Enumerating subsets: natural binary encoding

Given N items, enumerate all 2^N subsets.

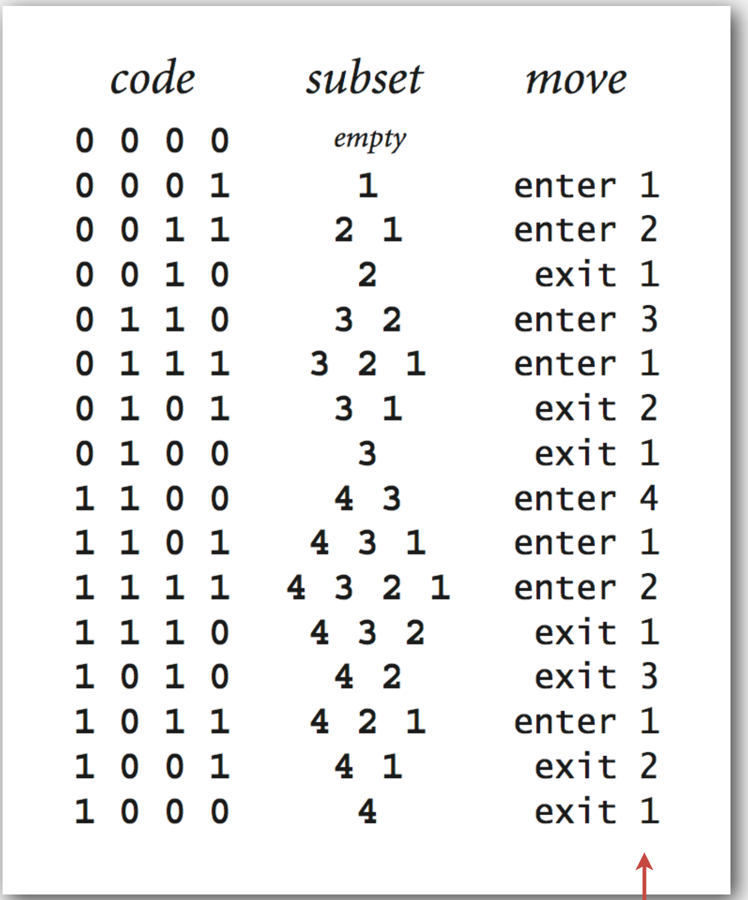
- Count in binary from 0 to 2^N - 1.
- Maintain `a[i]` where `a[i]` represents item `i`.
- If `0`, `a[i]` in subset; if `1`, `a[i]` not in subset.

Binary counter from warmup does the job.

```
private void enumerate(int k)
{
  if (k == N)
  {  process(); return;   }
  enumerate(k+1);
  a[k] = 1;
  enumerate(k+1);
  a[n] = 0;
}
```

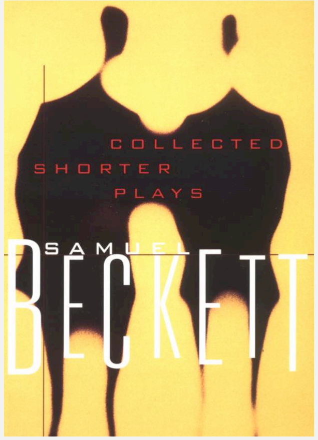
Digression: Samuel Beckett play

Quad. Starting with empty stage, 4 characters enter and exit one at a time, such that each subset of actors appears exactly once.



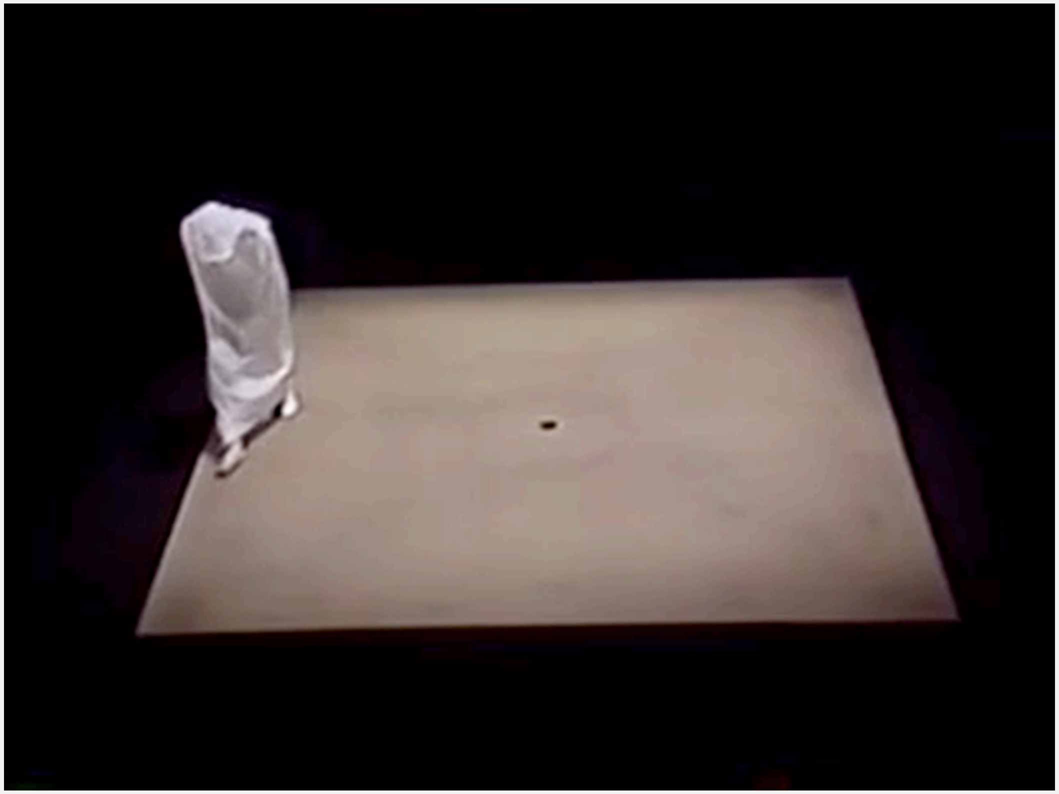
code	*subset*	*move*
0 0 0 0	*empty*	
0 0 0 1	1	enter 1
0 0 1 1	2 1	enter 2
0 0 1 0	2	exit 1
0 1 1 0	3 2	enter 3
0 1 1 1	3 2 1	enter 1
0 1 0 1	3 1	exit 2
0 1 0 0	3	exit 1
1 1 0 0	4 3	enter 4
1 1 0 1	4 3 1	enter 1
1 1 1 1	4 3 2 1	enter 2
1 1 1 0	4 3 2	exit 1
1 0 1 0	4 2	exit 3
1 0 1 1	4 2 1	enter 1
1 0 0 1	4 1	exit 2
1 0 0 0	4	exit 1

ruler function



Digression: Samuel Beckett play

Quad. Starting with empty stage, 4 characters enter and exit one at a time, such that each subset of actors appears exactly once.

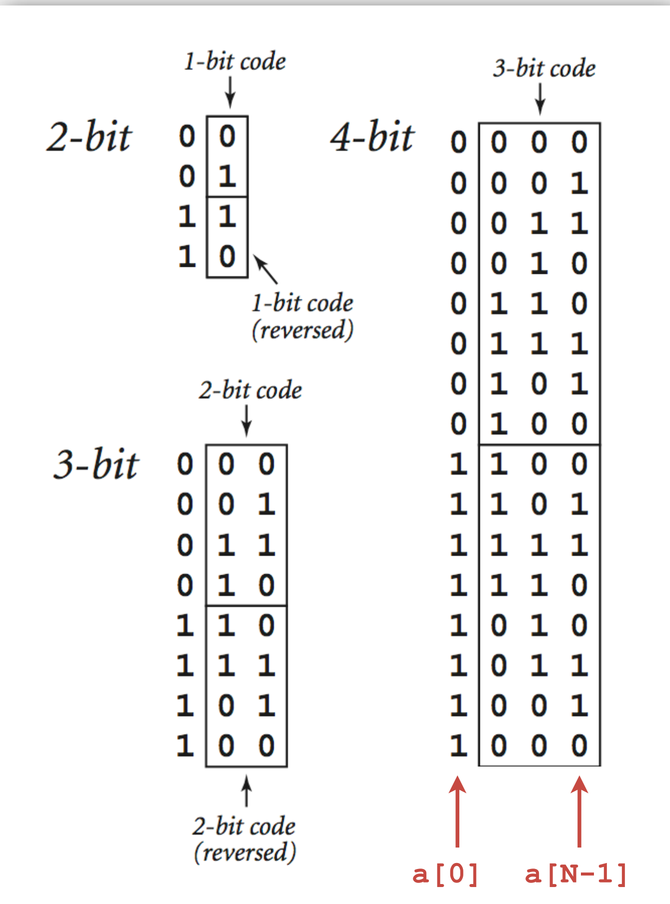


"faceless, emotionless one of the far future, a world where people are born, go through prescribed movements, fear non-being even though their lives are meaningless, and then they disappear or die." — Sidney Homan

Binary reflected gray code

Def. The k-bit binary reflected Gray code is:

- the (k-1) bit code with a 0 prepended to each word, followed by
- the (k-1) bit code in reverse order, with a 1 prepended to each word.



2-bit

0	0
0	1
1	1
1	0

3-bit

0	0	0
0	0	1
0	1	1
0	1	0
1	1	0
1	1	1
1	0	1
1	0	0

4-bit

0	0	0	0
0	0	0	1
0	0	1	1
0	0	1	0
0	1	1	0
0	1	1	1
0	1	0	1
0	1	0	0
1	1	0	0
1	1	0	1
1	1	1	1
1	1	1	0
1	0	1	0
1	0	1	1
1	0	0	1
1	0	0	0

Enumerating subsets using Gray code

Two simple changes to binary counter from warmup:

- Flip `a[k]` instead of setting it to 1.
- Eliminate cleanup.

Gray code binary counter

```
// all bit strings in a[k] to a[N-1]
private void enumerate(int k)
{
   if (k == N)
   {  process(); return;  }
   enumerate(k+1);
   a[k] = 1 - a[k];
   enumerate(k+1);
}
```

0	0	0
0	0	1
0	1	1
0	1	0
1	1	0
1	1	1
1	0	1
1	0	0

same values since no cleanup

standard binary counter (from warmup)

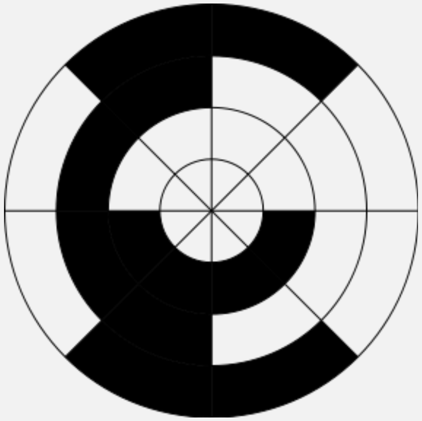
```
// all bit strings in a[k] to a[N-1]
private void enumerate(int k)
{
   if (k == N)
   {  process(); return;  }
   enumerate(k+1);
   a[k] = 1;
   enumerate(k+1);
   a[k] = 0;
}
```

0	0	0
0	0	1
0	1	0
0	1	1
1	0	0
1	0	1
1	1	0
1	1	1

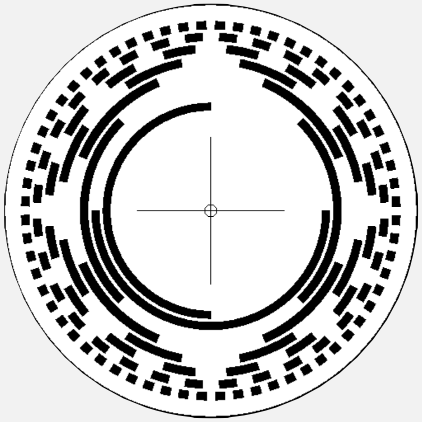
`a[0]` `a[N-1]`

Advantage. Only one item in subset changes at a time.

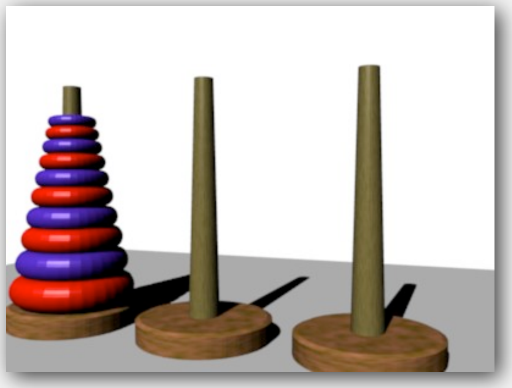
More applications of Gray codes



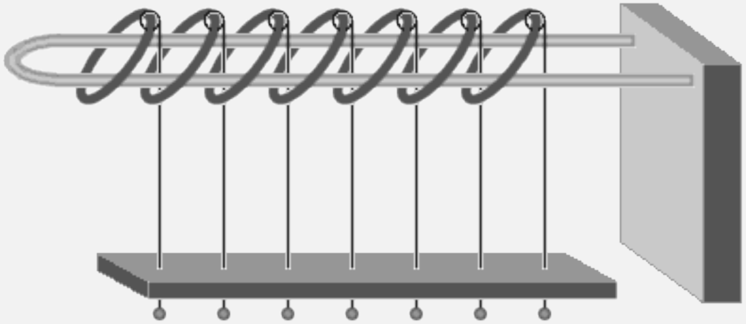
3-bit rotary encoder



8-bit rotary encoder



Towers of Hanoi



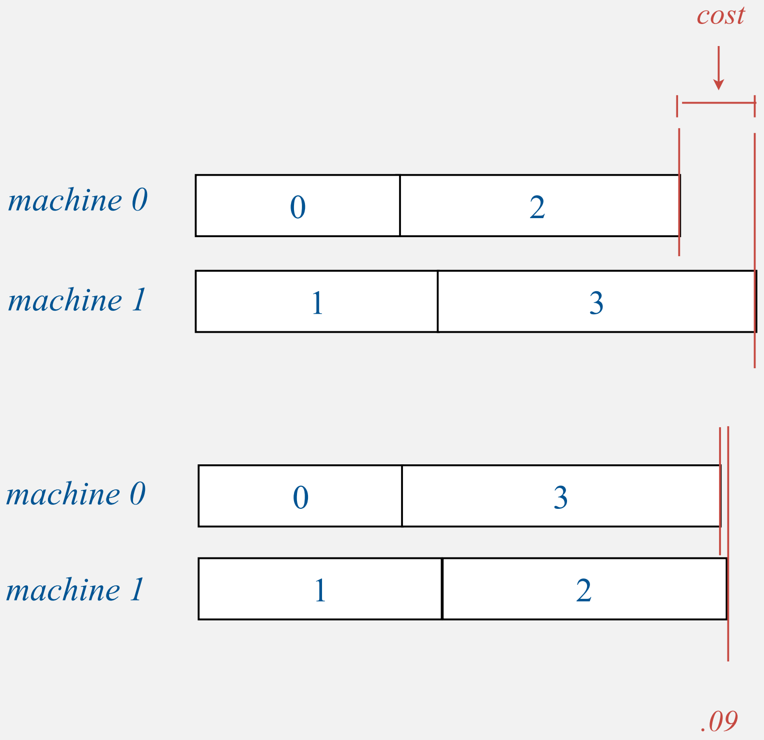
Chinese ring puzzle

Scheduling

Scheduling (set partitioning). Given n jobs of varying length, divide among two machines to minimize the makespan (time the last job finishes).

or, equivalently, difference between finish times

job	length
0	1.41
1	1.73
2	2.00
3	2.23



Remark. This scheduling problem is NP-complete.

Scheduling (full implementation)

```
public class Scheduler
{
   private int N;             // Number of jobs.
   private int[] a;           // Subset assignments.
   private int[] b;           // Best assignment.
   private double[] jobs;     // Job lengths.

   public Scheduler(double[] jobs)
   {
      this.N = jobs.length;
      this.jobs = jobs;
      a = new int[N];
      b = new int[N];
      enumerate(N);
   }

   public int[] best()
   {  return b;  }

   private void enumerate(int k)
   {  /* Gray code enumeration. */   }

   private void process()
   {
     if (cost(a) < cost(b))
      for (int i = 0; i < N; i++)
        b[i] = a[i];
   }

   public static void main(String[] args)
   {  /* create Scheduler, print results */  }
}
```

trace of

```
% java Scheduler 4 < jobs.txt
```

a[]   finish times   cost

```
0   0   0   0     7.38    0.00    7.38
0   0   0   1     5.15    2.24    2.91
0   0   1   1     3.15    4.24    1.09
0   0   1   0     5.38    2.00
0   1   1   0     3.65    3.73    0.08
0   1   1   1     1.41    5.97
0   1   0   1     3.41    3.97
0   1   0   0     5.65    1.73
1   1   0   0     4.24    3.15
1   1   0   1     2.00    5.38
1   1   1   1     0.00    7.38
1   1   1   0     2.24    5.15
1   0   1   0     3.97    3.41
1   0   1   1     1.73    5.65
1   0   0   1     3.73    3.65
1   0   0   0     5.97    1.41

   MACHINE 0      MACHINE 1
  1.4142135624
                1.7320508076
                2.0000000000
  2.2360679775
------------------------------
  3.6502815399  3.7320508076
```

Scheduling (larger example)

Observation. Large number of subsets leads to remarkably low cost.

```
% java Scheduler < jobs.txt
   MACHINE 0         MACHINE 1
  1.4142135624
  1.7320508076
                2.0000000000
  2.2360679775
  2.4494897428
                2.6457513111
                2.8284271247
                3.0000000000
  3.1622776602
                3.3166247904
                3.4641016151
                3.6055512755
                3.7416573868
  3.8729833462
                4.0000000000
  4.1231056256
                4.2426406871
  4.3588989435
                4.4721359550
  4.5825756950
  4.6904157598
  4.7958315233
  4.8989794856
                5.0000000000
------------------------------
 42.3168901295 42.3168901457
```

cost < 10^{-8} →

Scheduling: improvements

Many opportunities (details omitted).

- Fix last job to be on machine 0 (quick factor-of-two improvement).
- Maintain difference in finish times (instead of recomputing from scratch).
- Backtrack when partial schedule cannot beat best known.
  (check total against goal: half of total job times)

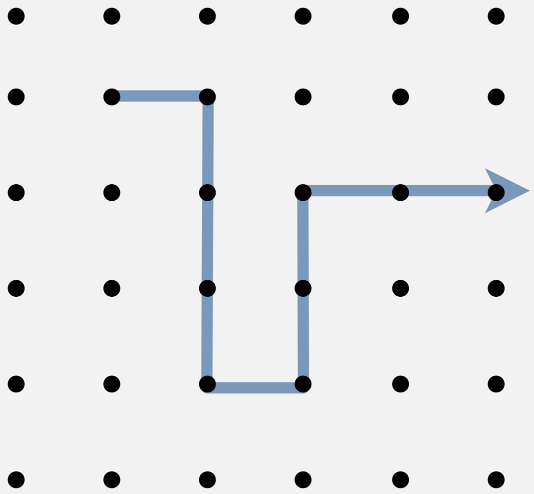
```
private void enumerate(int k)
{
   if (k == N-1)
   {  process(); return;  }
   if (backtrack(k)) return;
   enumerate(k+1);
   a[k] = 1 - a[k];
   enumerate(k+1);
}
```

- Process all 2^k subsets of last k jobs, keep results in memory,
  (reduces time to 2^{N-k} when 2^k memory available).

- permutations
- backtracking
- counting
- subsets
- **paths in a graph**

Enumerating all paths on a grid

Goal. Enumerate all simple paths on a grid of adjacent sites.

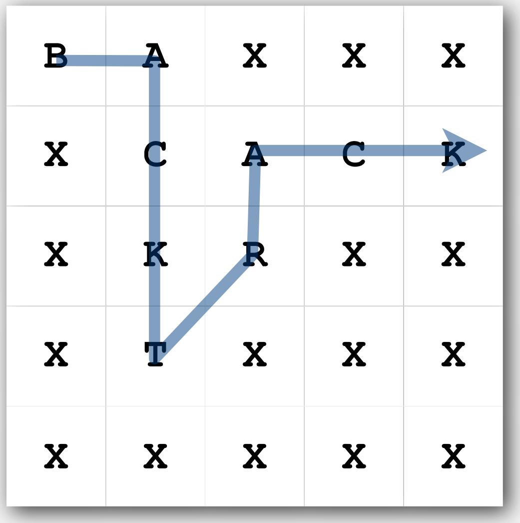


no two atoms can occupy same position at same time

Application. Self-avoiding lattice walk to model polymer chains.

Enumerating all paths on a grid: Boggle

Boggle. Find all words that can be formed by tracing a simple path of adjacent cubes (left, right, up, down, diagonal).



B	A	X	X	X
X	C	A	C	K
X	K	R	X	X
X	T	X	X	X
X	X	X	X	X

Pruning. Stop as soon as no word in dictionary contains string of letters on current path as a prefix ⇒ use a trie.

```
B
BA
BAX
```

Boggle: Java implementation

string of letters on current path to (i, j)

```
private void dfs(String prefix, int i, int j)
{
   if ((i < 0 || i >= N) ||
       (j < 0 || j >= N) ||
       (visited[i][j])   ||
       !dictionary.containsAsPrefix(prefix))
      return;

   visited[i][j] = true;
   prefix = prefix + board[i][j];

   if (dictionary.contains(prefix))
      found.add(prefix);

   for (int ii = -1; ii <= 1; ii++)
      for (int jj = -1; jj <= 1; jj++)
         dfs(prefix, i + ii, j + jj);

   visited[i][j] = false;
}
```

backtrack

add current character

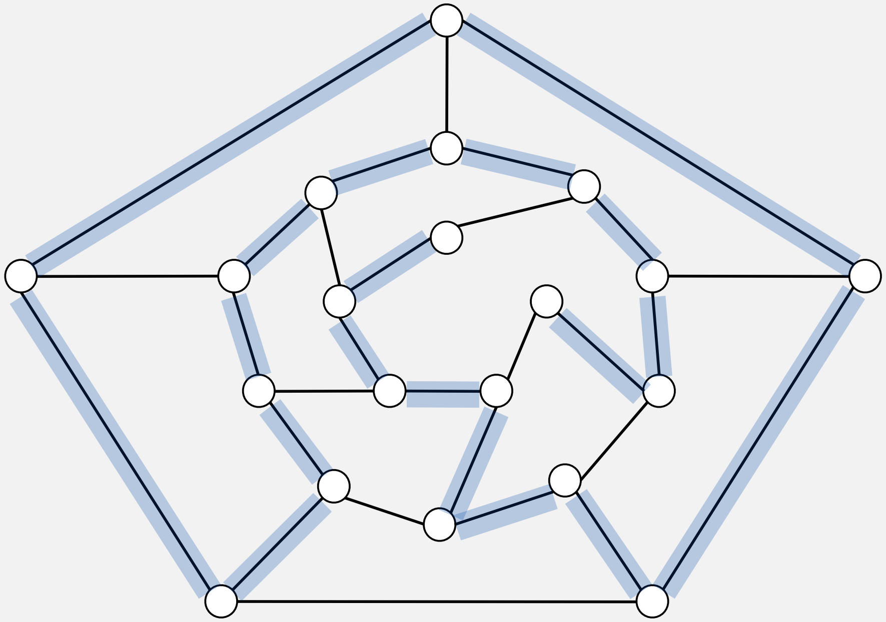
add to set of found words

try all possibilities

clean up

Hamilton path

Goal. Find a simple path that visits every vertex exactly once.

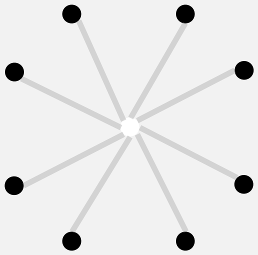


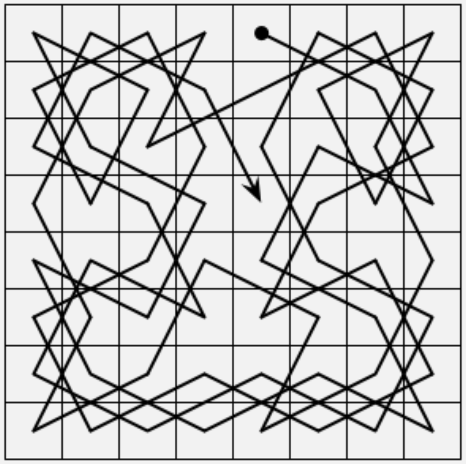
visit every edge exactly once

Remark. Euler path easy, but Hamilton path is NP-complete.

Knight's tour

Goal. Find a sequence of moves for a knight so that (starting from any desired square) it visits every square on a chessboard exactly once.


legal knight moves


a knight's tour

Solution. Find a Hamilton path in knight's graph.

Hamilton path: backtracking solution

Backtracking solution. To find Hamilton path starting at `v`:

- Add `v` to current path.
- For each vertex `w` adjacent to `v`
  - find a simple path starting at `w` using all remaining vertices
- Clean up: remove `v` from current path.

Q. How to implement?

A. Add cleanup to DFS (!!)

Hamilton path: Java implementation

```
public class HamiltonPath
{
   private boolean[] marked;    // vertices on current path
   private int count = 0;       // number of Hamiltonian paths

   public HamiltonPath(Graph G)
   {
      marked = new boolean[G.V()];
      for (int v = 0; v < G.V(); v++)
         dfs(G, v, 1);
   }

   private void dfs(Graph G, int v, int depth)
   {
      marked[v] = true;
      if (depth == G.V()) count++;

      for (int w : G.adj(v))
         if (!marked[w]) dfs(G, w, depth+1);

      marked[v] = false;
   }
}
```

found one

length of current path
(depth of recursion)

backtrack if w is
already part of path

clean up

Exhaustive search: summary

problem	enumeration	backtracking
N-rooks	permutations	no
N-queens	permutations	yes
Sudoku	base-9 numbers	yes
scheduling	subsets	yes
Boggle	paths in a grid	yes
Hamilton path	paths in a graph	yes

The longest path

Woh-oh-oh-oh, find the longest path!
Woh-oh-oh-oh, find the longest path!

If you said P is NP tonight,
There would still be papers left to write,
I have a weakness,
I'm addicted to completeness,
And I keep searching for the longest path.

The algorithm I would like to see
Is of polynomial degree,
But it's elusive:
Nobody has found conclusive
Evidence that we can find a longest path.

I have been hard working for so long.
I swear it's right, and he marks it wrong.
Some how I'll feel sorry when it's done: GPA 2.1
Is more than I hope for.

Garey, Johnson, Karp and other men (and women)
Tried to make it order N log N.
Am I a mad fool
If I spend my life in grad school,
Forever following the longest path?

Woh-oh-oh-oh, find the longest path!
Woh-oh-oh-oh, find the longest path!
Woh-oh-oh-oh, find the longest path.

Recorded by Dan Barrett in 1988
while a student at Johns Hopkins
during a difficult algorithms final

That's all, folks: Keep searching!

The world's longest path (Chile): 8500 km